



3 1761 02002014 6

VICTORIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



This book is purchased from
The Schofield Fund
given in memory of
William Henry Schofield
Victoria College, B.A. 1889
Harvard University, Ph. D. 1895
Professor of Comparative Literature
Harvard University, 1906-20.
Harvard Exchange Professor at
University of Berlin, 1907
Lecturer at the Sorbonne and
University of Copenhagen, 1910.
Harvard Exchange Professor at
Western Colleges, 1918.







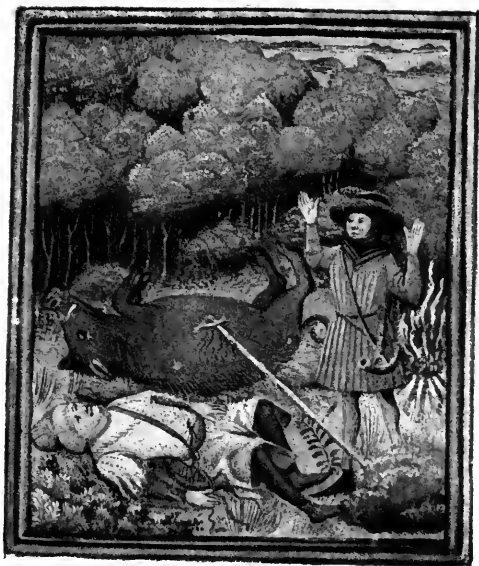
Melusine.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, LXVIII.

1895.

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO. ; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.



Comment guion et ses gens
 desconfrent les galees des
 savrazins sur mer Et com

Melusine.

COMPILED (1352-1394 A.D.) BY

JEAN D'ARRAS

ENGELISHT ABOUT 1500.



EDITED FROM A UNIQUE MANUSCRIPT
IN
THE LIBRARY OF THE BRITISH MUSEUM
BY
A. K. DONALD.

PART I.
TEXT, NOTES, AND GLOSSARY.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHANCERY-LANE.

1895.

PR

1119

E5

no.68

pt.1

61057
25-1-37

Extra Series, LXVIII.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PROEM	1
Cap. I. How Melusyne & her two sustirs shewid them to Raymondyn at the fontayne of Soyf or thurst / ...	2
Cap. II. How the Erle of Poytiers prayde the Erle of For- ests for to comme to the Feste that he made of hys sone /	18
Cap. III. How a forester came to denounce to the Erle Emery how there was within the Forest of Coulombyers the moost meruayllous wildbore that euer was sen byfore /	19
Cap. IV. How the Erle went to the chace and Raymondyn with hym	21
Cap. V. How Raymondyn slew the Erle of Poyters, his vncler	25
Cap. VI. How Raymondyn came to the Fontayne of soyf, wher he founde Melusyne, and two other ladyes with her	28
Cap. VII. How Raymondyn, by the counseyl of the lady, went to Poytiers	34
Cap. VIII. How the Erle Emery was brought vnto Poytiers deed within a Lyttre	35
Cap. IX. How Raymondyn retourned toward hys lady, and sawe a Chapell whiche neuer he had seen before / ...	37
Cap. X. How Raymondyn, after that the barons had doon theire homage vnto the yong' Erle / demanded of the Erle a yefte, the whiche he graunted to hym /	40
Cap. XI. How Raymondyn founde a man that bare the skynne or hyde of a hert / and how he bought it / ...	42
Cap. XII. How they that were ordonned came and delyuered to Raymondyn his yefte /	44
Cap. XIII. How Raymondyn toke his leue of the Erle of Poitiers & retourned toward his lady /	46
Cap. XIV. How the Erle of Poytiers camme to the weddyng of Raymondyn, acompayned of alle the Barons in hys land	51

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Cap. XV. How Raymondyn and Melusyne were wedded togider /	52
Cap. XVI. How they were worshipfully serued at dyner /	54
Cap. XVII. How after dyner the Knightes & Squyers Jousted	54
Cap. XVIII. How the bysshop halowed the bed wheron Raymondyn and Melusyne laye	56
Cap. XIX. How the Erle of Poytiers and the Erle of Forests / the barons and ladyes, toke theyre leue of Raymondyn and of Melusyne /	58
Cap. XX. How Vryan & Guyon toke leue of bothe theyre fader & moder, and of the help that they had of þem ...	107
Cap. XXI. How Uryan & Guyon tooke leue of theirre moder Melusyne and entred theirre ship /	114
Cap. XXII. How the Sawdan was slayn byfore Famagoce	143
Cap. XXIII. How Vryan & Guyon came byfore the kinge, he beyng in his bed syke	151
Cap. XXIV. How Vryan espoused Ermyne, doughter vnto the kinge of Cypre	157
Cap. XXV. How Anthony & Regnald dyscomfyted the kyng of Anssay tofore lucembourg / and how he was take	201
Cap. XXVI. How the kyng of Anssay was lede byfore the pucelle Crystyne	204
Cap. XXVII. How the kinge of Anssay called to hym al the barons of Lucembourg to Counseylle	211
Cap. XXVIII. How Anthony espoused Crystyne, Duchesse of Lucembourg /	214
Cap. XXIX. How the kyng of behayne sent a messenger toward the king of Anssay his brother /	215
Cap. XXX. How the duc Anthony toke hys leue of the Duchesse Crystyne, and went toward praghe with hys oost	218
Cap. XXXI. How the kinge of Craco dide do take the body of kyng Federyke that he had slayn and commanded it to be brent	227
Cap. XXXII. How the king of Craco was slayn in bataylle	232
Cap. XXXIII. How the kyng Zelodius & the other saracyns were brent and bruyled	233
Cap. XXXIV. How the two brethern were at buryeng and obsequye of kyng Federyk of behayne	235

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Cap XXXV. How Regnauld espoused Eglantyne, daughter to the kynge of Behayne /	240
Cap. XXXVI. How the knightes & esquyers jousted after dyner	241
Cap. XXXVII. Here aftir foloweth how Raymondin by the admounesting of hys brother beheld Melusyne hys wyf <i>within</i> the bathe, wherfor he toke hys brother the Erle of Forest in grete indignacion	296
Cap. XXXVIII. How geffray slough Guedon, the geaunt, in garande	302
Cap. XXXIX. How Froymond, brother to Geffray, was professed monke at Mayllezes, by consentement of hys fader & moder	304
Cap. XL. How the two messangers of Raymondin cam in garande toward geffray	307
Cap. XLI. How Geffray <i>with</i> the grete teeth fyred thabbey of Mayllezes, & brent bothe thabbot & al the monkes there	309
Cap. XLII. How Melusyne felle in a swoone, for this that Raymondyn, her lord, wyted her	314
Cap. XLIII. It is shewed hereafter, how Melusyne came to her self ayen, and spake to Raymondyn	315
Cap. XLIV. How Raymondyn & Melusyne felle bothe in a swoone	317
Cap. XLV. How Melusyne made her testament / ...	317
Cap. XLVI. How Melusyne in fourme of a Serpent slough out at a wyndowe	319
Cap. XLVII. How Raymondyn dide do brenne his sone called Horryble	321
Cap. XLVIII. How Melusyne came euery nyght to vysyte her two children	322
Cap. XLIX. How geffray <i>with</i> the grete teeth rane ayenst the geaunt & ouerthrew hym <i>with</i> hys spere /	324
Cap. L. How the geaunt fled & Geffray folowed hym ...	326
Cap. LI. How Geffray went & entred into the hoH for to fyght with the geaunt /	327
Cap. LII. How Geffray fonde the sepulture of the king of Albany, his granfader Helynas, <i>within</i> the mountayn ...	327
Cap. LIII. How geffray delyuered the prysonners that the geaunt kept in pryson	330
Cap. LIV. How the prysonners led the geaunt deed vpon a Charyott	330

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Cap. LV. How Geffray was the deth of the Erle of Forestz hys vnclē	331
Cap. LVI. How Geffray went to Lusynen toward hys fader and prayed hym of mercy	332
Cap. LVII. How Raymondyn came toward the pope of Romme and confessed hys synnes to hym	334
Cap. LVIII. How Geffray went to Romme & confessed hys synnes tofore the Pope	340
Cap. LIX. How Geffray reedyffyd the monastery of Mayl- leses	346
Cap. LX. How the king of Armanye watched the sperhawk	364
Cap. LXI. How the kyng wold haue rauysshed by force the lady, but she vanysshed away	366
Cap. LXII. How the king was bete & ouerthrawn and knew not of whom	367
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS	373
LIST OF PROVERBS IN THE ROMANCE OF MELUSINE	387
GLOSSARY	389
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES (PERSONS)	401
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES (PLACES)	407



Melusine.

[A Chronicle of Melusine in olde Englishe.
 compyled by Ihon of Arras, and dedicated
 to the Duke of Berry and Auuergne, and
 4 trazlated (as yt shoulde seeme) out of
 Frenche into Englishe.¹]

IN the begynnyng of all werkes / men oughten first
 of alle to calle the name of the creatour of all May the Creator
 8 Creatures, whiche is very & trew maister of alle
 thinges made & to be made, that oughten somewhat to
 entende to perfection of wele. Therfore att the begyn-
 nyng of this present historye / though that I ne be not
 12 worthy for to requyre hym / beseche ryght deuoutly
 his right highe & worthy mageste / that this present help me to bring
this book to a
good end!
 history he wyl helpe me to bring vnto a good ende / &
 to fuldoo it att hys glorye & praysyng. And to the
 16 plaisire of my right high, mighti, and doubtid lord
 Iohan, sone to the kyng of Fraunce, Duc of Berry & of
 Auuergne. The whiche hystory I haue bygonne after
 the veray & true Cronykles, whiche I haue had of hym This History was
compiled (in
French)
 20 and of the Erle of Salesbury in England, & many other
 bokes that I haue sought & ouerredde for to accom-
 plysshe hit. And bycause that his noble sustir Marye,
 doughtir to the kyng Iohanne of Fraunce, duchesse of
 24 Bar, had requy²red my said lord for to haue the said
 historye / the whiche in fauour of her hath doon as
 moche to his power as he might, to serche the very

for the Duchess
of Bar,
² fol. 1 b.

¹ This title is added in xviith cent. handwriting.
 MELUSINE.

at the command
of her brother
John, Duke of
Berry and Au-
vergne,

trouth & true historye / and hath commanded me
for to do drawe alle alonge thystory whiche herafter
foloweth /. And I as of herte dyligent / of my pouere
witt & connyng, [do] as nygh as I can the pure trouth 4
of hys gracyous commandement. Wherefore I humbly
& deuoutly beseche & pray to my Creatour, that my
said lord wil take it in gree / and also all them that
schall rede or here it / that they wil pardonne me yf I 8
haue said eny thinges that ben not to their good gree.
Whiche this present hystorye I byganne the Wens-
day, saynt Clementis day in Wynter, the yere of our
lord Ml. ccc. lxxx. vij. beseching alle them that shaH 12
rede, or here it redde, that they wil pardonne me
my fawte, yf their be eny. ffor certaynly I haue com-
posed it the moost justly that I coude or haue mowe,
after the Cronykles whiche I suppose certaynly to 16
be trew.

and was com-
menced on St.
Clement's Day,
Nov. 23, 1387.

* * * * *

Cap. I. How Melusyne & her two sustirs shewid them to Raymondyn at the fontayne of Soyf or thirst /.

20

¹ fol. 2.

David said that
the judgments
of God are un-
fathomable.

It is foolish,
therefore, not
to believe that
marvellous
things are true,

for the Creature
cannot compre-
hend the designs
of God.

DAuid ¹the prophete saith, that the Iuggements and
the punysshinges of god ben as abysmes without
bottom & without ryuage. And he is not wyse that
suche thinges supposeth to comprehende in his wit / & 24
weneth that the meruaylles that ben through the vni-
uersal world, may nat be true, as it is said of the thinges
that men calle ffayrees / and as it is of many other
thinges wherof we may not haue the knowleche of alle 28
them. Now thenne the Creature ought nat therfore for
to traueille, by outrageous presumyng to knowe & to
comprehende in his wit & vnderstanding the Iugements
of god / but men oughten / thinkynge / to be meruaylled 32
of hym / and meruaylling / to considere / how they may

worthily & deuoutly prayse and glorify hym that Iugith
so, and ordeynith suche thinges after hys plaisure &
wille without eny gaynseying¹./

Men should
rather think
how worthily to
praise him.

4 **T**he creature of god that is raisonable, oughte moche
besily to vnderstande aftir the sayeng of Aristote,
that the pynges which he hath made & creatid here
bynethe, by the presence þat they haue in themself,
8 certyfyen to be suche as they are / As saynet paule
seyth in thepistle that he made to the Rommains /
sayeng in this manere / that the thinges that he hath
doon, shalbe knowen & seen by the Creatures of the
12 world / that is to wete, by the men that can rede &
adiousten feyth to þactoures whiche haue ben byfore
vs / as to wete & knowe the landes, the prouinces & the
straunge Countrees. and to haue ouerseen & vysyted
16 the dyuerse Royaumes / haue founde so many of dyuerse
meruaylles aftir common exstimacion, that thumayn
vnderstanding is constrayned of god / that soo as he is
without ryuage & without bottom / soo are the thinges
20 meruayllous & iwonderfull in many dyuerse landes.
aftir their dyuerse nature / that saaf their Iuggement.
I suppose that neuer no man / but only Adam. hadd
parfytt knowlege of the thinges Inuysible or that may
24 not be seen. Wherefore I me bethink fro day to day
to proufytte in science, & to here & see many thinges /
which men suposen not to be true. the which, yf they
be trew / I putte them fourth into this termes byfore
28 you / to thende that the grette meruaylles that ben
conteyned in this present hystory may be byleued.
Wherefore I ¹think to treate to the playsure of god /
and after the commandement of my said right mighty
32 and noble lord./

Reasonable
creatures

should believe
what is seen,

and should
give credence to
travellers

who see many
marvels.

Adam alone had
perfect know-
ledge;

but the author
daily learns more
and more,

and tells what
he has seen, that
his history may
be believed.

¹ fol. 25.

LAte vs now leue the Auctoures with peas / and
retourne we to that we haue herde say and telle
of our aunceyent and old tyme / and that this day we
36 haue herd say what in the land of Poitou was seen in

Leaving the
Authors,
let us turn to
what has been
seen in Poitou.

dede / for to couloure¹ our hystory to be trew / as we hold^t hit soo / and for to shew & publysshe it thugh the true Cronykles / as we suppose to doo /.

In ancient times
fairies and gob-
lins often ap-
peared in Poitou,

We haue thenne herd^t say and telle of our auneyents, 4
that in many partes of the sayd^t lande of Poytow haue
ben shewed vnto many oon right famylerly many ma-
nyeres of thinges / the whiche somme called Gobelyns /
the other ffayrees, and the other 'bonnes dames' or good 8,
ladyes / and they goo by nyght tyme and entre within
the houses without opnyng or brekyng of ony doore /
and take & bere somtyme with them the children out of
theire cradelles. and somtyme they tourne them out of 12
theyre wit / and somtyme they brenne & roste them
before þe fyre / and whan they departe fro them, they
leue hem as hoole as they were byfore / and somme gyue
grette happe & ffortune in this world. And yet haue 16

Gervaise tells of
other fairies,

I herd^t say of oon Geruayse, a man worshipfu^{ll} & of cre-
dence, that somme other fauntasyes appyeren by nyght
tyme vnto many oon in dyuerse places, in lyknes of
wymen with old^t face, of low and lytil stature or body / 20

which performed
menial duties.

whiche dide scoure pannes & potts, and dide suche
thinges as a mayde or seruau^{nt} oughte to doo / lyberaly
& without dooyng of ony harme. And also he saith
for certayn, that in his tyme he hadd^t a fren^d that was 24
auncyent & old^t, whiche recounted for trouth / that in
hys dayes he hadd^t seen many tymes suche thinges.

He also says
that the fairies
sometimes took
the form of beau-
tiful women,

and saith yet the said^t Geruayse, that the sayd^t fayrees
toke somtyme the fourme & the fygure of fayre & 28
yonge wymen / of whiche many men haue hadd^t som
doughtirs, and haue take to theire wyues by meanes of
som couenauntes or promysse that they made them to
swere vnto them / the som / that they shuld^t neuer see 32
eche other / on the satirday / and that by no maner
wyse they shuld^t nat enquiryre where they were by-
comme / the other / that yf they had eny children /

whom men have
married on cer-
tain conditions ;

¹ Fr. *coulourer*.

that theire husbandes shuld neuer see them in theyr
 child^d bedd / And as long^e as they kept theyre cove-
 nauntes they had good fortune and were euer in pros-
 4 peryte / but assoone as they faylled of theyr promysse
 or couenauntes they fell down fro¹ theyr good happ &
 fortune / and aftir these thinges so happed to haue
 broken theyr couenauntes / the other were conuerted &
 8 tourned into serpentes. And yet more sayth the ²said
 Geruayse, that he byleueth this to be permytted & doon
 for som mysdedes that were doon ayenst the playsure
 of god / wherfore he punysshed them so secretly & so
 12 wonderly wherof none hath parfytte knowlege / but
 alonely he / and they may be therefore called the
 secrets of god, abysmes without ryuage and without
 bottom / For none knoweth nothing perfyttly to the
 16 regarde of hym / how be it that sometyme of his pro-
 uysion ben many thinges knowen / not only of oon /
 but of many other. It is seen often whan a man
 hath yssued out of hys countree / and hath seen many
 20 awounder & meruayllous thynges whiche he neuer wold
 hane byleued hit by here sayeng^t, without he had hadd
 the sight of hit / but as for me that haue nat walked
 ferre, I haue seen somme thinges that many oon shuld
 24 nat byleue without they sawe it. With this seyth
 the said Geruayse, & setteth fourth an ensauple of a
 knyght, named Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel of the
 prouince of Asy / the whiche knyght by auenture on an
 28 euen founde oon of the fayree in a medowe / and wold
 haue had her to his wyf / and in dede she assentid to
 hit / by suche couenaunce that neuer he shuld see her
 naked / and were longe togider / and the knyght grew
 32 & waxed prosperous fro day to day. It happed long
 tyme after that / that he wold haue seen the said
 Nymphe naked / as he dede / in so moche that the
 said nymphe putte her heed in to a watre and was

and so long as
 the conditions
 were kept, they
 were prosperous
 and happy ;
 but when they
 were broken,
 they became
 poor, and their
 wives were
 turned into ser-
 pents.

^a fol. 3.

Gervaise thinks
 this is because of
 some misdeeds,
 for which God
 has punished
 them.

Travellers often
 see marvellous
 things ;

but even I, who
 have not been
 far, have seen
 some marvels.

Sir Robert du
 Chastel Roussel
 found a fairy in
 a meadow,

and was married
 to her on condi-
 tion that he
 should never see
 her naked.

For a long time
 he was prosper-
 ous ;

but one day
 he broke his
 promise,

¹ MS. has 'for.'

and his wife was
changed into a
serpent, whilst
he himself grew
poor.

I have to tell
how the Castle
of Lusignen was
built by a fairy,

and how from
the same woman
a noble race
descended,
which shall
reign for ever.

First I will tell
you whence she
came.

1 fol. 3b.

The children of
Melusine and
Raymondin were

Uryan, King of
Cyprus; Guyon,
King of Armenia;
Raynold, King
of Bohemia; An-
thony, Duke of
Luxembourg;
Raymond, Earl
of Forest;

Geoffrey, of Lu-
signen; Theodo-
ric, of Partenay;

Fromont, of
Maillières.

Once upon a
time, in Albany,
lived a brave
King

tourned in to a serpent, whiche was neuer seen after
that / And the knyght fro day to day wexed pouere
and declyned from his prosperyte. As for prouerbes
& exemples I wil none bryng^r more vnto you / and 4
that / that I haue doon / it was bycause þat I suppose
to treate how the noble ffortresse or Castell of Lusyg-
nen was bylded & made of a woman of the fayree, and
the manyere how / after the juste & true cronykle / 8
without to applye ne adiouste to it. nonething / but that
it be approuued Iuste & trew, and of the propre or owne
matere / And ye shall here me spek & say of the noble
lynsee whiche yssued of the said woman / that shall 12
regne for euer vnto thend of the world / aftir that it
appiereth that it hath euer regned vnto this tyme
present. But bycause that I byganne first to treate of
the fayree / I shall telle you how & of whens cam 16
the said woman whiche bilded the noble ¹ffortress of
Lusygnen, beforseyd./

Herafter folowen the names of the estates of the
children whiche yssued of Melusyne, and were 20
bygoten of Raymondyn in wedlok. And first yssued
kyng Uryan, whiche regned in Cypre. Aftir hym
cam King Guyon, which regned myghtily in Armenye.
Item, King^r Regnald, whiche regned right mightily 24
in Behaygne. Item, Anthony that was duc of Lucem-
bourg. Item, Raymond that was Erle of fforest.
Item, Geffray with the grette toth, that was lord of
Lusygnen. Item, there yssued also theodoryk, which 28
was lord of Partenay. Item, ffroymonde, that was
monke into thabbey of Mailleses,² the whiche Geffray
with the grette toth brent the said Abbey, & thabbot
also with an hundred religious or monkes./ 32

It is true that there was somtyme in Albany³ a
kynge that was moche worthy & valyaunt / And
as sayth thystory / he had of hys wyf many children /

² Fr. *Maillières*.

³ Fr. *Albanie*.

& that Mathas whiche was fader to florymond was
 hys first sone / and this kinge had to name Elynas, named Elynas.
 and was right worthy & mighty knight of his land./

4 And it happed that after the decess of his first wyf / as After his first
wife's death he
was hunting,
 he chaced in a fforest nighe to the sec, in the which

forest was a moche fayre fontaynne / that sodaynly he
 had so grett athurst / that as constreyned¹ he tourned and being thirsty,
went towards a
fountain.

8 & yede toward the said fontaynne. And whan he ap-
 prouched to the said fontayne / he herde a voyce that When he ap-
proached, he
heard beautiful
singing, which
he thought must
be of some angel;
 song^t so melodyously & so swetly / that he suposed none

other / but it had the voyce of an Angel / but soone aftir
 12 he knewe that hit was the voyce of a woman. Thenne
 descendid he & alyghted fro hys hors to thende he
 shulde not make gret affray / and walked fayre & softly
 toward the fontayn in the most couered wyse that he

16 coude. And whan he camme nygh to the fontayne / but, walking
towards the
fountain, he sees
a beautiful lady
(Pressyne).
 he sawe there the fayrest lady that euer he the dayes
 of hys lyf had seen to his aduys or semynge. Thenne

he stode styl al abasshed of the grett beaulte that he
 20 perceyued in the same ladye, which euer songe so
 melodyously and so swetly. And thus he stood styl /
 asmoche for the bewte of the lady / as for to here her
 swette & playsaunt voyce / and hyd hym in the best

24 wyse that he coude vnder the leevis of the trees / to
²thende that the said lady shuld not perceyue hym / &
 forgate all the chasse and grett thirst that he had afore.

He hides himself
to listen to her,

2 fol. 4.

And byganne to think on the songe & on the beaulte
 28 of the lady. In so moche that he was as rauysshed
 & knew nat yf it was daylight or nyght, ne yf he slept
 or wakkeð./

and to look upon
her beauty: by
both he is en-
tranced.

Thus as ye shall now here was kyng helynas so
 32 T abused / aswel of the right swete songe / as of
 the bewte of the said lady that he ne wyst whether he
 slept or waked, For euer styl she songe so melodyously
 that it was a swete & melodyous thing to here / Thenne

As he stands
there,

¹ 'honstreyned' in MS.

he remembers
nothing;

but two hounds
at last disturb
him.

He goes to
the fountain to
drink,

and humbly
salutes the lady,

who returns his
salutation.

He asks her who
she is.

He knows all the
lords and ladies
of the neighbour-
hood,

and is surprised
that she is with-
out retinue.

He asks her
pardon for his
rudeness in
questioning her.

the kynge Elynas was so rauysshed & abused¹ that he remembred of nothinge worldly / but alonely that he her^d & sawe the said lady, and abode there long tyme. Thanne camme rannyng toward him two of hys houndis 4 whiche made to hym grett feste,² and he lepte & mevyd hym as a man wakyng from slep / and thenne he remembred of the chasse, and had of new so grett athurst / that without hauyng aduys ne mesure he yede 8 fourth vpon the ryuage of the fountayne, and toke the basyn which heng' therby & drank of the watre. And thenne he beheld the said lady whiche had lefte her songe & salued³ her right humbly / beryng vnto her 12 the gretest honour & reuerence that he might. Thanne she that coude & wyst moche of wele & of honour, rendred to hym his salutacion right gracyously, 'Lady,' said Elynas, the kinge / 'of your curtoysye be 16 nat you dyspleased yf I requyre of you to knowe of your estate / of your beyng & what ye are / For the cause that moueth me therto is suche / as now I shall reherse to you. Right dere lady vouche ye saaf to 20 wete & knowe that I can & know⁴ so moche of the beyng of this countree, that there nys within this foure or fyue myle neyther Castel ne ffortres, but pat I knowe / except that same fro whens I departed this 24 day by the mornynge, whiche is two myle hens or theraboute. Nor there nys neyther lord ne lady within this Countrey but that I knowe them wel, and therefore gretly I meruaylle & wounderly am abasshed, fro whens 28 may be suche a fayr and so gent a lady as ye be / so exempt & vnpurveyed of felawship. and for godis loue pardonne me / For grette outrage is to me to demande of you therof / but the grette desire & good wyll that 32 my herte bereth toward your gracyous personne, hath caused hardynes within me for to doo it.' /

¹ Fr. *abusé*.

² Fr. *feste*.

³ Fr. *salua*.

⁴ Fr. *sçay et congnois*.

- 1¹ 'Sire Knight,' said the lady / 'there is none outrage /
 but it commeth to you of grette curtoysye & honour. And knowe you, sire knight, that I shall nat
 4 be longe alone whan it shal playse me / but from me I haue sent my seruauents, while þat I dysported me.'
 Thenne cam fourth to² that word oon of her seruauents,
 wel arayed, whiche rode on a fayre Courceer, and att his
 8 right hand ledd³ a palfroy so richely enharnashed³ that
 the kyng Elynas was moche abasshed of⁴ the grette
 richesse & noble aray that was about the said palfray.
 Thanne said the seruauent to his lady: 'Madame, it is
 12 tyme whan it shall playse you to comme.' And she
 fourthwith said to the kinge: 'Sire knight, god be
 with you, and gramercy of your curtoisye.' thenne she
 went toward the palfray / and the kinge hyed hym,
 16 & helped to sette her on horsbak moche prately.⁵
 And she thanked hym moche of hit, and departid /
 And the kyng yede to his hors, and lept on his bake.
 thanne camme hys meney, whiche sought hym, and
 20 sayd that they had taken the herte. And the kinge
 said to them / 'that playseth me.' Thenne he byganne
 to thinke on the beaulte of the said lady, and so moche
 he was surprysed of her loue, that he ne wyst what
 24 contenaunce or manyere he shuld hold / and said to
 his meyne / 'goo you alle before / and I shall folow
 you soone.' They yede at hys commandement theire
 way / and wel they perceyued & knew that he had⁶
 28 found som thinge / And the king hastily tourned his
 hors, & toke the way that the said lady had ytaken / &
 folowed her.
- 32 **T**hystory recounteth to vs, that so long folowed the
 kinge Elynas the lady, that he found her in a
 fforest, where as were many trees high & strait / and
 [it] was in the season that the tyme⁶ is swete &

¹ fol. 4 b.She replies
courteously.Her servants
have retired
whilst she
amused herself.A servant then
brings a palfrey,
richly capari-
soned,and the lady,
bidding the King
farewell,mounts and rides
away.The King also
mounts, but his
attendants ar-
rive, having
killed the deer.Beingenamoured
of the lady, the
King dismisses
his retinue,and rides after
her.He overtakes her
in the forest.² Fr. à.³ Fr. enharnacié.⁴ Fr. de.⁵ Fr. doucement.⁶ Fr. temps.

The lady, hearing the noise of his horse, waits for him;

but when he comes up,

King Elynas is much abashed.

3 fol. 5.

The lady asks him why he follows her,

to which he replies that he is ashamed to let her go unaccompanied through his land.

She excuses him, and begs him not to delay his return merely for that,

upon which he declares his love for her,

gracious, & the place within the forest was moche delectable.¹ And whan the lady herde the noyse of the hors of the kynge Elynas, that rode fast, she said to her seruau^t: 'Stand we styl, and late vs 4 abyde this knight, For I byleue that he cometh vnto vs for to telle to vs a part of his wille, wherof he was nat as tofore aduysed, For we sawe hym lepe on his hors all thoughtfuH.' 'Madame,' said the seruau^t / 8 'at your plaisure.' Thanne camme the kinge nigh vnto the lady / and as he had neuer seen her before, he salewed her, moche affrayenge, For he was so surprysed² of her loue that he coude nat holde conten- 12 aunce. Thanne the lady, that knew yncoughe as it was, and that ³she shuld comme to her entrepryse / said to hym: 'Kynge Elynas, what goost thou sechyng^t aftir so hastily / haue I oughte borne away of thyn 16 owne?' / And whan the king^t herde hym named, he was moche abasshed, For he knew nat what she was that spak with hym / and neuertheles he ansuerde to her: 'My dere lady, nought of myn owne ye withbere / 20 but only that ye passe & goo through my land / and it is grett shame to me / sith that ye be astraunger,⁴ that I ne doo you to be conueyed worshipfully through my land / whiche I wold moche gladly doo yf I were 24 in place, & had tyme & space for to doo it.' Thenne ansuerde the lady: 'Kynge Elynas, I hold you for excused, & pray you yf ye wyl of vs none other thinge / that ye leue ne lette nat your retourne for that cause.' 28 And Elynas ansuerde / 'wel other thing^t I seke, lady' / 'And what is it?' said she / 'telle it to me hardly.' 'My right dere lady, sith that it is your wille & plaisir for to knowe it / I shall telle it to you. 32 I desire moche more than eny other thing^t in the world forto haue your good loue & your good grace.' 'By my feith,' said she, 'kyng Elynas, to that haue ye

¹ Fr. *delectable*.

² Fr. *surpris*.

⁴ Fr. *estrangiere*.

- not faylled / yf that ye think theron but wele & honour, For neuer man shal haue my loue in hys aunautynges.' 'Ha, my dero lady, I ne think on my lyf on none cas dyshoneste.' Thenne perceyued the lady *pat* he was esprised¹ of her loue, & said to hym / 'yf ye wil take me as your wyf by mariage, and be sworne vnto me that ye shal nat see me duryng my childbed, nor to peyne your self in no manere of way for to loke on me att that tyme / And yf this ye wil doo & swero / I am she that shal obey to you as a wyf ought to obey her husband.' Thanne *pe* kinge anoone, and *with* good wille, sware & promysed to hold that byfore is said. Without longe rehercyng they were spoused, & ledd longe a good lyf togidre. But al the land of the kinge Elynas was moche abasshed who was this lady / how be it that she gouerned her wel right wysly & valiauntly. But Nathas, that was sone to the kyng Elynas, hated her ouermoche. and [it] happed that she was at her childbed of thre doughtirs / the whiche she had borne² ryght gracyously alle her tyme, & was deliuered of them thre at ende of ix. monethis / the first borne was named Melusigne, the second Melyor, and the iij^{de} Palatyne. The kyng Elynas was nat thanne present at that place, but kyng Nathas his sone was there, and beheld hys thre sustirs, that were so fayre that it was meruaylle. and thanne he went toward the kinge his fader / and thus he said to hym : 'Sire / Madame, the quene Pressyne your wyf, hath made & is delyuered of thre doughtirs, the most fayre that euer were seen / *comme* & see them.' Thenne kinge Helynas, that remembred nat of the promysse that he had made to Pressyne his wyf / sayd / 'ffayre sone / so wyl I doo.' And yede apertly³ & entred anoon *within* the chambre wheras Pressyne bathed her thre doughtirs. and whan he saw them / he said in

avowing the honesty of his passion.

She will marry him, if he will promise never to see her in childbed;

to which condition he assents.

They are married, and live long together;

but Nathas, the son of King Elynas, dislikes her (Pressyne); and when she is in childbed of three daughters,
* fol. 5 b.

Melusine, Melior, and Palatyne,

persuades the King to visit her.

He, forgetting his promise, enters her chamber,

¹ *empris*.

³ Fr. *apertement*.

and greets her
joyfully.

She reproaches
him for breaking
his promise, say-
ing he has lost
her for evermore,

but that she
knows Nathas
is the cause of
all;

whereupon she
disappears with
her three daugh-
ters, and is never
seen again.

King Elynas is
much afflicted at
the loss of his
wife Pressyne
and his daugh-
ters,

and laments for
seven years.

His people think
him mad,
and make Nathas
their king,

whom they
marry to the
Lady of Yeris;

⁴ fol. 6.

and from the
two is born
Florymond,

with whom the
history is not
concerned.

Pressyne goes
with her daugh-
ters to Avalon,
or the Isle Lost,

this manere: 'god blesse the moder & the doughters,'
& toke of them grette Ioye. And whan pressyne
herde hym, she answerde to hym, 'Fals kinge, thou
hast faylled thy couenaunt, wherof grett euyl shal 4
comme vnto the / and hast lost me for euermore.

And wel I wot that thy sone Nathas is cause therof,
& departe I must fro the lightly.¹ but yet I shalbe
auenged me on thy sone by my sustir & felow, my 8
lady of the yle lost.' And these thinges said / [she]
toke her thre doughtirs & had them withher / and
neuer aftir she was seen in the land /

Thystorye saith to vs, that whan the kinge had lost 12
pressyne his wyf, and his thre doughters, he was
so wofull & so abashed that he wüst not what he
shuld doo or say. but he was by the space of seuen
yere that he dede none other thinge, but compleyned 16
& sighed, & made grette playntes & piteous lamenta-
cions for loue of Pressyne his wyf, whiche he louyd of
lawfull² loue. and the people in hys land said that he
was assoted.³ and in dede they gaue & betoke the 20
gouernement ouer them & of alle the lande to Nathas
his sone. Which gouerned valiauntly, and held hys
fader in grette charyte. And thenne the barons of
Albanye gaf to hym vnto hys wyf agentyl woman, 24
whiche was lady of Yerys. And of these ⁴two yssued
florymond, whiche afterward toke moche of payne &
traueyll. Neuertheles, oure hystory is not enterprysed
ne begonne for hym / and therefore we shall hold oure 28
peas of hym, and we shall retourne to oure hystorye.

Thystorye saith, that whan Pressyne departed &
yede with her thre doughtirs, she went in to
Aualon, that was named the yle lost, bycause that aH 32
had a man ben there many tymes⁵ / yet shuld not he
conne retourne thither hymself alone / but byhapp &

¹ Fr. *soudainement*. ² Fr. *leal*. ³ Fr. *assoté*.

⁵ Fr. *tant y eut esté de foyz*.

grett auenture. And there she nourysshed her thre
doughtirs vnto the tyme that they were xv. yere of
age / and ledd^e them euery mornyng on a high
4 mountayne whiche was named, as thystory saith &
recounteth, Elyneos, whiche is asmoche for to say in
englissh as florysshed hy^e.¹ For from thens she sawe
ynough the land of Albany.² and often said to her
8 thre doughtirs, waymentyng & sore wepyng: 'See, my
fayre daughters, yonder is the land wher ye were born /
and ye shuld haue had your wele & honour, ne had be
the dommage of your fader, that bothe you & me hath
12 putte in grett myserye without ende vnto the day of
dome, whan god shal punysse the euyl folk / and the
good he shall enhaunse in their vertues.'

16 **M**elusyne, tholdest doughtir, demanded of her
moder Pressyne: 'What falshed³ hath doon
oure fader, wherby we must endure so longe this greef
& sorow?' Thanne the lady, theyre moder, byganne
to telle & shew vnto them all the manere of the
20 faytte, so as ye haue herd^e tofore. And thenne whan
Melusyne had herde her moder, and that she vnder-
stode all the faitte or dede, She tourned the talke of
her moder,⁴ & demanded of her the commodytees of
24 the land / the name of the Cites, tounes, & Castels of
Albanye / and rehercyng these thinges they al descendid
doun fro the hy^e, & retourned to the yle of Aualon.
And thanne Melusyne had & drew ⁵apart her two
28 sustirs, that is to wete Melyor & Palatyne, & said to
them in this manyere: 'My dere sustirs, now loke &
byhold we the myserye wherin oure fader hath putt
both oure moder & vs all, that shuld haue be so wel att
32 ease & in so grette worship in oure lyues. what think
you good of your best aduys for to doo / For as for

where she brings
up her daughters.

She takes them
every morning to
a high mountain,

called Elyneos,

and shows them
the land in which
they were born.

Melusine asks
what was their
father's wrong
doing,

and Pressyne
tells them the
whole story.

⁵ fol. 6 b.

Melusine then
conspires with
her sister

¹ Fr. *montaigne florie*.

² Fr. *Y'bernie*.

³ Fr. *faulceté*.

⁴ Fr. *remist sa mère en aultres parolles*.

to punish King Elynas for the sorrow he has brought upon them and their mother,

by imprisoning him in a mountain of Northumberland,

This they accordingly do;

but when they tell their mother Pressyne,

she is very grieved and angry at their unfilial conduct.

7 fol. 7.

my parte I think to auenge me therof / and as lytel myrthe & solas that he hath Impetred¹ to oure moder by hys falshed / as lytel joye I think to purchasse vnto hym /' Thenne her two sustirs ansuerde to her 4 in this manere: 'Ye be our oldest sustir, we shall folowe & obey you in all that ye wil doo & shall ordonne theirowf.' And Melusyne said to them / 'ye shew good loue, & to be good & lawfull² to oure moder, 8 For by my feyth ye haue said right wel. and I haue aduysed yf it semeth you good that we shall close or shett hym on the high mountayne of Northomberland, named Brombelyoys / and in myserye he shalbe there 12 all³ his lyf.' 'My sustir,' said either of bothe sustirs / 'lette now hye vs for to doo this / For we haue grette desyre to see that oure moder be auenged of the vnlawfulness that our fader dede shew vnto her.' 16 'Thanne the thre doughtirs dide so moch, that by theyre false condycion they toke theyr fader, & closed or shett hym on the said mountayne. And after that they had so doon, they retourned to their moder, 20 and to her they said in this manere: 'Moder, ye ne oughte to retche⁴ ne care more of the vnlawfulness⁵ & falshed of our fader / For therof he hath receyued hys payment, For⁶ neuer he shal yssue ne departe fro 24 the mounteyne of Brombelyoys, wheron he is closed & shett by vs / and pere he shall waste hys lyf & his tyme with grett dolour and woo.' / 'Ha / ha / alas!' said their moder Pressyne to them / 'how durst you 28 so doo / euyl herted doughters, & without pyte / ye haue not doon wel, whan he that begat you on my body ye haue so shamfully punysshed⁷ by your proude courage. For it was he of whom I toke all 32 the playsaunce that I had in this mortall world,

¹ Fr. *impetré*. ² Fr. *leal*. ³ MS. has 'as.' Fr. *toute*.

⁴ Fr. *challoir*. ⁵ Fr. *desleauté*.

⁶ MS. has 'firo.' Fr. *car*.

whiche ye haue taken fro me. therefore, knowe ye wel
 that I shall punyssh you of the meryte aftir youre
 deserte. thou, Melusyne, that art tholdest, & that
 4 oughtest to haue be the moost knowyng / all this is
 comme & doon thrughe thy counseyH, For wel I wot
 that this pryson hath be gyuen to thy fader by the /
 and therefore thou shalt be she that shalbe first
 8 punysshed therof. For notwithstanding the vnlaw-
 fulness of thy fader / bothe thou & thy sustirs he
 shuld haue drawen to hym, and ye shuld shortly haue
 ben out of the handes of the Nymphes¹ & of the
 12 fairees, without to retourne eny more. And fro hens
 fourthon I gyue to the / the gyfte that thou shalt be
 euery satirday tourned vnto a serpent fro the nauyll
 downward / but yf thou fynd ony man þat wil take
 16 the to hys wyf / and that he wil promytte to the that
 neuer on the Satirday he shall see the, ne þat shall
 declare ne reherce thy faytt or dede to ne personne /
 thou shalt lyue thy cours naturell, and shall dey as a
 20 naturel & humayn woman / and out of thy body
 shall yssue a fayre lynee, whiche shalbe gret & of
 highe proesse. but yf by hap or som auenture / thou
 shuldest be seen & deceyued² of thyn husband /
 24 knowe thou for certayn that thou shuldest retourne
 to the tourment & payne wher as thou were in afore /
 and euer thou shalt abyde therinne vnto the tyme that
 the right highe Iugge shal hold his iugement. And
 28 thou shalt appiere by thre dayes byfore the fortresse
 or Castel whiche thou shalt make, and thou shalt
 name it aftir thy name / at euery tyme whan it shall
 haue a new lord, and lykwyse also whan a man of thy
 32 lynee shal dey. And thou, Melyor, to the I gyue a
 Castel in the grette Armenye, whiche is fayre & riche,
 wher thou shalt kepe a ³Sperohak vnto the tyme that
 the grett maister shall hold his Iugement. And al

For punishment
 she condemns
 Melusine, the
 eldest and the
 most in fault,

to be turned into
 a serpent every
 Saturday, until
 she finds some
 one who will
 marry her, and
 promise never
 to see her on
 that day.

If he break his
 promise,

she must return
 to her punish-
 ment until the
 Day of Judg-
 ment,

appearing before
 her castle for
 three days, when-
 ever it shall have
 a new lord, or
 when one of her
 descendants is
 about to die.

Melior is con-
 demned to keep
 a sparrowhawk
 in a castle in
 Armenia, until
 the judgment
 day;

³ fol. 7b.

¹ Fr. *japhes*.

² Fr. *decelléc*.

and all knights
who shall watch
there a certain
time without
sleep,

shall have any
gift they desire,

except herself in
marriage.

Those that per-
sist in this last
request shall be
unfortunate to
the ninth genera-
tion.

Palatyne is to
be imprisoned on
Mount Guygo,
with the treasure
of King Elynas,
until one of their
lineage shall de-
liver her,
and obtain the
treasure.

The sisters then
go their several
ways.

Be not displeased
that I tell you
these things.

I will now pro-
ceed to the
history itself,

but will first
tell you how
King Elynas
ended his days.

After living a
long time upon
the mountain,
he died,

² fol. 8.

noble and worthy knightes descended & comme of
noble lynce, that wil goo watche there the day byfore
the euen, and theuen also of saint Iohan baptiste,
whiche is on the xx. day of Iung,¹ without eny slep, 4
shal haue a yeft of the of suche thinges that men may
haue corporelly / that is to wete, of erthly pinges
without to demande thy body ne thy loue by maryage
nor other wyse. And al thoo that shal demande the 8
without cesse, and that wyl not forbere & absteynne
them perof / shalbe infortunate vnto the ix. lynce, and
shul be putt from theire prosperytees /. And thou
shalt be closed, palatyne, & shette on the mountayn of 12
Guygo, with al the tresoure of thy fader, vnto the
tyme that a knight shal comme of our lynce whiche
shal haue al that tresoure to help therwith for to gete
& conqyre the land of promyscion / & shal delyure 16
the from thens /.' Thenne were the thre sustirs full
heuy of herte & sorowfull, & departed fro theire
moder. And Melusyne went & toke her way al alone
thrughe the forest & thikk busshes. Melyor also 20
departed, & yede toward the Sperhaak Castel in the
grette Armenye. And Palatyne also went to the
mounteyne of Guygo, wher many a man hath seen
her /. And I myself herd it say of the kinge of 24
Arragon and of many other of hys royaume. And
be nat you displesed yf I haue recounted vnto you
this auenture, For it is for to adiouste more of feyth,
& for to verfyfy thistory, And fro hens fourthon I 28
wil entre into the matere of the very & true hystory,
but first I shall telle to you how the king Elynas
fynysshed his dayes in this world / and how Pressyne
his wyf buried hym within the said mountayn in a 32
moche noble tombe, as ye shal here hereaftir. /

Longe tyme was the Kyng Elynas on the said moun-
tayne in so moch, that deth which bringeth ²euery

¹ Fr. *juing*.

- personne to an ende toke hym. Thanne camme ther
 Pressyne his wyf and buryed hym there / and on hym
 made to be sette oon so noble & so riche a tombe, *pat*
 4 neuer byfore ne syn that tyme was seen none suche ne
 so riche. For on the tombe were riches without com-
 paracion as of precyous stones and other Jewellis / and
 about it were grett & highe Candelstykes of fyn gold,
 8 and lampes & torches whiche brennen both day &
 nyght continually. And on the said tombe stood vp
 right a Statue or ymage of Alabaster, kerued & made
 aftir the lengthe, lyknes, & fourme of Kinge Elynas /
 12 and the said ymage held in her handes a table¹ of gold,
 whereon was writon the forsaid aventure. And there
 the lady Pressyne stablysshed a stronge geaunt to the
 sauegarde of the tresoure byfore said / the whiche
 16 Geaunt was wounder fyers & horryble, and al the
 Countre therabout he held vnder his subgection. And
 also aftir hym many other geaunts kept it vnto the
 tyme & commyng of Geffray with the grett toth / of
 20 the whiche ye shall more here hereafter. Now haue ye
 herde of the Kinge Elynas and of Pressyne his wyf.
 And from hens fourthon I wil bigynne & shew the
 trouth of thystory of the meruaylles of the noble Castel
 24 of Lusignen in Poitow. And why & by what manere
 hit was bilded & made./

and Pressyne
 buries him, and
 erects a rich
 tomb to his
 memory,

bearing a statue
 of the King.

She places a
 giant to guard
 the tomb and
 the treasure,

who was suc-
 ceeded by many
 others, until
 Geoffrey with
 the Great Tooth
 came.

Now I will tell
 you of the mar-
 vellous Castle
 of Lusignen.

A noble man
 of Brut Britain,
 falling out with
 the nephew of
 the King,

leaves the land;

and meeting a
 beautiful lady
 near a fountain,

- T**hystory recounteth to vs that there was somtyme
 in the Brut Brytayne² a noble man whiche fell at
 28 debate with the newew of the kinge of Bretons. and in
 dede he durst therfore nomore dwelle within the land /
 but toke with hym al his fynaunce & goodes, and went
 out of the land by the high mountaynes. And as
 32 telleth thistorye he founde on a day nighe by a fon-
 tayne a fayr lady to whom he told al his Fortune &
 aduenture / so that fynally they enamoured³ eche other,

¹ Fr. *tablier*.

² Fr. *la brute bretagne*.

³ Fr. *s'amouèrent*.

he marries her,
and in her
land builds
many towns
and castles;

¹ fol. 8 b.

and the country
is called Forests.

The knight,
quarrelling with
the lady,

she suddenly
disappears.

He afterwards
marries the
sister of the Earl
of Poitiers,

and has many
children by her,
of whom the
third born was
named Raymon-
din.

and the lady shewed to hym grett loue, & dide vnto hym moch comfort. and he began *with*in her land, that was wast & deserte for to byld & make fayre townes & strong Castels. and was the land *with*in ⁴ ¹short tyme peupled reasonably / And they dede calle the land forestz, bycause that they founde it full of grett wodes & thikk bushes, And yet at this day it is called Forestz. It haped that this knight & this lady ⁸ fel at debate togidre. I ne wot not goodly how ne wherfore / but that right sodaynly departed the lady fro the knight, wherfore he was woful & heuy. and notwithstandinge he grew & encreaced euer in worship ¹² and in prosperite. The noble men thanne of this land / seeying that they were *with*out a lady purveyed hym of oon to hys wyf, a moche gentil & fayre woman, sustir to the Erle of Poitiers, which regned at that tyme, & ¹⁶ he begate on her many children males. emonge the whiche was oon / that is to wete the iijde borne, whiche was named Raymondyn, and was fayre, goodly & gracyous, moche subtyl & wyty in all thinges. And ²⁰ that same tyme² the said Raymondin might be xiiij yere of age./

Cap. II. How the Erle of Poytiers prayde the Erle of Forests for to *comme* to the Feste ²⁴ that he made of³ hys sone./

⁴ fol. 9.

The Earl of
Poitiers holds
a great feast

⁴ **T**he Erle of Poytiers held a grett feste of a sone that he had, and wold haue made hym to be dowbed a knight. And no more children he had, but ²⁸ only a fayre mayde that was called Blanche / and the sone had to name Bertrand. [Thanne the Erle Emery]⁵ manded & desyred a moch fayre company for loue of the knighthode of his sone / and amonges other he bode ³²

in honour of his
son Bertrand,

² Fr. *icelluy temps*.

³ Fr. *pour*. ⁵ omitted by the translator.

- & prayed the Erle of Forests to *comme* to the feste, & that he shuld bring^t with him thre of his sones, the oldest, For he wold see them. Thanne the Erle of
 4 Forestz went at his mandement in the moost honourable wyse that he coude, and with hym he led thre of his sones. The feste was grette, and there were made and dowbed many a knight for loue of Bertrand, sone
 8 to the Erle of Poyters, that was *pat* day proferred to thonourable & worshipfull ordere of knighthod. And also was ther made and dowbed to a knight, theldest sone of the Erle of Forestz, for he jousted moche wel
 12 & fayre. And was the fest contynued and holden the space of viij dayes. And the Erle of Poyters made & gaf many & moche fayre & grett yestes. ¹And at the departyng of the feste the Erle of Poyters demanded
 16 of the Erle of Forestz, & prayed hym to leue with hym Raymondin his nevew, and that he shuld neuer care for hym For he wold puruey for him wel. And the erle of Forestz graunted it / and thus dwelled the said
 20 Raymondyn with the Erle of Poyters his vncle, that loued hym wel. And after toke the feste an ende moche honourably & frendly. And as now cesseth thistory to spek of the Erle of Forests, whiche re-
 24 tourned with his two sones & al his fellowship vnto his Countre. And begynneth oure hystory to procede fourth / and to spek of the Erle Emery, and of Raymondyn./

to which the
Earl of Forests
and his sons are
invited.

At the feast
many are
knighted.

When it is over,
the Earl of
Poitiers asks
the Earl of
Forests to leave
Raymondin in
his charge,

which is done.

- 28 Cap. III. How a forester *camme* to denounce to the Erle Emery how there was within the Forest of Coulombyers the moost meruayllous wildbore that euer was sen byfore./

- 32 **T**hystorye certyffiyeth to vs and also the veray Cronykles that this Erle Emery was grauntfader

The grandfather
of Earl Emery
was St. William.

¹ In French version Cap. III. begins from this point.

The Earl was
worthy, and
learned in
astronomy,

and devoted to
his nephew
Raymondin.

² fol. 10.

He had hounds
and hawks,

and one day
went to hunt a
wild boar in the
Forest of Cou-
lombiers.

to saynt William that was Erle, and left al worldly
pocessyons for to serue oure Creatour, and toke on
hym the ordre & Religion of the whit mauntelles, an
ordre or Religion so called. And therof I wil not 4
make grett locucion or talking; But I will procede
fourth on our matere, and to spek of the Erle Emery.
Thistory thanne telleth to vs that this Erle was moche
worthy & valyaunt a knight / and that loued euer 8
noblesse, And was the most wyse in the science of
Astronomye that was in hys dayes, ne byfore syn that
Aristotles regned. That tyme that the Erle Emery
regned / thistory sheweth to vs that [he] coude many a 12
science,¹ & specially he was parfytte in the science of
Astromy, as I haue said tofore. And knowe ye that
he loued so moche his newew Raymondin that he might
no more. and so dide the child his vncl, and peyned 16
hym moche to playse & to serue hym at gree, and to
doo hym playsir in all maners. It is wel trouth ²that
this Erle had many houndes and many haakes of al
maneres. and [it] befell as thystory recounteth that 20
oon of the Foresters camme vnto the Erlis Court, & de-
manded³ or told that in the Forest of Coulombiers was
the moost meruayllous wildbore that had be seen of
longe tyme byfore, and that at hym shuld be the best 24
& fayrest dysport that eny gentylman shuld euer haue.
'By my feyth,' said the Erle, 'these tydynges please
me wel. late the hunters & houndes be redy to morow
by tymes. & we shall goo to the chasse.' 'My lord,' 28
said the Forester, 'at your playsire.' And al thus he
departed fro the Erle / and made redy al that apar-
teyned to the chasse for to hunte at thoure that he had
apoynted./

32

¹ Fr. *que de moult de sciences estoit plain.*

³ Fr. *denoncier.*

Cap. IV. How the Erle went to the chace
and Raymondyn with hym.

- 4 **A**ND whan the day was comme that Erle Emery Earl Emery, his nephew Raymondin, and many knights
with grette foyson of barons and knightes departed
out of the Cite of Poyters / and Raymondyn rode euer
byside hym on a gret Courser the swerde girded about
hym and the shelde ¹ hehge ouer hys sholder. And whan ¹ fol. 10 b.
8 they were comme to the Forest they byganne fourthwith go to the forest.
to hunte, And the wildbore was founde that was fel &
proude, & deuoured & kyld many houndes and toke
his cours thugh the Forest, For he was strongly
12 chaffed, and they byganne for to folowe hym waloping They come upon the boar,
a good paas, but the wildbore doubted nothings / but
menyd & wered hym in suche a manere that there ne
was so hardy a dogge ne hound that durst abyde hym, but the dogs and the knights are afraid of him.
16 ne so hardy a hunter that durst hold the spere styl
anenst hym for to hit & broche hym. And thanne
camme bothe knightes and esquyers / but neuer oon was
there so hardy that he durst sette foot on the grounde
20 for to withstande & haue launched at hym. Thenne
camme the Erle that cryed with a highe voyce. sayeng.
'shal this swyne² abasshe us all.' And whan Ray-
mondyn herde thus spek hys vncle, he was in hymself
24 vergoyouse³ and shamed / and alighted from his
courser and sette feet on grounde / and holding the
swerde naked, yede courageously toward the said bore,
and gaf to hym a strok with grette anger / And the
28 bore dressed toward hym and made hym to fall on hys
knees, but soone he stood up, And as preu⁴ hardy and
valyaunt wold haue broched and threst hys swyrde
within the booris heest / but the bore fledd, and so which runs away;
32 fast he ranne that there was neyther man ne hound
but that he lost the sight of hym, but alonely Ray-
mondyn that was on horsbak, and so fast he folowed Raymondin follows on horseback,

² Fr. *filz de truye*.³ Fr. *vergongne*.⁴ Fr. *preus*.

leaving all the
hunters behind.

His uncle, afraid,
gallops to him,
and bids him
give up the
chase,

but Raymondin
heeds not;

2 fol. 11.

and the hunt
continues.

The horses sag,
leaving Earl
Emery and his
nephew alone on
the track.

They rest under
a tree,

from which the
Earl studies the
sky,

and praises God,

the bore that he outranne al thoo that were at the
chace, & lefte them behinde and founde hym self alone.
Wherof the Erle, his vncl, was aferd / les that the
bore shuld distroye hym. Wherfore the Erle waloped 4
aftir hys newew Raymondin and with a high voyce
escryed hym. 'Fayre newew, leue this chasse, and cursed
be he that anonced it to vs, For yf this swyne hurt
you I shall neuer haue joye in my herte.' But Ray- 8
mondyn, whiche was chaffed,¹ doubted not of hys lyf,
ne toke heede to none euyl Fortune that might befall
2to hym therof / but euer withoute cesse folowed the
said bore, For he was well horsed. And the erle folowed 12
euer hys newew. What shuld auayll yf herof I shuld
make a longe tale. Alle theire horses byganne to be
chaffed and very, & abode fer behinde, saaf only the
Erle and Raymondyn, whiche chaced the bore so longe 16
that the nyght felt on them. / Thanne the Erle & his
newew stode styl and rested þem vnder a grette tree.
And the Erle gan to sey to Raymondin, 'Fayre newew
here shall we abyde tyl it be mone shyn.' And Ray- 20
mondyn said to hym, 'Sire, aftir your wille shall I
doo.' And soone aftir roos the moone fayre and
bright. / Thenne the Erle that knew moche of the
science of Astronomy dide loke & behelde the skye and 24
sawe the sterres full bright & clere, and the moone that
was moche fayre without tache or spot, ne none ob-
seurte or darknes was seen about it /. he ganne sore to
wepe. And aftir grette & deep sighynges said in this 28
manere. 'Ha / ha / right mighty and veray god, how
grette ben the meruaylles that thou haste lefte here
bynethe / as to knowe parfyttly bothe the vertues &
the nature of many wounder and dyuerse condycions 32
of thinges, and of theire significacions or betoknynges.
This might not be perfightly knowen, yf thou shadd
nat vpon the men somewhat of thy full & deuyne grace,

¹ Fr. *eschauffé*.

And specyally of this meruayllous aduenture, the
 whiche I now see by the sterres whiche thou hast cre-
 ated & sitte by ordre on the firmament or skye / and
 4 that I knowe by the high science of astronomye / of
 the whiche by thy grace *pou* hast lente to me oon
 braunche of knowlege wherof I oughte to preyse /
 to thanke and to regracy¹. the hertily in thy highe
 8 mageste, wher to none may be compared. O veray &
 highe sire, how might this be reasonably as to know-
 lege humayne *without* it were by thy terrible jugement,
 For no man shuld not mowe haue & receyue wel for
 12 to do euer euyl. And notwithstanding I see & per-
 ceyne wel by ²the highe science of Astronomy / of
 whiche *somme* vnderstandyng I haue / to me leued³
 of thy pure grace what hit segnyfyeth or betokneth,
 16 wherof moche meruailled I am.' These wordes said /
 the Erle byganne to wepe and to sighe more strongly and weeps.
 than he dide byfore. Thanne Raymondin whiche hadd
 kyndled the fyre with hys fyreyron and that had herde
 20 the moost part of all that the Erle Emery had sayd /
 said to hym in this manere / 'My lord, the fyre is wel
 kyndled, *comme* and warme you. and I bylene that within
 a while we shall haue *somme* tydynges of your meyne,
 24 For as my thought ryght now I herd barking of dogges.'
 'By my feith,' said the Erle. 'of the chace I gyue
 nomore force / but of that I see' / And thanne he be-
 helde vpward vnto the sky and wept ful sore / And
 28 Raymodyn *pat* so moche loued hym, said to hym /
 'Ha / ha / my lord, for godis lone lette that thing⁴ be.
 For it apparteyneth not to so highe a prince as ye be,
 For to putte or sette hys herte therto / ne for to en-
 32 quyre of suche artes, ne of suche thynges. but wel it
 behouyth to you, and that shalbe wel doon to regracye,
 and to thanke god of that he hath purueyed you and
 promoted vnto so highe and so noble a lordship as

* fol. 11 b.

Raymondin
kindles a fire,and asks the
Earl to warm
himself,and says he hears
the dogs barking.The Earl being
still in tears,Raymondin tries
to divert his
attention,¹ Fr. *gracier*.³ Fr. *presté*.

but he says he
sees wonderful
adventures in
the sky.

Raymondin asks
what they are.

The Earl says,
that if a subject
^{1 fol. 12.}
were to slay his
lord, then

that subject
would found
a noble line.

Raymondin
answers, that he
cannot believe it,

because it is
against right
and reason.

While they speak
they hear a great
affray;

they stop and
listen;

youre is. And as me semeth it is grette symplenes to
take ony sorowe or heynes of suche thinges that may
not helpe / hyndre ne lette' / 'Ha / ha / fole,' said the
Erle, 'yf thou wyst and knew the grette meruaylles & 4
wounderfull auentures that I see, thou shuldest be al
abasshed.' Thanne Raymondyn, that thought none euyl,
answeryd in this manere. 'My right dere & doubted
lord, I pray you to telle it to me / yf it is thinge that I 8
may knowe.' 'By god,' said the Erle, 'thou shalt
knowe it / and I wold that neyther god ne the world
shuld demande of the nothinge of it / and that thad-
uventure shuld befaH to the, on myn owne self / For 12
from hens fourth I am old and haue frendes ynoughe
for to hold my lordshipes. but yet I loue the so moche
that I would that so grett a worship were haped to
thee / And the auenture is suche / that yf at the same 16
ooure a subget dide ¹slee hys lord he shuld become the
moost mighty and moost worshiped that euer camme out
of hys lynage or kynrede, And of hym shuld procede
and yssue so subtile a lynee / that of it shuld be 20
mencoun and remembraunce made vnto thende of the
world. And know thou for certayn that this is trouth
whiche I telle to the.' Thanne ansuerde Raymondyn
that neuer he shuld mowe byleue that it were trouth / 24
and that it were ayenst al right and reason / that a
man shuld haue wele for to doo euyl, and for to doo
suche a mortal treson. 'Now byleue thou it surely,'
said the Erle to Raymondyn, 'For it is as I tell to the.' 28
'By my feith,' said Raymondin / 'yet shall I nat by-
leue it.' And as the Erle Emerye and Raymondin
spak of the said auenture togidre, they herd al alonge
the wod a grette affray / and Raymondyn toke thanne 32
hys swerd that lay on the erthe. and lyke wyse dede
the erle, And abode longe thus thinkinge for to knowe
what it was, and stode byfore the fyre / on that syde
as them semyd that the stryf was. And longe in suche 36

a state they abode tyl that they sawe a wounder grette
 & horryble bore moche chaffed commynge toward
 them. Thanne gan sey Raymondyn, 'My lord, clemme
 4 you vpon som tree lest that this wyld bore hurte you,
 and lette me dele with hym.' 'By my feyth,' said the
 Erle / 'god forbede that I leue the in suche auenture
 al alone.' And whan Raymondyn herde this, he went
 8 & stode byfore the bore hauyng hys swerd on his feet,¹
 and wilfuH² for to dystroye & slee hym / and the wild
 bore tourned hym and went toward the Erle. Thenne
 byganne the dolour of Raymondyn / and the grette
 12 hape that therof camme aftirward to hym, As the very
 & trew history recounteth to vs.

soon the boar
approaches
them.

Raymondin goes
to slay him.

Cap. V. How Raymondyn slew the Erle of Poyters, his vncl.

16 ³ **I**N this part recounteth thystory, that whan Ray-
 mondyn cam ayenst the said bore for to kepe
 hym that he shuld not hurte his lord / the bore anoone
 hurted to hym, & ranne fast toward the Erle, whiche
 20 seeyng the wyld bore comme / lefte his swerd, and toke
 a short spere, and strayght held it dounward before
 hym. And the Erle, that knew & wyst moche of the
 chasse, broched the bore thurgh the brest / but the
 24 Erle feH doun on his knees. And thanne Raymondyn,
 holdyng hys swerde in his hand, camme toward the bore,
 and wold haue smytte hym betwene the foure⁴ legges,
 For he leye vpsodounne the bely vpward. and suche
 28 a stroke gaaf Raymondyn to the bore, that the blade of
 hys swerde brake / so that the poynte of it sprang
 ayenst the Erlis stomak, & wounded hym sore / in so
 moche that he deyed therof. And Raymondyn, which
 32 was sore chaffed / seeyng hys wepen broken, and not

³ fol. 12 b.

The boar comes
near the Earl,

who pierces him.

Raymondin
strikes also,
but his sword
breaks and
wounds the Earl,
so that he dies.

¹ Fr. *l'espee au poing*, mistranslation for 'in his fist.'

² Fr. *par bonne volenté de la destruire*.

⁴ Fr. *quatre*.

¹ fol. 13.

Raymondin kills
the boar,

and then sees
that his uncle is
dead.

He weeps and
laments pite-
ously,

and remembers
that such an
adventure would
make a man
famous.

² fol. 13 b.

yet percey¹uyng¹ his mortal werk / toke the spere, &
so strongly broched it thurgh the bore, that he slew
hym. But whan he dide loke toward his vncl, and
that he sawe hym all bloody / he went, and wold haue 4
had hym to stand vpon his feet, but it was for nought.
he thenne pulled out of hys brest the piece of the
swerd, and knew that it was hys dede /. Moche
meruayllously thanne byganne Raymondin to sighe & 8
to complayne, & wept and lamented piteously, sayeng in
this manere: 'Ha / ha / false fortune, how moche art
thou peruerse & euyl, that hath doon to be slayn by me
hym that loued me so moche, and that had doon to me 12
so moche good? Ha / god fader almighty / wher shal
now be the land where this harde & false synner shal
mowe abyde / For in certayn all they that shall here
spek of this grett mysdede shal juge me / & with good 16
right, to dey of a shamfull deth, For a more false ne
more euyl treson dide neuer no synner. / Ha / erthe
cleue & open the / & deuoure thou me fourthwith, and
lete me fall with the moost obscure & derk angel 20
within helle, pat somtyme was the fayrest of all other
in heuen, For wel I haue deserued it.' In this dolour
& woo was Raymondyn a longe space of tyme, & was
moche poughtfull & wroth / and bethought hym self, 24
& said in this manere / 'My lord & vncl, that lyeth
deed yonder, sayd to me / that yf suche an auenture
shuld comme to me, that I shuld be worshiped more
than ony man of my lynage. but I now see wel al the 28
contrary / For truly I shalbe þe moost vnhappy &
dyshonoured man that euer was borne of woman / and
by my feyth I haue wel deserued it / it is wel raison
& right. But notwithstanding²syth that now it may 32
none operwyse be / I shal dystourne me out of this
land, and shal goo som wher for to purchasse myn
aduenture, suche as god wil send to me in to somme
good place, where as I may take & do penitence for my 36

synne.' And thanne Raymondyn *camme* to hys lord / and sore wepyng, kyssed hym with so heuy & wooful herte / that thenne he had nat mow say one only word

Raymondin
sadly kisses his
dead lord,

4 for all the gold in the world /. And soone aftir that he had kyssed hym, he layed his foot on the sterop and lepe vpon his hors / and departed, holding his way through the myddel of the Forest, moche dyscomforted,

leaps on his
horse, and rides
through the
forest

8 & rode apas vnknowing the way, ne whether he went / but only by hap & att auenture, And made suche a sorowe that there nys no personne in the world that coude thinke ne sey the vth part of hys dolour /.

12 **W**han Raymondyn departed fro his lord, and that he had lefte hym deed beside the fyre, and the wild bore also / he rode so longe through the Forest, euer wepyng and complaynyng so sore that it was gret pite for to see & here hym / that about mydnyght he aprouched nygh to a fontayne of fayerye, named þe fontayne of soyf / And many one of the Countre þer about called hit the fontayne of fayerye,

till he comes
nigh to the fairy
Fountain of Soif.

20 bycause that many a meruaylle fel & happed there many tymes in tyme passed. And was this fontaynne in a wounderfull & meruayllous place / and ouer it was a roch of meruayllous height / and al alonge the said

24 Fontaynne was a fayre medowe, nygh to the high Forest. And wel trouth it is that the moone dide shynne at that tyme ryght clere & bright, And the hors ledd Raymondyn whiche way that he wold, For no heede nor

28 ¹aduys he had of nothing, for cause of the gret dysplaysaunce that he had *within* hym self. And notwithstanding that he slept, hys hors ledd hym in this state so longe that he was *comme* wel nygh to the

He falls asleep
on his horse,
¹ fol. 14.

32 fontayne. And at that same tyme were there [thre] ladyes, that played & dysported them / amongis the whiche oon was auctorised of the other as maistresse & lady ouer them, Of the whiche lady I wil now spek

which journeyes
on to the
fountain,

where three
ladies disport
themselves.

36 aftir that thistory telleth.

Cap. VI. How Raymondyn *camme* to the
Fontayne of soyf, wher he founde Melusyne,
and two other ladyes with her.

Unknown to
himself Ray-
mondin is
carried by his
horse

* fol. 14 b.

past the Fairy
Fountain.

The chief lady
there feignedly
complains of
Raymondin not
greeting them,

she stops his
horse,

and reproves
him.

Raymondin does
not hear,

Thystory saith, that so longe bare the hors Ray- 4
mondyn thus pensefull¹ & heuy of herte of the
myshap that was *comme* to hym, that he ne wyst where
he was, ne whither he went / ne in no manere he ledd
hys hors / but his hors ledd hym where that he wold, 8
For Raymondin touched ²not the brydeH / and herd
ne saw nought / so sore was hys wit troubled. And
thus he passed byfore the fontayne where the ladyes
were, *without* hauyng eny sight of them. but the 12
hors that sawe them, was sodaynly afrayed, and fledd
thens, rannynge moche fast. And thanne she that was
the gretest lady of them thre, sayd in this manere :
'By my feyth, he that rode now & passed byfore vs, 16
semyth to be a moche gentyl man / and, neuertheles,
he maketh of it no semblaunt / but he sheweth the
semblaunt of a vylayne or kerle, that hath passed
so before ladyes *without* to haue salewed them.' And 20
all this said she feynynghly / to thende that the other
shuld nat perceyue to what thinge she tended, For she
wyst & knew wel how it was *with* hym, as ye shal
here say in thystory hereafter. And thanne she gan 24
say to the other: 'I goo to make hym spek, For he
semeth to be asleep.'³ She departed fro the other
two ladyes, and yede to Raymondyn, and toke the
hors by the brydell & made hym to stand styl, and 28
said in this manere: 'By my feyth, sire vassal, hit
commeth to you of grette pryde or of grette rudesse for
to passe byfore ony ladyes *without* spekyng or somme
salutacion / how be it that bothe rudesse & pryde 32
may be in you.' And the lady cessed as thenne of her
wordes / but Raymondyn herde nor vnderstod, no

¹ Fr. *pensif*.

³ 'a sheep' in MS.

- answered her not. And she, as angry & wroth, sayd
 ones ayen to hym : ' And how, sire musarde, are ye so
 dyspytous that ye dayne nat ansuere to me ? ' And yet
 4 he answered neuer a word. ' By my feith,' sayd she
 within her self, ' I byleue nonne other / but that this
 yong man slepeth vpon his hors / or ellis he is eyther
 dombe or def / but as I trow I shal make hym wel to
 8 spek, yf he euer spak byfore.' And thenne she toke
 and pulled strongly hys hand, sayeng in this manere :
 ' Sire vassal, ye slep.' Thanne Raymondyn was
 astonyed ¹ and affrayed, as one is whan another awaketh
 12 hym fro slepe / and toke hys swerd, wenyng to hym
 that it had be hys vnclis meyne, that wold haue take
 and slayn hym. And the lady thanne perceyued wel
 that he yet had not seen her, and, al lawghing, bygan
 16 to say to hym, ' Sire vassal, with whom wyl you
 bigynne the bataille ? / your enemys ben not here,
 And knowe you, fayre sire, that I am of your party or
 syde ? ' And whan Raymondyn herd her spek, he be-
 20 held her, and perceyued the gret beaulte that was in
 her, and toke of hit grett meruayll, For it semed to
 hym that neuer byfore he had not seen none so fayre.
 And thenne Raymondyn descendid from hys hors, and
 24 bowed hys knees, and made reuerence vnto her, and
 said : ' My dere lady, pardonne to me myn Ignoraunce
 & vylonny that I haue doo toward you, For certaynly
 I haue mystaken ouermoeche anenst your noble per-
 28 sonne. And neuertheles, I ne sawe ne herd neuer
 what ye haue said tyl that ye toke me by the hand.
 and knowe ye, that I thoughte moche at that tyme on
 a thinge that sore lyeth nygh to my herte / and vnto
 32 god I pray deuoutly that amendes I may make vnto
 you / and that of hys grace I may at myn honour be
 out of this payne, whiche hurteth myn herte sore.'
 ' By my feyth,' sayd the lady / ' it is wel said, For as
 36 for to bygynne eny thinge, the name of god most first

which enrages
her;

she sees he
sleeps,

and wakes him
suddenly,

¹ fol. 15.

whereat he is
affrighted,

but the lady
soothes him.

He admires her
beauty,

for he had seen
none so fair
before.

He asks pardon
for his neglig-
ence.

The lady asks
Raymondin
where he travels
to;

1 fol. 15 b.

he says he has
lost his way,

but she calls him
by his name,
and tells him
not to deceive
her.

This abashes
Raymondin.

The lady
recounts to him
his adventure,

which abashes
him yet more.

He asks how she
knows of it.

be called to mans help / and I byleue you wel / that
ye herd not what I haue said / but, fayre sire, whither
goo you att this tyme of nyght / telle hit hardly
to me / yf goodly ye may dyscouere it. And yf you 4
knowe not the way / wel I shaſt dresse you to it / For
there nys neyther way ne path but that I knowe it
wel, and therof ye may trust on me hardly.' 'By
my feith,' said Raymondyn, 'gramercy, lady, of 8
your curtoysye. And ye shal knowe it, my dere lady,
sith that youre desyre is for to know it, I haue lost the
high way syn almost yestirday none vnto now / and
I ne wot where I am.' Thanne perceyued she that 12
he² kept hys faytte secret fro her / and said to hym :
'By god, fayre frend Raymondyn, ye shuld not hyde
nothinge fro me, For I wot wel how it standeth with
you.' And thenne whan Raymondyn herd that she 16
named hym by hys owne name, he was so abashed
that he wyst not what he shuld ansuere. And she pat
sawe wel that he was shamfuſſ of that she had named
hym, and that she wyst so moche of hys secret & 20
Counseyſſ, sayd to hym in this manere: 'Forsouthe,
Raymondyn, I am she after god that may best coun-
seylle the / and that may furthre and enhaunse the in
this mortal lyf. and all thin aduersytees & mysdedes 24
most be tourned in to wele / nought auaylleth to the
for to hyde them from me. For wel I wot that thou
hast slayn thy lord / as moche by myshap / as wyl-
fully / how be it that at that ooure thou supposest not 28
to haue doon it. and I wot wel all the wordes that he
told vnto þe of the arte of Astronome, wherin duryng
hys lyf he was right expert.' Whan Raymondyn
herde this he was more abashed than he was tofore / 32
and said to the lady: 'Right dere lady, ye telle to me
the trouthe of alle thinges that ye say; but moche I
meruaylle me how ye may so certaynly knowe it / and

² 'she' in MS.

- who told it so soone to you?' And she ansuerd to hym in this manere: 'Be not thou abasshed therof, For I knowe the full trowth of thy faytte. And wene
 4 nor suppose thou nat that it be fauntesye or dyuels werk of me and of my wordes, For I certyfy the, Raymoundyn,¹ that I am of god, and my byleue is / as a Catholique byleue oughte for to be. and I lete the
 8 to wete that *without* me and my counseyll / thou mayst not *comme* to thende of thy faytte. but yf thou wilt byleue stedfastly all that thyn vncle Emerye said vnto the, hit shalbe profytable to the, *with* the help of
 12 god and of me. And I say so moche that I shal make the for to be the gretest lord that euer was of thy lynage, and the gretest and best lyuelod² man of them aH.' Whan Raymoundyn vnderstod³ the promysse of
 16 the lady / he remembred the wordes that hys lord told vnto hym. And consydering *with*in hym self the grete parels³ wherin he was as exilled and banysshed out of hys Countre & fro his frendes, said [to hym-
 20 self]⁴ that he shuld take thauenture for to byleue the lady of all that she shuld doo or say to hym, For but ones as he said he shuld passe the cruell paas of the deth. And to the lady he ansuerde full humbly in
 24 this manere: 'My right dere lady, I thanke you moche of the promysse that ye do and proffre to me. For ye shall see & knowe that this shal not abyde or tarye by me for no traueyll that ye can aduyse / but that I
 28 shall euer doo your playsire, yf it be possible to be doo / and that a cristen man may, or ought to doo, *with* honour.' 'By my feyth, Raymoundin,' said the lady / 'that is said of free herte, For I shall not say
 32 nor counseille you nothing / but that good & wele shal *comme* therof. but first of alle,' said she / 'ye most promyse to me that ye shall take me to your wyf. and make you no doubte of me / but that I am of

'Not by witchcraft,' she replies,

¹ fol. 16.

and advises him to believe what Earl Emery foretold,

and promises to make him a great lord.

He thanks her,

and undertakes to do her pleasure.

She asks him to marry her;

² Fr. *terrien*.

³ Fr. *pérelz*.

⁴ Fr. *s'advisa*.

god.¹ And thanne Raymondyn yede & ganne say, & sware in this manere, 'Lady dere / by my feith / sith that ye ensure me that it is soo / I shal doo aftir² my power all that ye wyl commaunde me for to doo / And 4 indide I lawfully³ promytte you that so shal I doo.' 'Yet Raymondyn,' sayd she, 'ye most swere another thinge.' 'What it is, my lady,' said Raymondyn, 'I am redy / yf it be thinge that goodly I may doo.' 8. 'ye,' said she / 'and it may not tourne to you to no domage⁴ / but to all wele. Ye muste promytte to me, Raymondyn, vpon all the sacrements & othes that a man very catholouque & of good feith may doo and 12. swere, that neuer while I shalbe in your company, ye shal not payne ne force your self for to see me on the Satirday / nor by no manere ye shal not enquire that day of me, ne the place wher I shalbe.' And whan 16 she had thus said to Raymondyn, he yet ageyn said to her in this manere: 'On the parel of my sowle I swere to you / that neuer on þat day I ne shal doo nothing that may hyndre ne adomage⁵ you in no manere of 20 wyse' / 'and I,' said she, 'ne shal doo nor thinke to none other thinge but in what manere I shall mowe best encresse in worship and honour, both you and your lynee.' And Raymondyn yede & gan sey to her 24. in this manere, 'Soo shall I doo it to the playsire of god.'

'**T**Hanne,' said the lady / 'I shal now telle how ye most doo / doubte you not of nothing! but goo 28 fourthwith vnto Poyters, And whan ye shal comme there / many one ye shal fynd commyng fro the chasse that shall axe to you tydynges of the Erle, your vncl. and to them ye shall ansuere in this manere / "how / 32. is he not yet comme ayen?" And they shal sey "nay." and thanne ye shal say, "I neuer sawe hym syn that

² fol. 16 b.

he promises.

She asks him never to try to see her on Saturdays;

this he also promises.

The lady bids Raymondin go to Poitiers,

where the citizens will ask tidings of his uncle.

He is to say he has not seen him,

¹ Fr. *de par Dieu*.

³ Fr. *leaulment*.

⁴ Fr. *prejudice*.

⁵ Fr. *soit en vostre prejudice*.

- the chasse was at the strengest, and whan ye lost hym" / and semblaunt ye most mak to be abasshed more than eny other. And soone after shul comme the
 4 hunters and other of hys meyne, and ¹shal brynge with them the corps deed *within* a litere / & his woundes shal seme to euery man aduys to be made by the wildbores teth. and they shal say alle, that the wildbore
 8 hath slayn hym, And yet they shall say that the Erle kyled the sayd bore / and many one shal hold it for a hardy & valiaunt dede. thus the dolour & woo shal
 12 bygynne to be moche grete. The Erle Bertrand, his sone, & hys doughtir Blanche, & alle oþer of hys meyne, bothe lesse & grete togidre, shal make grete sorowe / and so shall ye doo *with* them. and ye shall putte on you the blak gowne as they shall. And aftir
 16 this nobly doon, and the terme assigned & take whan the barons shall comme for to doo theire obeysaunce & homaige vnto the yong^r Erle, ye shal retourne hither to me the day byfore the lordes & barons make theire
 20 homaige / and that tyme att this same place ye shaft fynde me.' Thanne as Raymondyn wold haue departed from Melusyne to haue take hys leve of her / she said to hym in this manere: 'Hold, my redoubted frenð /'
 24 for to bygynne & assemble our loue, I gyue you these two rynges, of whiche the stones ben of grette vertue. For the one hath suche appropriété, that he to whomme hit shal be gyuen by paramours² or loue, shal not dey
 28 by no stroke of no manere of wepen, ne by none armes / as longe as he shal bere it on hym / And the other is of suche vertue, that he that bereth it on hym shal haue victory of all his euyl willers or enemyes / al
 32 be it pletyng in Courtes, or fyghtyng^r in felde,³ or ellis whersoever it be: and thus, my frenð, ye may goo surely.' Thanne toke Raymondin leue of the lady, and embraced & kyssed her swetly & moch^r frendly

and to feign surprise at his absence.

¹ fol. 17.

When Emery's body is found they will think the boar killed him,

and will mourn,

which Raymondin must do too.

After doing homaige to the new earl

he is to return to the Fountain.

Before Raymondin leaves Melusine she gives him two rings;

one has power to keep him safe from hurt,

the other will insure victory to the wearer.

Then Raymondin leaves his lady .

² Fr. *par amours*.

³ Fr. *en plaidoirie ou meslée*.

fol. 17 b.

¹as she on whom all hys hoop was leyd. For he was as thenne² so moche esprised³ of her loue / that al that she sayd / doubtles he held it for trouth. and raison it was,⁴ as ye shall here hereafter in thystorye./ 4

Cap. VII. How Raymondin, by the counseyl of the lady, went to Poytiers.

and rides fast to Poitiers.

Raymondyn lepte vpon his hors, and the lady dressed and putte hym in to the high way of 8 Poytiers, and [he] departed fro the lady. And at departyng Raymondyn was ful sory, For he loued alredey so moche her felawship, that wel he wold euer haue be *with* her. Thenne thinkynge, he byganne 12 fast to ryde toward the Cite of Poyters. And the said lady retourned toward the said Fontaynne, where the two other ladyes were, & abode her there / of which ladyes thystory leueth here to speke/. 16

* fol. 18.

When he arrives they ask for his lord;

he answers that he has not seen him since the great chase began.

Others arrive,

Now saith thystorye, that Raymondyn rode so fast that soone he was *comme* into Poytiers, where he ⁵founde many one that were retourned fro the chasse, which demanded of hym, 'where is my lord?' 20 'how,'⁶ said thanne Raymondyn / 'is he not *comme*?' / and they ansuerd 'nay.' And he said to them, 'I sawe hym neuer syn that the grete chasse bygan, and that the bore scaped fro the houndes.' And while that 24 they spak of this matere amonge them alle / the hunters & other folk arryued there fro the chasse, som now and thenne, the whiche all said as Raymondyn had sayd. And som said that neuer they had seen suche 28 & so meruayllous a chasse, ne so horryble a bore. And many one said that the bore was *comme* fro *somme* other land, For none so grete / nor that ranne so fast sawe they neuer. Thanne was euery man meruaylled / how 32

² Fr. *desjà*.³ Fr. *surprins*.⁴ Fr. *il avoit raison*.⁶ Fr. *comment*.

the Erle taryed so longe. and they went to the yate
 for to see if he camme, & abode hym *per* a longe space.
 and euer camme folk that said as the other had sayd /
 4 and that they lay all that nyght in the sayd Forest, For
 they had lost theyre way. Thanne was all the people
 of Poyters woofull & heuy for loue of theyr lord, that
 taryed so longe / and speecially the Countesse, the said
 8 Erlis wyf. but more woofull & heuyer they were
 within a lytel while after/.

but still no Earl
 Emery,

whereat the
 people mourn.

Cap. VIII. How the Erle Emery was brought
 vnto Poytiers deed within a Lyttre.

12 **T**Hystorye ¹telleth vnto vs, that so long they abode
 at the gate with Raymondyn, that they sawe
 commynge toward the Cite a grete multitude of people.
 and as they dide approach & camme nygh, they herd
 16 and vnderstod the piteous voyces of them, wherof they
 were all meruaylled / and bygan many one to doubte
 lest that they shuld haue hadd som trouble or somme
 empeschement.² And so longe they abod, that they
 20 whiche bare the corps of their lord camme vnto them,
 sore lamentyng & piteously waylyng, sayeng to them
 in this manere: 'wepe ye, and wepe ayen, & clothe
 you all in blak, For the bore hath slayn our good lord,
 24 the Erle Emerye.' And after the corps camme two
 hunters, that bare the grette bore. and thus they
 entred into the Cite, makyng grete sorowe. And alle
 the people of the Cite, seeyng theyre lord deed, by-
 28 ganne pyteously to crye / sayeng in this manere: 'Ha /
 ha, cursed be he of god that first anonced this chasse.'
 The sorow & dolour was there so grete that no man sawe
 2 neuer no greter. And making suche sorowe camme
 32 vnto the Palleys / and there was the Corps leyd. And
 bycause one oughte not to kepe ne mayntenne longe

¹ fol. 18 b.

A crowd is seen
 approaching the
 city gate;

their piteous
 voices make the
 townsmen
 marvel.

They arrive, bear-
 ing their lord's
 body;

two hunters fol-
 low, bearing the
 boar.

The citizens,
 weeping,

² fol. 19.

arrive at the
 palace, where
 they lay their
 lord,

² Fr. *empeschement*.

and all the people sorrow.

Raymondin sorrows more than any other.

The Earl's obsequy is done in the Church,

afterwards the boar is burnt.

Four days after the Barons try to comfort the Earl's family.

Soon after the Barons are sent for, to do homage to their new lord,

² fol. 19 b.
on knowledge of which Raymondin returns to his land.

sorowe, I passe it ouer lyghtly. The Countesse & her children made ouergrete sorow / and so dide the Barons and all the Comynaltee of the land. And knowe ye also / that so dide Raymondyn, as it foloweth. / 4

Raymondyn made grete sorowe and greter than eny other, and sore repented hym of hys mysdede, And so moche / that yf it had not be the hoop & comfort of his lady, he had not mowe w^{it}thhold hym self, 8 but þat he had sayd vnto them al hys auenture, for cause of the grete contricion that he had of the deth of hys vncle and lord. But I wil not spek long of this matere. Soone thobsequye was doon moche nobly & 12 richely w^{it}thin the Chirche of our lady of Poytiers, after the custome that was at that tyme, And ye muste knowe that the good folk of the land that had lost þeir lord were full of heuynes and of sorow / and they 16 fourthw^{it}h toke the said bore, and byfore the said Chirch of our lady they brent it / And as it is wel trouth that there nys so grete a sorowe, but that w^{it}thin foure dayes¹ it is somewhat peased / the barons of the 20 land thanne yede and swetly comforted the Countesse and her two children aftir theire power / and so moche they dide that her grete sorowe was somewhat peased. But þe sorowe of Raymondyn grew & wexed more and 24 more, as wel bycause of his grete mysdede / as for the grete loue of whiche he loued hys vncle. It was thanne ordeyned & concluded by the Counsey^H that alle the Barons of the land shuld be sente fore, & boden to 28 *comme* at a certayn day for to doo theire homage to theyre gracyous lord, the sone of the said late Erle. And assone² as Raymondyn knew of it, he toke hys hors and alone yssued out of Poytiers and entred w^{it}thin the 32 Forest, for to goo & hold hys couenaunt vnto his lady. /

¹ Fr. *trois jours*.

Cap. IX. How Raymondyn retourned toward
hys lady, and sawe a Chapell whiche neuer
he had seen before./

- 4 **T**Hystory telleth to vs that so longe rode Ray-
mondyn that he camme into the Forest of Cou-
lombyers, & passed thurgh the lytel tounne, & went vpon
the mountayne and yede so longe that he perceyued
8 the medowes whiche were vnder the roche, that was
about the Fontayne of Soyf, and sawe a hous made of
stone in a manere of a ChapeH. And knowe ye that Ray-
mondyn had be there many [a] tyme, but neuer tofore
12 he had seen it / and went neuer to hit; And before the
place he perceyued many ladyes, knyghtes, & Squyers
whiche made to hym grete feste and praysed hym
gretly. Werfor he meruaylled gretly, For one of them
16 said to hymme: ¹ 'Sire, alight & come toward my lady
that abydeh astir you *with*in her payllon or tente.'
'By my feyth,' sayd Raymondyn / 'hit plaiseth me wel
so for to doo.' Soone he descendid from hys hors &
20 yede *with* them, which conueyed hym toward the lady
moche honourably. And thanne the lady camme to
mete hym, & toke hym by the hand and ledd hym
into her tente, And satte both vpon a bed² of parement
24 moche ryche / and all the other abode *without*. Thanne
byganne the lady for to raisonne³ *with* Raymondyn, &
said to hym in this manere: 'My dere frende, wel I
wote that wel ye haue hold⁴ alle that I introduysed, or
28 taught you of, And therefore fro hens fourthon I shall
trust you the more.' 'Lady dere,' sayd Raymondyn /
'I haue founde so good a bygynnyng⁴ in your wordes,
that nothing ye shall commande to me that humayn
32 body may or oughte to comprehende or vndertake /
but that I wyl & shal doo it after your playsire.'
'Raymondyn,' said she / 'for me ye shall vndertake

Raymondin rides
to Coulombiers,

where he sees a
new chapel,

and knights and
ladies.

¹ fol. 20.

He is asked to
dismount,

and is led by his
lady to a tent.

His lady ex-
presses confi-
dence in him,

and he in her.

² Fr. *couche*.

³ Fr. *à araisonner*.

⁴ Fr. *tenu*.

A knight announces dinner ;

Raymondin marvels at the great company,

1 fol. 20 b.

and asks his lady whence they come.

She tells him they are at his service.

After dinner his lady leads Raymondin beside the bed ;

where she tells of the homage that is to be done to Earl Bertrand.

Raymondin is to go to Poitiers, but to let every one do homage before he does,

no thing; but that of it ye shal comme to your worship /.' Thenne camme there a knyght whiche kneled before her / and after his reuerence made / dressed hys wordes toward her, & said : ' My lady, al thing is 4 redy / ye shal comme whan it playse you.' And the lady ansuerde & said / ' Couere your heed, fayre sire.' Thanne the lady & Raymondyn wesshe their handes & sette them at a moche ryche table. and within the 8 sayd pauyllon were many other tables dressed, where dide sette many knightes and ladyes / and whan Raymondyn saw this appareyll, he meruaylled moche / and demanded of hys lady fro whens so grete a felawship 12 was comme vnto her. And to hys demande the lady ansuerd nothing. Wherefore Raymondyn asked of her ayen, ' My lady, fro ¹whens are comme vnto you so many of gentyl men and ladyes?' ' By my feyth, Raymondyn, 16 my frend,' sayd the lady, ' it is no nede to you for to be meruaylled therof, For they be all at your commandement, & redy for to serue you / & many other also that now ye see not.' Thanne held Raymondyn 20 hys peas / and so many courses & of dyuerse metes were before them brought, that meruayll it was to see it. And whan they had dyned, they weshe their handes / and graces said & all thinges doon / the lady 24 toke Raymondyn by the hand & ledd hym beside the beed, & euerychon voyded the pauyllon, and wheras they lyst went, or wher they oughten for to haue goo, eche one aftir theyre estate /.

28

THanne said the lady to Raymondyn : ' My frend, to morowe is the day that the barons shal comme for to doo their homage vnto the yong Erle Bertrand. And know you, my frend, that there must ye be / & 32 shal doo as I shal telle you, yf it playse you so to doo / Now vnderstand & reteyne wel my wordes. Ye shal abyde per vnto the tyme that all the Baronnes shal haue doo their homages, and thenne ye shal putte your self 36

- fourth byfore the said Bertrand, and of hym ye shal
 demande a yefte, for the salary & remuneracioun of
 alle the *seruyse* that euer ye dide vnto his fader. And
 4 telle to hym wel, how that ye ne demande of hym
 nothre toun, ne Castel, nor other thing of no grete
 value. and I wote wel that he shal acorde or graunt it
 to you. For the barons shalle counseylle hym for to
 8 doo soo, And as soone as he shal haue graunted your
 requeste / demande of hym to haue on this roche &
 about it / as moche of ground as the hyd^r or skynne of
 a hert may comprehende./ and freely he shal gyue it
 12 to you. In so moche that none shal now lette nor
 empesche you therof, by reason of ¹homage, nother by
 charge of rente or other ordynauce, and whan he
 shall haue graunted it to you, take *perof* his *lettres*,
 16 vnder hys grete Seele, and vnder the seelles of the
peris,² or lordes pryncipal of the land. And whan
 that al this ye shal haue doo / on the morow next
 folowing^r after that / as ye shalbe comyng homward
 20 agayn / ye shal mete on your way a good man, which
 shal bere *wit^hin* a sac the skynne of a hert / and ye
 shall bye it / and for it ye shal pay asmoche as the said
 man shal aske you for it / and after ye shall make it
 24 for to be cutte in the smallest and narrowest waye that
 is possible for to be cutte, after the manere of a thonge.
 And after, lette your place be delyuered vnto you /
 the whiche ye shal fynd all marked & kerued, and all
 28 the trees pulled to the ground, there as it shal please
 me for to be / And as for to bryng^r the two endes of
 the sayd^r thong³ of the hyd^r togidre about the said
 place / yf it happe that greter ground may be com-
 32 prysed *wit^hin* it ye shall doo it to be leyd downward
 vnto the valey / & there, at both thendes of the said
 thonge or leder / shal spryng out of the roche a fayre fon-
 tayne, whiche in tyme to *comme* shalbe full necessary

and at last he is
to ask from
Bertrand a gift

of the rock, and
as much land as
a hart's skin can
cover,

¹ fol. 21.

and to get a char-
ter for it, signed
and sealed.

Raymondin is to
buy a skin of a
man he will meet,

and have it cut
into a thong,
then get the land
delivered,

and lay the thong
down, when a
fountain will
spring out where
the ends meet.

² Fr. *pers*.

³ *courroie*.

Then he is to
return.

Raymondin sets
out for Poitiers.
1 fol. 21 b.

and conuenable. Goo penne fourth, my dere frend /
and doo hardyly doubtles all that I haue said. For all
your werkes shalbe of good expedicioun, and without eny
trouble or lettynge / and on the mornne next after that 4
your yefte shalbe graunted and your lettres delyuered
to you, ye shall retourne hither to me.' Raymondyn
thanne ansuerde, 'My lady, after my power I shal
fulfyll al your playsire' / And thenne they embraced 8
and kyssed eche other / and toke leue one of other./
Here cesseth thystory of them / and begynneth for to
spek of Raymondyn, whiche toke hys hors, and rode
toward Poitiers as ¹hastly as he myght./ 12

* * * * *

Cap. X. How Raymondyn, after that the
barons had doon their homage vnto the
yonge Erle / demanded of the Erle a yefte,
the whiche he graunted to hym./ 16

Raymondin rides
to Poitiers,

where he finds
many barons,

2 fol. 22.

who render hom-
age to the young
Earl.

THystorye telleth to vs, that Raymondyn rode so
longe that he camme vnto Poytiers, wheras he
founded many a high baron, which were comme there for
to make homage to the yonge Erle Bertrand / and they 20
dyde grete honour and reuerence to Raymondyn, and
preysed hym right moche. And the next morow they
yede all togidre vnto Saynt Hylary of Poyters, where
the deuyne seruyse was doon right worshipfully, And 24
atte that seruyse was the yonge Erle reuested lyke a
Chanoyne, as theyre prymat or Abbot / and dyde hys
deuoyre as it apparteyned / and that of custome was
for to be doo. Thenne cam the barons ²tofore hym / 28
and there one after another, and eche one after hys
degre rendred to hym hys homage. And thenne,
after alle these thinges were doon / Raymondin putte
hymself fourth before the barons / and with meke & 32
humble contenance or manere, said to them: 'Emonge

- you, my lordes, nobles, Barons of the Countre¹ or Erle-
dom of Poytwo, vouchesaf ye to here & knowe the
requeste whiche I wyl putte & make vnto my lord
4 the Erle. and yf it seme you² to be lawfull & raison-
nable / I beseche that it playse you for to pray hym to
graunt it to me.' And the Barons ansuerd *with* right
a good wiH, 'we shall doo it.' Thanne they altogidre
8 went before the Erle, to whom Raymondyn spake
first moche humbly, sayeng in this manere: 'Right
dere sire, humbly I beseche and requere you, that in
remuneracion, or reward, of alle the seruysces that ever
12 I dide vnto my lord, your fader / on whos sowle god
haue mercy, ye vouchesaf of your benigne & noble
grace for to gyve to me a yefte, the whiche shall cost
you but lityl. For knowe you, Sire, that I ne demande
16 of you neyther tounne, Castel, nor fortresse, ne nothinge
of grette valew.' Thanne ansuerde the Erle, 'yf it
playseth to my barons / ful wel it playseth to me.'
And the Barons said to hym in this manere: 'Sire,
20 syn it is thyng' of so lytyl valewe, as he speketh of,
ye oughte not to refuse it to hym / For he is wel
worthy therof, and wel he hath deserued it.' And the
Erle said to them, 'Syn it pleseth to you for to coun-
24 seyll me soo / I graunt it' / 'demande now,' said the
Erles to Raymondyn, 'what ye wyl.' 'Sire,' said he,
'gramercy.³ Other yefte I ne axe of you, but þat ye
wyl gyue to me, about the fontaynne of soif that is
28 nygh to the roches & wodes / as moche of grounde as the
hyde or leder of a hert shall mow comprehende or ⁴goo
aboute, bothe of lengthe & brede.' 'Forsouthe,' said
þenne the Erle / 'this I ought not to refuse to you.
32 I gyue it to you,' said the Erle, 'freely, without rede-
uauance nor homage to be doon to me, nor to my
successours for euermore.' Thenne Raymondyn kneled

Raymondin tells
the barons he
intends to make
a request to the
Earl.

He says he asks
nothing of great
value,

only as much
land as a hart's
skin can com-
pass.

⁴ fol. 22 b.

The Earl grants
the request,

¹ Fr. *messeigneurs, nobles barons de la conté.*

² Fr. *se il vous semble.*

³ Fr. *grans mercis.*

and gives letters
of gift,

sealed by the
Earl and Barons.

They hold a feast

until they go to
rest.

At mass Ray-
mondyn prays for
a good end to his
enterprise.

& thanked hym ryght humbly / and requyred of hym
lettres of hys gyfte, the which were graunted & made
in the best and moost surest wyse that could be
deuysed / and were Seelled of the grette Seal of the 4
Erle, by thassent and relacion of alle the Barons of
the land / whiche also dide putte theire Seelles therto.
Thanne they departed fro the chirche of Saynt Hylary
of Poytiers, and yede fourth vnto the halle, where the 8
feste was grete and joyous, and swete melody was there
herd of almaner Instruments of Musyque. and of many
& dyuerse meets they were serued at the table. And
after dyner the Erle gaaf grette yeftes / And wel trouth 12
it is, that it was sayd perof many one, that among alle
the other Raymondyn was the moost curtoys / moost
gracyous, and of fayrest contenance. And thus
passed the day tyl the nyght camme that euerychon 16
went to take hys reste. And on the mornne next they
roos and yede for to here masse vnto the Abbey of
Montiers / and there Raymondyn prayed god deuoutly
that he wold help hym att his nede, and to brynge hys 20
enterpryse to a good ende, and to the saluacion of his
sowle & prouffyt of hys body. And he abode within
the chirche, makynge hys prayers vnto thoure of
Pryme./

24

Cap. XI. How Raymondyn founde a man
that bare the skynne or hyde of a hert /
and how he bought it /

¹ fol. 23.

¹ NOW telleth thystorye to vs, that whan Ray- 28
mondyn had herd hys masse, and that he had
ended his prayere / he went out of the chirche / and
at thyssue of thabbey byond the Castel he found a
man whiche bare within a sac vpon hys bak the hyde 32
of an hert, which man camme toward Raymondyn, and
said to hym in this manere. ‘Sire, wyl ye bye this

Raymondyn finds
a man with a
hart's skin to
sell,

hertis skynne that I haue *within* my sack, for to
 make good huntyng cordes for your hunters.' 'By my
 feyth,' said Raymondyn / 'ye / yf thou wilt selle it;
 4 and at one word¹ what shall I paye for hit?' 'By my
 feyth, sire,' said the man, 'ye shall paye to me for it
 ten shelynges, or ellis ye shall not haue it.' 'Frend,'
 said thanne Raymondyn to the said man / 'bryng it
 8 home *with* me and I shall pay the there.' And he
 answerd, 'With a good wille.' Thanne he folowed
 Raymondyn vnto his hous, and there he delyuered hys
 hyde / and Raymondyn payed hym for it. And anone
 12 after, Raymondyn sent for a Sadelmaker,² to whom he
 said: 'My frend, yf it pleseth³ you, ye muste cutte this
 hyde in fourme of a thonge, in the narrowest & smallest
 wyse that is possible to be doo.' The Sadler dide cutte
 16 it, and after they leyed it agayn *within* the sac thus
 cutte. What shuld I nowe prolonge the matere.⁴
 It is trouthe that they whiche were commytted for to
 delyuere to Ramondyn his yefte, rode, and Ray-
 20 mondyn with them, toward the fontayne of soyf, so
 longe that they cam vnto the roche that standeth ouer
 the said fontayne, where as grett tranchis or keruyng
 was made *within* the harde roche / and they fond al
 24 about it grete trees throwen down to the ground,
 wherof they were gretly meruaylled, For it was out of
 mans mynde that euer trees were cutte there aboute.
 Raymondyn, that thanne wel knewe that his lady had
 28 wrought there, held hys peas. And whan they were
within the medowe they toke the thonge out of the
 sac /.

which he buys
for ten shillings,

³ fol. 23 b.

and has it made
into a thong by a
saddlemaker.

Raymondin and
the Earl's men
ride to the foun-
tain,

where they mar-
vel to find trees
cut and rocks
hewed.

¹ Fr. *en ung mot*. ² Fr. *sellier*.

⁴ *Que feroye ores plus long prolongation.*

Cap. XII. How they that were ordonned *comme*
and delyuered to Raymondyn his yefte ./

¹ fol. 24.

The Earl's men
are abashed at
the length of the
thong.

Two men appear
to help them;

they set stakes
to hold the
thong;

it compasses the
rock and part of
the valley.

At the end of
the thong a
fountain springs
forth.

The men are
abashed at the
fountain and the
great compass of
the thong.

¹ **W**Han they that shuld delyuer the yefte saw
the hyde cutte so smalle, they were of it alle 4
abasshed / and said to Raymondyn þat they wüst not
what to doo / And there incontynent *comme* to them two
men clothed with cours cloth / the whiche said in this
manere. 'We are *comme* hither for to helpe you.' Thanne 8
they toke out of the sack the hyde and bare it vnto
the bottomme of the valley, as nigh the roche as they
coude / and there they dide sette a stake in the erthe,
and to this stake they fasted the one ende of the hyde / 12
and as they went they sette stakes for to hold with the
said thonge rounde aboute the roche / and whan they
were *comme* ayen to the first stake, there was yet agrete
remenant of the thong / and for to sette and fournysshe 16
it they drew it downward to the valey / and so fer
they went with it, that they *comme* to the ende of it.
And ye must knowe that after that, it is said in the
Countre, and as the very and true history witnesseth / 20
there sprange at [the] ende of the said thong a fayr
fontayn, the which rendred so moche of watre that a
ryuere wexed or grew therof. Wherof many a mylle
dyde grynde come / and yet now grynden. Thanne 24
they that were there sent for to delyuere to Raymondyn
the place, were moche abasshed / aswel of the fontayne
that they see spryng¹ sodaynly before them, as of the
grete compace of the ledder, whiche conteyned wel the 28
space of two mylles of grounde./

THistories to vs recounteth that they whiche were
ordonned for to delyuere the said yefte, as byfore
is said, were moche abasshed whan they sawe the 32
watre spryng¹ sodaynly & ranne al along² fourth by
the valey. And also they were meruaylled of the grete
grounde that the thonge compassed. but neuertheles

² fol. 21 b.

they delyuered to Raymondyn the ground that was gyuen to hym after the texte or tenour of hys *lettres*.

They deliver the land to Raymondin.

And as soone as they had delyuered it, they wyst neuer
4 where the said two men that were comme there for to helpe hem becamme, ne whither they were goon.

Thanne they departed alle togidre, for to haue returned vnto Poyters, where as whan they were

The Earl's men return to Poitiers,

8 comme, they dide telle and recounte vnto the Erle and to his moder this meruayllous auenture. And thanne the lady said to her sonne in this manere: 'Byleue thou neuer of no thinge me / of that I shall say¹ / but yf

and recount to him the adventure.

12 Raymondyn hath founde somme auenture in the Forest of Coulombyers, For the same Forest is somtyme full of moche meruayllous auentures.' And the Erle answered: 'by my feyth my lady / I byleue well that

The Earl and his mother speak of the marvels that have happened in the forest.

16 ye say trouth / and long syn I haue herd say that aboute the fontayne that is vnder the same roche, men hath seen faft & happ many a wounder and meruayllous aduentures. but as to hym, I pray to god

20 that he may enjoye it to hys honour and prouffyt.'

'Amen,' said the ladye. As they spake thus togidre,

Raymondin arryued / whiche kneeled soone byfore the Erle and thanked hym of the worship & curtoysy that

Raymondin arrives and thanks the Earl for his gift;

24 he had doon to hym. 'By my feyth, Raymondyn,'

said the Erle, 'ye thanke me of a lytil thing, but

betre I shall doo to you, *with* godis grace, in tyme to comme.' 'Now, my frend Raymondyn,' said the Erle,

the Earl promises him more favours.

28 'it is told to me of a grete and meruayllous auenture whiche is happed as of present in the place that I haue doon to be delyuered to you by my yefte. Wherefore I pray you that ye wil telle to me the pure & very

32 trouth of hit.' 'My feyth,' sayd Raymondyn. 'My right dere lord / yf they that at ²your commandement haue delyuered the place to me haue not told you of more than they haue seen / they haue doo wel.

² fol. 25.

¹ Fr. *Ne me croy jamais de chose que je die.*

Raymondin tells
of the marvellous
spring, and the
compass of the
thong,

Neuertheless it is trouthe that the space of grounde
compassed aboute *with* the hyde conteyneth two mylles.
And as for the two men whiche camme there clothed
with cours cloth, and haue helped for to compasse & to 4
mesure the place / and also of the ryuere whiche
sourdred¹ sodaynly / of alle this, my lord, it is pure
trouth.' 'By my feith, Raymondyn,' sayd the Erle,
'ye telle to vs a grete meruaylle /. In good feyth, 8
Raymondyn, lyke as it semeth to vs and supposen, ye
most nedes haue founde som aduenture, and I pray
you that ye wyl declare it vnto vs, for to haue vs out
of the melencolye of it.' 'My lord,' said Raymondyn, 12
'yet haue I not founde but wel & honour / but my
ryght dere lord, I loue my self for to be & there to
dwell more than in eny other place, bycause that it is
commonly renommed² auenturous and welhappy coun- 16
tre / and so I hope that god shall send to me some good
auenture whiche by hys plaisire shall be to me worship-
full & prouffitable bothe to my sowle and to my body.
And, my ryght dere lord, enquire ye me nomore therof / 20
For certaynly, as of present, I can telle you nomore of
it /.' Thanne the Erle, that moche loued hym, held
therof hys peas, bycause that he wold not angre hym.
And this doon, Raymondyn toke hys leue of the Erle 24
and of his moder. And for as now I shall say no
more of them, And shall say how Raymondyn re-
toured toward his lady, where as he wyst that he had
lefte her /. 28

and says that he
loves to dwell by
the fountain;

then bids adieu
to the Earl,

and returns to
his lady.

Cap. XIII. How Raymondyn toke his leue
of the Erle of Poitiers & retoured toward
his lady./

^s fol. 25 b.

³ IN this partye, to vs telleth thistorye that Ray- 32
mondyn, whiche was moche enamoured of his

¹ Fr. *est sours*.

² Fr. *renommé*.

lady, departed at this ooure fro Poytiers hastily al alone,
 and rode tyl he camme vnto the high Forest of Coulom-
 biers, and descended fro þe hylle down in to the valey
 4 and camme to the fontayne where [he founde]¹ his lady,
 that moche joyously receyued hym, and said to hym
 in this manere: 'My frend, ye begynne wel for to kepe
 and hyde oure secretes: and yf ye perseuere thus, grete
 8 wele shall therof comme to you / and soone ye shall see
 and perceyue of it.' Thanne spake Raymondyn and
 sayd in this manere: 'Dere lady, I am & shalbe euer
 redy for to doo aftir my power all your playsires.'
 12 'In dede, Raymondyn,' said the lady / 'tyl ye haue
 wedded me / ye ne may no ferther see ne know of my
 secretes.' 'Lady dere,' said Raymondyn, 'I am alredey
 therto.' 'not yet,' said the lady / 'For first ye must goo
 16 vnto Poitiers for to pray the Erle and his moder and alle
 your other parentes and frendes,² that they wil comme
 and honoure you with their personnes at youre wed-
 dyng, in this place, on monday next commyng. to
 20 thende that they see the noblesses that I think and
 purpose for to doo for to enhaunce you in honour &
 worship / and that they take no suspencion but that ye
 be maryed after your estate and degree. And wel ye
 24 may tell to them that ye shall wedd the doughter of a
 kinge / but no ferther ye shall not dyscouere of it. and
 therfro kepe you as dere as ye haue the loue of me.'
 'Lady dere,' sayd Raymondyn, 'doubte you not therof.'
 28 'Frend,' sayd the lady, 'haue ye noo care that for what
 folke that ye can bryng / but that they all shalbe
 wel and honourably receyued & wel lodged and wel
 festyed / bothe of delycyous meetes and drynkes, and
 32 of allmaner athyng acordyng / as wel to them as to
 theire horses. Therefore, my frend, goo surely and be
 not doubteous of nothing.' They thenne kyssed eche
 other / & Raymondyn departed fro the lady / of whiche

His lady joyously
 receives him;

but tells him,
 that he can know
 no more of her
 secrets until he
 marries her,
 which he pro-
 mises to do
 at once.

* fol. 26.

His lady tells
 him to go to
 Poitiers and in-
 vite the Earl and
 his friends to the
 wedding,

and to tell them
 that he is to
 marry a king's
 daughter.

¹ omitted in MS. Fr. *où il trouva.*

Raymondin goes to Poitiers, thistory sylenceth / and bygynneth to spek of Raymondyn which goth toward Poytiers./

where he finds the Earl with many of his barons,

Raymondin invites the Earl to his wedding at the Fountain of Soyf;

1 fol. 26 b.

The Earl is abashed at not being taken into confidence before.

But Raymondin says that love has done what it liked with him.

They ask his lady's lineage,

which he cannot tell.

NOW telleth to vs thisstorye that so longe rode Raymondyn after that he was departed fro his lady that he camme to Poitiers, wher he fonde the Erle and his moder & grete foyson of Barons with them, whiche were right wel glad of his commyng / and demanded of hym fro whens he camme. And he ansuerde to them that he camme fro his dysporte. And after that they had spoken longe tyme of one thing and of other, Raymondyn yede byfore the Erle & kneled & sayd to hym thus: 'Right dere lord, I moche humbly besech you, on alle the seruyses that euer I shall mow doo to you, þat ye vouchesaaf for to doo to me so moche of honour as to comme on monday next to my weddyng, to the fontayn of Soyf. and that it playse you to bryng thither with ¹you my lady your moder, and alle your barons also.' And whan the Erle vnderstode hym he was moche abasshed. 'How,' said the Erle, 'fayre Cousyn Raymondyn, are ye as now so straunged of vs that ye marye you without that we know therof tyl the day of weddyng? For certayn we gyue vs thereof grette meruaylle, For we wende yf your wyll had be to take a wyf / to haue be they of whom ye shuld first haue taken counseyll.' Thanne ansuerd Raymondin, 'My right dere lord, dysplayse you nat therefore, For loue is of so grete puyssaunce that she maketh thinges to be graunted and doon as it playseth to her / and so ferfourth I haue goo in this matere that I may not flee it; but neuertheles all were it soo that I myght doo soo / yet by myn assent I shuld not be fro it.' 'Now thanne,' said the Erle, 'telle vs what she is and of what lynee.' 'By my feyth,' said Raymondyn, 'ye demande of me a thing / to the whiche I can not gyue none ansuere, for neuer in my lyf I ne dide enqyre me therof.' 'Forsouthe,' sayd the Erle, 'it is

- grett meruaylle. Raymondyn taketh a wyf that he knoweth not, ne also the lynage that she commeth of.' 'My lord,' said Raymondyn, 'sith it suffyseth me as
 4 therof, ye oughte wel to be playsed, For I take no wyf that shall brawle or stryue with you / but only *with* me / and I alone shall bere eyther joye or sorowe for it, after that it shall please to god.' 'By my feyth,'
 8 sayd the Erle to Raymondin, 'ye say right wel / and as for me I ne wil kepe you therfro / but sith it is soo, I pray to god deuoutly that he wil send you peas & good auenture togidre / and right gladly we shall goo
 12 to your weddyng, and *with* vs shall *comme* thither my lady and many other ladyes and damoysselles of our baronye.' And Raymondyn ansuered, 'My lord, right gretly I thanke you, & as I byleue, whan ye
 16 shalbe there and shal see the lady / ye ¹shalbe pleased of her.' And thenne they lefte to speke of this matere, and spake of one thing¹ and of other so long, that tyme of souper *comme*. And notwithstanding, the Erle
 20 thought euer on Raymondyn and his lady, and said in hym self that *somme* Fortune he had fonde at the fontayne of soyf./
- I**N this manere thoughte longe the Erle, so moche
 24 that the styward² cam and said to hym: 'My lord, all is redy, yf it plesse you for to *comme*.' 'Forsooth,' said he, 'it plaiseth me well.' Thanne they weshe theyre handes, sette at the table / and wel they
 28 were serued. And aftir souper they spak of many materes, & after they went to bed. On the morowe erly, the Erle aroos & herð his masse and made the barons to be manded & boden for to goo *with* hym to
 32 the weddyng of Raymondin / and they *comme* incontinent. And the said Erle sent hys message for the Erle of Forestz, whiche was brother to Raymondyn. In this meane while³ made the said lady alle redy in

This abashes the Earl.

The Earl wishes Raymondin good luck,

and promises to attend the wedding;

¹ fol. 27.

but ever wonders about Raymondin and his lady, and their fortune.

After mass the Earl bids his barons to the wedding,

and sends word to the Earl of Forests.

² Fr. *maistre d'hôtel*.

³ Fr. *demantiers*.

Melusine makes
ready in a
meadow a noble
feast.

The Earl and his
company set out
to the wedding;

¹ fol. 27 b.

he inquires about
Raymondin's
wife, but can find
out nothing.

At last they
come to the
fountain,

and then to the
meadow,

at which they
marvel,

because of the
many tents,
knights,

ladies, cooks,

and the fair
chapel.

the medowe vnder the Fontayne of Soyf, and suche
appareill was there made, so grete & so noble, that for
to say trouth / nothing¹ acordyng for suche a Feste
fawted ne waunted there, but honourably might a 4
kinge *with* alle his estate haue be receyued therat. The
sonday camme that alle made them self redy for to
goo to the fontayne of Soyf, at the weddyng of Ray-
mondyn. The night passed & the day camme. And 8
thanne the Erle *with* hys moder / her ladyes & damoy-
selles / and *with* alle the barons, ladyes, & damoyelles
of the lande / toke hys way toward the fontayne. And
as they rode thither the Erle enqyred of Raymondyn 12
the estate of hys wyf, but nothings he would telle ¹ to
hym therof. Wherof the Erle was sorowfull, And so
longe they yede talking togidre that they camme vpon
the hille, where they sawe the grete trenchis or keruyng 16
in the harde roche that sodaynly were made / and the
fontayne also whiche souldred² & sprang³ ther habound-
auntly. Thenne meruaylled therof euerychone, how so
sodaynly that might haue be doo. And they yede 20
fourth and biheld dounne toward the medowe and
sawe grete plente of fayre & riche pauillons or tentes,
righ[t] high³ / so grete, so noble, and so meruayl-
lously facyoned that euery man awondred therof. and 24
namely,⁴ whan they dide see & perceyued so grete
company of noble folke, as of knightes & squyers, that
went vp & down in the medowe and *without*, for to
goo fetche suche thinges as neded to the feste. And 28
also might they see there right grete foyson of ladyes
& damoyelles richely apparayled & arayed, many
horses, palfreys, & coursers were there. There might
they see kychons & Cookes within, dressing meetes of 32
dyuerse maneres. And ouer the fontayne they sawe a
fayre chappel of our lady & ymages *within* right
connyngly kerued & entaylled, and of almener of

² Fr. *sourdit*.

³ Fr. *si treshaultz*.

⁴ Fr. *par especial*.

ornamentes so richely ordeyned, that neuer so grete richesse they had seen before that tyme in no church, wherof they meruaylled moche, and said oon to other.
 4 'I ne wot what it shall befall of the remenaunt, but here is a fayre bygynnyng' grete, & shewyng' grete noblesse & worship.' /

Cap. XIV. How the Erle of Poytiers camme

8 to the weddyng of Raymondyn, acompayned of alle the Barons in hys land.

¹ **N**O[w] telleth to vs thystorye, that whan the Erle & hys folk were descended doun fro the
 12 montayne / an auneynt knyght, nobly & richely clothed and arayed, whiche rode on a fayre palfray, and had in hys felawship xxiiijth men of worship richely & nobly aourned² & wel horsed / camme
 16 gladly & with mery contenaunce toward the Erle. First he mete with the Erle of Forest & with Raymondyn & theyre felawship, for they rode before. And whan he perceyued Raymondyn, whiche wel he
 20 knew among' other / he yede tofore hym & made to hym honour & reuerence, and his brother Erle of Forest he salued moche honourably, & theyre felawship also. And shortly to spek, this auneynt knight
 24 receyued them worshipfully, sayeng' to Raymondin in this manere: 'My lord, I pray you that I may be ledde before the Erle of Poitiers yf it playse you, ³for I desyre to spek with hym.' And so Raymondyn made
 28 hym to be ledde vnto the said Erle. And whan thauneynt knight camme before the Erle, he salewed hym swetly, sayeng', 'my lord, ye be welcomme.' And the Erle ansuerd' / 'and ye are wel mete with me. nowe
 32 telle ye to me why ye dide axe aftir me.' Thanne said the knight thus to the Erle: 'Sire, My lady Melusyne

¹ fol. 28.

An ancient knight comes to meet the company,

and salutes them.

He asks Raymondin to lead him before the Earl of Poitiers,

³ fol. 28 b.

which Raymondin does.

² Fr. *aourné*.

The ancient knight, on behalf of Melusine, thanks the Earl of Poitiers for his presence.

of Albany recommendeth her to you as moche as she may / and thanketh you of the gret & high honour that ye doo vnto Raymondyn your Cousin & also vnto her whan ye vouchesauf of your grace to comme hither 4 for to bere vnto them felawship att their weddingt.' 'By my feyth,' said the Erle, 'In this cas / as ye may telle to your lady / is no thanks to be had, for I am holden for to do vnto my Cousyn all worship & honour 8 possible to me to be doo.' 'Sire,' said thauncient knight, 'ye say full curtoisly / but my lady is sage for to knowe what she ought for to doo / and toward you she hath sent both me and my felawship also.' 'Sire 12 knight,' said the Erle, 'this playseth me wel. but knowe ye that I wende nat to haue found lodged so nygh to me so noble a lady as your is, ne that had so many of noble folk *with* her as she hath.' 'Ha, sire!' sayd the 16 knight, 'whan my lady wil she may haue of knightes & squyers more than she hath now *with* her / for she ne dare doo / but to commande.' And thus talking one to other, they *camme* vnto the pauyllon. And the 20 Erle was lodged there *within* the moost riche lodgys that euer he had seen before. After every man was lodged honourably after his estate / & they¹ said that *within* their owne places at hom they were not so 24 wel lodged. Their horses were lodged *within* the grett tentes / so at large & at their ease / that no palfrener was there but that he was full wel playsed. And alle they meruailed fro whens so moch of goode 28 and suche plente of riches might *comme* there so haboundantly. /

Cap. XV. How Raymondyn and Melusyne were wedded togider. /

32

The Earl of Poitiers' mother and other ladies arrive,

After them *camme* the Contesse moder vnto the said Erle, and blanche, her doughtir, and *with* them many ladyes & damoiselles. And

- thanne Melusyne, sage & wyse, sent toward¹ her
 pauncyent knight, that had hold² companye to the
 Erle, and also with hym she sent many ladyes¹ and
 4 damoysselles of high and noble Estate that moche
 honourably salued and honoured the Countesse and
 her doughter / and ledde them to be lodged in a fayr
 pauillon made of riche cloth of gold, richely set with
 8 perlys & with precyous stones. And, shortly to spek,
 they were alle so wel & so rychely lodged that moche
 they meruaylled of the grete riches that they see
 within the pauyllon. And there was the Countesse
 12 receyued with moche grete and melodyous sowne of
 almaner instruments and alle they in her companye
 were honourably lodged. And whan the Countesse
 had rested a lytil while, and that she was arayed with
 16 her ryche rayments / also her doughtir Blanche.
 Knyghtes & Squyers / ladyes and damoysselles of her
 companye went into the chambre of the spouse, the
 whiche Chambre was fayrer and passed of ryches alle
 20 the other chambres, but whan they sawe Melusyne, &
 perceyued her ryche tyres / her riche gowne, alle set
 with precious stones & perlys / the coler that she had
 about her neck, hir gerde² & her other rayments, that
 24 she had on her, they all meruaylled gretly / and
 specially the Countesse, that said / consideryng that
 grete estate / Neuer had I wende ne supposed that no
 queene ne Emperesse had be in alle the world, that
 28 might haue founde suche jewellis so riche & so grete in
 value. What shuld I make long plee / the Erle of
 poitiers and one of the moost hygh barons, that is to
 wete, the Erle of Forest, addressed and ledde the
 32 spouse vnto the said Chapelle of our lady, which was
 so rychely aourned, & arayed so nobly that wonder it
 was to see / as of parements & ornaments of cloth² of
 gold, purfeld and sett with perlys and precyous stones,
 36 so wel wrought and so connyngly browded, that

¹ fol. 29 b.and are wel-
comed by the
ancient knight,and so richly
lodged that they
marvel much.The Countess
and her daughter
are richly
dressed,and go to Melu-
sine's chamber,where they mar-
vel much at her
rich array.The Earls of
Poitiers and
Forest lead
Melusine² fol. 30.to the richly
adorned chapel,

where the wedding takes place.

meruaylle it was to loke on. fayre ymages straungely kerued / as of Crucifixe & figure of our lady, all of pure and fyn gold / and bokes were there, so wel writon and so riche that in alle the world rycher bokes 4 might nat haue be. And there was a bysshop that wedded them & songe masse before them.

Cap. XVI. How they were worshipfully serued at dyner. / 8

After divine service

the company dine.

¹ fol. 30 b.

They are served by squires,

and eat off gold and silver plate

divers meats.

Aftir that the deuyne seruyse was doon they rested them, and soone after the dyner was redy *within* a moche riche and grete pauyllon in the myddes of the medowe. Eche one satte there 12 aftir hys degree. and serued they were of dyuerse & good meetes, and of many and dyuerse wynes, and haboundaunce of ypocras ¹was there. There serued the squyers richely clothed one lyke another, whiche 16 were grete in nombre. They were serued alle in plat of pure gold & syluer, wherof alle the companye was meruaylled. And assoone as one messe was taken fro the table, the othe[r] messe was redy. And so of 20 dyuers meetes they were serued many a cours moche honourably. /

Cap. XVII. How after dyner the Knightes & Squyers Jousted. 24

After dinner

the knights and squires arm and leap on horseback, the ladies go to the scaffold.

Jousting begins,

² fol. 31.

ANd after that they had dyned, and the tables were take vp & graces said, and that they were serued with ypocras & spyces, the Knyghtes and Squyers went & armed them and lept on horsback. 28 And thenne the spouse & many other ladyes were sett vpon the scaffold or stalage. Thanne byganne the Joustyng / the Erle of Poytiers jousted moche wel and so dide the Erle of Forest and alle their knightes 32 and ²squyers. but the Knyghtes of the spouse dide

- meruaiH, For they ouerthrew bothe knightes and horses
vnto the grounde. Thanne camme there Raymondyn
that satte on a fayre & strong courser, alle in whyte,
4 & at hys first cours he ouerthrew the Erle of Forestz,
his brother / and so valyauntly he demened hym self
that there ne was knight on both partyes but that
he redoubted hym. And thann the Erle of Poitiers
8 seeyng his appertyse of armes meruaylled what he
was / and dressed hys sheld, & holding the speere
alowe ranne ayenst hym / but Raymondyn that knew
hym wel distourned hys hors and adressed his cours
12 toward a knight of Poitou and suche a strok he gaaf
hym, that both man & hors ouerthrew to the erth.
And shortly to spek Raymondin dide that day so wel
that euery man said that the knight *with* the white
16 armes had jousted right strongly. The night camme
and the justyng ended. Wherefore eche of them went
agayn in to theire pauyllons where they toke altil
reste / but soone after was the souper redy. And
20 thanne they yede in to the grete tente / and after they
had wasshen they set them at table & wel and richely
they were serued / and after souper were the tables
take vp / and they wesshed theyre handes. & graces
24 were said. This doon the ladyes wente asyde pryuely
and toke other gownes on them & camme agayn for to
daunse. The feste was fayre / and the worship was
there grete / so that the Erle and alle they that were
28 *comme* with hym meruaylled gretly ¹of the grette
ryches & honour that they sawe there. And whan it
was tyme they ledd the spouse to bed / mochi honour-
ably *within* a wonder meruayllous & riche pauyllon.
32 And there the Erles of Potiers and of Forests betoke
her vnto the ladyes handes. And thanne the Coun-
tesse of Poitiers and other grete ladyes had the spouse
to bed, and dide endoctryne her in suche thinges that
36 she oughte for to doo / how be it that she was ynough
- Melusine's men
being victorious.
- Raymondin over-
throws the Earl
of Forest,
and demeans
himself so that
all are afraid of
him.
- The Earl of Poi-
tiers runs against
him,
but Raymondin
turns aside and
fells a knight of
Poitou.
- Every man
praises the
prowess of Ray-
mondin.
- They have sup-
per in the great
tent,
- then they have a
dance.
- ¹ fol. 31 b.
- They lead the
spouse to bed,
- the Countess
tells her what to
do,

but finds she
knows every-
thing.

The ladies wait
for Raymondin,

who is speaking
with the Earls.

A knight sent by
the ladies

³ fol. 32.

comes for Ray-
mondin, and tells
him that all is
ready, whereat
the company
laugh.

purueyed therof. but notwithstanding she thanked them moche humbly therfore. And whan she was abed the ladyes abode there vnto tyme that Raymondin camme, whiche was yet talkyng¹ of oon thing¹ and of 4 other with the Erle of Poitiers & with his brother, whiche thanked Raymondyn of þat he first dide jouste with hym. ‘By my feyth,’ said the Erle of Poytiers, ‘fayre Cousyn of Forests, ye haue longe syn herd say / 8 how somtyme the loue of ladyes causeth peyne & traueyll to the amerous louers, and deth to horses.’ ‘My lord,’ ansuerde the Erle of Forestz, ‘my brother shewed it wel this day to me.’ And Raymondyn, that 12 was somewhat ashamed / said in this manere: ‘Fayre lordes, stryk of the flatte¹ / and gyue not to me so moche praysing. For I am not he which I mene² that dide soo / For I am not he that bare the whyte armes / 16 but fayne I wold that god had sent to me the grace to doo so wel.’ And at thoo wordes camme there a knight, whiche by the ladyes was sent thither / and said to them: ‘Faire lordes, Jape not ouermoche, For knowe 20 you wel ³that as now on other thing he most think.’ ‘By my feyth,’ said the Erle of Poytiers, ‘ye say trew as I byleue.’ And yet agayn said the knight: ‘my lordes, comme & brynge with you Raymondyn, For the ladyes 24 axen after hym / for his partye is al redy.’ And þerof byganne they to lawghe / and said that he muste haue witnes therof / and that they byleued it wel.

Cap. XVIII. How the bysshop halowed the 28
bed wheron Raymondyn and Melusyne
laye.

Raymondin is
led to the bridal
chamber and
brought to bed;

AT thoo wordes they went and ledde Raymondyn in the pauyllon and soone he was brought to 32 bed. And thanne camme there þe Bysshop that had

¹ Fr. *frappez du plat.*

² Fr. *je ne suys mie celluy que.*

sposued them and dide halowe theire bed. and after that euerychon toke his leue / and the courteyns were drawen aboute the bed. And of this matere recounteth

then the bishop hallowes the bed, the curtains are drawn,

4 no ferther thystorye, but speketh of the other, of which som went to bed,¹ and som went agayn to the daunse and ellis wher them lyste for to goo. And after thystory I shaH speke of Raymondyn and of the
8 lady, how the[y] gouerned them bothe togidre. and what wordes they had amonge them two as the[y] laye togidre.

¹ fol. 32 b.

and the company retires.

12 **T**Hystorye telleth to vs in this partye that whan they euerychon departed and goon out of the Pauyllon and the stakes of hit joyned & shette, Melusyne spak and said to Raymondyn in this manere:

After the tent is closed

‘My right dere lord and frend, I thanke you of the
16 grete honour that hath be doo to me at this day of your parents & frendes / and of that also / that ye kepe so secretly that which ye promysed me at oure first couenaunte,² and ye moste know for certayn that yf

Melusine thanks her lord for his friends' presence at the wedding,

20 ye kepe it euer thus wel, ye shalbe the moost mighty & moost honoured that euer was of your lynage. And ye doo the contrary, bothe you & your heyres shall faH litil & litil in decaye & fro your estate. Ne of the
24 land that ye shall holde & possesse, that tyme ye hold not your promysse / yf it be so that ye doo it, whiche god forbede, hit shal neuer be aftir possessed ne holden alle hoH by you ne by your heysr.’ And thanne to her

and for him keeping his promise,

28 ansuerd Raymondyn: ‘My right dere lady, doubte you not of hit, For yf it playseth to god / that shall neuer befaH by me.’ And the lady ansuerd to hym in this maner: ‘My right dere frend / sith it is soo that

and foretells honour to him and his if he remains faithful, but woe if he be false;

32 so ferfourth I haue putte my self I most abyde the wylle of god, trustyng euer of your promesse. Kepe you thanne wel, my fayre frend & felawe that ye
³fawte not your Couenaunt. For ye shuld be he,

³ fol. 33.

² Fr. *convenant*.

upon which Raymondin pledges himself again to keep the covenant.

They beget that night Uryan, afterwards king of Cyprus.

after me, that moost shuld lese by it.' 'Ha / Ha, lady dere,' said Raymondin, 'therof ye oughte not to be in doubte / For that day, faylle to me god, whan I fawte of Couenant.'¹ 'Now my dere frend,' said the lady, 4
'lete vs leue our talkyng therof. For certaynly as for my part there shal be no fawte. but that ye shal be the moost fortunat & happy that ever was of your lynce, and more puyssaunt thanne any of them shalbe / 8
without it be for fawte of your self.' And thus lefte they theyre talkyng. And as thystorye reherceth, was that nyght engendred or begoten of them both the valyaunt Uryan. whiche aftirward was kynge of 12
Chipre, as ye shall here hereafter.

Cap. XIX. How the Erle of Poytiers and the Erle of Forests / the barons and ladyes, toke theyre leue of Raymondyn and of 16
Melusyne. /

² fol. 33 b.

When the sun is high the lovers rise.

Raymondin dresses and goes with the Earls to mass,

after which the feasting and revelling begins again.

The ladies dress Melusine and go with her to mass.

³ fol. 31.

² **T**Hystorye telleth to vs in this partye that so longe abode these two louers, beyng abed, that the sonne was hye. Thaune aroos Raymondyn and made 20
hym redy, and yssued out of the Pauillon. And as thenne were alle redy, both therles of Poyters and of Forests waytyng aftir Raymondyn, whiche they ledd to the Chapell and there they herde their masse deuoutly / 24
and after they retourned vnto the medowe, where the feste & reueH bygan of new, moche grete. but therof we leue to speke. and shall say of the Countesse & other ladyes, which aourned & made redy Melusyne. 28
And after they yede and ledd melusine moche honourably vnto the Chapel ³for said. And there they herd masse. thoffertory of whiche was grete and riche. And after that the deuyne seruyse was doon, they 32
retourned vnto the Pauillon. What shuld I make

¹ Fr. *convenant*.

- long tale herof; the feste was grete and noble, and lasted XV dayes complete & hole. And Melusyne gaaf many grete yeftes and jewels both to the ladies
 4 & damoysselles, also to knightes & squyers. And after the feste the Erle, and the Countesse his moder, and alle the barons, ladies, and damoiselles of theire felawship, toke leue of Melusyne, whiche conueyed the said
 8 Countesse and her doughter vnto & byonde the lital tounne of Coulombiers. And at departyng Melusyne gaf to the Countesse a fayre & moche riche owche of gold, in value vnestymable. and to blanche her
 12 doughter, a gerland all set with perlys with saphirs rubyes and with many other precyous stones in grete nombre. And alle they that sawe the said owche and gerland, meruaylled gretly of the beaulte goodnes & value of it. And ye moste knowe, that so moche gaf Melusyne bothe to more & lesse, that none there was at the feste / but that he preysed gretly Melusyne of her yeftes. and alle abasshed & meruaylled they were
 20 of her grete ryches. and they alle sayd that Raymondyn was gretly mightily and valiauntly marryed. And after that all these thinges were doon and perfourmed, Melusyne toke leue of ¹the Erle and of the Countesse
 24 moche honourably, and of alle the Baronye. and with a fayre and noble compayny retourned to her pauillon. And Raymondin conueyed euer the Erle. And as they rode on theire way, the Erle of Poytiers said to
 28 him in this manere: 'Fayr Cousyn telle me, yf ye goodly may, of what lynce or kynred is your wyf / how be it that thauncyent knight dide thanke us of thonour & worship that we bare to you by hys lady
 32 Melusyne of Albanye. but yet I demande it of you / bycause that we gladly wold knowe the certaynte of it. For of asmoche that we may perceyue by her estate & behauyng, nedes it muste be, that she be yssued &
 36 comme fro moch noble ryche and mighty lynce. And

Melusine gives great gifts to the company,

and conveys the Countess and her daughter beyond Coulombiers,

and gives them rich jewels.

All the company are abashed at the richness of Melusine's gifts, and say that Raymondin has married well.

¹ fol. 34 b.

As Raymondin accompanies the Earl of Poitiers,

the Earl asks the lineage of his wife,

because he is
afraid he has not
paid her due
honour.

the cause whiche moeueth vs for to desyre and be willing to knowe it / is bycause that we doubte to haue mesprysed anenst thonour that apparteyneth to be doo vnto her noble & goodly personne' / 'But my feyth,' 4 said the Erle of Forest, 'al thus was my wylle to haue said soo.'

Raymondin is
wroth at the
question,

Thystorye saith that thanne Raymondin was gretly wroth, whan he herd the requeste 8 that the Erle of Poytiers, his lord, made vnto him / and also likewyse the erle of Forest hys brother. For he loued / doubted and preysed so moche his lady / that he hated alle thinges 12 whiche he demed desagreable to her. Not withstanding he ansuerd to them full softe & fayr : ' By my feyth, my lord / and you my brother, ¹playse it to you to knowe / that by rayson naturel fro whosoever I hyd 16 my secrete / fro you I ought not to hyde it / yf it were suche thinge that I knew of, or might say. and therefore I shall answere to you, to that ye haue demanded of me / after that I knowe of it. Ye thanne muste 20 knowe, that neuer I ne demanded ne dyde enquire me so fer of it / as now redyly ye haue demanded & enquiryed of me, / but so moche I knowe, and may wel say of her, that she is a kyngis doughter, mighty & 24 high terryen, And by the state, behauyng, & gouernement that ye haue seen in her, ye may perceyue ynough, that she nys ne haue be norysshed in mendycite or pouerte / but in superfluyte of honour & largesse, 28 and amongst plente of goodes. And I requyre you as to my lordes and frendes, that ye ne enquiry nomore therof. For none other thinge ye ne may knowe therof by me. and suche as she is, she playseth me 32 wel, and am right wel content of her. And wel I knowe that she is the rote of alle myn erthly goodes present & to comme.' Thenne ansuerd the Erle of Poytiers : ' By my feyth, fayr Cousin, as for my part I 36

but answers
fairly
¹ fol. 35.

that he did not
ask her, and so

only knows
that she is a
king's daughter ;

which can easily
be seen from her
behaviour.

He requests that
they will not ask
him again about
her lineage,

think not to enquire of you nomore therof, For as ye
 haue putte vnto vs wysely the high honours, riches,
 maneres, and behauyng of my Cousin, your wyf, we
 4 oughte to conceyue of ourself, that she is of noble birth
 & extraction, and of right high and mighty lynce.' 'By
 my feyth, my lord,' said the Erle of Forest, 'ye say
 southe. and of my part I thinke nat to enquire, ne
 8 demande of hym eny¹ thing more therof / how be it
 that he is my broper. For certaynly I hold hym right
 wel ensuered perof aftir myn aduys.' But, helas! he
 aftirward faylled Couenaunt. wherfore Raymoundyn lost
 12 his lady, and also the Erle of Forest toke deth therefore
 by Geffray with the grete tothe, Whereof it shal be
 spoken hereafter more playnly. Raymoundyn thenne
 toke leue of the Erle, & of his brother, and of the
 16 barons, and retourned to the fontayne of Soyf. And
 also the Erle of Forest toke leue of the erle of Poytiers,
 of hys moder, and of hys sustir, and of all the barons
 right honourably, and panked them alle of thonour
 20 that they had doon to him at hys brothers weddyng.
 And thanne therle of Potyers, his moder, and hys
 Suster, with alle theiure felawship & meyne retourned
 to poitiers, and euery one of the Barons retourned to
 24 their Countrees. but there ne was none of them / but
 that he merueylled & gretly wondred of the grete riches
 that they had seen at the wedding of Raymoundyn.
 And here resteth thystorye to spek of them / and shal
 28 spek of Raymoundyn & of his lady, how they were
 after the departyng^t of theiure parents and frendes. /

Thystory recounteth to vs that whan Raymoundyn
 was retourned toward his lady / he founde the
 32 feste greter than it was before / and also greter plente
 of noble folk than neuer was there before. Alle whiche
 folke yede, & said to hym with a high voyce: 'My
 lord ye be welcomme as he to whom we are seruauents,
 36 & whom we wyl obey.' And pis said the ladyes as

which they promise;

¹ fol. 33 b.

but, alas, they do not keep it, so Raymoundyn loses his lady, and the Earl of Forest his life.

The company break up,

and return to their countries,

and they marvel at the great richness of the wedding.

Raymoundyn returns to his lady,

and finds the feast still going on, and many noble folk at it,

who greet him,

¹ fol. 36.
which Ray-
mondin thanks
them for.

Melusine takes
him apart,

and thanks him
for his demean-
our to his brother
and the Earl,

and promises to
make all goods
to abound.

She next day
sends away many
of her people.

When the feast
was over

Melusine got a
great many
workmen,

who felled the
trees and cleaned
the rock,

on which they
prepared a
foundation,

where they build-
ed so quickly
that every one
wondered;

² fol. 36 b.

but no one knew
whence the work-
men came.

The fortress was
strongly built
with two double
walls and wards

wel the lordes. And thanne Raymondin ansuerd to them, 'gramercy of the ¹honour that ye proffre to me.' And there thanne camme Melusyne, who moche honourably sayd to hym: 'welcomme be ye' / and had ⁴ hym apart, & reherced to hym word by word alle the talking that was betwix the Erle and hym. and also what his brother, Erle of Forest, had said, And yet said the lady to hym: 'Dere frende Raymondin / as ⁸ longe as ye shal contynue soo / alle goodes shall habounde to you. Fayre frende, I shall to morowe gyue leue to the moost partye of our folk that ben here comme to our feste. For other thinges we must ¹² ordeyne.' Raymondyn ansuered: 'ladye, so as it shall playse you.' And whan the morowe camme Melusyne departed her folke / grete quantyte went their way / and suche as she wold abode there. And now resteth ¹⁶ thystory of the thinges byfore said. and begynne to treate how the lady bygan to bylde the noble fortresse of Lusignen. /

IN this partye telleth thenne thystory that whan the ²⁰ feste was ended and that suche as she wold were goon / she anoone aftir made to comme grete foyson of werkmen / as massons, Carpenters, and suche that can dygge & delue. Whyche at her commandement fylled ²⁴ dounne the grete trees, and made the roche fayre and clene. There Melusyne sett euery man to werk. eche one dide his Crafte. they encysed the roche & made a depe & brode foundement. and in few dayes they ²⁸ brought the werk so ferfourth / that euery man wondred of suche a fayre and stronge bylding so soone doon. And euery Satirday Melusyne payed truly her werkmen / and meet & drynk they had ³² in haboundaunce. ³² but trouth it is / that no body knew from whens these werkmen were. and wete it that soone was the Fortres made up / not only *with* one warde / but two strong wardes, *with* double walles were there, or oon coude ³⁶

- have *comme* to the stronge donjon of it. Round about
the walles were gret tours machecolyd, & strong pos-
ternes / and also barreres or wayes gooyng out fourth
4 encysed and kerued *wit/*in the hard roche. The Erle
of Poytiers / the barons and alle the peple *meruaylled*
moche of the said werke that so soone was doon, so
grete, so stronge, & so fayre. Then the lady Melusyne
8 and her husband Raymondyn lodged them *wit/*in it.
and anoone after Raymondin made to calle to a feste
there, alle the noble men therabout. There *camme* the
erle of Poytiers, both hys moder and hys suster / the
12 Erle of Forestz, the Barons & noble men of theire
landes, also of other countres and nacions. And also
there was so many laydes & damoyselles, that they
wel might suffyse att that day. There was jousting,
16 dauncyng, and grete joye made *wit/* frendly and
curtoys deeling. And whan Melusyne sawe tyme and
place conuenable, she presented herself before the two
Erles / barons and noble men, and humbly said to
20 them in this manere: 'My fayre and good lordes, we
thanke you moche of the high honoure that ye haue
doon to us now at this feste—and the cause why we
haue prayed you to *comme* I shal declare it to you.' /
24 '**L** Ordes,' said the lady, 'here I haue assembled your
noble personnes, for to haue your Counseil
¹how this fortresse shall be called. for that it be in
mynd how that it hath be happely bylded & made.'
28 'By my feyth, fayre Cousyn,' said the Erle of Poitiers,
'we as in general sayen to you, as oure wyll is / that
ye your owneself shall / as right is / gyue name to it.
For emong we alle is not so moch wyt as in you alone
32 that haue bylded up & achyeuyd so strong and fayre a
place as thesame is / and wete it, that none of us
shall entremete hym to doo that ye spek of.' Thanne
said Melusyne: 'Dere Sire, Wyfully and for the nones
36 ye haue kept pis ansuere for to jape with me, but what

protecting the
donjon.

Every one mar-
velled at its
beauty and
strength.

Raymondin gives
a feast,

at which was
jousting and
dancing;

and at a conve-
nient time Melu-
sine declares why
the feast is
given:

it is to name the
fortress.
¹ fol. 37.

The Earl of Poi-
tiers says she
should name it,
because of her
wisdom;

she answers that
they mock her,

therof is, I requyre and pray you that therof ye telle to me your entencion.' 'Certaynly, dere Cosyn,' sayd the Erle of Poytiers, 'none of us alle shal medle with all byfore you. For by reason / sethen ye haue so moche doon as to haue achyeued & made the moste strong and fayre place that ever man sawe in this Countree / ye owe to gyue name to it your owne self after your playsire.' 'Ha / ha, my lord,' said Melusyne, 'sith it ne may none otherwise be, / and that I see your playsire is that I gyue name to it, hit shalbe called after myn owne name, Lusygnen.' 'But my feyth,' said the Erle, 'the name setteth full wel to it for two causes, First bycause ye are called Melusyne of Albanye, whiche name in grek language is as moch for to say / as thing meruayllous or commyng fro grete merueylle, and also this place is bylded and made meruayllously. For byleue not other wyse / but that as longe as the world shal laste ¹shall there be founde & seen somme Wonder & meruayllous thinge.' Thanne they alle ansuerd in this manere: 'My lord, no man in the world might gyue betre name, that bettre shuld sette to it than she hath doo after manere of the place / also aftir the interpretyng made by you of her owne name.' and on this oppynyon & worde were alle of one acorde. Whiche name within few dayes was so publyed, that it was knowen thugh alle the land. and yet at this day it is called soo. They soone aftir toke leue, and Melusyne and Raymondin also gaaf hem dyuers & riche yeftes at theire departyng. And hereafter sheweth thystory how Raymondin and Melusyne / right wysly, mightily and honorably lyued togidre. /

After the feste was ended, Melusyne, that was grete with child, bare her fruyte unto þe tyme that alle wymen owen to be delyured of their birthe. and thanne she was delyuered of a man child, whiche was moche fayre, and wel proporecyoned or shapen in alle

but the Earl replies, that as she has built the best castle in the land, she must name it.

Melusine then names it Lusignan.

Which the Earl says is a good one, because it means 'marvellous' in Greek.

¹ fol. 37 b.

All the company think it a good name.

And it was published abroad, and even unto this day the castle is so called.

The company breaks up, taking with them many rich gifts.

Melusine has a son,

hys membres / except his vysage that was short and
 large / one ey he had rede, and the other blew. he
 was baptysed, & named was Uryan, and wete it that
 4 he had the gretest eerys that euer were seen on eny
 child of hys age / and whan they were ouergrowen,
 they were as grete as the handlyng of a fan. Melusyne
 peune called to hym Raymondin, and to hym she said
 8 in this manere: 'My ryght swete felawe & frend, I
 wold not see thyn owne herytage to be lost / which by
 raison thou oughtest to haue by vertue of ¹patrymonye,
 for Guerrende Penycence and all the marches aboute
 12 apparteynen to the & to' þy brother / goo thanne
 thither, and make the king of Bretons to be sommed
 that he wyl receyue you in your ryght & enherytance /
 shewyng to hym how your fader slew his newew in
 16 deffense & warde of hys owne body. For which
 encheson doubting the sayd kyng / lefte the Countrey,
 and neuer durst retourne / and yf he wyl not receyue
 you to ryght, be not therof abashed. For afterward
 20 he shal be glad, & fayne whan he shal mow doo it.'
 Thenne ansuerd Raymodyn, 'there nys nothing that
 ye commande me, but that I shall doo after my power.
 For wel I considere & see that all your werkes ne
 24 tenden but to wele & worship.' 'Frende,' sayd the lady,
 'it is wel rayson, sith that all your trust ye putte on
 me that I hold to you trouth. It is trouth that your
 fader, by hys predecessors, oweth to haue many grete
 28 thinges in bretayne, the whiche shulle be declared unto
 you whan ye be there. It muste thanne be by you
 understand, that Henry of Leon, your fader, that tyme
 he was in Bretayn for hys worthynes, grete polycye &
 32 valiauntnes, and as he that drad no man that owed hym
 euyl wyH, he was moche loued with the kinge there /
 in so moche that the said kyng made hym hys
 Seneschall & Captayn general ouer alle his men of
 36 werre. This king of Bretons had a newew / but no

fair of body, but
 of short visage,
 and one eye red,
 and the other
 blue.
 He is named
 Urian,

and he had ears
 as large as a fan
 handle.

Melusine tells
 Raymondin of
 his patrimony,

¹ fol. 38.

and bids him go
 to the king of
 Britain, to enter
 into his inherit-
 ance.

He promises to
 go.

Henry of Leon,
 Raymondin's
 father,

was Seneschal
 and Captain-
 General to the
 king of Britain,

who had a
nephew as his
heir.

1 fol. 38 b.

This heir was
made jealous of
Henry,

by mischief-
makers telling
him that Henry
was to take his
place;

and by Josselin
Dupont,

who told him
that letters of
grant had been
made secretly in
favour of Henry.

2 fol. 39.

child begoten of his body he had. Whyche nevew, by the introduction of som, had grete enuye on Henry, your fader. For to¹ hym they said in this manere: "Ha! Ha! right-full heyre of Breytayne. Woo is us to 4 see your grete damage / that is / you to be putte down fro the noble enherytaunce of Bretayne. yf by fawte & lak of courage ye suffre it, what shal men say? pey poyntyng you *with* the fynger shal sey, Loo, 8 yonder is the fole that for his feynted herte hath be putte out of so noble enherytaunce as is the royaume of Bretayne." And whan he understode the said enjurous wordes, he said: "Who is he that dare vsurpe & take 12 fro me my right, I knowe none / but that god wyl haue me to be punysshed. and wel I wot, *pat* the kinge, my lord & oncle, wyl not take any other to be hys heyre than my self." Thenne sayd one of them to 16 hym: "By my feyth, ye are [not] enfourmed in this matere, For the kinge, your oncle, hath made & ordeyned hys heyre, Henry of Leon, and as now letters of graunt ben therof made." Whan the yong man 20 herd these wordes, he as wood wroth ansuerd to them, "wete it for certeyn / that if I knew these wordes to be trew, I shuld putte hastily remedy thereto / in so moche that neuer he shold hold land ne no possession." 24 And thenne ansuerde to hym a knight named Josselyn Dupont: "certaynly it is soo / and for we wold haue none other to be kyng in brytaynne but you, after the decees of *pe* kinge, we warne you therof. For this 28 hath the kyng your oncle doon secretly, for ye shuld not knowe of it. and wete it that alle we that now are here, were present whan that couenaunt was made. aske my felawes yf I say trouth² or not." he demanded 32 of them yf it was so, And they ansuerd "ye."

The yongman thanne said, "Fayre lordes, I thanke you of your good wylle whiche ye shewe to me, goo youre way. For wel I shall kepe Henry therfro." 36

They toke theyre leue, For they rought not for no
 thing that might fall therof, so that they might see
 your faders deth. For enuyous and wroth they were
 4 that the kinge louyd hym so wel, and for nought sette
 they were by hym. knowe ye muste, that on the
 sonday next, in the morning, the kingis newew armed
 hym self / yede in to the wod of Leon Castel, and
 8 there wayted tyl your fader passed by, whiche he
 perceyued gooyng alone to hys dysport about hys
 Castel of Leon / thinkynge on none euyl ne harme /
 and sodaynly cryed on hym, "Now shalt thou dey, false
 12 traytour, that fro me woldest haue and vsurpe myn
 herytage" / and foynyng at hym with hys swerd, wold
 haue ouerthrawn youre fader. but he glanced asyde /
 and so the kyngis newew / for he recountred ayenst
 16 nothing, fell down to the grounde, and the swerd
 scaped fro hys hand that then your fader toke up, the
 sayd newew that sawe hys wepen lost, toke a lytil knyf
 that he had and ranne ayenst hym / but your fader,
 20 with the pomel of the swerd, gaaf to hym suche a
 stroke on the heed / that notwithstanding hys yron
 hat, he broke hys heed so that he fell down deed, but
 1 whan he knew that it was he / he was sory and woe /
 24 retourned home / toke all hys hanoyr and goodes
 menable, and came in to the Shyre that men now call
 Forests, and grette help & comfort he founde in a lady,
 of whyche as now I kepe me styl to spek ony fether.
 28 And after the departyng of her fro hym, he toke by
 maryage the sustir of hym that thoo dayes gouerned
 the erledome of Poytiers, on whyche he gate many
 children of the whyche ye are one. /
 32 'Frend,' said Melusyne, 'now haue I deuysed and
 reherced to you how your fader departed fro
 Bretayn, and lefte hys landes and possessyons voyde,
 without lord, whiche owen to be yours. You thenne
 36 shal goo toward an vncler of yours whiche is called

The Sunday after
 hearing this,
 the king's
 nephew laid in
 wait for Henry,

surprised and
 attacked him,

but was killed
 by your father,
 Henry of Leon,

1 fol. 39 b.

who was sory,
 and left the
 country for the
 Shire of Forests,
 where he
 married.

Melusine tells
 Raymondin to
 go to his uncle,

Alain of Quingant,
and to tell him
the tale,

and get one of
his sons to call
Josselyn before
his king,
and there accuse
him of his deed.

Oliver Dupont
is to fight Ray-
mondin,
but he is to lose,
and he and his
father are to be
strangled,

¹ fol. 40.

and Raymondin
is to get posses-
sion of his land.

Raymondin with
many men goes
to Brut Britain,

where they pay
their way.

The king sends
to learn

Alayn of Quingant / and ye shal make you to be
knownen of hym / and he shal byleue you ynough of
aH that ye shall sey. he hath two wrorthy knightes
to hys sones, the whiche are grete men *with* the kinge, 4
and loueth hem wel. by one of them, your Cousyns,
ye shall make Josselyn Dupont, that as yet is alyue,
to be called byfore the kyng, and there ye shalle accuse
hym of the treson by hym & other machyned / through 8
whiche the kyngis newew, willing to haue destroyed
your fader, was hym self slayn. And ye muste knowe
that on this quareH his sone, called Olyuer Dupont,
shall fyght ayenst you therfore. but ye shall haue the 12
vyctory ouer hym / and bothe fader and sone shal be
condampned to hang and to be strangled. For the
fader shaH¹ vtte and knowe alle the treson / and aH
your grounde and enherytaunce shalbe adiuged to you. 16
And thus shall ye be putte in pacyfyque or peesable
possessyon of it by the Peerys or lordes pryncypal
of the land. Now my ryght swete frend & felawe,
douteles goo surely. For certaynly god shal helpe you 20
in all your juste & true dedes.'

Thanne ansuerd Raymondyn: 'Madame, I shall
endeuoyre me to achyeue & fulfiH your com-
mandement.' Raymondyn toke leue of Melusyne / 24
and acompanyed *with* grete nombre of knightes and
squyers, rode fourth so long on hys way, tyl they
came in Brut Brytayne, wher the people was abasshed
& moche wondred what suche grete nombre of 28
straungers wold haue. But for they payed wel &
largely for that they toke, they were ensured that they
wold & sought but good. For thauncyent knight of
the meyne of Melusyne rewled and gyded them alle 32
in aH honour & goodnes. And for they were not so
vnpurueyed / but that *with* them they had armures,
with them yf nede were to arme them *with* / the
kinge that knew of it, sent to them to wete what they 36

- sought, whiche message demanded of Raymondyn yf hee
 owed euyl wyH to the kyng & to hys royaume. In this
 messagery or embassade were sent two wyse knyghtes,
 4 whiche wysly enquired of Raymondyn as byfore is
 sayd what he sought and what he wold. to whome
 Raymondin full curtoysly ansuered thus. 'Fayre
 lordes, ye shaH telH to my liege that I come but¹ for
 8 good and wele, and for to haue the lawful right in
 hys Court of suche thinges as belongen to me, For the
 whiche I shall presente myn owne personne byfore hys
 mageste, the same requyryng of socour and help.' 'For-
 12 south,' ansuerd the two knyghtes, 'ye shalbe welcome
 whan it shal playse you to do soo. and wete it wel that
 the kyng, our liege, is rightwyse & juste / and nothing
 as fer as right requyreth shal not be by hym denyed
 16 by any wyse. but telle vs yf it lyke you whither ye
 are now bounde.' 'Certaynly,' said Raymondyn, 'I
 wold I were at Quyngant.' Thanne answerd one of
 them, 'ye are wel on the way toward it, and wete that
 20 ye shall fynd there Aleyn of Leon, whiche shaH make
 you good chere. and also ye shaH fynd there two
 knyghtes, men of wele and honour, and hold straye
 this way and ye shal not mys of it, and with your leue
 24 we retourne on our way toward oure liege.'
- W**hanne these two knyghtes were fer fro Ray-
 mondyn and hys felawship an halfmyle, they
 byganne to say one to other: 'By my feyth, yonder
 28 are gentyl and curtoys folkes, worshipfuH & honour-
 able. For certayn they come not into this land with-
 out it is for some grete matere.' and yet sayd, 'lete
 vs go through Quyngan; and to aleyn we shaH anounce
 32 theyre commyng.' they toke the way toward it, and
 rode so fast that soone they came there where they
 found Alayn, to whome they said & announced the
 commyng of Raymondyn² and of his men. Whiche
 36 Alayn wondred moch of it. And thanne the trew

if Raymondin
intends evil to
him.

¹ fol. 40 b.

Raymondin tells
the messengers
that he comes to
obtain his rights,

on which he is
welcomed.

He tells them
he is going to
Quingant.

The messengers
leave,

and on their way
home praise Ray-
mondin and his
men,

and pass by
Quingant,
where they an-
nounce to Alayn
the coming of
Raymondin's
party.

² fol. 41.

Alain sends his
sons to meet and
attend to them.

The ancient
knight gets a
stock of food,

and pitches the
tents,

and pays well for
everything.

The brethren
meet Raymon-
din,

and invite him
to the castle of
Quingant.

¹ fol. 41 b.

The invitation is
accepted,

and they ride on
to the town,
where the
ancient knight
comes to them;

man dide calle to hym hys two sones, of whiche one
was called Alayn & was eldest, and that other yongest
had to name Henry, and he sayd to them in this
manere : ' My good children, lepe on horsbak and ryde 4
on your way to mete yonde straungers / receyue ye
them worshipfully, and see that they be wel and
honestly lodged. For it is told to me, that they be
six houndred horses or theraboutes.' but for nought he 8
spak. For thauncyent knyght of Melusyne was come
before that / and seeying the tounne was to lityl for to
haue herberowed so moche peple in it / had made to
be dressed tentes & pauyllons, and sent aboute in the 12
Countre for suche thinges that necessary were to them,
whiche he payed or mayd to be payd largely, in so moche
that more vytayH was there brought than þey neded of.
And thanne Alayn was aH abasshed whan he herd of 16
that grete hauoyr & appareyH that they made there,
and wyst not what therof he shuld thinke or say.

Now sayth thystory, that so long rode the two
brethern *with* theyre felawship togidre, that 20
they mete *with* Raymondin, & fuH curtoysly wel-
commed hym, and prayed hym by bydding of Alayn,
theyre fader, that he vouchesauf to comme and be
lodged *within* the Fort or Castel of Qyngant with 24
theyre fader, that shuld make hym good chere. ' Fayre
lordes,' said Raymondyn, ' gramercy to your fader, and
thanked be you of your curtoysy that ye thus proffre
to me,¹ But at your requeste I shall goo toward your 28
fader for to rendre to hym reuerence. For glad &
fayn I were to see hym, for the wele & honour that I
have herde say by hym.' Contynuyng suche wordes
& *oper* they rode tyl they came nygh the toun. And 32
thann came there thauncyent knight to Raymondyn,
and sayd : ' Sire, I have made your pauyllon to be
dressed vp, and tentes ynoughe for to lodge you & al
your men, and thanked be god we are wel purueyed.' 36

'Ye haue doo wel,' sayd Raymondin / 'goo and make
 ye mery and chere my men, and loke not for me this
 nyght, For I goo to the Fortresse *with* this two gentyl-
 4 men.' And thenne departed he fro thaunceyent knight /
 toke *with* hym a few of hys moost famyler men, and
 yede to the Fortresse wher the lord of the place aborde
 for hym styll at the gate. Whan Raymondyn thanne
 8 sawe hym as to hys lord and vncl he made reuerence
 & salewed hym mekely. Wherto shulde I vse prolix
 or longe wordes of theyre acoyntaunce. but of the
 faitt or matere whiche I owe to uttre and say, Lete vs
 12 penne say. Whan they had souped / wessen & graces
 said / the lord of the place toke Raymondyn by the
 hand / had hym apart upon a bench / there to deuys
 both togidre, whyle that the other souped / the whiche
 16 þe two bretheren chered & honestly seruyd. The lord
 Alayn thanne wyse and subtyl, and that knewe moche
 of wel and honour, bygan to raissonne *with* Raymondin
 in this manere: 'Sir knight, grete joye I haue of your
 20 commyng hither, For certaynly ye are full lyke to a
 brother of myn whiche was valyaunt, full wyse and
 worthy. he departed ¹fro this land xl. yere goon, for
 a stryf that befell betwix the nevew of the kinge that
 24 reigned at that tyme and hym, and wete it that this
 is the iiijth kyng that haue reyned syn that tyme vnto
 now. And bycause that, to me seemeth ye resemble
 my brother, I am the more glad & fayne to see you.'
 28 'Sire,' said Raymondyn, 'therof I mercy & thanke
 you / and or I departe from you I shall make you certayn
 wherfore and by what inconuenience the stryf that ye
 speke of happed betwixt the nevew of the kyng and
 32 youre brother. For wete it, that for none other cause
 I come hither. but for to shewe publiquely the pure
 trouth & certeyntee thereof.'

36 **W**han Alayn herd these wordes he was moche
 abasshed, and loked on Raymondyn moche

and Raymondin
tells him that he
will stay at the
Castle.

He rides to the
Castle, and
makes reverence
to his uncle.

After supping
his uncle takes
him aside,

and tells how
glad he is to see
him,

¹ fol. 42.

because of his
likeness to his
lost brother.

Raymondin tells
his uncle he
comes about the
strife between
his uncle's
brother and
the late king's
nephew,
which abashes
Alain;

who asks how he knows about the strife.

Raymondin asks if any counsellor of the late king yet lives,

and is told of one

¹ fol. 42 b.

whose son was lately dubbed a knight;

whereupon Raymondin tells their names to be Josselin Dupont the father, and Oliver the son,

and promises to tell Alain more if he will go to court.

Alain grants Raymondin's request.

ententyfly, and after sayd, 'and how shal that mowe be? ye haue not yet the age of xxx yere / by you may not be recounted the faytte, the trouthe of whiche none might neuer knowe. For whan the stroke of the 4 mysdede happed. my brother sodaynly departed / so that I ne none other herd neuer syn whither he was become.' 'Sire, yf ye vouchesaf / telle mee yf there is as now yet lyuyng eny man that had on that tyme 8 auctorite or rewle aboute the kinge that regned whan the stryf befell.' 'By my feyth,' said Alayn, 'one and no more I knowe, that had gouernaunce in Court that same tyme, and he hym self vsurpeth & holdeth my 12 brothers landes as his owne enherytaunce. For the kyng gaaf it to hym, for hys first begoten sone to enjoye it for euermore, the which ¹hys sone is now of late dowbed & made knight.' 'For southe,' sayd thenne 16 Raymondyn, 'wel I wote hys name.' 'And how know ye hyt?' said Alayn. 'By my feyth,' sayd Raymondin, 'he is called Josselin Dupont / and hys sone hys named Olyuyer.' 'Sire knight,' sayd Alayn, 'ye say trouthe. 20 But telle me how ye this may knowe.' 'Sire,' sayd Raymondyn, 'no ferther ye shaH as now know therof. but ye vouchesaf to come & your two sones *with* me, unto the kinges Court / wete it that I shall declare 24 vnto you the quarrell & stryf so clerly that, yf ye euer loued your brother, Henry of Leon, ye shal be thereof fayn & glad.' And thanne Alayn heryng the name of hys brother called, he was more abashed than 28 before. For he wend none other but that hys brother had be long deed. And thenne he thoughte longe in hymself or he ansuerd any word.

Thus, as I haue sayd to you / moche long thought 32 Alayne, and aftir he ansuerd: 'Sire knight, I graunt & acorde me to your requeste / sethen that here I ne may knowe your wyH. For therat I lang moche. I gladly shall hold you company vnto the kynges 36

Court.' 'gramercy,' sayd Raymondyn, 'and wel I shal
 kepe you fro domage.' Wherto shuld I make long
 proces, Alayn manded or sent for a grete foyson of hys
 4 frendes, & made hym redy in grete estate for to goo to
 the court. The kyng that knew theire commyng
 departed fro Storryon, where he laye, & came to
 Nantes. For the two knyghtes whiche the kinge sente
 8 Raymondyn were retourned, & had recounted to the
 kinge the ansuere of Raymondyn, and the maner of his
 estate. And therfore the kinge was come to Nantes
 and manded a part of hys baronye, For he wold not
 12 that Raymondyn shuld fynd hym vnpurueyd of men.
 And amonge other he sent for Josselin Dupont for¹ to
 haue his Counsey^H on the demande that Raymondyn
 wold make. For he was moche sage. What shuld I
 16 saye more? thauncyent knight came before & made
 to be dressed bothe pauillions & tentes & purueyed for
 all thinges necessary. Wherfore the folke of the
 tounne were moche abasshed of the grete appareyl that
 20 he caused to be made / Thenne came Raymondyn,
 Alayn, and bothe his sones, and descended into the
 chief Pauillon, where they made them redy and arayed
 them full richely, for to goo toward the kinge / and
 24 after they departed fro the tentes, acompanyed with
 xl knyghtes wel horsed and honestly arayed that
 wonder was to see / and had his barons with hym. And
 whan they come to the kinges place they descended
 28 fro their horses / and Raymondyn / Alayn and his
 two sones entred within the halle, there the kyng
 was acompanyed with his barons / made to the kinge
 reuerence / after siewyng, salewed the barons & lordes,
 32 the kinge welcommed & receyued pem joyously / called
 to hym Alayn, and said to hym in this manere :

'It gyueth me grete wonder,' said the kinge to Alayn,
 'of this gracyous straunge knight, with whome
 36 ye are so acoynted / What he seketh in this land.' 'Ha /

Alain sends for
 his friends ;

the king comes
 from Nantes and
 sends for some
 of his barony,

¹ fol. 43.
 and for Josselin.

The ancient
 knight prepares
 tents for Ray-
 mondin,

in which Alain
 and his sons
 dress themselves
 to go before the
 king.

They set out with
 forty barons ;

arriving, are
 welcomed by the
 king,

who asks Alain
 about his friend,
 the strange
 gracious knight.

Alain tells the king that he marvels at the knight's sayings,

but believes that all will be made plain soon.

Raymondin learns that Josselyn is present,

fol. 43 b.

with his son Oliver.

Raymondin addresses the king, and praises his justice;

the king asks why?

ha, sire,' ansuerd Alayn. 'I am an houndred tymes more meruaylled of the wordes that he yestirday shewed vnto me / than ye are of his commyng, but soone shuþ be declared al that we lang aftir & desire 4 to knowe.' Thenne Raymondyn, dressyng hys wordes to theldest sone of Alayn, sayd softly in this manere, 'Sire knight, say me of your Curtoysye, yf one called Josselyn Dupont be now in this company or nat.' 8 Thanne sayd Alayn, 'ye—and wold to god so that the kyng shuld not be dyspleased that I had slayn hym. For he enjoyeth ¹therytage that apparteyneth to one our oncle which we shuld haue.' And after these wordes 12 Alayn sayd to Raymondin / 'it is yond auncient knight that sitteth by the kinge. And wete it for certayn that he is replenysshed with all falshed & malyce / and yonder is his son Olyuyer that weyeth not an 16 owunce lasse in aþ wykkednes & euyþ.' 'By my feyth, Sire knight,' sayd Raymondin / 'ye soone shal be auenged of hym yf god wyl.' And leuyng theire talkyng, Raymondin hadd hymself fourth before the 20 kinge, to whom he said in this manere: 'ha, high sire & mighty kinge, It is wel trouth that common renoumee ranneth thrughe alle landes. that your Court is so noble & so raysonnable that it may be called fountayne 24 of Justice & raison / and that none ne commeth to your Court but that ye shew & gyue to hym good Justice and raysonnable after the good right that he hath.' 'By my feyth, sire knight,' said the kinge / 28 'it is trouth. but wherfore say you so, fayn I wold wete it.' 'Forsouthe, sire,' said Raymondin, 'for to vttre & shew it vnto you / I am come hither / & for none other cause. but, Sire, yf it plaise you / or I telle it you / 32 ye shaþ promyse me that ye shaþ susteyne me ayenst alle personnes after right & raison. For that / that I shal say is in a part your wele prouffyt & honour. For no kinge acompanyed of a traytour is not wel 36

lodged no sure of his personne.' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'ye say trouth / say on hardily. For I swere to you by aH that I hold of god, that I shal doo to you
 4 alle Justice & rayson after the good right that ye shaH haue / and that shal I doo doubteles / yf it were ayenst my brother.' 'Sire,' said Raymondin, 'an houndred thousand thankes & mercyes / ye say as a valyaunt kyng
 8 & ¹trew man. For first were kynges stablysshed for to rendre or yeld to euerbody juste jugement in alle thinges.'

and promises to do justice to Raymondin,

for which Raymondin thanks him.

¹ fol. 44.

'Noble mighty kinge,' said Raymondin / 'it is wel
 12 **T**routh that one, your predecessour kyng, reyned somtyme moche mightily & valyauntly that was in the tyme of Josselin Dupont and of Alayn, whiche bothe are here now present before your majeste / this
 16 kyng whiche I spek of, had a moche fayre & noble yong man to his newew. that tyme was in this Countre a baron whiche was called Henry of Leon, the whiche was brother to Alayn here present.' 'By my feyth, sire,'
 20 said thanne Josselyn, 'he saith trouth. and ouermore the same Henry of Leon slew the newew of your predecessour by treson / flected out of this land, and neuer syn came hither ayen. And then the kinge seased
 24 his landes and possessyons, and anoone after gaf them to me.' The kinge thanne ansuered, 'we haue herd ynoughe of this matere / but suffre this knight fynyshe his raison which he hath bygonne.'

Raymondin speaks to the king of Josselin, Alain,

and of Henry of Leon;

whereupon Josselin says that Henry slew the nephew of the king's predecessor, and fled the land;

but the king orders him to let Raymondin finish his story.

28 **T**O this ansuerd Raymondyn, 'Sire kinge, he hath wel raison to speke of hit, For ferthermore he shal be constrayned to say / how be it that as now he hath said amys & not trouth of that he saith that
 32 Henry of leon slew the kinges newew in treson, For he knew wel why & wherfore it was, and there nys no man lyuyng that can say the trouth of it but he alone, For they that were of his acorde and conspiracion ben
 36 al deed. Therefore sire kyng, vouchesaf to command

Raymondin denies what Josselin said,

but asserts that Josselin alone knows the truth of the matter,

and asks the king to bid Josselin tell all.

¹ fol. 44 b.

This abashes Josselin, who asks if Raymondin has come to dishonour him.

Raymondin tells the king of the treachery of Josselin toward his father, Henry of Leon.

How Josselin told the king's nephew that he was disinherited

because of Henry,

² fol. 45.

hym telle trouth al on hye, that eueryone here may
¹ here it.' And whan Josselin vnderstode that word,
 he wexed sore abasshed; neuertheles, he answered in
 this manere: 'Sire knight, are you come into this 4
 land forto vndertake eny thinge in dyshonour of me?'
 And Raymondin answered appertly: 'Fals traytour, he
 fourueyeth nat that saith the playn trouth.' Thanne
 he said agayn to the kynge: 'Sire, it is wel trouth that 8
 Henry of Leon was a moche valiaunt & hardy knight,
 curteys and wel condicyoned, & moche was beloved
 bothe of the kinge and of his newew / and vsed the
 kynge moche of his counseil, For he was he on whom 12
 he trusted most. It haped that dyuerse traytours beyng
 that time about the kinge, of which Josselin here
 present was one, as chef causer of the mysdede that
 tyme perpetred or doon / came to said kingis newew, 16
 & to hym they said in this manere: "Gentyl Squyer,
 alle we that are here byfore your presence ben sory &
 woo of your grete dommage and shamfuH losse whan
 ye shall be dysherytred of so noble a land as is the 20
 royame of Brytayne" / and he answered to them / "how
 shuld that mowe be doo? the kynge hath none heyre
 but my self." "On my god," said thanne yond Josselin
 to hym, "Wete it pat he hath made & stablissed his 24
 heyre, Henry of Leon, and I byleue that this Henry
 hath enchaunted hym and the barons of the land also,
 For therof ben lettres passed & sealled with their
 sealles annexed to the kingis grete seall / and al this 28
 they aH togider affermed on their feyth for trouth."
 "By my feith," said the squyer thanne / "here is grete
 inconuenyence yf that be trew that ye telle me." ² And
 thanne Josselin with his complices alle with an acorde 32
 sware yet ayen to hym that it was trouth. Wherefore
 the said yonge squyer was sory and woo. Josselin
 thenne seeying that he byleued their falsed to be
 certayn, said yet agayn to the squyer in this manere: 36

- “Yf in you lyeth so moch hardynes that ye dare vnder-
take to auenge the wrong doon to you by Henry of
Leon, We alle shal helpe you therto.” And the squyer
4 ansuerd, “my courage and wylle ben agreed to do
soo.” Thenne said Josselin, “goo thanne & arme you
in a manner vnknowen, and we shaH abyde you with
out the tounne, and shaH ledd you in to suche a place
8 where ye shal auenge you at your ease.” O noble &
mighty kinge, sethen I fynde now myself in Court of
right & iustice / and that I may see myn enemye, I
wyl no more be hyd, but lete euery man knowe that
12 I am the sone of Henry of Leon.’ Thenne they were
alle abasshed of that word, but they held them styl /
and Raymondyn spake fourth in this manere. /
- ‘Sire kinge, it is trouthe that my fader had take leue
16 of the kinge, and was goon in to hys Countrey /
and was wonnt euery mornynge for to goo in a wode
nygh by his fortesse to dysporte hym, sayeng hys
matyns alone. And this fals traytour Josselin, with his
20 complices, ledd the said kingis nevew and embusshed
them there. My fader, that thoughte no harme, came
that same ooure / and whan Josselin perceyued hym
commyng he said to the squyer / “now it is tyme to
24 auenge you, For he is without eny armure or wepen /
he may not escape you / and yf we see that ye nede of
help¹ we shall helpe you.” The squyer, thanne esprysed
with euyl desire, departed fro them and ranne toward
28 my fader and escryed hym to deth / and as he wold
haue thrested the swerd thugh my faders body. my
fader glanced asyde / and as god wold he that fyersly
ranne felH to the ground. My fader penne toke the
32 swerde that scaped fro the squyers hand, and with the
pomel of it smote hym under the eere by suche
strengthe that the squyer felH doun ded. And thenne
whan my fader saw hym lyeng on the ground deed he
36 dyscouered his face, and anone he knew hym, wherfore

and urged him
to auenge him-
self,

and promised to
aid him.

Raymondin
declares that he
is the son of
Henry, which
abashes them all.

He continues the
story of Josse-
lin's treachery :

how an ambush
was laid,

¹ fol. 45 b.

and how the
king's nephew
tried to slay his
father,

but was slain
himself.

How Henry fled
from the land on
recognizing his
enemy, fearing
the king's ire;

which pleased
Josselin,

who thought he
would then be
able to rule the
king.

Raymondin
challenges Jos-
selin,

1 fol. 46.

his son Oliver,
and one of his
friends;

but no one ac-
cepts the
challenge.

Alain, under-
standing now
who Raymondin
is,

embraces him.

he made grete sorow and was sory and woo / and after
the dede & euyhap, doubtyng the furour & yre of the
king, yede there hys hauoir was / toke it and fledd
with aH from þis land. And thanne Josselin the fals 4
traytour sayd to hys complices and felawes: "Now are
we come to our entencion & wylle. For the kinges
nevew is deed, and yf Henry be take he may not scape
fro deth. Now shal we gouerne and doo with the king 8
that we lyst after our guyse / lete vs not meve us tyl
he be ferre from vs / and after we shal take the corps
& putte it in a byere that we shal make with braunches
& leues, and so we shal bere it toward the king, to 12
whom we shal say that Henry of Leon slew hym in
treson." Ha / ha, noble king, aH euen, so as I say, dide
that yonder fals traytour / and yf he say nay / here I
presente & cast my gage of bataill agenst hym. And 16
bycause, sire kinge, that I wil lete euery man knowe
that I doo vndertake þis not for auarice / but for to
kepe my right and enherytaunce / and for to declare,
manfeste, and ¹shewe the vylonny and euyt treson 20
that this fals traytour Josselin and hys complices dyde
to Henry of Leon, my fader, for to haue hym out of
conceytte, and to be putte fro the kingis Court, I
besech your highnes that he may take hys sone Olyuer 24
and another yet of his frendes / and I shal fight ayenst
them thre without fawte, prouyded alwayes the noble
and juste jugement of your Court / one after another' /
and sayeng these wordes he kyst his gage. but there 28
was none that spake or ansuerd ony word. And whan
Alayn and his two sones vnderstode alle that Raymon-
dyn had said / what for joye to see theire faders nevew
and Cousyn to them / and what for pyte to hero telle 32
the trayson so machyned ayenst theyre faders brother
& vncle to them / ranne to kysse and embrased
Raymondyn.

Whan the king of the Bretons sawe that no body
 ansuerd to these wordes so proferid in hys
 presence / sayd al on high that euery one there might
 4 here hym, 'how now, Josselin, are ye deaf? / I now per-
 ceýue wel & see that the prouerbe that is said commonly
 is trew / that is / "that olde synne reneweth shame,"
 For this knight straunger bringeth you tylynges,
 8 moche straunge and a wonder medecyne fro ferre land /
 aduyse you of that ye shal ansuere.' Thanne ansuerd
 Josselyn to the kyng: 'Sire kinge, I am not he þat
 from hens fourth oweth to ansuere such thinges. And
 12 also wel I byleue that he saith it but in jape & sport.'
 Thanne ansuerd Raymondin, 'the mocke fals¹ traytour
 shal tourne on the. I now requyre you, noble king,
 that this matere may be discuted / lete him haue as
 16 raison requyreth for his treson / and I to be punysshed
 yf in eny poynt forsayd [I] haue myssaid or mesprysed.'
 Thenne said the kinge, 'doubt not of it, For so shal
 I doo. Josselyn,' said the kinge, 'ye muste ansuere to
 20 this quarell & acusacion.' Whan thenne his sone
 Olynyer herd what the kyng said to his fader / he
 ansuerd to his wordes: 'Sire, that knight is so sore
 adrad that he trembleth for fere / he weneth as me
 24 semeth to take the cranes fliþing, by my feith he
 shall wel fayll & mysse of that he hath said, For my
 fader is a true man in all his dedes / and I vouchesauf
 & graunt the bataill as he hath ordonned / and there
 28 is my gage / he shal be wel happy yf he dyscomfyte
 me and another of my lynage suche as I shall chese. /'

Whan the king herd that word he was moche
 wroth, & ansuerd in this manere / 'that shall
 32 nat happe in my Court as long as I shall lyue þat one
 knight alone shal fyght ayenst two for oo maner
 quarell / and grete shame is to you / only to haue
 thought it in your herte / and wete it / that by
 36 semblaunt ye shew nat your fader to haue good quarell.

The king orders
Josselin to de-
fend himself,

who says that
he believes that
Raymondin is
joking.

¹ fol. 46 b.

Raymondin
denies it,
and asks the
king to bring
the matter to
an issue.

In answer to
the king, Josse-
lin's son Oliver
agrees to fight
Raymondin,
helped by
another of his
lineage.

The king is
wroth at the
proposal to pair
two knights
against one,

and gives Ray-
mondin choice
of a day of
battle;

Raymondin
desires to fight
now,

¹ fol. 47.

and is en-
couraged by
Alain and his
sons.

The king, know-
ing the might of
the parties,

makes arrange-
ments to prevent
disorder,

and declares the
quarrel to be one
of life and death
on both sides.

And fro this ooure fourthon I gyue you journey of
batayH at the requeste of the knight straunger on suche
day that he shaH assigne.' 'By my feyth,' said thenne
Raymondin, 'I am euen now redy therto, for myn 4
armures are not ferre. and thanked be your highnesse
an hondred tymes of your lawfuH graunt.' There had
ye herd grete rumoure made on aH sydes, for aH said,
'yonder is the moste valyaunt knight that euer we sawe 8
requyryng his ryght.' but what so euer was woofull
therof, Alayn of Quyngant & his two sones were fayn
& glad that so shuld be doo / & said to Raymondin,
'Fayre Cousin, be not ¹abasshed of nothing in the 12
world. take boldly the bataiH for you, and for us
both ayenst that same fals traytour / For yf god wil
we shaH soone haue worship therof.' 'Fayre lordes,'
said Raymondin, 'take who wil bataiH for hymself. 16
For the same I shal haue for my part, and doubte you
not but that I shal bring it to a good & worshipful
ende god before with the good right that I haue
therto.' 20

Whilles the rumour was among the folk, the
kinge, moche wyse & subtyl / for that the
parties were of grete & high parentage & lynee /
doubtyng of some grete inconuenience that might happe 24
among them / commanded sodaynly the gates to be
shette that none might entre ne yssue / & ordonned
men armed to kepe euery man therfro. and aftir callid
his ConseiH apart / shewed to them and reherced aH 28
the quareH. and they counseilled hym of that was
nedefuH to be doo. Thanne retourned the kinge vnto
the halle, where he made to be commanded by hym,
that none there, on payne of deth, should be so hardy 32
to spek any word but þat he were commanded. The
kinge thenne spak & said, 'now, fayre lordes, ye muste
vnderstand how this quareH is now not litel, for it is
for lyf or grete dyshonour for euermore to the one 36

partye. and wete it for certayn that I ne owe ne also
 wyl not refuse ryght to be doo in my Court. Olyuier,
 said the king, 'wil you deffende your fader of this
 4 treson?' 'Sire,' said he / 'ye certaynly,' / . and thenne
 the king ansuerd / 'the lystes ben alredy dressed, and
 therefore I ordeyne the bataiH to be to morow exploited.
 And wete it / that yf ye be dyscomfited & ouercome,
 8 bothe your fader and ye shul be hanged. and not lesse
 shal haue your partye aduerse, yf the ¹ cas myshappeth
 to hym. Make you thanne redy toward / and gyue in
 oure hand hostages & pledges / and first your fader
 12 shaH abyde.' and thenne the king made Josselin to be
 ledde in to pryson in a stronge toure. and thanne said
 the king to Raymondin, 'Sire knight, whome shul yo
 gyue vs for hostage?' Alayn and his two sones came
 16 thanne fourth & said, 'sire, we pledge hym.' 'By my
 feyth,' said the king, 'it suffyseth vs wel. and therefore
 ye shaH not hold pryson. For wel I wote that the
 knight had not emprysed the bataiH without he wold
 20 perfourme it.' And thus departed bothe parties fro the
 presence of the kinge. and Raymondyn *with* hys folk,
 accompanyed of hys vncler & Cousins, yede toward his
 pauillons, and aboute euen tyme he went in to the
 24 chyrch CathedraH, and there he watched, making hys
 prayers to god *with* grete deuocyon / And Olyuer also
 came to hys hous *with* grete foyson of them of hys
 lynee, and made his hors & harneys redy. On the
 28 morowe they herd masse, and after armed them / and
 the king and the Barons of the land were sette on the
 scafoldes rounde aboute the listes / and gardes to the
 champ or feld were ordeyned, and the Chayers sette.
 32 And about the ooure of prymer came Raymondin *with*
 fayre felawship, armed moche goodly & richely / the
 spere on the rest, and on hym hys cote of armes,
 browded *with* syluer & azure / and entred the lystes
 36 vpon a grete destrier wel harneysed vnto the nayle of

Oliver under-
takes to fight.

The king ap-
points next day
for the battle,

and tells that
the loser shall be
hanged.

¹ fol. 47 b.

Pledges are
taken from the
combatants,

and both parties
leave the king.

The combatants
pray and hear
mass.

On the morrow
the lists are
guarded,

and at noon Ray-
mondin appears
richly armed and
well mounted,
with his com-
panions, and
enters the lists;

and makes reverence to the king and barons;

¹ fol. 48.

dismounts and waits for his adversary,

who at last appears nobly armed with his father.

Raymondin swears the justice of his cause on the Gospels,

and likewise Josselin and Oliver, but very timorously.

A herald proclaims that no signs are to be made:

the lists clear.

A herald shouts 'Do your duty' to the combatants.

² Fol. 48 b.

the foot / as for gage of bataille / and there he made reuerence & salewed the king & the Barons. 'By my feith,' said eueryone / 'it is long syn we sawe so fayre man of armes ne of so fayr contenance / he hath not 4 beste werke that hath such¹ a man in hand to jouste or fyght with hym.' Thenne descended Raymondin fro the destrer as appertly as he had be vnarmed, and sette hym in the chayer abydyng after his aduersary. 8 It is trouth that long after that came Olyuer, right wel & nobly armed, and sett on a moche ryche destrier / and wel he semed man of grete fayttes / and so was he / & before hym came Josselin, his fader, on 12 a palfray, and made reuerence to the kinge & hys barons. Moche semed Josselin abasshed as thanne / For that euery man said he had euyl cause. What shuld I make long tale / the holy Euangiles were there 16 brought, wheron Raymondin swore that Josselyn had euyl cause, and that he had doon the treson as he had byfore declared / and after he kneled & kyssed the book, and sette hym self ayen on the chayere. And 20 after Josselin sware, but he stakered, and so timorous he was that he coude not touche the boke / and also Olyuer, which knew wel the trouth of all, swore full feyntly / and that doon he sette hym self agayn in his 24 chayere. and fourthwith a herault cryded with an high voyce on the kingis byhalfe / that none, on peyne of deth, shuld be so hardy to speke any worde ne to make eny signe or token that eny of the Champyons might 28 vnderstand or perceyue. And thenne eueryman voyded the place, saaf only they that were stablissed to the garde of the champ & Josselin. And anoone Raymondyn lepte on horsbak moch appertly and toke hys 32 spere, and on the other syde Olyuer had hys destrier redy, and lepte on lightly, and toke hys spere with sharp yron / and thenne cryded a herault thryes. 'lete ranne your horses & ² doo your deuoyre.'

Here saith the veray hystory, that whan the cry
 was made Raymondin had leyd the ende of
 hys spere to the grounde alonge the hors nek, and
 4 thryes he made the signe of the crosse. and while he
 dede so hys enemy ranne at hym, and *with* hys spere
 hytte Raymondin on the brest or he was ware of hit
 moche rudely, For dooyng so he putte to it alle his
 8 strengthe & myght, but Raymondin bowed neuer
 therfore / and the spere of Olyuer brak in to pieces,
 and *with* that strok the speere of Raymondyn fell to
 the ground. 'Ha, traytour,' said then Raymondyn /
 12 'thou folowest wel the right euyl lynce of whiche thou
 yssued. but that may not auaylle the.' and toke the
 sterope that hynged at sadelbowe, that had thre poyntes
 wel assured, eche of them seuen ench long. and at
 16 retourne that Olyuer supposed to haue doo, Raymon-
 dyn smote hym on the helmet with the sterop that oo
 poynte of it entred & perced the helmet so that the
 nayl of the vmbrel brake, and the vysere hing at oo
 20 syde / and the visage of Olyuyer abode aH dyscouered,
 wherfore he was moche agast and abasshed. Neuerthe-
 les he drew out hys swerde & wel shewed contenaunce
 of a knight that lytil redoubteth hys enemye. and so
 24 they faught long space togidre and gaaf eche other
 grete strokes / and there might men see grete appertyse
 of armes. At last Raymondin alighted on foot and
 toke vp hys spere that laye at ground & came *with*
 28 grete paas toward his foo mortall, whiche the best wyse
 that he coude dystourned fro Raymondin that he made
 to goo after hym alonge the Champ. For he dide *with*
 hys hors what he wold,¹ and by that manere dooyng
 32 he supposed to haue made Raymondyn very that nedes
 he muste reste hym, and so the day shuld be soone
 passed. But Raymondin whiche that perceyued, yede &
 appertly to[ke]² hys hors that he ledde *with* one hand, &

Raymondin, his
 spear couched,

making the sign
 of the cross, is
 struck fiercely on
 the breast by
 Oliver's spear;

but he does not
 bow;
 Oliver's spear
 shivers, and
 Raymondin's
 falls.

Upon which
 Raymondin
 breaks Oliver's
 helmet with his
 stirrup;

his visor falling
 discovers his
 face.

They continue
 to fight fiercely
 with swords

until Raymondin
 alights from his
 horse and takes
 his spear, and
 goes to attack his
 foe,
 who runs away
 from him.

¹ fol. 49.

Raymondin then,
 leading his horse

² Fr. *prinst*.

and carrying his
spear,
approaches
Oliver,

who suddenly
spurs his horse
against Ray-
mondin,

but has it
stunned by a
blow from the
stirrup,

and is dis-
mounted by a
spear stroke,
and wounded and
beaten ;

and held by the
throat, Raymon-
din kneeling on
him.

After a time
Raymondin asks
him to yield, or
die.

* fol. 49 b.

He replies he
would prefer to
die by Raymon-
din's hand ;

who pities him,
and asks if he
knew of his
father's treason.

He says he did
not ;

toke the spere at other hand / and softly one pas after
another came towarde hys enemye. And whan Olyuyer
sawe hym come, perceyuying his manere he wist
not how ne in what manere Raymondyn wold assay^H 4
hym / and sodaynly spored his horse, wenyng to haue
come & hurted Raymondyn as he had doon byfore.
but Raymondin kyst at hym yet ayen the sterop by
grete anger, and hitte Olyuyer hors at foreheed with 8
suche strength that the chaunfreyn entred deep within
the hors heed, so that it bowed the legges behind to
therthe. Olyuyer thanne sporid his destrier, but as
the hors redressed hym, Raymondyn with hys spere 12
smote Olyuyer at right syde of hym, so that he ouer-
threw hym to therthe, and so wonderly a strok he gaf
hym betwix the may^H panser & the Corset that the
spere heed entred deep in hys body / and ar he might 16
be delyuered Raymondyn cast on hym so many strokes
that he might no more meve hym self, and by force
plucked the helmet fro the heed of hym, and putte hys
knee on his naue^H, and the hand senester at hys nek, 20
and held hym in suche destresse that by no manere
waye he might not meue hym.

Thystory telleth in this partye that Raymondin
held Olyuyer as aboue is said long espace of 24
tyme, and whan he sawe that he had the best ouer
hym he drew a knife¹ that heng² at his right side and
said to hym, 'False traytour, yeld thyself vaynquyssed,
or ellis thou art but deed.' 'By my feith,' said Olyuyer, 28
'I have leuer dye by the hand of suche a valyaunt
knight as ye be than of another.' Raymondyn thanne
toke grete pite on hym and demanded of hym, vpon
parel of the sowle of hym / yf he nothing knew of 32
the treson that Josselin his fader had doon / and he
ansuerd nay, and he was not yet borne *pat* tyme that
this treson happed. and how be it that it pleased to

¹ Knight in MS. Fr. version *constel*.

god that Fortune were as thenne contrary to hym,
 notwithstanding yet he held his fader for a trew man /
 lawful and not gilty of that same dede. And thanne
 4 whan Raymondyn, that wel wyst the contrary, herd
 hym, he was sorowful & woo, and bete hym so moche
 on the temples *with* hys fust armed with his gantlet
 that he made hym so astonyed that he ne saw ne herd
 8 ne wyst what he dide to hym / And thanne stode
 vp Raymondin and toke hym by the feet and drew
 hym vnto the lystes, And syn he putte hym *without*
 fourth / and retourned & came before the scaffold of
 12 the kinge, the visere lyfte on hys, & said : 'Sire, haue
 I doo my deuoir, For yf I haue eny thing more to doo
 I am redy to it to the regarde of your Court &
 ordynaunce?' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'sire knight,
 16 ye haue quytte your self full wel.' And the king
 penne commanded that Josselin and his sone shuld be
 bothe hanged, and they to whom the king comanded
 this execucion to be doo wente soone, & *without* delay
 20 they seased Josselin, who anoone cryed to the king
 piteously for mercy. And pen the king yede and said
 to hym that he shulde ¹telle the trouthe of the quarell,
 and peradventure he night haue grace.

24 **T**henne said Josselin, 'Sire, to hyd the trouth it
 auaylleth not / haue pite on me yf it please you,
 For certaynly it was doon in the manere & fourme as
 the knight hat purposed & said / and wete it pat my
 28 sone Olyuyer was not yet borne.' 'By my feith, Josselin,
 said the kinge, 'here is grete falshed, and yf it ne had
 be goddis playsire that ye shuld be therof punysshed,
 he had not lefte you lyue so long in this world. and
 32 as to my part, ye shall not fayth of the punycyon.'
 Thanne he said all on high to them that were ordeyned,
 that anoone bothe fader & sone shuld be hanged. And
 thenne came fourth Raymondin & said to the king :
 36 'Sire, I thanke you as I may of the good justice that ye

but Raymondin,
 knowing he lied,
 beats him on the
 temples.

Then Raymondin
 asked the king if
 he had done his
 duty;

who said he had
 well,

and commanded
 Josselin and his
 son to be put to
 death.

¹ fol. 50.

Josselin
 confesses his
 treachery.

Raymondin
pleads for Oli-
ver's life, as he
is brave and
valiant,

and free from
the guilt of the
treason;

and for Josselin's,
because he is so
old, desiring only
that he should
make restitution
of the estate,

the money to be
used to found a
priory.

¹ fol. 50 b.

But the king
orders them to
be hanged,
and restores
Raymondin his
estates, and gives
him all Josselin's
land,
for which Ray-
mondin does
homage.

Raymondin is
feasted by the
king of Brut
Britain,

haue doon to me / but, sire, I moued with pite requyre
you of your mysericorde to be shewed on Olyuyer. For
see yng his valyauntise & worthynes, also consider yng
that he is not gilty of the treson it were grete dompage 4
of hys deth. For yet shall he mow doo wel. And as to
the fader, for this that I see hym olde & feble / of my
part, sire king, yf ye vouchesauf to graunt hym grace
therof I shuld be fayn & glad, soo that I haue myn 8
herytage to my behouf, and that the prouffytes &
fruytes that he hath leuyed & receyued of it, syn he
had therytage in hys handes, be by extimacion reualued
in money. that same payment to be by you, sire king, 12
ordeyned to edefye or bigge a pryorye, & monkes
therin to be rented with reuenues & possessyons after
the quantyte of the said money to be regarde of you
and of your Counsell. the said monkes to pray for the 16
sowle of the kinges newew perpetuelly.' The kinge
thanne said to his barons, 'Fayr¹ Sires, here ye may
see the free courage of a knight that prayeth to me to
respyte hys enemys fro deth. but by the feyth that I 20
owe to god Josselin nor his sone shal neuer doo treson
ne cause no man to goo out of my land as exiled.' and
fourthwith he made them to be hanged, and rendred to
Raymondin his enherytaunce and al Josselyn's land 24
with aH. Wherof Raymondin thanked hym moche
humbly and made to hym his homage. After byganne
the feste to be moche grete, and held the king grete &
noble Court open to al men, & was moche glad of that 28
he had recouered & goten so noble a knight in his
land. but for nought he made joye, For soone ynoughe
he shall see that Raymondyn had no grete wylle to
abyde and dwelle in Bretayne, for moch longed to hym 32
the sight of Melusyne.

Now in this parte telleth thystorye that Raymondyn
was moche wel festyed of the king of the brut
Bretayne that held grete & honourable Court for loue 36

of Raymondin, and the barons of Bretayne made grete
 joye for his commyng, and specyally his vncle Alayn
 and hys two children, & they of his lynage. And
 4 thanne came Raymondin to the king and said to
 hym thus: 'Sire king, I pray you & beseche that ye
 vouchsaf to graunte & acorde that I gyue the Baronye
 of Leon. that was to Henry my fader, on whos sowle
 8 god haue mercy, to Henry my Cousyn / and so the
 land shal bere the name of his ryghtfuH lord / and
 you the name of your liege man, For he is of the
 right lynce.' 'By my feyth,' sayd þe kinge, 'sire, sith
 12 it playseth you thus wel it pleseth vs so to be.' Thenne
 the kyng called Henry, For he loued hym wel and said
 to hym: 'Henry, receyue the name of the baronye of
 Leon, which your Cousyn gyue you, and make homage
 16 to me therof' / and so he dide · and thanked moche the
 king & Raymondyn.¹ And this doon Raymondin
 called to hym Alayn his Cousyn: 'I gyue you the
 land that the king hath gyuen me that late was
 20 longyng to Josselin Dupont, and make your homage to
 the king': / and he thanked hym moche humbly · and
 knelyng made hys homage to the kinge that moche
 joyfully receyued hym to it. But the Barons of the
 24 land byganne thanne to make rumour among them and
 said: 'By my feyth, this knight is not come into this
 lande for couetyse ne auarice. But only he hath putte
 his lyf in grete auenture & parel for to conquere his
 28 heritage. Whan so soone he demysed hymself therof.
 it muste wel be that grete ryches he hath some where' /
 Thanne came thauncyent knight to Raymondin. and
 whan Raymondin sawe hym he said to hym that he
 32 shuld delyuere hym self of that his lady had com-
 manded hym / and he ansuerd, 'my lord, therefore
 I am come toward you.' and thanne he presented
 fro hys lady to the kyng a grete Coupe of gold sette
 36 with many precyous stone. and after gaf to all the

and made wel-
 come by the
 barons.

Raymondin asks
 the king to allow
 him to give his
 barony to his
 cousin Henry,

which request is
 granted.

The barony is
 given, and Henry
 does homage for
 it.

¹ fol. 51.

Raymondin
 gives the con-
 fiscated lands
 of Josselin to
 Alain, who does
 homage to the
 king for them.

The barons of
 Britain wonder
 at the riches of
 Raymondin, who
 gives away the
 land just won.

The ancient
 knight brings
 gifts from Melu-
 sine for the king
 and the barons,

Barons in the forsaide name many ryche jewelles. Wherof aH were meruaylled of whens might come such a riches / and aH they said that Raymondin muste be moche riche & mighty in some other Coun- 4 tree. Wherefore the feest was greter than afore. And Alayn and his two sones demened suche joye that none shuld mow think it. but yet duryng theire joye was on other syde made grete sorow of the parents 8 & frendes of Josselin that had not forgeten þe deth of hym / as hereafter ye shal here reherce. ¹And here resteth thystorye to speke of this feste & folowyng the matere saith how Melusyne gouerned her self while 12 that Raymodyn was in his vyage.

who reioice
much, and keep
up the feast;

but all the time
much sorrow
prevails among
Josselin's
friends.

¹ fol. 51 b.

In Raymondin's
absence Melu-
sine builds Lu-
signan, and walls
it;

also builds a
high watch
tower, with walls
twenty feet
thick.

Thystory telleth vs that whiles Raymodyn was in bretayne, Melusyne made to be byld up the tounne of Lusynen, and walled it with strong walles & 16 toures one nygh another,² and deep diches dide doo make about it. A toure she dide to be made betwixt the Fortresse & the tounne walled with a waH of xx foot thikk. This toure was ouer hye / and ordeyned 20 men that shuld be styl both day & nyght, at leste one vpon the vpermost batelments of it with a trompe in his hand, that shuld blow at euery tyme he perceyued & sawe men othre on foot or on horsbak togidre aboute 24 the nombre of xxⁱⁱ commyng toward the said tounne or Castel / and that same toure she called the tromped toure. Now retourneth thistory to spek of the kyng & of Raymondin, and of the feest & chere that euery 28 one made to Raymondin.

The feast con-
tinued at Nantes,

IN this partye reherceth thystorye that mochi was the feest grete at Nantes and the king honoured moche Raymondin, and there jousted gentilmen one 32 ayenst other byfore the ladyes & gentyl wemen wher Raymondin bare hym fuH valiauntly & goodly that euery man spak wele of hym, sayeng that he was

² + Fr. *pour deffendre a couvert tous les archiers.*

worthy to be lord of a grete land. And moche were they abashed of the grete riches that they sawe euery day about Raymondin / but who someuer made feest
 4 for Raymondyn, the Chastelayn of Aruah, that was neuw to Josselin Dupont, made all the contrary. For he sodaynly sent to alle the parentes frendes and affyns of Josselin, letyng ¹them to knowe how it was
 8 of theire frend Josselyn, and that they shuld be at a certayn day that he assigned to them at a certayn retrette that was within the forest of Guerrende that was of his owne. And whan they vnderstode the
 12 deth of Josselin þey were sorowfull & woo, and assembled them togider about ii C men of armes, and pryuely yede & came to the said retrette, where the said Chastelayn had manded them to come. And thanne
 16 the Chastelayn in the moost secrete wyse that he coude, departed fro the kinges court without leue of the king ne of the Barons / but there he lefte thre squyers of his for to loke & aspye whiche waye Raymondin shuld
 20 take, and that they shuld anounce it to hym to the retrette beforesaid. So long rode the Castelleyn that he cam to the retrette where he found them of his lynage, and he reherced to þem all the manere of
 24 thaduenture / and how Josselin & his sone were hanged / and asked of them what they thoughte & proposed to doo / yf they shuld auenge them on Raymondin that was causer of it / and to them grete
 28 blame & shame for euermore was bycause of hym imputed / or elles to lete hym goo free. Thenne ansuered for al the lynage an vnwyse & hasty knight that was sone to the Cousyn of Josselin. 'cousyn
 32 castellayne, we wol that ye wete & knowe that thus shal nat this oultrageous werk be lefte. For we alle of one accorde & wyll wil putte hym to deth that to vs hath doo suche vitupere & dyshonour.' 'By
 36 my feith,' said thanne the Castellayne, 'I hold & repute

while Josselin's nephew advised his kindred of their loss,

¹ fol. 52.

and summoned them to a retreat in the forest of Guerrende.

They assemble two hundred strong,

and are informed of the mishap by Josselin's nephew,

and are asked if they intend to avenge themselves.

They declare they will put Raymondin to death;

fol. 52 b.

upon which the
nephew promises
to assist them,

by spying which
way Raymondin
leaves the
country.

The feast con-
tinued fifteen
days longer ;

then Raymondin
took leave,

and accompanied
with Alain rode
to Leon,

where the
ancient knight
had already pre-
pared for them.

1 fol. 53.

the wele & honour wel employed that Josselin dide ¹ to you in tyme passed. And anoone I shall putte you in the way and place where we shal wel acomplisshe our wylle on hym that suche shame hath doon to vs. For 4 by what someuer side he yssueth out of Bretayne he may not scape fro vs. For therto we haue good wayters, & espyes that soone shafl announce his way to vs whan tyme shalbe.' And they ansuerd alle with 8 an voys /—'Blessed be you. and wete it that whatsomeuer fafl therof / this enterpryse shalbe brought to an end, and we shal slee that false knight that hath imposed to vs alle vylonnye & shame.' And here spekeþ 12 no more thistorye of them, and retourneth to spek of the king & of Raymondyn. and how he departed fro the king moch honorably.

Thystory saith that the feest dured wel xv dayes & 16 more. the king of Bretons & hys baronye made grete honour to Raymondyn in so moche that I can nat reherce it. Raymondin thanne toke leue of the king & of his Barons and humbly mercyed the king 20 of his good justice that he had doon to hym in his noble Court, and departed fro them moche honorably. And wete it that bothe the king & many his barons were sory for his departing. And thus Ray- 24 mondyn acompanyed of his vncl Alayn his two sones & all theyre meyne rode toward Leon. But it is trouth that pauncyent knight was departed & goon byfore / and had doo sette vp bothe tentes & pauillons 28 and afl other thinges necessary he ordeyned & made redy. And thanne Raymondin / hys vncl with his two ¹sones and the moost nere of his kynne to hym lodged them togidre in the Castel. and the other 32 herberowed them in the toun. Whan the peple of the Countre knew the commyng of theyre owne lordes sone they were joyfufl & glad, and made to hym many fayr presentes after the vse & custome of the Countre / 36

- as of wyn, of bothe flesh & fysshe, hey & ootys, and of many other thinges, and they were fayn & glad sith it playsted not Raymondin to abyde & hold the land, that
 4 they were befaH in the sayd lynce of theire lord, and that they were quytte & exempted fro the subgection & boundage of the lynce of Jossellin. Raymondin thanne panked them curtoysly of theire presentes &
 8 yestes. commanded & prayed them that they wold be true & feythfuH subgets to Henry hys Cousin to whom he had gyue the land. and they ansuered that pey shuld doo soo. Of them resteth thistorye, and speketh
 12 of the spyes that wayted there / of which one went to the retrette where the Castellayne of AruaH and the lynce of Josselin were aH redy / and the two other spyes abode for to knowe what way Raymondyn shuld hold /
 16 **I**N this partye telleth to vs thistory that Raymondin departed fro Leon, and toke leue of al hys parents & frendes there, & went to Quyngant where the feste was grete, and there after the feeste was ended Ray-
 20 mondyn wold haue take leue of hys vncle Alayn & of all his lynage / but they dide putte the moost remedy they coude for to hold hym there a seuene nyght more. Wherefore Raymondyn obtempering to them / ye /
 24 ayenst his entent & courage ¹fullfyllled theire willes. And in the meane while came to Henry hys Cousyn, a man that told hym that as he passed fourth by the said retrette where the Castellayne of AruaH was with wel
 28 two houndred men in armes, that they abode for some folke to whom they owed no good wylle. but he told hym not whom they aspyed & watched for. And whan Henry understode this he toke a squyer of his
 32 and bad hym goo thither & knowe what it was. and he that was moche dilygent dyde so that he knew the moost parte of theyre purpos and entent & what nombre pey were. Soone after he retourned to Henry
 36 and reherced to hym all that he had found, and that

The folk of the place bring presents to Raymondin,

and are glad to be freed of allegiance to Josselin;

and promise to be faithful to Henry, the cousin of Raymondin, their new lord.

Spies leave, and tell the kindred of Josselin of Raymondin's doings.

Leaving Leon, Raymondin goes to Quingant, where he is feasted.

¹ fol. 53 b.

A man advises Henry of Leon of the assembling of Josselin's kindred in the forest.

Henry dispatches a spy,

who returns with the information

that five or six
hundred men are
assembled.

Henry enjoins
silence on the
spy,

and tells his
brother what he
has learnt.

¹ fol. 54.

The brothers
gather four hun-
dred men of
arms,

and accompany
Raymondin
when he leaves
Quingant,

until they ap-
proach the forest
where Josselin's
kindred are hid.
Josselin's
nephew, the
Castellain of
Arvall, learns
from his spies
the approach of
Raymondin;

they were wel fyue or six houndred fighting men.
And this tydinges herd / Henry deffendid to the
messanger moche expresly that to no body he shuld
spek of it. And soone he called his brother Alayn 4
and some other of the moost noble of hys lynage and
reherced to them alle this werk. 'By my feyth,' said
they, 'we ne cannot thinke what they entende to doo,
but that they wold auenge them on Raymondin our 8
Cousyn or ellis to meve werre ayenst vs for the said
quarelle. but alwayes it is good to be purueyed of
remedye ·lete vs therfore send for alle our frendes and
kepe vs secretly togidre tyl we see what they haue 12
purposed to doo / to thende yf they come on vs that
they fynde vs not discouered & vnpurueyed ·also yf
Raymondin departeth that he be not surprysed of
them / and yf they entende to doo hym euyl / it is 16
but for to take the lyf ¹fro hym.' 'By my feyth,' said
the other, 'that is trouth. Now lete vs hye & delyuere
vs that our mandement be doo of light & secretly.'
And so did they / in so moche that *within* the second 20
day after / they were gadred togidre about foure
houndred in nombre men of armes what of theyre lynee
and what of theirre affynyte & alyed / & made them
to be lodged in a wod so that few men knew of it. It 24
happd thanne that Raymoundyn wold no lenger abyde /
and toke leue of Alayn hys vncle *pat* abode styl at
Quyngant moche woofull & sory of hys departyng /
and hys two sones companied hym & conueyed *with* 28
grete foyson of theyre lynee. And neuer wold lete
hym goo byfore, but made theyre men to be on eche
side of hym, and so long they rode that they approched
the Forest where the Castellayne and his felawship 32
were in his retrette which Castellayn knew by his
spyes the commyng of Raymoundyn & his men and
told it to hys parents sayeng in this maner: 'Now shal
be seen & knowen who euer loued Josselin and Olyuer 36

hys sone. For here we may putte to deth alle the
 lynage of hym self þat to vs hath doon suche a shame.¹
 And they ansuered to hym that none shuld scape, but
 4 alle shuld be putte to deth. But as the prouerbe saith,
 ‘Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it’ / ¹
 and so it was of the Castellayne & hys parents. In this
 meane while came þauncyent knight to Raymondin
 8 and said to hym in this manere: ‘Sire, ye² myster wel
 for to ³be armed gooyng thugh the Forest. For the
 lynage of Josselin that ye haue dystroyed loueth you
 not, and they might bere bothe to your personne and
 12 to your felawship & meyne grete damage yf they
 found you vnpurueyed / and my herte gyueth me that
 soone we shaß fynd hem’ / and Henry & Alayn his
 brother and aß theire lynage were armed all redy, and
 16 had sent aß theire meyne byfore to make embushe
 within half a mylle fro the retrette. Thenne whan
 Raymondyn / had commanded hys men to take theire
 armures on hem & sawe them of his lynage that were
 20 alle armed, he no wyst what say but þe two brethern
 his cousyns told hym how they had sent in embusshe
 byfore wel iiii. C. of their men for to kepe hym fro hys
 enemyes / and they rehersed to hym aß the trouthe.
 24 ‘By my feyth,’ said Raymondin, ‘curtoyse oweth not to
 be forgeten / and for it shal not as to my parte fro hens
 fourthon. For yf in tyme to come ye haue nede of
 me / I am he that shal at al tymes be redy after my
 28 power to fulfyll your wille.’ And so longe they rode
 that they entred the Forest /.

Thystorye saith that the Castellayne was in his
 retrette and abode for the spye that last he
 32 had sent to wete whan Raymondyn shuld entre the
 Forest. the whiche exploited so that he came nigh
 Raymondin / and thanne he lightly retourned toward

and on him tell-
 ing his men, they
 promise to put
 Raymondin and
 his kindred to
 death.

³ fol. 51 b.

The ancient
 knight warns
 Raymondin of
 his danger,

who, seeing his
 cousin's men all
 armed,

thanks them,
 and promises
 to help them
 should they ever
 want him.

¹ Fr. *Tel cuide venger sa honte qui l'acroit.*

² Fr. *Et bien mestier.*

The Chastellain, hearing from his spy of Raymondin's appearance, cries on his men to follow him.

¹ fol. 55.

They mount, and are allowed to pass by the men of Henry of Leon, who are hidden in the forest,

until they meet Raymondin.

They run upon Raymondin's men;

and when Raymondin comes in sight,

the Chastellain and his three cousins attack him.

the retrette and to the Castellayn he said: 'Sire, ye may see hym come yonder.' And whan the Castellayn vnderstod hym he bygan to crye *with a hye voys* / 'on horsbak, & who that euer loued Josselin & his sone 4
lete hym ¹folowe me.' Thanne styed euery man on horsbak / & they were so encressyd in nombre that they were wel viii C & moo fighting men, and rode fourth in ordynaunce ayenst Raymondin, and passed 8
by the embusshe that Henry and his parents had sent. whiche lete them passe fourth *without* they discouered themself. and soone after þey rode after them. So longe rode the Castelayn & his folke that they per- 12
ceyued nygh them þe foreward of Raymondin. but abashed he was whan he sawe them armed gooyng by ordynaunce / though they were but a few seruaunts and a C. men of armes / they ²escryed them to the deth / 16
And whan they vnderstode it they yede apart & made to blowe theire trompettes and ranne vpon Raymondyns folke whiche were sore dommagged or he coude come to helpe them, the whiche rode as fast as the hors 20
might walope, and hauyng the spere on the rest launched among his enemyes / and the first that he encountred he ouerthrew hym down to therthe & aftir drew out high [his] swerde and smote trauersing here 24
& there and in a lytel tyme he moche dommagged hys enemyes. But whan the Castellayn saw hym he was full woo & sory / and he shewed hym to thre hys Cousyns sayeng / 'loke yonder is the knyght that 28
hath shamed all our lynage / yf we had our wyll of hym all the other shuld be soone ouercome & vaynquysshed.' thanne þey spored theire horses, and all foure ranne ayenst hym / and *with* theire speeris 32
recountred hym, soo that they ouer threw bothe man

² Fr. *et leur escrivoient: A mort à mort, mal acointastes celluy qui nous a fait la honte et le dommaige de Josselin notre cousin.*

- & hors ¹to the erthe and passed al foure fourth. But
 whan Raymondyn saw hym ouer thrawn he spooryd
 hys hors, and the hors that was swyft and strong
 4 releuyd hym on hys knees and soo fourth on his feet
 so pertly þat Raymondyn neuer lost sterop fro the
 foot ne swerd fro the hand. And thanne he tourned
 toward the Chastellayn & so mightily smote hym on
 8 the helmet with hys swerd that he so stakerid that he
 lost bothe steropes / and as Raymondyn passed by
 hym he hurtelyd hym soo with the sholder that he
 felt doune to the erthe / and the pres came there so
 12 grete that he was sore tradde with hors feet. Thenne
 begane the bataill grete & fel and sore damaged
 were bothe partes. And thanne came there also
 thauncyent knight and Henry & Alayn hys brother,
 16 and foughte strongly ayenst theyre enemyes. There
 Raymondin made grete fayttes of armes and sore
 damaged hys enemys. but the Chastelayn was had
 out of the pres and hys men toke hym another hors.
 20 Thanne toke the party aduerse, herte & courage &
 stoutly fought they ayenst Raymondyn & his folke.
 and there were many one slayn of both sydes. And
 wete it that Raymondyn & his folke susteyned heuy
 24 weyght. For hys aduerse party was moch strong &
 moche wel they fought & valyauntly. but the em-
 busshe of Henry came by the bake syde on them and
 assaylled them on all sydes so that þey wust not
 28 what they shuld doo / how they shuld defende them
 self nor where they shuld flee / Thenne was the
 Chastellayn taken & brought before Raymondin / and
 he commanded thauncient knight to kepe hym. And
 32 in conclusion all the other were soone after outhre
 take or deed. And this doon they came to the retrette
 where Raymondyn said to hys parents: 'Now lordes
 I owe wel ²to loue and thanke you of the grete
 36 socoure that ye haue doon to me this day. For

¹ fol. 55 b.Raymondin
smites the
Chastellain,

and fells him.

Assistance comes
in the persona of
Henry, Alain,
and the ancient
knight,and the ambush
of Henry;and routs the
Chastellain's
companions,
who are all taken
prisoners or
slain.² fol. 56.

Raymondin
thanks his
kindred for their
help;

who propose
to take the
Chastellain, and
all others of
Josselin's
kindred to the
king of Brut
Britain for judg-
ment.

The prisoners
who are not Jos-
selin's kindred
are hung,

and the Chas-
tellain and the
rest are taken
bound before the
king.

Alain tells the
king the treason
wrought,

and says that
Raymondin has
sent the Chastel-
lain and his
kindred to
receive punish-
ment.

1 fol. 56 b.

The king asks
the Chastellain
why he has done
such a shameful
deed.

certainly I wote that yf it had not be the help of
god and of you this traytour had putte me to deth by
treson, now haue regarde what best is for to doo.'
'Sire,' said Henry, 'as your wyl shaH graunte we alle 4
assent therto.' 'I shaH saye you,' said Raymondin,
'what we shal doo. lete vs take and assemble aH the
lynee of Josselin to-gidre / and bothe the Chastellayn
and alle the other his parents we shaH sende to the 8
kinge. Whiche hauyng regarde to theire grete falshed
and treson shal punyssh e aftir his good wylle.' Alle
other thanne said / 'forsouthe, sire, ye say wel.' Thenne
were chosen out aH the prysonners that were not of 12
the lynage of Josselin. and att yate of the said retrette
some were hanged / some at wyndowes & some at
batelments of it. And the Chastellayn and alle his
parents there were bounde bothe hand & feet as 16
traytours and prysonners. the whiche Alayn accom-
panied with thre houndred spere men lede them toard
the kinge. and first Alayn presented to þe kinge the
Chastelayne of AruaH as he that had conspired & 20
machined that treson / and al other after. and to hym
reherced Alayn aH how it was happed. and how Ray-
mondyn recommanded hym to his good grace / and
that he wold not be dysplaysed yf he had take venge- 24
aunce on hys mortal enmyes that wend to haue
murdred hym with treson, and that he sent to hym the
Chastellayn chief causer and other his complices for to
knowe by them the trouthe of the faytte and for to 28
punyssh e them at his plaisure and wylle / 'And how,
Chastellayn,' said the kinge 'haue ye be so ¹hardy to doo
suche treson and so shamefuH dede for the raissonnable
justice that late we dide in our reame / seeing & also 32
considering the grete treson that Josselin your vncle
knowleched & confessed to haue doo?' 'By god,' said
the king, 'ye were therof surquydous,² & it is wel right

² Fr. *moult oultre cuide*.

yf euyl is comme to you therof.' 'Ha, noble kinge,'
said thanne the chasteleyn, 'for your pite lete falle
your mysericorde on me caytyue personne. For the
4 grete sorowe & woo that I had of the dyshonour that
Raymondin had doon to our lynage hath caused me
to doo soo.'

The Chastellain
begs for mercy,

8 **B**y my feith,' said the king, 'it is euyl companye of
a traytour / and good it is to shette the stable
before the hors be lost, wel I wyl that ye knowe that
neuer ye shall haue suche purpos as to wyl slee no
gentylman with treson, For neuër I shaH ete tyl that ye
12 be hanged with your vncle, for ye shaH hold hym
felawship, and also aH them that are of your cohortacion.'
The kinge made to be take aHe them of hys cohorte or
company, and were aH hanged / and the Chastelayn he
16 sent to Nantes, and there he was hanged nyghe to his
vncle Josselin & Olyuyer hys Cousyn. And thus kepte
wel the king of Bretons Justice in his time regnyng in
Breytayne.

but the king says
he will not eat
till they be hung;

which judgment
is executed.

20 **H**ere sayth thistory that whan Alayn was retourned
to Raymondin unto the retrette, and that he
hadd to hym and to the other reherced this þat the
kyng had doon / they said that the kyng had doo right
24 wel as a valyaunt & lawfuH justiser shuld doo. Thenne
called Raymondyn to hym Henry Alayn & other of his
lynee and said to them in this manere: 'Fayre cousyns
& good frendes, I enjoyne & charge you that ye doo
28 edefye or bigge a pryorye with viii monkes, and that
ye reueste them with rentes and reuenues such that
honestly & goodly they may lyue on for euermore /
they to pray there for the sowle of ¹my fader / for the
32 kingis newew sowle and for the sowles of them that are
slayn & ded in this quareH.' And they alle said 'they
shuld soo doo. And Raymondyn prayed them to
recommende hym to the kingis good grace to hys
36 barons and to Alayn their fader. And thanne he toke

Raymondin
praises the king's
justice,

and asks his
cousin to build
a priory for
eight monks,

¹ fol. 57.

to pray for the
souls of those
killed in the
quarrel.

Raymondin
parts from his
cousins, who

return to their
father.

leue of them / and they were sorowfull of their
departement / and also of this that he wold nat lete
them goo no ferther *with* hym. They retourned to
Quyngant. And Raymondin yede on his way and 4
cam to guerrende · and wel he was there festyed and
worshipfully cheryed of them of the tounne. And here
resteth thistorye of Raymondyn · and shaH recounte
how Henry & Alayn toke leue of theyre lynce and cam 8
ayen to theyre fader.

Henry and Alain
tell their father
the news,

and how they
have to build a
priory.

The father is
glad to hear of
the clearance
of Josselin's
friends,

and advises his
sons to ask land
from the king to
build the priory.

¹ fol. 57 b.

They set out to
the king,

and find him by
a tree in the
forest of Sassi-
mon, waiting
for a hart;
but hide them-
selves till it is
captured.

Thistorye saith in this paas that Henry and Alayn
toke leue of theyre lynage & came to their
fader and recounted to hym aH thaduenture of the 12
Chastellayn, how they were departed fro þeyr cousyn,
and how he hadd commanded & charged them to
fownde a priory. 'By my feith,' said þeire fader. 'Alayn,
now is the land wel clene delynered of the lynage of 16
Josselin; god on theyre sowles haue mercy, how be it
they loued vs neuer. Now fayre sones I shaH saye
you what ye shal doo. First ye shal goo to the kinge
& requyre hym that it plese hym to gyue you a place 20
for to edefye the Pryorye / and telle hym the maner
how ye be commanded of your Cousyn to fownde it.
and I bylene he shal gyue you a good ansuer.' And
they said that thus shuld they doo. And thanne they 24
departed fro their fader, and so long they rode that
they camme to Vannes and founde the kinge departed
& was goon to ¹Sassymon for to dysporte hym at
Chasse. And they mounted on horsbak and came to 28
the gate and passed & entred the Forest and rode so
long tyl they came to the Castel. and founde the kyng
goon to the park to the chasse / and the two brethren
yed after & founde the king nyghe a grete tree by a 32
staung where he abode aftir the herte that houndes
chassed. Thenne the two bretheren drew them self aparte
bycause they wold not lette the kyng to see the dysporte /
who perceyued them wel² & coude them good thanke 36

² Fr. *leur en sceut moult bon gré.*

- therefore. and not long after þe herte came that ranne
 in to the staung / and there he was take by chaas of
 dogges / and was hadd out of the watre / and the
 4 curee made & gyue to the houndes as custome is to
 doo. Thenne Henry and Alayn his brother drew them
 self byfore the king and salewed hym moche honour-
 ably / and made wel theire message as theyre Cousin
 8 had charged them. And the king welcommed hem &
 moche enquiryed of them thestate of Raymondin and
 they told hym alle that they had seen of hit / and
 after they recounted to hym how he enjoyned & charged
 12 them to edyfy & make vp a Priorye of eyghte monkes.
 them to reueste & empossesse *with* landis, reuenues &
 rents, they to syng & pray therfore for the sowle of the
 kingis newew / for Henry his faders sowle, and for the
 16 sowles of alle them that had receyued deth in this
 quarelle. Also how at hys instaunce they shuld pray
 hym for a place where they shuld edefye the said
 pryorye. 'By my feith,' said the king. 'the requeste
 20 is wel lawfull & raysonable. and euen now ¹I shall
 lede you to the place where I wyl that it be fownded
 and made vp.' Thanne they came out of the wareyne
 and came aß by the walle to thende of the clos. and
 24 thenne said the king: 'Fair lordes, make here to be
 edyfyed a Pryory & take asmoche of grounde as ye
 lyketh / and I gyue liberte & habaundonne you the
 forest for to cutte there the wode. and whan the
 28 monkes shal be stablysshed there, I enlyberte &
 habaundonne it to them for theire vse and to alle
 thider commyng & dwelling. And I graunte to them
 the fysshing in the see that is nygh to this place a
 32 quarter of a legge, and to take in the Forest birdes. &
 wild beestes for theire lyuyng & sustenaunce of theire
 houshold . and also I gyue to them all the landes erable
 that are her about half a legge' / and of alle this he
 36 made & gaf to them good & suffisaunt patents. and of

They come out
and salute the
king,

are welcomed,

and tell him of
Raymondin and
his will about
the priory;

and ask for land
to build it on.

¹ fol. 58.

The king leads
them to a spot,

where he gives
them as much
land as they
require;

and grants to the
monks the right
of fishing, hunt-
ing, shooting,
and wood cutting
in the forest;

and gives some
arable land, all
on good patents.

The priory is
built for eight
white monks,

who have an
azure ✠ on their
outside robe.

1 fol. 58 b.

Raymondin
reconciles two
barons of Guer-
rend;

and leaves for
Poitou, where
he found many
parts unin-
habited,

having dis-
mantled castles
and other ruins,
caused by past
wars.

He arrives at
the abbey of
Mailleses,

and dwells there
three days,
gives jewels to
the abbey
church,

all these graunts & gestes the two brethern thanked the king moche humbly whiche made massons, carpenters, & other, to come, and in short tyme they made the chirche & the priorye. and there they stablysshed 4 whyte monkes. vnto the nombre of VIII. religious personnes, the which bere on their vtterist habyte a crosse of Azure / and enpossessed them wel for their sustenance & cotidiane lynyng / as now yet is. And 8 now resteth thystorye to spek of the king of Bretons and of the two bretheren. and retourneth to recounte how Raymondin gouerned hym self syn after.

Now telleth thystorye that so long abode Raymon- 12
din in the land of Guerrende ¹that he peased and acorded togidre two barons of the lande that long byfore hated eche other to deth. In so moche that he made them to be good frendes togidre, and their 16 Countrees in peas and rest. And after he toke his leue of the barons & of the people, which sorowed moche for his departing. and so long he rode that he came into the land of Poytou, wher he found many grete 20 forests vnhabytet / and in some places he sawe many wyld bestes, as hertes, hynd, & roo, wyld bores, and other beestes ynough. and in other places many fayre playnes & champaynes. many fayre medowes & ryuers. 24 'By my feyth,' said thanne Raymondin, 'it is grete pyte & domage that suche a commodiouse Countre is nat enhabytet with people.' and many a fayre manoyr and places were on the ryueres there that soone might be 28 redressed as hym semed whiche had be ouerthrowen in tyme of warre. And thus rydyng fourth he came to an auneynt Abbey called Maylleses, and therein were comprised thabbot and an houndred monkkis, beside 32 the Convers. and there herberowed Raymondyn for the grete playsaunce that he toke of it. and per he dwelled thre dayes and thre nightes. and gaf to the chirch there many fayre jewelles. After he departed and 36

came rydyng tyl he aprouched & came nygh Lusynen. and first he perceyued & sawe the tromped toure and the new toune, and thenne he supposed not
 4 to be there as he was. For he knew not the place for cause of the said toure & toune new made of late, and moche he meruaylled whan he herd ¹ the sowne of the trompes *within* the toure /.

and continues his journey to Lusignan, but does not recognize it, because of the new tower and town built by Melusine.

¹ fol. 59.

8 **I**n this part saith to vs thystorye that whan Raymondin came aboute Lusynen, & he perceyued the toune walled round aboute with strong walles and fortifyed *with* deep dyches & grete. 'how,' said he to
 12 thauncyent knight, 'What may this be; mesemed right now that I was forwayed of my way to come to lusygnen / and yet me semeth soo?' thenne began thauncyent knight to lawhe. And Raymondin said
 16 to hym: 'How, sir knight, jape you *with* me / I telle you for certayn yf it were not the toure and the toune that I see I shuld haue wend to be this nyght in Lusygnen.' 'By my feyth,' said thauncient knight,
 20 'soone ye shal fynde yourself there yf god wyl *with* grete joye.' Now I shaft sey you some of Raymondyn's *seruaunts* were sent before by thauncyent knight to anounce Melusyne the commyng of Raymondin. and
 24 how be it she byleued them wel / she made no semblaunt *perof* / but soone she caused the people to be redy for to goo & mete *with* Raymondyn. and she herself, accompanied *with* many ladyes & damoyselles,
 28 yede to mete & welcome hym wel horsed & arayed honorably and ryenely. Thenne Raymondin loked fourth byfore hym and sawe the peple commyng fro the valey vpward ayenst hym two & two togidre in
 32 fayre ordynance, wherof he moche meruaylled. and whan they aproched they bygan to crye *with* a high voys, 'ha, ha, dere lord, welcome may you be.' And thenne Raymondin knew som of them that were comme
 36 ² ayenst hym / and demanded of them, 'Fayre lordes,

He expresses his doubts to the anoient knight,

who tells him he'll soon be home.

Melusine, advised of Raymondin's arrival, makes herself and people ready to meet him.

Raymondin sees them,

and hears them cry 'Welcome';

² fol. 59 b.

recognizing
them, he asks
how far Lusig-
nan is.
They, seeing his
mistake,

tell him of it,
and how it is
caused by the
new buildings,

which abashes
him.

Melusine greets
him,

tells him she
knows all,
and praises his
doings.

They enter Lu-
signan together,
and hold a great
feast;

afterwards Ray-
mondin visits the
Earl of Poitiers,

recounts the
news,

¹ fol. 60.

and returns
home.

Melusine bears
her second son
Edon, who had a
very great ear;

fro whens come you?' 'My lord,' sayd they, 'we com
fro lusynen.' 'thenne,' said Raymondin, 'is Lusynen
ferre hens?' They thanne, seeyng that he mysknewe
the place for cause of the new toun & toure / said : 4
'My lord, ye be at it, but ye mysknowe the place
bycause that my lady syn your departyng hath doo
made and byld this toun & that high toure. and
yonder ye may see her commyng ayenst you.' Thenne 8
was Raymondin moche abasshed / and said not all
that he thoughte. but when he remembred how she
dyde doo make the Castel of Lusynen in so short tyme
he gaf hym self no meruayll yf she had doon soo. 12
Thenne is come to hym Melusyne that honorably wel-
commed hym, sayeng in this manere : 'My lord, I am
right fayn & glad of that ye haue so wel wrought
& doon so honourably in your vyage. For al thinges 16
haue be reherced to me alrede.' And Raymondin
ansuerd to her : 'Madame, it is by the grace of god
and of you.' And talking togidre of this matere they
entred Lusynen and alighted. Ther was the feste 20
grete that lasted eighte dayes, And was there the Erle
of Forest that said to Raymondin, 'ye be welcome.'
And after the feest they departed fro Lusynen and
came to Poytiers toward the Erle that receyued þem 24
benygnely, and demanded of Raymondin where he had
be so long. and he recorded to hym alle his auenture.
And shortly to say, the Erle Bertran was therof joyful
& glad. ¹ And that doon, the brethern toke leue of 28
hym / and the one yede toward forests, and Raymondin
toward his wyf & lady, which thenne was grete with
child, and bare her terme / the which expired, she
made a fayre child that was her second sone / he was 32
soone baptised and imposed to name Edon,² and hadd
an eere greter without comparyson than that other
was / but all hys other membres were replenysshed

² Fr. *Odon*.

with beaute, the which Edon had syn to hys wyf the Erle of Marchis doughtir. And of hym resteth thistorye / and speketh ferthermore of Melusyne & of

he was afterward married to the daughter of the Earl of March.

4 Raymondyn her lord.

Thistorye sayth & certifieth that whan the lady had ended the terme of her childbed, and that she was releuyd / the feste was made grete / and many 8 noble men, ladyes, and damoyelles were there, the whiche, after the feest full honourably toke their leue & departed. And that same tyme the lady Melusyne bylded bothe the Castel & toune of Melle. Also she 12 dide doo make Vouant & Mernant.¹ and after she made the bourgh & toure of saynt Maxence, and bygan the Abbey there. and moche good she dide to poure folk.

Melusine gives a feast.

builds the castles and towns of Melle and Maxence, and begins the abbey there.

16 **T**he second yere after folowyng she hadd a sone that was named guyon, & [he] was a moche fayre child / but he had an ey higher than that other. And wete it that Melusyne had euer so good nouryces, and 20 had so grete care for her children that they mendid & grewe so wel that euery one that saw them meruaylled. ² And that tyme Melusyne bigged & fownd many a fayre place thrughe the lande of Poytou unto 24 the duchie of Guyenne. She bilded the Castel and þe burgh of Partenay so strong and so fayre without comparyson. after that she dide doo make þe Toures of Rochelle & the Castel also, & bygan a part of the 28 toune, and thre leghe thens was a grete toure & bigge, whiche Julius Cesar dide doo make, and men called it the Egles toure, bycause that Julius Cesar bare an Egle in hys banere as emperour. That toure made the lady 32 to be walled & fortyfyed round aboute with grete toures machecolyd, and made it to be called the Castel Eglon. And afterward she edefyed Pons in Poytou and fortyfyed Xaintes³ that was called at that tyme

Melusine has her third son Guyon, who has one eye higher than the other;

her children are so well tended, that they grow so that folk marvel at them.

² fol. 60 b.

She builds much in Poitou: the castle and town of Parthenay,

and of Rochelle.

She fortifies the Eagle's Tower, said to have been built by Julius Cæsar.

She builds Pons, fortifies Saintes,

¹ Fr. *Waviront et Mermant*.

³ *Saintes*.

builds Talle-
mounte, and
many other
towns and
fortresses.

Lynges / and after she made Talle-
mondois and many other tounes & fortres. And gate
& acqyred so moche Raymondin thurgh the polycye
& good gouernaunce of Melusyne, what in Bretayne, 4
what in Gascoynne & in Guyenne as in Poytou, that
no prynce was about hym / but he doubted to dysplaise
hym.

Melusine has
her fourth son
Anthony, who

Soone after Melusyne was delyuered of her foureth 8
man child, whiche hight Anthony, none fayrer
was seen before that tyme. but in his birth he brought
a token along his chyke, that was the foot of a lyon,
wherof they that sawe hym wondred, & moche were 12
abasshed.

has a lion's claw
growing from his
cheek.

Her fifth son
Raynald has only
one eye, but so

Here saith thistorye, that the vijth yere after Melu-
syne bare the fyfte child, of whiche at thende
of ix monethes she was delyuered, & was named ray- 16
nald. none fayrer child might men see, but he was
borne only ¹with one eye / but it was so bright &
so clere that he sawe the ship thre kennynge ferre on
the sea, that is, one & twenty legges ferre / and lyke- 20
wyse on erthe, whatsoeuer it was. That same Anthony
was full gracys & curteys, as ye shal here in thystory
herafter.

¹ fol. 61.

bright and clear
that he can see
ships twenty
leagues off (sixty-
three miles).

Her sixth son
Geffrey had a
tooth that pro-
truded an inch
and more, so he

Furthermore saith thistory, that the eight yere 24
Melusyne childed the vi. child, that was a sone,
and had to name Geffray, Whiche at his birth brought
in hys mouthe a grete & long toth, that apyered
without an ench long & more / and therefore men 28
added to his propre name Geffray with the grete
toth. and he was moche grete & hye, and wel formed
& strong, merueyllously hardy & cruel, In so moche
that euery man fered & dradde hym whan he was in 32
age / he made in his tyme many wonders & merueylles,
as herafter ye shal here in thystorye.

was called
Geffrey with the
Great Tooth;

he was very
strong,

and did many
wonders in his
time.

Her seventh son
Froimond had a

Thystorye sayth that the ixth yere after Melusyne
had a sone, that was the vijth, & hight Froy- 36

mond, that was fayre ynoughe, but he had on hys nose¹ a top of heeris, and in his tyme he was moche deuonte. and afterward, by thassent of bothe hys
4 fader & moder, he was made monke in the abbey of Maylleses, of whom ye shall here hereafter thystorye.

tuft of hair on
his nose,

and became a
monk in the
abbey of Mail-
leses.

In this part sayth to vs thistorye that Melusyne was
two yere *without* birth of child, but true it is that
8 in the xjth yere she had her² xth sone, and was grete merueyllously / and he brought at hys birth thre eyen, one of the whiche was in the mydel of his forhed. he was so euyl & so ³cruel that at the foureth yere of
12 his age he slew two of hys nourryees.

Her tenth son
Horrible had
three eyes, one
in the middle
of his forehead,

³ fol. 61 b.

and was very
cruel.

The veray hystory saith that so long norryshed
Melusyne her children, that Vryan, whiche was
theldest & first born, was xviij yere old. he was grete
16 and fayre, & wonderly strong, and made grete apperlyse in armes, so that euery man & woman had pyte of hys dyfformytee; for his vysage was short & large, hys one eye was red & the other blew, and hys eerys were as
20 grete as the handlynges of a Fan. and Edon his brother was of xvij yere of age. and Guyon had of yeres xvj, and loued Eche other wel Vryan & Guyon / and so pert & swyft they were, that alle thoo that sawe
24 them gaf hemself grete wonder & meruayH. they were beloued of all the nobles of the land, & made many faytes & appertyses of armes in Joustes, tournoyeng, & in Lystes.

Melusine's
eldest-born
Urian is now
eighteen,
and is fair and
strong,

though his face
is strange, and
his ears large.

Edon is seven-
teen,
Guyon is six-
teen;
Urian and
Guyon love one
another much.

28 It happed that same tyme that two knyghtes of Poytoun came fro Jherusalem agayn / and recounted there as they passed, how the sawdan of Damask had besieged the king of Cypre in hys Cite of Famagoce, &
32 that he held hym therin in grete dystres. and put same kyng ne had to hys heyre but only a doughter, whiche was moche fayre. and these tydinges were

Two Poitevin
knights return
from Jerusalem,

and tell of the
Sultan of Damas-
cus besieging the
King of Cyprus;
and in what dis-
tress the king is,
and how his heir
is a daughter.

¹ Fr. *une petite tache rousse*.

² Fr. *huitiesme*, and so in Harleian MS. 418.

Urian hearing
the tale, speaks
to Guyon,

¹ fol. 62.

and proposes to
him to do some
deeds of arms.

The knights
from Jerusalem
are sent for,

and are ques-
tioned about
where they have
been.

Urian expresses
his surprise that
they did not stay
and help the
Christian king.

They explain
that it was im-
possible to enter
the town,
as it was be-
sieged by
eighty thousand
pagans.

ferfourth brought in the land, that Vryan knew of it.
and he thenne said to his brother Guyon: 'By my
feith, fayre brother, it were grete almese to socoure that
kyng ayenst the Paynemys. We ben al redy eyght 4
bretherne. the land of our fader may not remayne
without heyre, though we were bothe deed. Wherefore
we owe the more to enterprise ¹vyages, and see where
we may doo some faytes of armes, to be therwith en- 8
haunced in worship & honour.' 'By my feyth,' said
Guyon, 'ye said trouth. but what cause you to say
soo, seeyng that euer I am redy to doo as ye wyl doo?'
'Southly,' said Vryan, 'ye say full wel. Lete we send 12
for the two knightes that be come fro the holy vyage,
to be ensured of them more playnly of the trouth.'
they sent to the two knightes that they wold come &
spek with them, the which gladly dyde so. And 16
whan they were come, the two brethern welcommed
& receyued them goodly. and aftir they bygan
tenquyre of them the manere of theire vyage / of the
vse & maneres of the land where they had be. and 20
they said to them the playn trouth. 'We vnderstand,'
said Vryan, 'that ye haue passed through an yle wher a
king cristen regneth, which is oppressid ouermoch of
the paynemys / & wonder is vs that ye abode nat in 24
the werre with that Cristen kyng, for to help &
comforte hym, ye that are so renoumed, Worthy and
valyaunt knightes, consyderyng as it semeth to vs that
alle good cristens are hold & bound to helpe eche 28
other specially ayenst the paynemys.' To this ansuered
the two knightes: 'By my feith, gentil squyer & lord,
wel we wyl that ye knowe that yf by eny manere we
myght haue entred the toun without deth, & saf, 32
gladly we had doo so as ye say. but wel ye wote that
two knyghtes may not susteyne & bere the weight
ayenst wel Lxxx. or houndred thousand paynemys,
that thenne had besieged the toun wherein the said 36

- king was. For ye oweth to wete that ¹wel fole is he that fighteth ayenst the wynd, wenyng to make hym be styH.' 'By my feyth,' said Vryan, 'your excusacion
 4 is good & iuste. but tell me yf men myghty to reyse & lede *with* them a xxijth or xxvth thousand men of armes, myght doo eny faytte there to help & socoure the sayd kyng?' Thenne ansuerd one of the knightes:
 8 'By my feyth, sire, ye / seen & considered that the Cite is strong, and the kyng *with*in valiaunt, harly & worthy fighter of his personne / and he is acompanyed with many good men of armes, & the toun wel
 12 vytaylled / and yet ther be many Fortresses where they of Rodes come to refresshe themself, of the whiche the kyng & they in the Cite haue grete recomforte / and wete it that moche easely & wel they might goo
 16 thider / and wold to god suche a felawship as ye spek of wer redy, and that my felawe & I shuld take thaduenture *with* them.' 'By my feyth,' said thenne Vryan, 'my brother & I shaH receyue you, & lede you
 20 thither, god before, and that shortly.' And whan they vnderstode hym say soo, they were moche glad, sayeng that yf they soo dyde, hit moued them of valyaunt courage & grete noblesse of herte. Here resteth thistorye
 24 of these two knightes, and yet ferther speketh of Vryan & Guyon.

¹ fol. 62 b.

Urian asks if a force of twenty-five thousand men would be any use to succour the town?

the knights think so.

Urian promises to lead them there,

for which the knights thank him.

Cap. XX. How Vryan & Guyon toke leue of bothe theyre fader & moder, and of the
 28 help that they had of þem.

- ²In this partye sayth thistorye that Vryan and his brother Guyon cam to Melusyne thaire moder, and to her said Vryan in this manere: 'Madame, yf
 32 ye vouchesaaf, it were wel tyme that we shuld go fourth to our vyage, for to knowe the Countrees ferre & straunge, Wherby we may acyure honour & good

² fol. 63.

Urian and Guyon ask Melusine to let them go abroad to seek their fortunes,

because there are
eight sons, and

if the lands are
divided, the
estates would
not be great.

¹ fol. 63 b.

Melusine
promises to ask
their father's
permission,

who assents
gladly.

Melusine tells
them that their
father has
granted their
request, and so
has she;
and promises to
provide an outfit
for them.

renomme in straunge marches, to thend that we lerne
& vnderstand the dyuerse langages of the world. Also
yf Fortune and good auenture wyl be propyce &
conuenable to vs, we haue wel the wyH & courage to 4
subdue & conquere Countrees & landes; For we con-
sidere & see that alredy we be eyghte bretheren / and
are lyke, yf god wyl, to be yet as many moo in tyme
commying. and to say that your landes & possessions 8
were parted in so many partes for our sustenance &
gouernement / he that shuld enheryte the chyef lyfod
shuld not be able to kepe no grete houshold, ne to be
of grete estate, to the ¹Regard of the high blood & 12
grete noblesse that we come of / also consideryng as
now your grete estate. Wherefore as to my brother & I
my self, we quytte our parte / except alonely your
good grace, through thayde that ye now shaH doo to vs 16
for our vyage, yf god wyl gyue vs grace to acomplysshe.
'By my feyth, children,' said thenne Melusyne, 'your
requeste is caused of grete worthynes and courageous
herte, and therefore it oweth not to be refused ne gayn- 20
sayd. and vpon this matere I shaH entreate your
faders, For *without* hys counseyH I owe not to accorde
your requeste.' Thanne fourthwith came Melusyne to
Raymondin / and shewed hym the requeste & wyH 24
of theire two sones; the whiche ansuerd & sayd, 'By
my feyth, madame, yf it lyke you good they doo soo, I
assent gladly therto.' 'Sire,' said Melusyne, 'ye say
wel; and wete it that they shal do noþing in theire 28
vyage but that it shaH tourne to theire grete lawde
& honour, yf god wyl.' Then came ayen Melusyne to
her two sones, and thus she said to them: 'Fayre
children, thinke from hensfourthon to doo wel; For 32
your fader hath graunted youre requeste, & so doo I.
and care you not for no þing, For *within* short tyme
I shall ordeyne & purveye for your faytte *with* goddis
grace & help / in such wise that ye shaH konne me 36

good gree & thanke therfore. but telle me whether & to what part of the world ye wyl & purpose to goo, to thende I purvey of suche thinges that shalbe necessary
 4 to you therfore.' Thanne ansuerd Vryan: 'Madame, wel it is true & certayn that we haue herd certayn tydynges that the kyng of Cypre is besiged ¹by the Sawdan within hys Cyte of Famagoce / and thither, yf
 8 it playse god, we entende & purpose to go for to ayde & socoure hym ayenst the fals & mysbyleuers pay-nemys.' Thanne gan say Melusyne, 'herto muste be purueyed / As wel for the see as for the land; and
 12 *with* goddis grace, my dere children, I shaH ordeyne therof in suche manere that ye shal be remembred of me: and this shal I doo shortly.' The two bretheren thenne kneled down byfore theyre moder / and thanked
 16 her moche humbly of her purveyaunce & good wylle. And the lady toke hem vp, and sore wepyng she kyssed them bothe, For grete sorowe she had in her herte / though she made *with*outfourth chere of their
 20 departyng. For she loued them with moderly loue, as she that had nouryssed them.

Thystorye sayth that Melusyne was full curyous and besy to make al thinges redy *pat* were
 24 necessary to her sonnes for their vyage. She made Galeyes, Carrykes, and other grete shippes to be vytaylled & redy to sayH / and þe nauye was so grete in nombre that it was suffysaunt for foure score thou-
 28 sand men of armes to sayH in. And in the meane while the two bretheren sent for the two forsaid knightes, & said to them that they shuld be redy to meue fourth shortly, as they had promysed to them.
 32 And they ansuered: 'Lordes, we be aH redy. and many gentylmen that we knowe ben shapen & redy to go with you in your felawship, and we alle be desyrous to serue you and to doo your playsir.' 'By my feyth,'
 36 said Vryan, 'right grete gramercy to you. We shaH

¹ fol. 64.

They tell their mother they intend succouring the King of Cyprus,

so she promises to provide what is necessary for sea and land.

They thank her;

and she, weeping, kisses them both,

for she loves them with motherly love.

Melusine prepares galleys, carracks, and other ships, and victuals them,

enough for eighty thousand men of arms.

The Jerusalem knights are sent for,

and tell the brothers they are ready to go with them.

¹ fol. 64 b.

The armament ready, Melusine appoints four barons to look after her two sons.

The men and stores are put on board the fleet; the banners are waved, trumpets sounded, and every one enjoys the scene.

The brethren bid their friends farewell,

and are accompanied to their ships by their parents. Melusine draws them apart,

and gives them each a magic ring,

which, whilst they wear it and remain true,

they will never lose in a good quarrel,

nor be hurt by magical arts or poison.

³ fol. 65.

The brothers thank their mother,

who advises them always to hear divine service before doing any work;

¹ I led them wel, yf god wyl and you also.' Now thenne, shortly to saye, Melusyne dyde so moche that al was redy, and had foure Barons to whome she be-toke the kepyng & gouernaunce of her two sones. and ⁴ had grete foyson of gentylmen knightes & squyers, vnto the nombre of ² two thousand V^c men of armes, & fyue houndred archers / and as many men with crosse-bowes. And thenne the vytaylles, artylery, harneys & 8 horses were charged in to the vesselles, an syn mounted the men into the same. There were seen baners & standarts / and the sowne of trompes & tambours and of many other instruments was herd, that euery one ¹² enjoyed that sawe it / And the two brethern toke leue of peire bretheren and frendes, & of the peple of the land, that moche tenderly wept for their departyng. And Raymondin & Melusyne conveyed their children ¹⁶ vnto the see; and whan they come there Melusyne drew hem apart, and said to them: 'Dere children, vnderstand this that I wil tell you & commande.' /

'Children,' sayd Melusyne, 'here be two rynges ²⁰ that I gyne you / of whiche the stones ben of one lyke vertue. and wete it that as long that ye shaH vse of feythfulnes, without to think eny euyl, ne doo trychery or hynderaunce to other / hauyng alwayes ²⁴ the said rynges & stones vpon you, ye shall not be dyscomfytet ne ouercome in no faytte of armes, yf ye haue good quareH. ne also sort or enchauntment of art Magique, ne poysons of whatsomeuer manere shul ²⁸ not lette ne greve you / but that assoone as ye shaH see ³ them they shaH lese theyre strengthe.' and she delyuered to eyther of hem one / and they thanked her moch, kneelyng to therthe. And yet said Melusyne ³² to them in this manere: 'My dere & beloued children, I wol & charge you that wher so euer ye be, ye here the deuyne seruyse or euer ye doo eny oþer werk.

² Fr. *quatre mille hommes d'armes*; no particulars given. ³⁶

- also that in all your affayres & dedes ye clayme & calle thayde & help of our Creatour, and serue hym diligently, and loue & dredde hym as your god & 4 your maker. and that allwayes ye honoure & worship with all your power holy churche, beyng her champyons, the same to susteyne & withstand ayenst alle her enyll wyllers. Help ye & counseyll the pouere wydowes, 8 nourysshe or doo to be norysshed the pouere orphenyns, both faderles and moderles / and worship al ladyes / gyue ayde and comforte vnto alle good maydens that men wol haue dysherytet vnlawfully. loue the gentyl- 12 men, and hold them good companye. / be meke, humble, swete, curtoys & humayne, both vnto grete & lesse. and yf ye see a man of armes pouere, & fall in decaye by hap & fortune of juste werre, re- 16 fresshe hym of some of your goodes. be large vnto the good folke / and whan ye gyue eny thing, lett hym not tary long for it; but wel loke & considere how moche & why / and yf the personne is worthy to 20 haue it, and yf ye gyue for playsaunce, loke & kepe wel that prodigalite or folysshe largenes surpryse you not / so that after men mocke not with you. For they that haue wel deserued to be of you rewarded 24 shuld not be wel apayed ne content therof / and the straungers shuld mocke you behinde your backe. and kepe ye promyse, or behighte no thing but that ye may fournysshe & hold it. and yf ye promyse eny 28 thing, tary not the delyneraunce of it, For long taryeng quenchith moche the vertu of the yefte. kepe wel ye raunysshe no woman / ne be coueytous of other mens wyues, of whom ye wil be loued and hold for your 32 frendes. believe not the Counseyll of none / but first ye knowe his manere, deeling & condycyons. also beleue not the counseyll of Flatterers, and enuyous, & auarycyous / ne suche putte not in none office aboute 36 you, For they cause rather to their maister dyshonour

to call on God for help, and to serve and fear Him;

to honour and sustain holy Church;

to help widows, orphans, and ladies;

to frequent the company of gentlemen;

to be courteous to all;

to help the unfortunate;

to be thrifty;

1 fol. 65 b.

to keep promises;

to abstain from ill-using women;

to beware of flatterers and envious persons;

& shame, than any worship or prouffyt. kepe wel ye
 borow nothing but that ye may yeld it ayen / and yf
 for nede ye be constrayned for to borow / as soone as ye
 may / make restitucion of it / And þus ye shal mowe 4
 be without danger, & lede honourable lyf. And yf
 god graunte that Fortune be to you good & propyee in
 subduyng your enmyes & theire landes, gouerne wel
 your folke and people after the nature & condycion 8
 that they be of. and yf they be rebeH, kepe wel that
 ye surmounte & ouercome hem without to lese any
 suche ryght that longith to your lordship & seignourye /
 and that ye euer make good watche vnto tyme ye haue 12
 vaynquysshed at your wyll. For yf ye ouertredde
 your self / nedes ye muste rule your self after theire
 wyll. but alwayes kepe wel, whether they be euyl &
 hard, or debonnaire, that ye ne haunce & sette new 16
 customes that be vnraysonnable / and of them take
 only your dute and ryght, without to retayH þem
 1 fol. 66. 1 without and ayenst raison. For yf the peple is
 pouere / the lord shal be vnhappy / and yf werr came 20
 he shuld not mowe be holpe of them att hys nede /
 wherfore he might fall into grete daunger & seruytude.
 For wete it wel / that a flyes of a yere is more
 prouffyttable / than the flyes þat is shorne twyes or 24
 thryes in a yere. now, my children, yet I deffende &
 forbede you that ye byleue not the Counseill of none
 to beware of the 28
 advice of exiles ; exilled and flemed fro his land, in this that may touche
 the hynderyng or dommage of them that haue exilled 28
 hym / yf there nys good, right & lawfuH cause / and
 ye to haue good reason to help hym, For that shuld
 mowe lette you to come to the degree of worship &
 honour. . And aboue all thinges I forbede you pryde / 32
 to be just ; and commande you to doo & kepe justice, yeldyng
 right aswel to the leste as to the moost / and desyre
 not to be auenged at vttermost of all the wronges don
 to you by some other / but take suffisaunt & raysonn- 36

- able amendes of hym that offreth it. Dyspreyse not
 your enmyes though they be litel, but make euer good
 watche. and kepe wel as long ye be conqueryng, that
 4 atwix your felawes ye mayntene nat yourself as lord
 & sire / but be commyn & pryue bothe to more &
 lesse / and ye owe to hold them company after the
 qualite & vocacyon that they be of, now to one & now
 8 to other. For al this causeth the hertes of creatures to
 drawe vnto the loue of them that are humayn, meke &
 curteys in theire dignite & seignouryes. Haue an
 herte as a fyers Lyon ayenst your ¹enemyes / and shew
 12 to them your puyssaunce and valyauntyse. and yf god
 endoweth you with some goodes, departe som of it to
 your felawes after he hath deserued. And as to the
 werre, byleue the counsey^H of the valyaunt & worthy
 16 men that haue haunted & vsed it. Also I defende
 you that no grete treatee ye make with your enmyes,
 For in long treatee lyeth somtyme grete falshed. For
 alwayes wyse men goo abacke for to lepe the ferther;
 20 and whan the sage seeth þat he is not able to resyste
 ayenst the strengthe of his enemyes, he seketh &
 purchaceth alwayes a treatee, for to dyssymyle vnto
 tyme he seeth hymself mighty ynough for them / and
 24 thanne anoone of lyght they fynd waye & manere
 wherby the treatees ben of none effect ne value.
 Wherefore loke ye, forbere not your enemyes there, as
 ye may putte them vnder your subgection with honour.
 28 And thenne yf ye shew them fauour & curtoysye, that
 shal tourne to your grete honour / and leue ye to doo
 for them by treatee or appoyntement. For though no
 falshed or decepcion be founde in none of bothe sydes /
 32 yet shuld mow some men say or thinke that ye
 somewhat doubted them / how be it, I say not that
 men owe to reffuse good traytee, who that may haue
 it' / Thus, as ye here, chastysed & endoctryned Melu-
 36 syne her two sones, Vryan & Guyon, whiche thanked
 MELUSINE.

to be watchful
of enemies, no
matter how
small;

to be on familiar
terms with their
men;

to have a lion-
heart towards
their enemies;

¹ fol. 66 b.

to share their
spoils with their
men;

to make no long
treaties,

for they are
liable to be am-
biguous.

The brothers
thank their
mother for her
advice.

1 fol. 67.

Melusine tells
them she has
well stored their
ships;

and giving them
to God's care,
bids them re-
member her
advice, and act
on it.

her moche humbly. and thenne she sayd : ' Children,
I haue sent gold & syluer ynoughe in to your ship for
to hold & maynten your estate, and to pay therwith
your men for foure yere. ¹And haue no doubte or 4
care for bred, byscuyte, Freshe watre, vynaigre, Flessh
salted, fyssh ynough, & good wynes suffysaunt to long
tyme, For therof ben your shippes wel fylled & pur-
ueyed. goo thanne fourth on your waye, vnder the 8
sauегarde of god / who kepe you / lede & retourne you
agayn with joye. and I pray you that ye thinke &
remembre what I haue sayd to you, to fulfyll it after
your power.' /

12

Cap. XXI. How Uryan & Guyon tooke leue of their moder Melusyne and entred their ship. /

The brothers bid
farewell to their
parents,

weigh their
anchors,

2 fol. 67 b.

and after prayer

they put to sea.

Their parents
leave for Eglon
Castle.

Thenne they toke leue of theyre fader and moder 16
and entred their vesseH. This doon, the
ancres were had in, & the saylles haled vp, the
patrons made their recommendacions to god as cus-
tomed it is, to ²that by hys benygne grace he wyl 20
graunte to them good ryuage, and accomplysshing of
theyre vyage without lettyng or empeschement. The
wyndes were for them propyce & good / and in short
tyme they were ferre cast on the see so that they were 24
out of sight /

Thanne departed Raymodyn & Melusyne, and
theyre meyne with them, and came to the Castel
Eglon. And here resteth thystorye of them, and re- 28
tourneth to spek of Vryan and Guyon hys brother, and
of theyre felawship that saylled on the see, holding
their way toward Cypre. /

Uryan and Guion
sail

Thystory sayth that whan Uryan and Guyon were 32
departed fro Rochelle they saylled long on the

see, and passed by many yles, & refresshed them in many places; and so long they rowed þat they sawe many vesselles that chased two galeyes / and thenne
 4 the Patron shewed them to þe two brethern / and they ansuered, and demanded of them what was best to doo.
 'By my feyth,' sayd the Patron, 'it were good we send a galeye to wete what folke they be / and in the meane
 8 while we shal make our men to take theyre armes & harneys on them at al anauntures.' 'By my feith,' said Vryan, 'that I vouchesaf' / and they dide soo.
 And thanne the galeye departed abroad, and saylled
 12 toward the straungers / and escryed þem, & demanded of them what they were, and they ansuerd, 'We be two galeyes of Rodes that haue be found of the paynemys that foloweth & chaceth vs, and we see wel
 16 ye be Cristen, and so are all they that come after you.' 'By my feyth,' sayd they of the galeye, 'we ben as ye suppose and saye.' 'By my heed,' said one of the patrons of Rodes galeyes / 'goo & haste your
 20 felawship, For ye haue found fayre auenture. yonder be of the sawdans folke that goo to the siege of Famagosse / and who might dystroye them, he shuld doo grete socoure to the king of Cypre / and to the sawdan
 24 of Damaske grete damage.' Whan thenne they of the galeye herd this / they sodaynly retourned & announced it to the two bretheren / and to their folke whiche anon yede vp to the Castels of their shippes,
 28 and clymed vp to the toppes of them, hauyng speere & darts, stones, & wild fyre alrede / also bowes & arowes in their handes / gones & pouldre to shote with.
 There bygan tompes to blowe vp, & rowed mightily
 32 toward the paynemys. And whan the Infideles & paynemys perceyued so grete nombre of shippes rowyng toward them they ne wyst not what to thinke, For they had neuer supposed that so grete puyssaunce &
 36 strengthe of cristen men had be so nygh them / but

till they see
two galleyes being
chased.

They send to
see who are in
them.

The messengers
find the galleyes
to be from
Rhodes,

1 fol. 63.

and that the
vessels that chase
them are the
Sultan's of Da-
mascus, who is
on his way to
Famagosse, to
fight the King
of Cyprus.

On hearing this
news, Urian and
Guion prepare
their ships to
fight,

and row towards
the paynim
Sultan.

The infidels,
surprised at the
numbers of the
Christians,

retreat, but prepare for attack.

The Christian galleys open fire,

upon which the paynims try to send a fire-ship amongst them,

1 fol. 68 b.

but they evade it.

The Christians are victorious,

take their enemies' ships, and put the men to death.

They row to Rhodes, where they refresh themselves, and give the captured ships to the Rhodians.

The Master of Rhodes invites them to his city,

asks why they come,

and of what nation they are.

They answer, and ask the Master of Rhodes to help them to assist the King of Cyprus.

alwayes they putte hem self in aray gooyng abacke,
 but oure galeyes aduyronned them round about on al
 sydes, and bygan of al partes to shutte theire gonnes.
 And whan the paynemys sawe this / and that they 4
 myght not flee, they toke a vessel whiche they had
 take fro them of rodes, and had cast the folke that was
 in it into the see / and fylled it with wode, oyle, &
 talowe, and with sulphre & brymstone. and whan they 8
 sawe our folk approuched nygh them they sette it
 afyre. and whan the fyre was wel kyndled ¹they lefte
 it behynd them to mete first with our folke / but as
 god wold they were warned therof & kept / themself 12
 wel therfro / and assaylled theire enmyes at the other
 syde right vygourously. There was grete shotyng of
 crosbowes & gonnes / and soone after our folk entred
 byforce and strengthe of armes the shippes of the 16
 paynemys / and fynally they were take & dyscomfyted,
 and putte to deth. and our folke gate there grete good
 whiche the two brethern departed, and gaf to theire
 felawes and to them that wer within the two galeyes of 20
 Rodes / and syn rowed & saylled both so long that
 they arryued in the yle of Rodes. And there they
 refresshed them, & gaf to the brethern of the religyon
 the fustes & galeyes that they had taken vpon the 24
 paynemys, and they soiurned there foure dayes. And
 the maister of Rodes prayd them that they wold come
 into the Cite / and they dide soo / and were there
 honourably receyued / and the said maister demanded 28
 them of the cause of their commyng. And the two
 brethern told hym that they were come forto socoure
 the king of Cypre / And he asked them full humbly of
 what land they were, and what they were / and the 32
 two brethern told to hym all the trouth. Thenne made
 the maister to them greter chere than tofore / and said
 to them that he shuld send for som of his bretheren / &
 that he shuld goo with hem to helpe & socoure the 36

king of Chipre. And the two bretheren thanked hym moche humbly therefore. /

4 **N**ow sayth thystorye that so long abode, & so iourned the two brethern at Rodes tyl the maister had assembled his folke, and vytaylled & laden with good ¹men of armes, & archers six galeys, & saylled with Uryan & Guyon so long that they arryued 8 nygh to the yle of Coles, & apperceyued grete lyght. Thenne the grete maister of Rodes that was in Uryan's galeye, said to the two bretheren: 'Sires, in good feyth it were good & wel doon to send a CarueH vnto yonder 12 yle, to knowe & aspye what folke is there.' 'I vouchsaf it,' said Vryan. The Rampyn then, or CarueH, saylled thither, & arryued in to the said yle, & some of pem descended & founde many grete fyres & lodgis, 16 and by the experience that they sawe, they extimed them pat had lodged there to the nombre of xxx thousand men / and that they myght wel haue dwelled per foure or fyue dayes. For they found without the lodgys grete 20 foyson of oxen hornes & of other bestes. And then they came ayen in to theire VesseH, and retourned toward our folke / & recounted to them the trouth of all that they had found. 'By my feith,' said thenne 24 the maister of Rodes, 'I wene they be paynemys that are gooyng toward the sawdan at the siege, and that they whiche ye haue dyscomfyted were of their felawship, & abode for them in that same yle' / and for 28 certayn they were soo / and of them they sayled & rowed fourth tyl they sawe an abbey on the see coste, where men sought & worshiped saynt Andrew / and men saith that there is the potence or cros wheron the 32 good thef Dysmas was crucefyed whan our lord was nayled to the Cros for our redempcion. 'Sire,' said the maister, 'it were good that we should entre that lytil hauen Vnto tyme that we had sent to Lymasson 36 for to knowe tydinges, & for to wete yf they wyl

The Master of Rhodes arms six galleys,

¹ fol. 69.

and sails with the brethren to Coles, where they see lights.

Men are sent in a carvell to spy,

and discover a camp of thirty thousand strong.

They return with their news.

The Master of Rhodes believes it to be a camp of paynims, friends of those just defeated in the sea-fight.

The company continues their voyage till they come to an abbey on the coast.

i fol. 69 b.

They put into the
harbour,
and send a
message to the
Abbot,

who is glad to
hear of their
arrival.

The Captain of
the place rows
to our folk,

sees Urian,
Guion, and the
Master of
Rhodes,

and is abashed at
Urian's appear-
ance.

Being assured
that Urian has
come to help the
King of Cyprus,
he promises to
open the country
to him, and

give his vessels
anchorage.

receyue vs for to putte our nauye in ¹surete within
theyre clos.' 'Maister,' said Uryan, 'let it be doon in
the name of god after your playsire.' Thenne they
arryued, and entred the port or hauen / and sent 4
wordes to thabbot ther, that they shuld not doubte, For
they were theire frendes. And the maister of Rodes
with other went thider. And whan thabbot & monkes
knew the tydinges and the commyng of the two 8
brethern, they were joyous & glad, & sent some of
theire bretheren to Lymas to announce & telle þe socours
that was arryued at theire porte. Thenne whan a
knyght, Captayn of the place, herde these tydinges he 12
was fayn & glad, and made fourthwith a galyotte to
be shipped redy, and came toward our folke, and
demanded after the lord of that armee /. and he to
whome he asked it lede hym where Uryan / Guyon 16
his brother / the master of Rodes, & many other barons
were in a ryche pauyllon, that they had don to be
dressed on the streyte of the porte / and shewed to
hym Vryan that satte on a couche with hym his 20
brother, and the maister of Rodes. And whan he saw
hym he was abasshed of the valeur & of the grete fyerste
of hym, & neuerþeles he yede & salued hym honour-
ably, and Vryan receyued him goodly & benyngly. 24
'Sire,' said the Knight, 'ye be welcome in to this
land.' 'Fayre sirs,' said Vryan, 'moche grete thanks
to you.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'it is don me to
vnderstand that ye departed fro your Countrie to 28
thentent to come ayde & help the king of Cypre.'
'By my feyth,' said Uryan, 'it is trouth.' 'Then, sire,'
said the knight, 'it is reson that al be open byfore you,
where ye wyl by aH the royalme of Cypre, through aH 32
tounnes, Cites, & Castels there as ye shal be please to
goo, but as to the same, which is to my ryght redoubted
lord the king of cypre, hit shal be soone appareylled &
open to you, whan it shaH lyke you, & also the porte 36

to putte your vessels ¹in saute.' 'By my feyth,' said
 Uryan, 'ye say right wel, & gramercy to you. Sire
 knight, it is tyme to meve, For my brother and I haue
 4 grete langyng to approche nygh the paynemys / not for
 theire prouffyt, but for theire dommage, if it please god
 that we so doo.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'it is good
 ye doo to be had out some of your horses as many
 8 as it lyke you / and take som of your men with you,
 and we shaH goo by land.' 'By my feith,' sayd Uryan,
 'ye say right wel' / and thus it was doon / and Uryan
 made some of hys men to be armed, vnto the nombre
 12 of foure hundred gentylmen of the moost hye barons,
 knightes & squyers. and he himself, & his brother
 armed them and mounted on horsbak / and the banere
 dysployed, rode fourth in moch fayre ordynaunce / and
 16 the maister of Rodes & the other shipped them on the
 see & rowed toward the porte. And Vryan and his
 felawship rode with the said knight that guyded hym
 so long that they came & entred in to the toune, and
 20 were right well lodged. And then came the nauye,
 & arryued to the porte, and the horses were aH had out
 of the shippes, and the folke descendid to land, and
 lodged them in þe feld without the toune within
 24 tentes & pauyllons / and they that had none, made
 theire lodgis the best wyse they coude. and was moche
 grete playsaunce to see thoost whan they were alle
 lodged. The moost hye barons lodgyd them within
 28 the toune / and the nauye was draw, & had in to the
 clos in saute / and they commytted good folke to
 deffende & kepe it, yf Sarasyns or paynemys came
 there for to doo som euyl. Now shal I leue to speke
 32 of Uryan, & shal say of the Captayn of the toune
 that moche wel aduysed thoost and the maynten of the
 folke, & moche preysed it in his herte / and said wel
 they were folke of faytte ²and of grete enterpryse, whan
 36 so few people enterprysed for to haue the vycory ouer

¹ fol. 70.

Four hundred
 of Urian's barons
 go ashore, armed
 and horsed,

and ride to the
 town;

the ships mean-
 while row to the
 harbour, and the
 horses and men
 land.

Guards are set
 to defend the
 navy against the
 Saracens.

² fol. 70 b.

The Captain of the town is surprised at the bravery of Urian, who thinks of conquering the mighty host of the Saracens with so few men;

but Urian's bold looks assure him, and he thanks God that Urian has been sent to help the king.

The Captain of the place indites a letter to the King of Cyprus, telling of Urian's arrival and of his forces;

the sawdan, that had with hym more than houndred thousand paynemys. And for to say trouth, Vryan had not yet comprised the men of the maister of Rodes, eyghte thousand fyghtyng men / and therfore the 4 knight meruaylled, and held it to grete audacite & hardynes of herte, and to grete valyaunce. And whan he considered the grandeur & the facion of Vryan, & the fyerste of hys vysage, and also of guyon hys 8 brother / he said to his folke / 'thoo same are worthy for to subdue & conquere all the world.' and he said to hymself, þat god had sent hem thither of his benyng grace for to socoure the kyng, and for to enhaunce the 12 cristen feyth, and that he shuld lete it to be knowen to the kyng by certayn message.

Thystorye sayth that the knight made a *lettre*, the tenour of whiche conteyned al the matere of 16 Uryan, & of his brother, of theire men, & of theire commyng, and how the two bretheren had to name, and of what countre they were / and syn he called one hys nevew, & said to hym in this manere, 'ye muste 20 bere this *lettre* to Famagosse, and gyue it to the kyng / and whatsoever it happeth that god forbede, but al good to you, nedes ye muste doo it.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said he / 'ye shaft putte bothe the *lettres* & 24 myself in grete jeopardye & auenture, For if by some myschief, as it happeth ofte, wherof god preserue me I were taken of our enmyes, of my lyf is nothing / and ye wote it wel / but for the loue of you, myn vncl & 28 of the kyng, to doo hym comfort, & to gyue hym herte & hoop to be putte & delyuered fro hys enemyes, & fro the mortal parel wherin he is now, I shall putte myself in aduenture / and I pray ¹to god deuoutly, that it 32 please hym of his benigne grace to lede me gooyng & commyng in sauete.' / 'Thus owe men to serue theire lord,' said the Captayne, 'and yf god wyl ye shalbe wel rewarded therof.' and anoone he toke the *lettre*, & 36

¹ fol. 71.

delyuered it to his newew / þat mounted on horsbacke, and despatches his nephew on horseback to the King at Fama-gosse.
 & rode fourthon his way. But as for now I shaH reste
 of hym / and I shal retourne there I lefte to spek of
 4 Vryan / and shal say howe he gouerned hymself whiles
 the messenger yede toward the king. how wel he knew
 nat of it. /

Thystory saith that Vryan called to hym the maister
 8 of Rodes and the Captayn of the place, and de-
 manded of them thus: 'Fayre lordes, is the sawdan
 somewhat yong, ne of grete enterpryse' / and they an-
 suerd, 'that ye for certayn' / 'and how,' said Vryan,
 12 'was he neuer byfore this place to make warre than
 now?' / they ansuerd that, 'nay' / 'and what thenne,'
 said Vryan, 'hath caused hym to passe the see now?
 sith he is man of enterpryse, I merveyH that so long
 16 he held hym styl, seeyng ye be his nigh neygbours,
 and also that he hath so grete puissaunce, as it is told
 me.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the Captayne, 'it is
 veray & trouth that our kyng hath a moch fayr dough-
 20 ter of the age of .xv. yere, the which the saudan wold
 haue had by force / and our kyng wold not acorde her
 to hym without he wold be baptysed. And wete it
 that euer here tofore we had trewes togidre of so long
 24 tyme that no mynde is of þe contrarye. and whan the
 sawdan hath seen that our king wold not graunt to
 hym his doughter, he sent ageyn to hym the trewes
 with a deffyaunce or chalengyng, and was redy on the
 28 see with a .C. & fyfty thousand paynemys, and came &
 made soone his harneys to be had out on erthe, & wente
 and layd siege tofore Famagoce, where he found ¹the
 kyng all vnpurveyed of his baronye, that knew not of
 32 his commyng / but syn there be entred moche folke
 within the Cite ayenst his euyl gree, & there is now
 fayre scarmysshing where grete losse hath be on both
 partes / and syn the paynymyes have refresshed them-
 36 self twyes of new folke, in so moch that they ben yet

Urian asks about
 the Sultan of
 Damascus,

and ascertains
 that he fights to
 get the king's
 beautiful
 daughter, now
 fifteen,
 refused him
 because he
 would not be
 baptised.

The Sultan
 challenged the
 king, and laid
 siege to Fama-
 gosse, which was
 unprepared ;

¹ fol. 71 b.

but now rein-
 forcements have
 entered the
 town, and there
 is fair skirmish-
 ing.

The Saracens are
a hundred thou-
sand strong;
but they lost
some vessels,

as was learnt
from one of our
ships, who saw
them pass,
chasing two
Rhodian galleys,

but saw no more
of them.

The Master of
Rhodes tells
the Captain of
Urian's victory,
which explains
their non-appear-
ance.

Urian, learning
that love has
made the Sultan
fight,

says that he is
the more to be
feared, because
love is so power-
ful that it makes
even cowards
brave,

¹ fol. 72.

and states that
next day, after
divine service,
he will set out in
quest of him.

At the third
sound of the
trumpets they
march.

wel a .C^{ml}. / but at this last vyage they haue lost a
parte of theire shippes & of theire folke, which they
abode fore in the yle of Coles, For one of our galleyes
of the blakke hylle that pursyewed them told it to vs, 4
& how they chaced two galleyes of the hospytal of
Rodes / and wete it that pey ne wote not where they
bycame syn, For they taryed after wel by the space
of six dayes in the said yle / but whan they sawe that 8
they came not, they departed thens & came byfore
famagoce at siege.' 'By my feyth, sire,' sayd the
maister of Rodes, 'this might wel be veray trouth. but
see here my lord Vryan and hys brother, that shuld 12
wel ansuere therof, For they haue be aH dyscomfyted
& slayn by theire strengthe & valiauntis, and they haue
gyuen to vs theire fustes & their nauye.' 'In good
feyth,' sayd the knight, 'that playseth me wel, and 16
blessid be god therof.' 'My lord,' said the Captayn,
'now haue I recounted to you why the werre is meued,
and wherefore the saudan of Damaske hath passed the
sec.' 'In the name of god,' said Vryan, 'loue hath 20
wel so moche & more of puyssaunce than of suche
enterpryse to doo. And wete that syn the sawdan is
enterprysed of force of loue, the more he is to be
doubted / For veray soth it is / that loue hath so moche 24
of myght that it maketh coward to be hardy and to
doo right grete enterpryse / & that byfore he durst not
passe. And therefore thenne it is aH certayn to this,
that the sawdan is hardy & enterprenaunt ¹the more 28
he doth hym to be doubted / but alwayes be doo the
wyll of god. For we shaH departe hens to the playsire
of god to morow by tymes after the deuyne servyce
for to goo & vysyte them.' And then he made to be 32
cryed & proclamed *with* the trompette that euery man
shuld make redy hys harneys. and they departed after
the thirde sowne of the trompette in goodly & fayre
ordynaunce, euerone vnder his banere / and bade them 36

- to siew the vanward / and so they dide. here I shaH
 leue to spek of them / and shaH retourne there as I
 lefte to speke of the Captayns newew that moche
 4 strongly rode toward Famagoce / and so moche ex-
 ployted his way that he came about midnyght to the
 Cornere of the wode, vpon a lytil mountayn, & loked
 down into the valeye, and then he bygan to perceyue
 8 & see the oost of the paynemys, where as was grete
 lyght of fyres that were made by the lodgys; and he
 sawe the Cite so aduyronned al about with paynemys,
 that he ne wyst which way to draw for to entre the
 12 toun. and there he was long tyme in grete þoughte.
 It happed that about the spryng of the day foure score
 basynets, straungers of dyuerse nacyons, yssued out at
 a posterne of the Cyte, & commeyd al thoost by
 16 manere of batayH / and that same ooure the watche
 departed, & the moost part of them was retourned to
 theyre lodgis / and they entred in the oost with some
 of them that had watched without they were ware of
 20 hem, & supposed they had be of theirre companye, and
 came nygh to the tente of the sawdan / and thenne
 they bygan to launche & smyte with speeres & with
 swardes on al the paynemys that they mete & re-
 24 countred / and cutted cordes of pauyllons to grete
 desray, & made moche horryble occysyon & slaghtir
 of paynemys after the quantite ¹that they were of.
 Thenne was al the host afrayd, and bygan to crye alarme
 28 & to harneys / then bygan thoost to take on them theirre
 armures. And whan the cristen men sawe the force &
 strengthe of theirre enemyes that bygan to ryse, they
 retourned with a lytel paas toward the Cite, fleeyng &
 32 castyng to therthe al that they recountred on theirre
 waye. And whan the messaunger sawe so grete affraye
 & noyse he cam at al auenture & broched hys hors
 with the spoorys, and passed without fourth the lodges
 36 thugh out aH the oost of þe paynemys / and he had

The Captain's
nephew, that
carried the letter
to the king,

arrived at the
city of Fama-
gosse, sees it
surrounded with
paynims, and
does not know
how to enter it.

At the spring
of day, eighty
basinets leave
the city,

and when the
paynims' watch-
men are in their
tents,

the basinets
fall upon the
paynims, cut
their tent ropes,
and slay many
of them.

¹ fol. 72 b.

But on the host
of the Saracens
arming,

they run back
towards the city.

The messenger
seeing the ad-
venture, spurs
his horse, rides
to the basinets,

and tells of the
arrival of the
Lusignans with
eight thousand
warriors,

which gladdens
them,

and makes the
Sultan sad and
angry.

The flight con-
tinues,
but the paynims
are driven back,
and the Sultan
sounds a retreat.

The messenger
delivers his
letter to the
king,

¹ fol. 73.

who thanks God
on reading it
that he has not
been forgotten.

The king orders
the church bells
to be rung, pro-
cessions to be
made,

not goo long whan he found hymself atwix the Cite &
them that so had commoeuyd thoost, as said is. And
then he knew them soone ynough that they were of the
garnyson of the Cyte, and escryed them, saying: 'ha, 4
ha, fayre lordes, thinke to doo wel, For I bryng you
good tydynges; For the floure of the noble cheualrye
of Crystyante cometh to socoure & helpe you / that is
to wete the two damoyseaulx of Lusynen, that haue 8
dyscomfyted alrely a grete part of the Sodanis folke
vpon the see / and they bryng *with* them wel eyght
thousand men. And thenne whan they understode
hym they made hym grete chere and were ryght joyfuH, 12
and entred the toune ayen *without* eny losse. wherof
the sawdan was moeh wofuH & angry. And then he
came & bygan the searmoushe before the barers &
many paynemys were there slayn & dede / and they 16
of Cypre made theire enemyes to recule abacke *with*
strengthe / and the saudan made the trompette to
sowne & caH the retrette whan he sawe that he myght
doo none other thing. And þen came the said mes- 20
saunger byfore the kyng, & made the reuerence on
hys vnclis byhalue, and presented the *lettre*. And the
kyng receyued hym moche benyngly, & tok away the
wax and opend the *lettre* & sawe the tenour ¹of hit. / 24
and syn heued vp his handes joyntly toward heuen, &
said: 'ha, a veray glorious god, Jhesu Criste, I þank
regracye & mercye the ryght deuoutly & humbly of
this, that thou hast not forgotten me that am thy pouere 28
creature and thy pouere *seruaunt*, that haue long tyme
lyued here *within* this Cite in grete doubte & feere, and
in grete myserye of my pouere lyuyng and my folke also.'
And thenne he made to be annouced in al the chirches, 32
that they shuld ryng theire belles, & that processyons
shuld be made *with* crosses & baners, and *with* torches
brennyng, lawdyng & preysyng the creator of creatures,
prayeng hym moche humbly that he of his *mercyfuH* & 36

benynge grace wyl kepe & preserue them fro the handes
 & daunger of mysbyleuers paynmys. And thanne by-
 gan the ryngyng to be grete, & was the joye ryght
 4 grete whan the tydynges of the socours commyng to
 them was knowen of aH. And whan the paynemys
 vnderstode the gladnes & joye that they of the cyte
 made, they were moche abasshed why they made &
 8 demened so grete feeste. 'By my feyth,' sayd the
 saudan, 'they have herd some tydinges that we wote
 not / or ellis they doo so for to gyue vs vnderstandyng
 that they haue folke ynoughe & vytaylles also for to
 12 deffende & withstande ayenst vs.' And here resteth
 thystorye of the soudan & bygynneth to speke of
 Ermyne the kingis doughtir of Cypre, which herd
 there as she was in her chambre the tydynges of the
 16 socours that the children of Lusynen brought with
 them. and the mayde had grete langyng & desyre to
 knowe the veray trouth of aH.

and God thanked
 and prayed to for
 help.

The paynims are
 abashed at the
 rejoicings of the
 Christians.

The King of
 Cyprus's
 daughter, Er-
 mine,

The hystorye saith to vs thus / that whan the
 20 damoysselle knew of the socours & help that soone
 she sent for hym that had brought the tydinges¹ therof,
 and he came to her in hir chambre & made to her
 the reuerence. 'Frend,' said Ermyne, 'ye be wel-
 24 come to me; but now tell me of your tydinges.' and
 he recounted to her al that was of it. 'Frende,' said
 the mayde, 'have ye seen that folke that commeth to
 socoure my fader?' 'By my feyth, ye,' said the mes-
 28 sanger, 'they are the moost appert in armes, and the
 fayrest men that euer entred in to this land, and the
 best arayed & purueyed of aH thinges.' 'Now tell us,'
 said the damoysselle, 'of what land they are, & who is
 32 the chief Captayn & lord of them.' 'By my feyth, my
 damoysselle, they be of Poytou, and lede them two
 yong & fayre damoyseaulx brethren, that be named of
 Lusynen, of whiche theldest is called Vryan, & that
 36 youngest Guyon, which have not yet berde full growen.'

¹ fol. 73 b.

on hearing of the
 help, sends for
 the messenger,
 and questions
 him.

The messenger
 tells of the men
 who have come
 to succour the
 king:

of the captains
 of them, Urian
 and Guion,

and of their
looks.

¹ fol. 74.

Ermine sends an
ouch to Urian,
and a ring to
Guion, by the
messenger,
and bids him
salute them on
her behalf.

The king gives
the messenger
an answer to
the letter he
brought,

and to divert the
attention of the
enemy, orders
another sortie.

Upon which the
messenger goes
out at another
gate,

‘Frende,’ said the damoysele, ‘be they so fayre damoyseaux as ye say?’ ‘By my feyth,’ said the messenger / ‘the eldest is moche grete & hye, strong & of fayre behauyng & maynten, but hys vysage is short & large 4 in trauerse / and hath one eye redde, & that other ey is perske & blew, and the eerys grete to merueyH. and wete it wel that of membres & of body he is the fayrest knight that euer I sawe / and the yongest is not of so 8 hye stature / but he is moche fayre & wel shapen of membres, & hath a face to deuysel, except that one of his eyen is hyer sette than the other is. and seye alle that see them, that they be worthy & noble to conquere 12 & subdue vnder them all the world.’ ‘Frende,’ sayd Ermyne, ‘shaH ye goo agayn soone toward them.’ And he ansuerd, ‘my damoysele, assoone as I may haue tyme & place conuenable & propyce for to yssue & go out of 16 the Cite, and that I see I may goodly escape fro the paynemys.’ ‘Frend,’ said the damoysele, ‘ye shal on my behalue salue the yong brethern, and ye shaH delyuere to the eldest this ouch, ¹and telle hym bere it 20 for the loue of me / and this ryng of gold with this dyamond ye shal take to be lesse, and ye shaH salew hym moche on my byhalf.’ And he ansuered, ‘my damoysele, I shall doo it righte gladly.’ He thanne 24 departed fro her & came to the king that had doon writ his ansuere in a *lettre*, and made grete foyson of men of armes to arme them redyly, and them made he to yssue couertly out of the cyte and entred in to the 28 oost / and or the oost were armed they adommaged them sore. And þen yssued paynemys out of their tentes without eny aray, that rechaced them vnto the barrers, where they had grete scarmusshyng & fyers, 32 and many men slayn & wounded of bothe partes. All thoost arryued where the scarmusshing was / and ther whyles was the said messenger putte out of the Cite att another gate, a bow shotte fro all the oost, so that 36

he was nat perceyued. And thenne he rode lastly toward hys vncle. For moche he langed that he myght there be arryued for to shew hym aH the tydyinges.

and rides to his uncle

4 And dured not long the scarmoushe, For the sawdan made it to be cessed, For he sawe wel that he shuld more lese there than wyne. Now I shal leue to speke of this forsaid matere / and shaH retourne to speke of

The Sultan soon orders his men to retreat.

8 Vryan & of his brother.

In this parte telleth thistory that Uryan dide hys trompettes to be blowen at the spring of the day, & roos & commanded euery man to appareyH hym,

At the spring of the day, Urian commands his host to prepare to march.

12 and put saddelles on theire horses / and soone after the two brethern herd theire masse, & semblably dyde the other prynces & barons / and after the masse Vryan made to crye, that who wold drynk ones shuld drynk,

16 and that ootis shuld be gyuen to the horses, and that at the other tyme that the trompette shuld be blowen, eueryman shuld be redy that was of the ¹ Vanwarde.

¹ fol. 74 b.

And they beyng in such estate, the Capteyns newew arryued there, and delyuered the *lettre* to hys vncle, that the kyng had taken to hym / and the Captayn toke & kyssed it fourthwith, openð it, and sawe by the tenour of it how the kyng commanded hym to putte

At that time the messenger returns from the king.

24 bothe the fortresse and the toun at the wyH & commandement of the two bretheren. Also that he shuld commande to aH good tounnes, Castels, Fortresses, portes, hauens, & passages that they shuld gyue them

The Captain reads the answer, which commands all the land to be given in charge of the brethren, Urian and Guion,

28 entre & soiourne, and that they shuld obey to them.

And whan the Captayn sawe & vnderstode aH þe substance & matere of it, he shewed the *lettre* to Vryan, & to guyon hys brother, the whiche redde it; & whan they

to whom the letter is shown.

32 knew the tenour of it they called to them the captayn, the maister of Rodes, & the two knightes, that had anonced to them thauenture of the siege, and redde to them the *lettre* on hye. 'Thenue,' said Uryan to the

36 Captayn, 'we thanke moche the king of the worship

Urian thanks
the Captain for
the king's inten-
tions,

and asks what
force the
Cyprians have
in all their
fortresses;

because he
wishes to fight
the Sultan, and
end the war.

The Captain
says that would
be hard to do,
because the
paynims have
one hundred
thousand men.

¹ fol. 75.

Urian replies
they have a good
cause,

that victory lies
not on the side
of numbers,

and that Alex-
ander fought
the world with
twenty thousand
men.

Which speech
cheered the
Captain,

who promised
a company of
eight thousand
men;

which Urian says
is enough.

that he doth to vs / but as to vs, our enteneyon is not
to entre in to thoos tounes ne castelles, yf we may
goodly passe *without* fourth, For we thinke to kepe the
feldes, yf god wyl, & make good werre ayenst the 4
sodan, but telle vs what nombre of men may yssue out
of all your garnysons the Fortresses alwayes kept / and
wete it þat force is to vs to knowe it / and yf they be
men of whom we dare trust and be assured / For god 8
before we tende & purpose to gyue bataylle to the
Sawdan, & to putte to termynacioun, & ende this warre.
For therfore are we come hither.' 'By my faith,'
said the Captayn, 'that shal be hard to doo, For þe 12
paynemys are in nombre wel C^{ML} and more.' 'Care
you not, therefore,' said Vryan, 'For we haue good
right in oure caas / they are come vpon vs *without*
cause / and though we had goon on them ¹vnto their 16
owne lande, we ought to doo soo, For they are enemyes
of god / and doubteles though they be of grete nombre
to the regarde of our felawship / yet one grayne of
peper alone smertith more on mans tonge than doth 20
a sacke full of whette / ne victorye also lyeth not in
grette multitude of people / but in good rule & ordyn-
aunce. And wel it is trouth that Alexander, that sub-
dued so many & dyuerse landes, wold not haue *with* 24
hym aboue the nombre of xxⁱⁱ thousand fyghtyng men
for one journey ayenst all the world. And thanne
whan the Captayne herd hym speke so valyauntly, he
held it to grete wele & valeur, and thoughte he was 28
wel able & worthy to conquere & subdue many landes,
and said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, I shall enforce
your oost *with* foure thousand fighting men, and of two
thousand brygandyners & crosbowes, & other.' 'By 32
my feyth,' said Vryan, 'that is ynoughe / now doo
that we may haue hem to half a journey nygh oure
enemyes,' and he ansuerd there shuld be no fawte of
it. And then came there the Captayns newew, and 36

kneled byfore Vryan & Guyon, and said to them in
 this manere: 'Noble damoyseaulx / the moost fayre
 mayde / & the moost noble that I knowe salueth you
 4 bothe, and sendeth you of her jewels' / and thenne he
 toke the ouche of gold that was sette with many a ryche
 & precyous stone / and said thus to Vryan: 'Sire, hold
 & receyue this ouche of Ermynes byhalf, doughter to
 8 my liege lord the kyng', that requyreth & besecheþ you
 to were it on you for her sake.' Vryan toke it joy-
 ously, and made it to be attached & sette it on his
 cotte of armes, and said to hym: 'My frende, right
 12 grete thankes & thousand merceys to the damoysele
 tha so moche honour sheweth to me / Wete ¹ it that I
 shaH kepe it moche dere for her sake / and gramercy
 to you messanger & brynger of it.' And after he pre-
 16 sented and toke to Guyon the ring on the forsaid
 damoysele byhalf / and that she prayed hym to bere
 it for the loue & sake of her / And guyon ansuerd that
 so shuld he doo, and putte it on his fynger / and
 20 thanked moche the damoysele / and þe messenger also /
 and the brethern gaf moche ryche yestis to the same
 messager. And soone after the trompette blew, and
 eueryman putte hym self fourth on hys way. and
 24 there myght men be seen in fayre & good ordynaunce.
 And the Captayn sent to aH the Fortresses & tounes,
 and made to yssue out & assemble togidre aH the men
 of armes / and wel were of them aboue the nombre
 28 that the Captayn had sayd to the two bretheren fyue
 hondred more. Vryan thenne lodged hym and hys
 felawship on a lytil ryuere / and on the morne erly
 they departed, and went fourth tyl they came a lytil
 32 byfore mydday, in a fayre medowe, nygh to a grete
 ryuere / and there foyson of trees / also there was
 a quarter of a leghe thens a grete bridge, where they
 muste passe / and fro that bridge vnto Famagoce were
 36 but seven leghe / and there made Vryan hys folke to

The messenger
 presents Urian
 with the ouche
 from Ermine,

who takes it
 joyfully, and
 attaches it to his
 coat of arms,

¹ fol. 75 b.

and says he will
 keep it for her
 sake.

Guion is pre-
 sented with the
 ring, and puts it
 on his finger.

The brethern
 give rich gifts to
 the messenger.
 The trumpets
 are sounded,
 and the men get
 under arms.

The captain
 assembles from
 the fortresses
 the company he
 promised,

and Urian
 marches his
 army within
 seven legues of
 Famagosse,
 nigh a great
 bridge,

where they
abide for the
night.

Some knights go
to the bridge,
and see fifteen
armed men,

and on the other
side of it four
hundred.

¹ fol. 76.

The fifteen, on
being asked,
say that they are
Christians,
and the other
company pay-
nimus, who have
fought them,
and killed one
hundred of their
company.

Urian's knights
help the small
company of
Christians;

be lodged, and said he wold abyde *pere* the said Captayn and his men that he shuld bring *with* hym. There they laye that nyght, and abode tyl the morne noone. but alwayes some knightes were goon for their dys- 4 porte vnto the said bridge, and aspyed there about xv men of armes that were descended therat / and had their speeris in their fystes, and the salades after the guyse that they armed them in that Countre / and of 8 another syde they sawe come about foure hundred men ¹of armes, that peyned them self moche for to passe ouer for to greue them of the other side / thanne came one of our Knightes that escryed them, & de- 12 manded of them what they were / and one of them ansuerd, 'we are Cristen / and they that ye see at the other side of the watre are paynemys, that come for fourrage about the Countre / they haue mete & faught 16 *with* vs, and they haue slayn wel an C good men that were of our felawship.' 'Now, fayre lordes,' said oure knyght, 'yf ye can hold you, ye shal soone haue socours & ayde.' And thenne the knight broched his hors, 20 and waloped toward his felawes, and recounted to them shortly all thauenture. And whan they vnderstode this they hastily came to the oost, and mete *with* xx^{ti} crosbowes men, to whom they bade they 24 shuld hye þem toward the bridge for to help the xv men of armes that were there ayenst thenmyes. And whan they vnderstode this they walked fast, & came nigh to the bridge, and sawe thre cristen that were 28 ouerthrowen on the bridge by strokkes of speeris. 'Fourth,' said then one of them, 'we tary to longe / perceyue you not how this Dogges oppresen vylaynly these valyaunt & worthy crystens?' / and anone they 32 bended þeir crosbowes, & shot all at ones / and ouerthrowe down on the bridge fro their horses with that first shotte xxii^{ti} paynemys. Whan the mysbyleuers paynemys sawe this they were sore abasshed, and 36

- withdrew themself somewhat backward fro the bridge.
 Thenne yede the cristen men, and releuyd vp their
 felawes that were ouerthrawn on the bridge / and
 4 thenne they made grete joye & toke good herte / and
 the ¹Crosbowe men shote so ofte & so strong, that
 there ne was so bold a paynem that durst putte his
 foot on the bridghe / but made to come there their
 8 archers, & thenne bygan the scarmusshing strong &
 grete and moche mortal. but betre had be to the
 paynemys that they had withdrawe them self apart,
 For the knightes came to the oost and rehersed to
 12 Uryan the tydings therof, the whiche moch appertly
 armed hymself, and made hastily a thousand men of
 armes to take their harneys on them, & rode forth
 toward the bridge / and ordeyned another thousand
 16 men of armes, & C crosbowe men to folowe hym, yf he
 nede had of them / and commanded that all the oost
 shuld be in ordynaunce of batayH, & betoke it to the
 keypyng & gouernaunce of guyon his brother, and of
 20 the maister of Rodes. Uryan thanne made the stand-
 arde to passe fourth rydyng in batayH moche ordyn-
 atly / and was Vryan before, hauyng a staf on hys
 fyste, & held them wel togidre, and so vnyed, that
 24 one marched nothing afore that other. But or they
 were come to the bridge there were come eight thou-
 sand paynemys, that moche strongly oppressed our
 folke, and had putte them almost fro the bridge. but
 28 anoone came there Vryan, whiche alyghted / toke hys
 speere, & so dyde hys folke moche appertly / and
 made hys banere to be dysployed abrode / and were
 the crosbowe men on bothe sydes of hym vpon the
 32 bridge / and then they marched fourth, and bygan to
 oppresse and rebuke sore the paynemys, and made
 them to withdrawe bakkwarde. And there Vryan
 cryed 'Lusynen' with a hye voys & lowde, and yede
 36 & marched ayenst hys enemys, hys banere euer byfore

and rescue some
of their friends
on the bridge
from the pay-
nimis,

¹ fol. 76 b.

who retire
to bring up their
archers.

Urian hears of
the skirmish,

and rides with a
thousand men to
the bridge,

leaving his host
in charge of
Guion.

Eight thousand
paynimis come
against him,
who at first press
his company,

but are at last
repulsed.
Urian crying
'Lusignan!'
rushes with his
men against the
enemy.

¹ fol. 77. hym. ¹and hys men after that assaylled the fals dogges
moche asprely, Whiche of the other syde bygan to
launche & to smyte. Uryan smote a paynem on þe
brest with hys speere so demesurably, that hys spere 4
apered at back syde of hym. they medled them
fyersly togidre. but at last the paynemys lost the
drives them over the bridge,
bridge, and many of them fell down in to the ryuere.
And thenne passed the crystens the bridge lyghtly / 8
presses them hard,
and there bygan the baytayH moche cruel, For many
were there sore hurte & slayn on both partyes. but
euer the paynemys were putte abak, & lost moche of
ground. Vryan made to passe the horses, for wel he 12
and gets his horses over the bridge.
perceyued that his enemyes wold mounte on their
horses to putte them self to flyght. Thenne came the
His rear coming up frightens the paynims,
arregarde that asprely passed ouer the bridge / and
whan the paynemys perceyued them they were sore 16
who flee toward their friends.
affrayed / and who that myght flee, fledd toward their
folke that lede theyre proye, oxen, kyn & shep, swynes
& othre troussage. Uryan than lepte on horsback, and
made hys folke to doo soo, & commanded the arrer- 20
garde that passed them ouer the bridge, that they
shuld folowe hym in fayre ordynaunce of bataylle /
and so they dyde / and Uryan & hys folke chaced the
Urian's company chase the pagans,
paynemys that fledd sore chaffed & aferd, For al they 24
that were by Uryan, & they of hys felawship atteyned,
kill many,
were putte to deth / and endured the chasse with grete
occysyon & slaughter þe space of fyue ooures & more.
And thenne the paynemys ouertoke theyre folke, & 28
made them to leue behynd them alle theyre proy,
& came vpon a grete mountayne toward Famagoce /
and þer the paynemys reasssembled, & putte them self
in ²ordynaunce. but there came Vryan & his folke, 32
their speris on their fystes alowe / at that recount-
ryng were many one slayn & wounded sore, of one
syde & of other / the paynemys susteyned the stoure
strongly, For they were a grete nombre of folke. but 36
and cause them to leave their spoil.
The paynims rally with their friends upon a mountain,
² fol. 77 b.

- Uryan assaylled them vygourously / and so moche he
 dide there of armes that aH were abasshed, and had
 grete wonder of it. Then came thither the arregarde
 4 that was of a thousand men of armes, & C crosbowe
 men which entred, & marched sodaynly vpon theyre
 enemyes, & faught so strongly that the paynemys were
 putte abacke, & lost ground. and so fyersly was
 8 shewed there the cheualry & hardynes of Cristen folke,
 that soone they had the vycory, and putte theyre
 enmys to flight, of whiche lay dede on the place foure
 thousand & more, *without* them that were slayn at for-
 12 sayd bridge / and the chasso endured vnto nygh the
 oost & siege of the paynemys. Thenne Vryan made
 hys folke to *wylldrawe* them, and ledd *wylld* them the
 proye that the paynemys had lefte behynd. And
 16 thus within a short while they eslongyd ferre one fro
 other / and *our* folke retourned to the bridge / and the
 paynemys went fourth to their oost cryeng alarme.
 Wherfore euery man went to harneys, & yssued out of
 20 their tentes / and thenne one of them recounted to
 the sawdan all thaduenture *pat* happed to them. And
 whan the sawdan herd of it, he wondred mochi who
 might haue brought *pat* folke, that so grete harme &
 24 *dommage* had born vnto hym. Thanne was there grete
 affray in thoost, & grete noyse of trompettes. Wherof
 they of the Cite merueylled what thing it might be, &
 armed them self / and eueryone was in his garde / and
 28 there ¹came to the gate one of the knightes that were
 at forsayd brydge, whiche had putte hym in auenture
 to passe thugh aH thoost, and knewe the convyne² of
 one parte & of other, also the grete fayttes of armes that
 32 Vryan had don / he escryed *hye wylld* a lowde voys /
 'open the gate! For I bring you good tydynges.' And
 thenne they demanded of hym what he was / and he
 ansuerd, 'I am one of the knightes of the fortres of the

but Urian and
his guard

again put them
to flight,
and slay another
four thousand
of them;

after which
Urian retires
with the booty.

The paynims
alarm the
Sultan,
who is surprised,
and wonders who
can have so de-
feated his men;

he sounds his
trumpets,
which alarm the
people in Fama-
gosse, and they
arm themselves.

¹ fol. 78.

A knight of
Urian's arrives
at the town,

and tells them
that he brings
good tidings;

being led before
the King of
Cyprus,

he recounts the
victory.

The king is glad,

and sends the
knight to his
daughter,

² fol. 78 b.

who asks about
the battle,
and Urian.

The knight says
Urian is the
bravest and
strongest knight
he has ever
secn.,

blak mountayne.' And thanne they opend the gate,
and he entred, and they ledd hym toward the king,
that soone knew hym. For other tyme he had seen
hym. The knight then enclyned hym before the 4
king, and made to hym the reuerence / and the kinge
receyued hym moche benyngly / and demanded to hym
som tydynges; and he reherced to hym worde by word
all the faytte / and how Vryan dyde, & had rescued 8
the proye / also of thauenture of the bridge, and alle
other thinges, & how hys entencion & wylle was for to
gyue batayH to the sawdan, and to reyse the siege / &
that shortly / 'By my feyth,' sayd the kyng, 'that 12
man ought me god wyH, for to rescue my land of the
fel & cruel dogges paynemys / and for the holy feyth
crysten to susteyne & enhaunse / and, certaynly, ¹I
shaH to morne doo fele to the sawdan þat my socour 16
& help is nygh redy to my behauf & playsire, & that
I doubte hym not of nothing.' 'My frende,' said the
kyng to the knyght, 'goo & say these good tydynges to
my doughter.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'right gladly.' 20
Then came he in to the chambre where the mayde
was, and ²moche humbly salued her, and reherced to
her all the auenture. 'How, sire knight,' said she,
'were ye at that bataylle?' 'By my feyth, damoysele,' 24
ansuerde the knight, 'ye.' 'And how,' sayd she, 'that
knyght that hath so straunge a face, is he such a fyghter
as men saye?' 'By my feyth, my damoysele, ye
more than a houndred tymes / For he ne dreddeth no 28
man, al be he neuer so grete & so pusysaunt. And
wete it what that men saye to you of hym / he is one
of the moost preu & hardy knightes that euer I sawe in
my lyf.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the damoysele, 'yf he 32
had now hyerid you for to preyse & speke wel of hym,
he hath wel employed hys coste.' 'By my feyth, my
damoysele, I spake neuer with hym. but yet he is betre

¹ Fr. *Je ferai demain sentir*.

- worthy than I telle you.' Then she answered to the knight, 'goodnes & bounte is betre than fayrenes & beaulte.' And here leueth thystorye to speke of the
 4 mayde / and retourneth to Vryan, þat abode at the bridge, and founde hys oost lodged at this syde of the bridge / And also the Captayne þat had brought the men of armes, that he leuyed fro the garnysones & for-
 8 stresses vnto the nombre of V^{ML} men of armes, with two thousand V. C. crosbowe men / and also there were many footmen / And þey were alle lodged in the medowe at the other syde of the ryuere. Where
 12 Vryan found his pauyllon dressed vp / and the other that had be at the pursyewte & chaas of the paynemys, they lodged þem that nyght the best wyse they coude, & made good watche. And here resteth thystory ther-
 16 of, and bygynneth to speke of the kyng of Cypre, that was moche joyous & glad of the socours that was come to hym / and regraeyed deuoutely our lord of it / and in that party passed the nyght. But who
 20 someuer was glad that was Ermyne, For she coude not by no manere in the world haue out of her thoughte Vryan, ²and desired moche to see hym for the well that it was said of hym / in so moche that she said in
 24 herself, that yf he now had the vysage more straunge & more contrefaytte than he had / yet he is wel shappen for his proesse & bounte to haue the doughtir of the moost high kyng in the world to hys paramour. And
 28 so thoughte the damoysselle al the nyght on Vryan, For loue by hys grete power had broughte her therto. Here resteth thystorye to speke of her, & bygynneth to speke of the kyng her fader.
- 32 **T**he hystorye recounteth here, that on the morne at the spryng of the day, the kyng had hys folke all redy, & yssued out of the Cyte with a thousand men of armes, and wel a thousand of Crosbowemen;

Urian rests that night in his tent.

The King of Cyprus was glad at the victory,

and his daughter Ermine thought ever of Urian,

² fol. 79.

his strange visage, and his bravery,

because love by its great power had hold of her.

In the morning the king with a host

¹ Fr. *Amy, bonté vaulx mieulx que beaulté.*

went out of the
city and fought
the enemy,

giving no
quarter.

The paynims
come in great
force,

and the King of
Cyprus shows
great bravery.

² fol. 79 b.

The Sultan,
bearing a
poisoned dart,
comes with a
great company,
and seeing the
king, strikes him
on the left side
with it,

which causes the
king great
anguish. He
pulls out the
dart, and throws
it at the Sultan,
but missing him
it kills a paynim
warrior.

and some brygandyners were embusshed at bothe
thendes of the barrers, for to helpe & socoure hym yf
he were to moche oppressyd by the paynemys. And
pen the king entred in to thoost, & bare grete damage 4
to hys enemys. For he had commanded vpon peyne
of deth that none shuld take eny prysoner, but that
they shuld putte aH to deth / and this dide he for
cause they shuld not tende to the dyspoylle & proye, 8
and that at laste he myght gader them ayen togidre for
to withdrawe them without ony losse. And then the
oost began to be mevyd / and who best coude of the
paynemys came to the medlee. And whan the king 12
perceyued that they cam with puyssaunce, he remysed
hys folke togidre, and made to withdraw them al the
lytil pas, and came behynde, the swerd in his fyst.
And whan he sawe a knight approuche, he retourned 16
& made hym to recule abacke. but yf he atteyned
hym, he chastysed hym so that he no more had
langyng to siew¹ hym. And there the kyng dide so
wel & so valyauntly, that euery one sayd he was 20
moche preu & worthy of his hand / and there ne ²was
so hardy payneme that oo stroke durst abyde. Then
came the Sawdan with a grete route of paynemes,
armed on a grete hors, that held a dart envenymed. 24
And thanne whan he aspyed the king, that so euyl
demened his folke, he cast at hym the darte yre, &
hytte hym at the synester syde, in suche wyse that he
perced hym thugh & thrughe, For hys harneys coude 28
neuer waraunt hym / And soone after the kyng felt
grete anguysshe, and drew the dart out of hys syde,
and supposed to haue cast it agayn to the Sawdan / but
the Sawdan tourned hys hors so appertly that the dart 32
flough besyde hym, & smote a payneme thugh the
body in suche wyse that he feH doune dede. And
whan the sawdan, that ouermoeche had auauuced hym

¹ Fr. *suyrir*.

- self, wende to haue retourned, the kyng smote hym
 with his swerd vpon the heed of hym, that he ouer-
 threw hym to therthe. Thenne cam the paynemes
 4 there so strong that they made the kyng & hys folke
 to withdraw backe / and thenne was the sawdan
 redressed & remounted agayn vpon a grete hors. And
 thenne was þe prees grete, and the paynemes were
 8 strong / in so moche that they made the kyng & his
 folke to withdrawe vnto theire barrers. Thanne bygan
 the Cyprians, that kept the passage there, to shote &
 to launche on the paynemes so strong that they dyed
 12 the place with the blood of theire enemyes. but so
 strong were the paynemys, that they gaynstode the
 crysten / and also the king had lost moche of hys
 blood, & waxed feble, and hys folke bygane to be
 16 abasshed. And how be it that the king suffred moche
 dolour & payne, neuertheles he resioysshed moche hys
 people & encouraged them, and so moche they dide
 that the fals paynemes might gete nothing on them /
 20 but that they lost twyces ¹asmoche more / and was
 the scarmusshing moche fyers & peryllous. And thus
 the kyng of Cypre, by hys valyaunce & noble herte,
 recomforted his folke. and though he felt grete payne
 24 & woo, he full wel remysed hys folke into the toun.
 And it was grete meruayll how so grete a lord, wounded
 to the deth, myght sytte on horsbake / but the stroke
 was noping mortall but for the venyme, For the dart
 28 was envenymed / and wel it appered within a lytil
 tyme after, For he deyde of that same stroke. but for
 certayn he had the herte so full of valiauntnes, as the
 faytte shewed it, that he ne dayned not make signe
 32 of eny bewayllyng before his folke, vnto tyme that one
 of the barons perceyued att his senyster syde dyed with
 bloode / the whiche Baron sayd to the king: 'Sire,
 ye abyde to long here / come & make your folke to
 36 withdrawe them in to the toun or it be more late,

The Sultan, ad-
 vancing too near
 the king, is over-
 thrown by him,

but is rescued by
 his people,

who at last drive
 the Cyprians
 back;

but these shoot
 so well that
 many paynims
 are killed.

The king now
 begins to be faint
 from loss of
 blood.

His people are
 abasshed, but,
 encouraged by
 him, they fight
 well, and slay
 many more of
 their enemies.

¹ fol. 80.

At last he con-
 ducts his folk to
 the town, still on
 horseback.
 Though suffer-
 ing from the
 poisoned wound,

he makes no sign
 of pain, but a
 baron seeing the
 blood on his side
 advises him to
 withdraw.

This baron with
some archers
continues the
fight,

which makes the
Sultan angry,
who calls on his
people 'to do
well,'

upon which
they fight
vigorously.

The king, though
in great pain,
comes to the
rescue,

² fol. 80 b.

and the paynims
are driven back;

afterwards the
king and his
people return
to the town,
where they learn
of the king's
wound; at which
they mourn.

The king en-
courages them,

and tells them
he may soon be
healed,

For the nyght approucheth / to thende that your
enmyes putte not them self thurgh the medlee emong'
vs.' The kyng, whiche felt grete sorowe, ansuerd to
hym thus: 'Doo therof after your wylle.' This knyght 4
thenne made a houndred men of armes, that were
reffresshed, to come before the barriere, & made to
bygynne ayen the scarmussing with an C crosbowe
men; and so were the paynemes sette abacke, wherof 8
the sawdan was full of grete anger, and escryed to
hys folke: 'fourth lordes & barons, peyne your self
to doo wel, For the toun shalbe oures this day: hit
may not escape vs.' And thenne enforced ayen the 12
medlee. And there ye had see wel assaylled &
ryght wel deffended, of that one part & of that other.
But whan the kinge of Cypre sawe that the paynemes
strengthened them soo, he toke courage grete, & ranne 16
vpon them vygourously / and there he suffred so moche
peyne pat all the synewes¹ of hys body were open,
wherof, as some ²sayen, his lyf was shorted / and by
that same enuahissing were putte aback the paynemes, 20
& many of them wer slayn & sore wounded. The nyght
thenne approuched, and was nygh / and grete harme
& losse was there of both partes. but alwayes the
paynemes withdrew them vnto theire oost, For the 24
king encouraged hys folk soo that they ne doubted no
stroke nomore than yf pey had be of yron or of stele.
And whan the paynems were departed, the kinge &
hys folke retourned in to the toun. And whan they 28.
knew the euyl auenture of theire king, they beganne to
sorowe & to make grete dueil. And the kynge, that
sawe this, sayd to them: 'My good folke, make no
suche waymenting¹ ne sorowe, but thinke wel to def- 32
fende you ayenst the Sawdan / and god our sauour
shalbe at your ayde & helpe, For yf it playse hym I
shaH soone be heeled.' Thenne was the people peased

¹ Fr. *vaines*.

- ayen. but neuerþeles, the kyng that said suche wordes
 for to resioysshē hys peuple, felt in hym self that he
 coude not escape fro deth. And thenne he commanded
 4 to his folke they shuld make good watche, and gaf
 hem leue, & came to the palleyes, and there alyghted
 & yede in to hys chambre / And thenne came hys
 doughter, that somewhat had vnderstand of hys mys-
 8 aventure. but whan she perceyued that hys harneys
 was all rede with bloode, and sawe his wounde, she
 fell down in a swoune, & lay as she had be deed.
 Thenne commanded the kyng that she shuld be borne
 12 in to her chambre / and so it was doon. After the
 Cyrurgiens came to see the kingis wounde, and was
 leyd on his backe along his beed / and they told hym
 that he was saaf fro perill of deth, and that he shuld
 16 not be abasshed. 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'I
 wote wel how it is *with* me / the wylle of god be doo /
 hit may not be kepte so secretly but that it shalbe
 knownen thurgh the Cyte.' And thenne byganne þe
 20 sorowe moche grete among the Cytezeyns & peple of
 the Cyte, and more *without* comparacion than it was
 byfore. But here resteth thystorye of the kyng & of
 the siege / and shal speke of Vryan and of his brother,
 24 and how they exployted afterward. /
- I**n this parte, saith thystorye, that on the morow
 erly, that was thursday, was Vryan after hys masse
 herde byfore hys tente / and there he made come,
 28 one after other, all the Captayns & chieftayns *with*
 their penons & standarts, and their folke vnder them
 all armed of all pieces, for to behold & vsyte their
 harneys, yf eny thing wanted / as wel the straungers /
 32 as hys owne folke / and beheld wel the mayntene &
 countenance of them. And after this was doo he
 made them to be nombred / and they were founde by
 extymacion about ix. or ten thousand fyghting men.
 36 Thenne said to them Vryan: 'Lyste, all fayre lordes,

but at the same
 tyme he knew
 he was near
 death.
 The king orders
 good watch to be
 kept;

is visited by his
 daughter,

who faints at the
 sight of his
 wound and the
 blood on his
 armour.

The surgeons
 tell the king he
 is safe;

but the king says
 he knows well
 how it is with
 him.

1 fol. 81.

The people of
 the city mourn
 for their king.

In the morning
 Urian hears
 mass,

reviews and
 numbers his
 men,

finding between
 nine or ten
 thousand in all.

He addresses
 them.

'It is their duty
to maintain the
faith of Christ,
who died for
them,

even at peril
of life,

though our
enemies are ten
to one against us.

Alone, Christ
fought for our
redemption.

² fol. 81 b.

If you die,
salvation and
Paradise awaits
you.

Soon I will
march;

but if there be
any whose heart
is not steadfast,
let him with-
draw,

for one coward
has often spoiled
a great under-
taking.

we are here assembled for to susteyne the feyth of Jeshu
cryste, of the whiche he vs alle hath regenered and
saued / as eche of vs knoweth wel ynoughe how he
suffred cruel deth for the loue of vs, to thende he 4
shuld bye vs ayen fro the peynes of helle. Wherefore
lordis, seen & considered in our hertes that he hath
doon to vs suche a grace, we ought not to reffuse the
deth, or such auenture as he shal gyue vs, for to 8
deffende & susteyne the holy sacrements that he hath
admynstred vs for the saluacion of our sowles /
though that we now haue adoo *with* strong partye.
For our enmys ben tene ayenst one to the regarde of 12
vs / but what therof we haue good ryght, For they
are come to assayll vs *without* cause vnto our right
herytage / and also we ought not to resoynne ne
dylaye therefore. For Jhesu Criste toke alone the warre 16
for our redempcion, And by hys deth alle good folke
that kepen his *comman*²dements shal be saued. ye
oughte thenne to vnderstand aH certaynly, that alle
thoo that shuH dye in this quarelle, mayntenynge & 20
enhaunsynge the feyth, shal be saued, & shal haue the
glorye of Paradys / And perfore, fayre lordes, I tell you
in generaH that I haue entencyon, god byfore, to meue
presently for to approche our enmys, and to fyght 24
with them as soone as I may. Wherefore, I praye you
frendly, that yf there be ony man in this place that
feleth not his herte ferme & stedfaste for to *with*stande
& abyde thauenture, such as it shal playse to god to 28
send vs / that he *with*drawe hym self apart fro other,
For by one only Cowarde & feynted herte is sometye
lefte & loste al a hoole werke. and wete it that, al thoo
that wyl not *comme with* their good wyH, as wel of 32
my folke as of other,³ I shaH gyue them money

³ 'Wha will be a traitor-knave?

Wha can fill a coward's grave?

Wha sae base as be a slave?

Let him turn and flee!' (*Scots wha hae.*)

- ynoughie & syluer for theyre sustenaunce & fyndyng
for to passe ouer the see ayen.' After these wordes he
made hys banere to be dressed a bowe shote fro the
4 valey, vpon the mounteyne, and ordeyned hys brother
Guyon for to hold & bere it / and after he said, al on
hye, in heryng of hys folke / 'Ah they that entenden,
& haue deuocion for to auenge the deth of Jeshu
8 criste, to thenhaunsyng of the holy feyth cristen, Also
to ayde & helpe the kynge of Cypre, lete hym with-
drawe hym self vnder my banere / and they that ben
of contrary wyH, lete them passe ouer at the oþer syde
12 of the bridge.' Thanne whan the noble hertes herde
hym saye thoo wordes. they held it to grete wysedome
of hym, & of grete prowessse & worthynes, & went alle
in a companye togider vnder his banere, wepyng for
16 Joye & for pyte of the wordes that Vryan had said /
ne none delayed ne taryed for nothing, but yede all
vnder hys banere, as said is / Thenne was moche
gladde Vryan, and joyous, and anone he made his
20 trompettes to be blowen vp, and all was troussed¹ &
putte them self on theire way. And thanne the
²maister of Rhodes, and the Captayne of Lymasson
putte them self assembled togidre, and rode in fayre
24 batayH, And said wel that ayenst Vryan and his folke
no man shal endure / And thus they rode tyl they
came nygh to the mountayne / and as half way to the
place where the batayH had be the day byfore. 'By
28 my feyth, lordes,' sayd Vryan, 'there nygh that yond
ryuere were good that we went to be there lodged tyl
we were refresshed. And in the meane while we shal
see and aduyse how we shaft for the moost surest way
32 hyndre & adommage our enmyes' / And they ansuerd
that so was good to doo. They went thenne all togider,
to thende they were not founde abrode, & lodged þem
self there. Now leueth here of them thystorye / and
36 bygynneth to speke of the Sawdan. / ¹ Fr. *troussé*.

Urian gives
Guyon his
banner,

and calls on all
who want to
avenge Christ's
death,

and to help the
King of Cyprus,
to come under it,

and march across
the bridge.

The noble hearts
heard him,
and were glad,
and marched
under his
banner.

The trumpets
are sounded,
and the march
begins;

² fol. 82.

they come to a
mountain,

and halt for
refreshment,
and to hold
council.

On the Sultan's
spies telling him
the state of the
city,

and of the soc-
cour coming,
and of the illness
of the king,

he orders an
assault.

The townspeople
defend them-
selves by shoot-
ing stones, pitch,
hot oil,
and overturning
the enemy's
scaling ladders.

The Sultan urges
on the assault,

³ fol. 82 b.

and promises the
first man that
enters the city his
weight in silver.

They attack
vigorously,
and are pelted
with logs of
wood, burning
oil, molten lead,
quick lime,
sulphur, and
brimstone on fire,

and are obliged
to retire,

Thystorye sayth that the Saudan had hys espyes
within the Cite, whiche aspyed secretly þe Con-
vyne of them of the toune. Wherby he knew that
socours & help came to the kyng / and also how 4
the kyng was sore wounded, wherof the people was
gretly troubled. Thanne had the sawdan cause to do
assayh the toune / and he made to blowe trompettes
whan þe sonne was vp, and ordeyned his bataylles, and 8
his Crosbowes & paueys,¹ and came vnto the dyches &
barryers. There bygan the scarmusshing outrageously
fyers / they shotte with Crosbowes demesurably of one
part & of other. There were many paynemes slayn, 12
For they within the toune shotte many gones,² &
cast vpon them fro the batelments of their walles
grete stones, pyche & grece brennyng hoot, and reuersed
them fro the ladders vnto the botome of the dyches. 16
Thenne came the Sawdan fourth, cryeng with a high
voys, 'Now, lordes, deffende yourself worthily, & lete
vs take toune or ony socours come to our enemyes,
For on my god Machomete, he that first shaht entre 20
³the toune, I shaht gyue hym hys pesaunnt or weyght
of syluer in suche estate as he entre in to it.' Who
thenne had see them assaylle & cleme vp to the
walles, and putte them self in parellous passage, he 24
shuld haue be meruaylled. But they that were vpon
the walles within, fourth cast on them ⁴grete logges of
wode, brennyng oyle, lede molten / tonnes & barels
full of vnquynched lyme, and vesselles full of flaxe 28
grecyd with oyle and mixtyouned with brymstone and
sulfer, al ardaunt & brennyng / so that magre them
they were fayn to relenquyshe the place, and to
remounte at another syde of the waht: and there 32

¹ Fr. *pavilliers*. ² Fr. *gros canons et d'esprin galles*.

⁴ Fr. *pierres, pieux agus, huilles chaudes, plong fondu, poinsons plains de chaulx vive, tonneaux plains destouppes engressées et ensouffrées tous ardens*.

abode many paynemys al brent and sore hurt. And
 thanne the Sawdan made thassawte to be strengthed
 with new folke / but they *within* forth deffended them
 4 ful valyauntly as preu & hardy. Also they were more
 vygourous of herte, for that they knew theire socours
 commyyng, that was nygh. Here I shall leue of pis
 matere / and shal say how Vryan dide, whiche had
 8 sent hys espyes to knowe how it was of the siege / And
 they reported to hym how the saudan gaaf grete &
 contynuel sawtes to the Cite / and that *without* shortly
 it were socoured, they were *within* in grete daunger /
 12 and how the kynge was syke & sore wounded. Whan
 vryan and Guyon vnderstode these tydynges, they were
within them self wel angry and fylled with sorowe /
 but no grete semblaunt they made of it, to thende
 16 theire folke shuld not be of lesse courage therfore. /

many burnt
 and hurt.
 The Sultan
 renews the
 assault, but
 the townfolk,
 knowing of the
 socoura, fight
 vigorously.

Urian's spies tell
 of the assault on
 Famagosse,
 and the sore
 need of the
 King of Cyprus,

at which he
 sorrows, but dis-
 sembles his grief.

Cap. XXII. How the Sawdan was slayn byfore Famagoce.¹

² **I**n this parte sayth thystorye, that whan Vryan herde
 20 the tydynges forsaide, he made to sowne his trom-
 pettes, and made thoost to be armed, and departed it
 in foure bataylles; wherof of the first batayll he hym-
 self was conductour, hys brother lede the seconde, the
 24 maister of Rodes was Chieftayn of the iii^{de}; And the
 foureth was conduyted & lede by the Captayn of
 Lymas. And he made to abyde in the valey all the
 sommage, and mad it to be kept *with* a houndred men
 28 of armes and fyfty cros bowemen. And after they by-
 gane to mounte the hille, And fro thens they sawe
 how the paynemes assaylled moche strongly the Cite.
 And thenne Vryan said to his folke / 'Lordes, that
 32 folke is of grete nombre / but no doubtte they be oures /

² fol. 83.

Urian sounds
 to arms,
 and marches his
 host in four
 battalions,

leaving the
 baggage with a
 guard in the
 valley.

At the hill they
 see the battle,
 and the great
 number of the
 pagans.

¹ Famagusta (named by Augustus after the battle of Actium, Fama Augusta), on the west coast of Cyprus, south of the ancient Salamis, the only harbour in the island.

Urian encourages them to expect victory.

1 fol. 83 b.

They march forward; the paynins at first take them for friends, but recognizing them, are sore afraid.

Urian's battalion enters the fight; two other battalions march forward between the enemy's watch and the city.

At last all four battalions march together against the enemy.

The Sultan learns that his camp is captured,

and sees the forces marching against him;

becomes angry, sends for his warriors to retire.

But Urian's battalion falls on them before they have time to do so,

2 fol. 84.

and god before they shalbe dyscomfyted by vs / and that right soone. goo we thenne ayenst theire oost / and so fourth without dylayeng to them that sawten the Cite. ¹and I wene with goddis grace that they 4. shal not endure long ayenst vs.' And they ansuerd, 'that good it was for to doo soo.' Thenne he wold descende the mountayne and haue passed at back syde of the oost; but whan they supposed to haue passed 8 fourth, the paynemes perceyued that they were not of theire folke / they cryed alarme and were sore aferd. Thanne sayd Vryan to the Captayn, that with all his bataill he shuld entre thoost to fight ayenst them that 12 were there. There bygan a mortal medlee, And Vryan and the other two bataylles yede ferther, & putte them self atwix the watche & them that assaylled the Cite / and so long they sawted, that alle they that kepte theire 16 lodgis and of peire watche were slayn and dystroyed, and incontynent all the foure bataylles in fayre ordyn- aunce marched fourth toward the other that strongly assaylled. But one came to the sawdan, and said to 20 hym how the tentes & pauyllons were take, and alle they that kepte them slayn / 'and they that haue doon pat faytte, ye may see them commyng hitherward, the moost strong and fel folke that euer I sawe ne herde 24 speke of.' The saudan thanne loked abacke, and sawe baners & standartis and hys enmyes commyng in fayre ordynaunce / and so nygh togider that they semed not in nombre to be as moche by the half as they were. 28 Thenne was the Saudan abasshed and wood angry / and made to sowne hys trompette to withdrawe & assemble his folke togider. But or they were half assembled, Vryan came first with hys batayll / and with a grete 32 courage ran vpon them moche asprely, And per began thoccesyon & slaughter moche grete / but for certayn the gretest losse tourned on the paynemes, For ²they had no lesse for to putte them self in aray of baytaylle, and 36

were sore wery of thassawte / & none of them were
 vnder his banere whan Vryan and his folke ranne vpon
 them, whiche were aspre & harde and fuH wel wyst
 4 the crafte of armes, wherfore many of the paynemes
 putte them self to flight. But the sawdan, that was ful
 of grete courage & of grete vasselage, realyed his folke
 about hym, & delyuered & gaf ryght a grete sawte to
 8 our folke moche proudly. There were many men slayn
 & sore wounded / and made hym self to be redoubted
 and dradde, For he held a two handes ax / and smote
 with at lyfte syde and at the ryght syde that none
 12 myght susteyne hys strokes that were about hym.
 But whan Vryan perceyued hym þat so sore demened
 his folke, he was fuH woo, and said in hymself, ' By my
 feyth, it is grete pyte & dommage that yonder Turke
 16 byleueth nat on god, For he is moche preu & valyaunt
 of his hand ; but for the dommage that I see he dooth
 on my folke, I ne haue cause to forbere hym ony more /
 and also we be not in place where grete & many wordes
 20 may be holden.' Thenne he braundysshed hys swerd
 and with a fyers contenance rane vpon the Saudan /
 And whan he sawe hym commyng he refused hym not,
 but toke his ax and wende to haue smyten vryan withal
 24 vpon the crosse of the heed / but Vryan eschiewed
 the stroke ; the ax was pesaunt and heuy, and with that
 vayne stroke it scaped fro the Saudans handes. And
 thanne Vryan smote hym vpon the helmet a grete
 28 stroke with all his might / and was the sawdan so sore
 charged with that stroke that he was so astonyed and
 amased that he neyther sawe nor herde, and lost the
 brydel and the steropes, and the hors bare hym where
 32 he wold. And Vryan ¹pursiewed hym nygh, and yet
 agayn atteyned hym with his trenchaunt swerde betwix
 the heed & the sholders, For his helmet was aH vnaced
 and his hawtepyece felt of with the forsaid stroke,
 36 wherfore with his second stroke vryan made hys swerde

kills many of
 them, and puts
 others to flight.

The courageous
 Sultan rallies
 his people,
 and assaults the
 Christian folk
 severely.

Urian seeing the
 bravery of the
 Sultan,

regrets he be-
 lieves not in
 God ;

but because of
 the damage he is
 doing,

rides against
 him,

stuns him,

¹ fol. 81 b.

and with a
second blow
wounds him so
that he falls from
his horse.

At length the
Sultan dies from
loss of blood.

Urian, Guion and
their followers
fight so well

that in a short
time they take
or slay all their
enemies.
After the battle
they lodge in the
pagans' camp,

where the
brethren fairly
divide the booty.

² fol. 85.

The Captain of
Lymas and thirty
knights leave the
brethren and go
to the city,
where they are
received gladly,

to entre in the sawdants flesshe, in so moch that he
detrenched & cutte the two maister vaynes of his nek,
and feH doune fro hys hors to the erthe. And there
was so grete prees of horses of one parte and of other, 4
that the stoure of batayH was there so aspre and so
mortaH that hys folke might not help hym / and lost
so moche of hys blood that he most there deye in grete
dystres & sorowe / And soone after that the paynemes 8
knew that the saudan was deed they were affrayed and
moche abasshed, and neuer aftir they fought with no
good herte. Thanne Vryan and his brother Guyon
esprouued themself there, & faught so strongly, gyuyng 12
grete & pesaunt strokes, that wonder it was to see.
And wete it wel þat bothe Cypryens & Poytevyngs dide
so valyauntly that in short space of tyme they dystroyed
theyre enmyes, whiche were aH slayn or take. And 16
thenne Vryan & his folke lodged them self in the pay-
nems lodgys / and was the sommage of the cristen sent
fore / and the gardes and kepers of it, fayne & glad of
the vycory, came & brought it in to thoost and lodged 20
there / And the two brethern made the Butyn or con-
queste to departe & deele so egaly after euery man had
deseruyd & was worthy, þat none there was but he
was full of Joye & content of it / And here resteth 24
thystorye of Vryan / and shal speke of the capytayne
of Lymas,¹ that soone came to Famagoce.

In this parte telleth vs thystorye that after þe dys-
comfyture of the batayH the Captayne ²departed 28
fro the two brethern, with hym xxx knightes of grete
affayre, and came to the Cite, where the yates were
opend to hym gladly, and entred and found the folke
by the stretes, of whiche some made grete feeste, for 32
þat they sawe them delyuered of their enmyes, and
blessid the heure that euer the children of Lusignen
were borne, and the heure also whan they entred the

¹ Fr. *Lymasson* :—Limassol, on S. coast of Cyprus.

land. And some folke made grete sorowe, grete wepynges, sore lawmentyng¹, and grete bewaylling, for theire kyng þat was wounded to the deth. Wherefore
 4 he wyst not what to thinke, For he knew not yet the kyng was hurt. And so moche he exployted that he came to the palleys, and there he alighted, where he found the people wel mate¹ / and he demanded of them
 8 what they ayled, and yf they wanted of eny thing. 'By my feyth,' said one of them, 'ye / and that ynough; For we lese the moost true & valyaunt man that euer was borne in this royalme.' 'How thanne,' said the
 12 Captayn, 'is the kyng syke?' 'Ha / a! sire,' answered to hym a knight, 'knowe you no more of it? We dide yssue yesterday, and enuahyssed our enmyes / and at retourne of it the sawdan smote our king with a
 16 venymous darte, by so that no remedye nys founde therto / For we supposed euer that these two damoyseaulx had come to our ayde & help at that day, And wete it that the kingis doughtir demeneth suche
 20 heuynes & sorowe, that grete pyte it is to see, For almost two dayes are passed that she ete no manere of mete / woo & euyllhap shalbe to vs yf we lese both our king & our damoysele & lady, For yf that happed the
 24 land were in grete orphanite of bothe lord & of lady.' 'Fayre lordes,' said the Captayne, 'aH is not yet lost that lyeth in pareH. Haue lost² in our lord Jhesu Criste, and he shall helpe you. I pray you lede me toward
 28 the king.' 'By my feyth' / said ³the knight, 'that shaH soone be doo, For he lyth in the next chambre, where euery man may goo as he had no harme / He hath alrede made hys testament, & hath ordeyned &
 32 bequethed of hys owne good to his seruauents, so that euery one is content / and he is confessed & hath receyued our lord, and he is admynystred of aH his rightes & sacrements.' 'By my feyth,' said the Cap-

but find the folk weeping.

The Captain of Lymas proceeds to the palace,

where he learns that the King has been mortally wounded by a poisoned dart,

and that the King's daughter is sore depressed and will not eat.

The Captain asks an audience with the King,

³ fol. 85 b.

who lies in the next chamber. It is granted.

¹ Fr. *mat*.

² Fr. *fiancee*.

On entering,
the Captain
makes his rever-
ence, and is
welcomed by the
King,

who asks him to
bring Urian and
Guion, as he
desires to reward
them for the help
they have given
him.

The Captain
promises to
bring them,

and the King has
the great street
of the city
decorated.

¹ fol. 86.

The Captain re-
lates his news to
the brethren,

and tells how the
King wishes to
reward them.

Urian protests

tayne, 'he is thanne in good caas / and he hath doon as
a wyse man oughte to doo' / And thenne he entred in
to the Chambre & enclyned hym self byfore the kyng
that leye on his beed, and made to hym the reuerence. 4
'Captayne,' said the kinge, 'ye be right welcome /
and I thanke you of the good diligence that ye haue
doo to haue accompanied these two noble men by
whome my land is out of the subgection of the pay-
nemes, For I had no more puyssaunce to gouerne my
folke ne my land / I pray you that ye goo & telle
them on my behalf that pey vouchesaaf to come &
see me or I be deed, For grete wyll I haue to make 12
satisfaction to them to my power of the loue & cur-
toysye that they haue shewed to me ; And also I haue
grete desyre to see & speke with them, for certayn caas
whiche I wyl declare vnto them.' 'My lord,' said the 16
Captayne, 'gladly I shall doo your commandement.'
'Now gooth theunne,' said the kyng, ' & lete hem be to
morne with me by the houre of pryme.' The kinge
thanne commanded that the grete strete where they 20
shuld passe shuld be hanged richely vnto the paleys,
and dyde doo make grete appareyl ayenst their
commyng. And here resteth thistory to speke of the
king / and retourneth to saye of the Captayne. 24

Thistrye saith that so fast rode the Captayne that
soone he came to the oost, and alighted at the
¹tente of the two brethern, that moche humbly receyued
hym. And thenne he recounted to them how the king 28
was sore hurt / and that affectuely he prayed them
that they vouchesaaf to come toward hym, so that he
might thanke them of the noble socours that they
had doon to hym, and to make satisfaction to them of 32
theyre payne & dyspens to his power, and also for to
speke with them of other matere. 'By my feyth,' said
Uryan, 'we are not come hither for to take sawdees²

² Fr. *souldoier pour argent*.

- ne for no syluer / but only to susteyne & enhaunse the
 catholique feyth. And we wol wel þat euery man
 knowe that we haue hauoyr & syluer ynough for to pay
 4 our folke / but alway we right gladly shaH goo toward
 hym. And wete it that I purpose to goo toward the
 king in suche a state as I departed fro the batayH; For
 yf he vouchesaaf I wyl receyue of hym the ordre of
 8 knighthode for the valyaunce & honour that euery man
 sayth of hym. And ye, Captayn, ye may goo and telle
 hym that to morne at that houre he hath poynted
 bothe my brother and I and the maister of Rodes, god
 12 before, we shal be toward hym, and a houndred of our
 moost high barons with vs.' Thenne toke leue the
 Captayne and came to the Cite, where he was receyued
 moch honourably / and soone he came to the paleys,
 16 where he fonde the kyng in also good poynte as he
 lefte hym. And there was his doughter Ermyne, that
 was fuH of sorowe for the euyl of her fader / but
 that notwithstanding she recomforted her self moche of
 20 this that men said to her, that the two damoyseaulx
 shuld come there. And wete it that she moche desyred
 to see Uryan. And thenne the Captayne salued the kyng.
 'Ye be right welcomme,' said the kinge / 'what tydinges
 24 bryng you of youre ¹message / shal I not see that two
 gentil damoyseaulx?' 'Sire, ye,' said the Captayne /
 'they and houndred more with them / and playse you
 to knowe that they wil haue no recompense of you /
 28 For as they saye they be not sawdyours for siluer / but
 pay name them self sawdyours of our lord Jeshu criste.
 And so moche, sire, hath told me Uryan / that to
 morne, god before, or it be fullysshe pryne, he shal
 32 come toward you in suche a poynt & state as he
 came fro the baytaylle; For he wyl receyue thordre
 of cheualrye and to be dowbed knight of your hand.'
 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'I lawde our lord Jeshu-
 36 Criste, whan before my dayes be termyned, it playseth

that his only de-
 sire is to support
 the Cathollic
 faith,
 and that he has
 treasure enough;

he will however
 go to the King
 to be knighted.

The Captain re-
 turns to the King,
 who is still alive
 and pleased to
 see him,

as is his daugh-
 ter, when she
 learns that the
 brethren are
 coming to the
 city

1 fol. 86 b.

The Captain
 delivers his
 message,

for which the
 King thanks his
 Saviour.

hym that I make & dowbe knight one so valyaunt & hye prynce / and wete it I shal therfore deye betre at ease.' And whan Ermyne herd of these tydinges she had so grete joye therfore in her herte, that she coude 4 not holde her coutenaunce ne manere / but therof she made no grete semblaunt, but shewed to haue grete sorowe woo in her herte. She toke thanne leue of her fader / and sore weping kyssed hym moche swetly / 8 and she went into her chambre / and there she bygan to bewaylle her self sore / one houre for the doulour, & woo that she had for her fader / and another heure for the grete joye & desyre that she had of the sight of 12 Vryan, whos taryeng enjoyed her moche / & moche long she was in thoughte so argued and vexed therwith aH, that aH that night she coude not slepe /

In this parte saith thistory, that on the morne erly 16 the king commanded that aH noble and vnnoble shuld make theire houses to be appareylled ¹ & hanged without forth euery one after his power, for to make feste & honour at the commyng of the two brethern and of 20 theyre folke / and that at euery corner of a strete shuld be trompettes and other dyuerse Instruments of musyque making grete melodye / And for certayn the peup'e endeuoyred them self wel / ye / more than the kynge had 24 commanded to be doo. What shuld I make long prologue / the two brethern within pryne came mounted moche nobly vpon two grete coursers / and Vryan was al armed, euen so as whan he came fro the batayH, 28 the swerd naked in his fyst. And Guyon, hys brother, had on a gown of fyn clothe of damaske, rychely fourred / and byfore them rode thretty of the moost hye barons in noble aray / and nygh to them was the 32 maister of Rodes and the Captayn of Lymas. And after the two bretheren came & folowed nygh thre score & ten knightes and theire squyers & pages in her companye / and in fayre aray they entred in to the 36

Hermine rejoices at the news,

she kisses her father, and retires to her room, where she weeps for his wound,

and also for the joy of being about to see the brethren.

¹ fol. 87.

The King commands the inhabitants of the city to decorate their houses, and arranges for music in the streets.

Before prime (6 A.M.) the brethren on two coursers arrive with many of their men. Urien armed as he was at the battle, and Guion in a richly furred damask cloth gown.

- Cyte. There had ye seen the feste begynne moche grete / and the trompettes & menestrels dooyng^r theire crafte / And through the stretes had ye sene folke of
 4 grete honour that were moche wel and richely clothed, whiche cryed *with* a hye voys / 'ha / a welcomme be ye, prynce vycctorious, of whom we hold and are all sus-
 8 of our lord Jeshu Cryst.' There had ye see ladyes & damoysselles at wyndowes in grete nombre / and thaun-
 cyent gentylman & burgeys were merueylled of the grete fyerste of the noble Vryan, that was all armed,
 12 the vysage dyscouered / a grene garland on his hed, an the swerd in his fyst. And the captain bare by-
 fore hym hys helmet on a tronchon of a spere. And whan they perceyued his fyers visage ¹they said be-
 16 twene them self togidre / 'that man is able and shappen for to subdue & putte vndre hym all the world.' 'By my feyth,' said the other, 'he sheweth it wel, For he is entred into this tounne lyke as he had conquerd it.'
 20 'In name of god,' said other / 'the rescue of the daunger of whiche he hath kept vs fro is worth & ynough for a conqueste.' 'Certaynly,' said other, 'though his brother hath not so fyers a face, yet he semeth to be
 24 man of wele & of faytte.' And so talkyng of one thing & of other they conueyed þem vnto the paleys, where they alighted. And here resteth thystorye to speke
 any more of the people / and bygynneth to speke how
 28 the two brethern came before the king /

The welcome is great, what with music,

shouting, decorations, and the press of people.

The townfolk are surprised at Vrian's fierceness,

¹ fol. 87 b.

and say he is able to subdue all the world.

At length the brethren arrive at the palace, where they alight.

Cap. XXIII. How Vryan & Guyon came before the kinge, he beyng in his bed syke.

- ²Thystorye sayth now that the two breþern moche
 32 honourably came & made the reuerens to the kinge / and the kinge receyued them joyously / and thanked them moche graciously of theire ayde & socours /

² fol. 88.

They make reverence to the King, who thanks them for the aid they have given him,

and says they
have saved his
people from
being either slain
or perverted,

and so he owes
them a great
reward.

Urian replies
that he wants
none,

as he desires only
honour, and that
the Catholic
faith may be
strengthened,
and says he would
consider himself
well repaid if he
and his brother
were dubbed
knights.

The King con-
sents and orders
mass to be said;

¹ fol. 83 b.

this done, Urian
kneels before the
King,

asking as his
reward the hon-
our of knight-
hood for himself
and brother.

and said to them / that after god / they were they by
whom he & al his reaume was suscited fro the moost
cruel passage, & more fel þan eny deth, For yf they
had not be, the paynemys had dystroyed them aH / 4
or had constrayned to be conuerted to theire fals lawe,
whiche had be to vs wers & heuyer than ony deth cor-
poraH. For they that to it had consented with herte,
they had had for euermore dampnacion eternel / 'And 8
therefore,' said the kyng, 'it is rayson that I rewarde
you to my power, For I haue none other wyll than to
endeuoyre me þerto / how be it certayn that I may
not acomplysshe to the regarde of the grete honour 12
that ye haue me shewed / but lowly & humbly I be-
seche you to take in worthe my lytil puyssaunce.'
'By my feyth,' said Vryan, 'of this ye ought not to
doubte / For we be not come hither neyther to haue 16
of you gold nor syluer / ne of your tounes, castels, ne
landes / but only to seke honour and for to dystroye
thenemyes of god, and to exalte the feyth catholical /
and I wil, sire, that ye knowe that we hold our payne 20
wel employed, yf ye vouchesaaf to doo vs so moche of
honour that ye wyl dowbe my brother & me knightes
of your hand.' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'noble
damoyseaulx, in asmoche as I am not worthy to acom- 24
plysshe your requeste, I consent to it / but first shaH
the masse be said.' 'Sire,' said Vryan, 'tha me semyth
wel doon.' And thanne the chapellayne ¹was soone
redy. And thenne Vryan, hys brother, and aH other 28
deuoutly herde the messe & the seruyse deuyne, And
after the deuyne seruyse Vryan came tofore the king.
And thenne he drew the swerde out of the shede &
kneled down byfore the kyng, where he laye, and sayd 32
to hym in this manere: 'Sire, I requyre you, for alle
the salary of my seruyce that I haue doo or may doo
in tyme to come, that ye vouchesaf to dowbe me
knight with this swerde / and so shuH ye haue wel 36

rewarded me of aH that ye say that my brother & I
 haue doo for you and for your realme; For of the hand
 of a more valyaunt knyght and noble lord, I ne may
 4 receyue the ordre of knighthe / than of yours.' 'By
 my feyth,' said the kinge / 'damoyseau, ye shew me
 more honour than ye owe me / and ye say moche more
 of me than euer I deserued. but sene I considered
 8 that grete honour is to me to dowbe you knight, I am
 agreable therto / but after that I haue acomplysshed
 your requeste, ye shaH couenaunt with me yf it
 playse you to graunte me a yefte, the whiche shal not
 12 tourne you neyther to preiudice ne dommage, but only
 to your ryght grete prouffyt & honour.' 'By my feyth,'
 said Uryan, 'I am redy therto to acomplysse your wille
 & playsire.' Thenne had the kyng grete joye, and
 16 dressyng hym to sytte vp, and toke the swerde by the
 pomel that Uryan toke hym, and therwith dowbed hym
 knyght, sayeng, in this manere / 'In the name of god,
 I adoube you & admytte you into thordre of a knyght,
 20 prayeng god to putte from you aH euyH.' And penne
 gaf hym the swerd ayen, and thus makyng his wounde
 opend, and out of it ranne blood through 'the wrapper,
 wherof Vryan was sory & woo, and so were aH other
 24 that sawe hym; but thenne the kyng layed hym self
 ayen along in his bed sodaynly, and said he felt none
 euyH. And after he commanded two knyghtes that
 they shuld fetche hys doughter / and they dide soo /
 28 and brought her at mandement of her fader. And
 whan the kyng sawe her, he said thus / 'My doughter
 thank & remercye these noble men of thayde and so-
 cure that they haue doon to me & to you bothe, and
 32 also to aH our realme, For yf had not be the grace of
 god & theire strengthe & puyssaunce we had be aH
 dystroyed, or at leste exilled out of our land / or ellis
 vs to haue be conuertid to theire fals lawe that had be
 36 wers and more importable to vs than to suffre deth

Before knight-
 ing him the King
 gets Urian to
 promise to give
 him a gift, the
 giving of which
 will not impover-
 ish Urian;

then in the name
 of God, the King
 dubs Urian
 knight.
 The exertion
 opens the King's
 wound,

1 fol. 89.

but he is eased
 by laying down;

then he sends for
 Hermine,

and bids her
 thank the
 brethren;

temporall' / And thenne she kneled byfore the two
 which she does much humbly, bretheren & salued them, & thanked moche humbly
 And wete it that she was in suche manere commouyd²
 and is overcome by her feelings of sorrow for her father and love for Urian. as she had be rauysshed, and wyst not how to hold 4
 contenaunce, what for the woo & sorowe that she had
 at her herte of thanguyssh she that her fader felt / as of
 the thoughtes that she toke for Uryan, in so moche
 that she was as a personne that is awaked newly fro 8
 her dreame. But thenne vryan, that wel perceyued that
 she had her spiryte troubled, toke her vp ryght swetely,
 and enclyned hymself byfore her, makynge moche
 reuerence eche of them to other / and where as they 12
 of the countre said / 'yf this noble man had take
 oure damoysselle to his lady wel it shuld come to passe,
 For thenne we shuld drede neyther payneme nor man
 that wold doo vs hurt.' And thenne called the kyng 16
 his doughtir, and to her said thus: 'My doughtir,
 sette you here ¹by me, For I deme that ye shall not
 long hold me company.' And she thanne wepyng satte
 herself by hym. And thanne aft they that were there 20
 bygan to sorowe & wepe for the pyte they had of the
 kyng, And also of the sorow that they sawe the virgyne,
 his doughter, made so pitously.

Thystory telleth vs that the kyng was sorowfuH 24
 whan he sawe hys doughter take such heuynes,
 and thenne he said amyably: 'My doughtir, lete be
 your heuynes and your grete doulour that ye take, I
 pray you, For that thing that may not be amended it 28
 is folye to make therof grete sorowe / notwithstanding
 it is raison naturel that eueryche creature be sorow-
 fuH for hys frend & neyghbour whan that he lesith
 hym. but, and it playse god, I shal puruey for you 32
 so that ye shal hold you content, or I departe fro this
 mortal world, and so shaft aft the baronye of my
 realme' / And penne bygan the mayde to wepe more

haboundauntly than she dide to fore, And also all the
 barons demened suche woo & sorowe that it was pyte-
 4 of aH. and the kyng perceyuyng^r theire doulour, he
 said to them: 'Fayre doughter, and you, vryan and
 guyon, this sorowe is not necessary to you, For ther-
 with I preuaylle not nor you neyther in no manere /
 8 but it augmenteth my doulour, wherfore I you com-
 mande that ye cesse of this heynes yf ye loue me,
 and to haue me yet *with* you here alyue a lytil space
 of tyme.' And thenne they bygan to cesse theyre
 12 doulour in theire best manere, for the wordes that the
 kyng^r to them said. And ouer that spake the kynge
 hym self dressyng to vryan, and thus said: 'Sire
 knyght, thankyng be to you, ye cōuenaunted *with* me
 16 a yefte whiche I purpose now to take / and *pat* shal
 neyther touche your cheuauce nor honour.' 'By ¹my
 feyth,' sayd Vryan, 'demande what it playse you, For
 yf it be of that thing wherof I haue power I shal fulfyH
 20 it voluntarily.' 'Gramercy sire,' sayd the kynge, 'wete
 it that by this that I shal demande of you, shal retourne
 to you a noble thing. Now, sire knight, I pray you
 that it may playse you to take my doughter in mary-
 24 age, and aH my royalme with her / And fro this tyme
 fourth I gyue you full possessyon therof to doo ther-
with your prouffyt' / And wel veray & trouth it is that
 he had doo brought there the crowne / and with these
 28 wordes he took it, & said / 'hold, Vryan, ne reffuse
 not my requeste that I desyre of you.' Thenne were
 the barons of the land so joyous that teeris fel fro
 theire eyen for pyte & joye that they had therof. And
 32 whan Vryan vnderstode these wordes, he called a lytel
 remembraunce / and wete it wel he was sorowfuH &
 dolaunt therof. For he was wylling to seke the straunge
 countrees of the world and poursiewe for honour. But
 36 alwayes for as moche as he was accorded *with* the kynge

Hermine's sor-
 row causes her to
 weep more,
 and all the
 Barons sympa-
 thize with her.

But the King
 tells them all

that their sorrow
 will not avail,
 and that it in-
 creases his pain,

and so they
 become calm.

The King re-
 minds Urian of
 the promised gift,

¹ fol. 90.

who says he is
 ready to fulfil
 his promise.

The King then
 asks Urian to
 take his daughter
 in marriage,
 and his kingdom
 in fee.

Urian wishing to
 see more of the
 world, hesitates.

The Baron asks him if he refuses the gift?

He replies, no;

and takes the crown and puts it in Hermine's lap,

which gladdens the King and Barons.

1 fol. 90 b.

Hermine says she will see the end of her father's sickness before proceeding farther;

but the King upbraids her as desiring his death,

upon which she kneels at the King's feet, and promises to obey him.

The King bids her leave her sorrow and decorate the hall of the palace,

and prepare a feast,

of the yeste, he wold not gaynsaye it / And whan the barons sawe hym so pensefuH they cryed al with a hye voyce ryght pyteously / 'ha / a then, noble man, wilt thou reffuse the kinges requeste?' 'By my feyth, lordes 4 & barons,' said Uryan, 'no more shal I doo.' Thenne enclyned Uryan byfore the kyng wher he laye, and toke the croune and putte it in Ermynes lap, sayeng / 'Damoyselle, it is your, and sith it hath fortunied thus 8 with me, I shaH you helpe to kepe it my lyf naturel, yf it playse god ayenst al them that wold vsurpe it or putte it in subgection.' Thenne was the kinge joyful and glad, & so were al the barons. And after he dide 12 make come the archebyssshop of the Cite that asuryd them togidre. But Ermyne ¹said she wold see first the termynacion of her faders syknes or she shuld procide ony ferther. Thanne said Vryan, 'damoyselle, 16 sith that it playseth you to doo so I am agreable therto.' Thenne was the kyng woofuH & dolaunt, and said: 'Fayre doughter Ermyne, ye shew wel þat lytel ye loue me, whan that thinge which I desire moost to see afore 20 myn ende ye ne wyl acomplysshe. Now wel I see that ye desyre my deth.' Whan þe mayde vnderstode hym she was ryght dolaunt & sorowfuH / and wepyng kneeled byfore the king, hir fader, and said in this 24 manere: 'My right redoubted lord & fader / there nys thing in the world that I shuld reffuse you vnto myn owne deth / commande you me your playsire.' 'Ye say now,' said the king, 'as a true doughtir ought to 28 say, that is wylling for to kepe her fader from wrathe & fyre. I now thanne commande you that ye leue your sorowe, and lete this halle to be dressid and with ryche clothes hanged, and make the masse to be said / 32 and aftir the deuyne seruise do make the tables to be couered, and after dyner make here byfore me the feste as that I were now on my feet; For wete it wel / that shal helpe & comferte me wel.' And thenne they aH 36

- endeuoyred them self to fulfyH this that he com-
 manded. Thenne was the masse said, and sate them
 self at dyner / & Ermyne was sette at a table that was
 4 layed byfore her faders bedd / and Vryan with her,
 And Guyon serued Ermyne of mete. Thanne had the
 king grete joye, but he made betre semblaunt than his
 herte was of power, For certayn what chere that he
 8 made he felt grete payne & grete dolour, For the venym
 that was within the wounde caused grete putrefyeng &
 rotyng of his flesshe / but for to rejoye the baronnye
 he made no semblaunt of no sorow ne ¹douleur / and
 12 after dyner bygan the feest, and lasted til nyght came.
 The king thanne called to hym vryan, and said, 'Fayre
 sone, I wyl ye wedde my doughter to morne, and I
 wyl delyuere vnto you the Crowne and Ceptre of this
 16 realme, For wete it I may not long be alyue. Where-
 fore I wil that alle the barons of þis land make their
 homage to you byfore my deth.' 'Sire,' said vryan,
 'sith that playseth you / your wylle & myne be one' /
 20 And there was Ermyne present þat refussed not to
 fulfyll her faders wyH.

After mass the
company dine,

which pleases
the King,

though he is in
great pain froin
his wound.

¹ fol. 91.

The feast over,
the King tells
Urian that he
wishes him to
marry Hermine
the next day,
and to have the
Barons make
homage to him.

Cap. XXIV. How Vryan espoused Ermyne, doughter vnto the kinge of Cypre.

- 24 **O**N the morne next, about the hooore of tierce, was
 the spouse appareylled & ryehely arayed, and the
 chappeH nobly hanged with riche cloth of gold, And
 the Archebyssshop of Famagoe espoused them there.
 28 And after came Vryan before the kyng ²that toke the
 Crowne, and ther withaH crowned vryan, that moche
 of thankes rendred to the kyng therfore. Thenne
 called the king to hym aH the barons of þe lande / and
 32 commanded them to make their homage to kyng
 Vryan, his sone / and they voluntarily dide soo. And
 the masse than bygan, and after it was doo they satte

In the morning

the marriage
takes place,

² fol. 91 b.

Urian is crowned,

and the Barons
of the land
render homage
to him.

A great feast is
given,

after which the
espoused retire.

at dyner / and syn bygan the feste right grete, and en-
dured tyl euen / and after souper begane ayen the
feste / and whan tyme was the spouse was lede to
bed / and anone aftir Vryan layed hym self by her / 4
and the bysshop came & halowed the bed / And so
thenne aH departed / some went to bed / and some re-
toured ayen for to daunce. And Vryan laye *with* his
wyf, and her acqueyntaunce toke curtoysly & wel / 8
And on the morne they came ayen tofore the kyng /
the masse anoone was bygone. And thither was the
queene conueyed & lede of guyon her brother, and by
one of the moost highe barons of the lande. 12

Urian and the
Barons from
Poitou visit the
King,

who welcomes
them.

In this parte sheweth vs thistorye, that on þe next
morne after about the hooore of pryme, kyng vryan
acompanied *with* the baronnye of poytou and of the
royalme of Cipre, came byfore the king and enclyned 16
hym self & salued hym right humbly. ‘Fayre sone, ye
be welcome,’ said the kyng. ‘I am full *joyous* of your
commying / make my doughter to come, so shul we
here the deuyne *seruyse*.’ Thenne came his doughtir 20
Ermyne, wel nobly accompanied of many ladyes &
damoysselles / and she come byfore her fader & salued
hym full humbly. Thenne said he to her: ‘My wel
beloued doughter, ye be welcome. I am right wel joy- 24
ous whan god hath don to me suche a grace, that I have
purueyed you of so hye a prynce & worthy knyght to
your lord / and wete it that therfore I shal dey more
easily sith that you and al my land is out ¹of the 28
daunger of the paynemes, and no doubte ye haue to
your protection and wraunt a prynce worthy & valyaunt,
that right wel shal kepe and defende you ayenst aH
your euyl willers, and in especial anenst thinfideles & 32
enemys of Ieshucrist.’ And *with* that worde the Chape-
layn bygan the masse. And whan the masse was
celebred & said, the kyng callid to hym Vryan &
Ermyne, & to them said in this manere: ‘My fayre 36

The King tells
his daughter that
he will die more
easily,

¹ fol. 92.

having married
her to a valiant
prince.

Mass is said,

- children, ryght affettuously I pray you that ye thinke
to loue, kepe, and honoure wel eche other / and to hold
& bere good feyth one to other, For nomore I may
4 hold you companye. Now thanne I recommande you
to the blysfuH kyng of heuen, prayeng hym deuoutely
that he gyue you peas & loue togidre, and honourable
lyf & long.' And *with* these or semblable wordes he
8 shette hys eyen and departed fro this mortal lyf so
swetly that they supposed that he had be aslepe /
But whan they were certayn of his deth the douleur
& sorowe bygan to be grete. Thenne was Ermyne had
12 in to her Chambre, For she demened such sorowe that
grete pite it was to see. The kynge thenne was buried
and his obsequyes doon ryally, and in the moost hon-
ourable guyse that coude be deuysed after the vse and
16 custome of the land. And wete it that aH the peple
was sorowfuH & dolaunt; but they took comfort of
this, that they had founde & recouered a lord ful of so
grete prowesse as Vryan was / and lytel & lytil cessed
20 the lawmenting & heuynes. And soone after yede
Vryan thurgh al his realme to see and visite the places
& fortres / and betoke one part of his folke to Guyon,
his brother / and another part to the maister of Rodes,
24 and made them to be shipped on the see, for to wete &
knowe, for to here & knowe yf they shuld here ony
tydynges that paynemes were on the see for to lande in
his lande. 'For wete it wel,' said the king vryan,
28 'that we purpose ne think not to abyde ¹vnto tyme
they fetche vs, For we shaH & god before goo & vysyte
them *with*in short tyme, after that we haue ouerseen
the rule & gouernaunce of our land.' And forasmoch
32 departed Guyon & the maister of Rodes, & rowed on
the see *with* thre thousand fyghting men. And here
leueth thistorye of them / and bygynneth to shewe how
Vryan & Ermyne went and vysited their land.

the dying King
gives his blessing
to his children,

and then departs
this mortal life
in peace.

Great sorrow is
felt by all,
especially by
Hermine.

The King is
buried,

and the people
seeing the
bravery of their
new lord, cease
their lamenting.

Urian visits the
towns of his
realm,

and sends some
of his men
to learn tidings
of the pagans.

¹ fol. 92 b.

Urian and his wife are well received in their land,

and his subjects marvel at his strength.

He reappoints honest officers,

and commands Justice to be well kept.

Afterwards the King and Queen return to Famagoce.

¹ fol. 93.

Guion and the Master of Rhodes searching on the sea for the pagans,

Thystory saith that king Vryan, with Ermyne hys wyf, yede & vysited theire land al about, and full gladly & honourably they were receyued in euery burgh, toune, & Cite where they passed / and grete yeftes were presented to them / And wete it that Vryan purueyed ryght wel to all hys fortres, of all suche thinges that were necessary for the werre yf some thing befell in tyme to come. And for trouthe euery one was meruaylled of his heyght, of his fyersnes, & of his puyssaunce & strengthe of body. And wel said the men of the Countree, that ferdfull & daungerous thing was to cause his wrath & anger. And thus went Vrian fro place to place thurgh his royalme. And suche officers that made rayson & kept justice, he lefte them in their offices stil / but to al oper that operwyse dide than right requyreth, he purueyed of remede by good & meure deliberacion of his counseil. And commanded euery one to make raison & Justice in al tymes, as wel to the leste as to the moost, without to bere eny fauour to ony of eyther partye / and yf they contrary did to this hys wyll, he shuld punyssh them so cruelly that al other shuld take ensample therby. And thene he, his lady, & his folke retourned to Famagoce / and the quene was grete with child / And now resteth thystorye of them, and speketh of Guyon and of the maister of Rodes, that rowed on the see by the Costes of Surye, of Damask, of Baruth, of Tuppel, & of Danette, for to knowe yf paynemes were on the see or not.

¹ Now saith thystorye, that so long sailled & rowed the Crystens on the see, that they sawe aprouch as of a leghe nygh to them a certayn quantite of shippes, but by liklyhode they might not be grete nombre. Thenne they sent a Galleye toward our folke that al redy were in ordynaunce to wete what they were / but the galey came so nygh that the cristens, our folke,

- toke it / and by them knew and vnderstode almaner of
 tydynges. Oure folke thanne halid vp saylles hastily,
 and saylled anone toward theire enmys. And whan the
 4 paynemes perceyued them they were mochi abasshed,
 and gretly aferd, and wend wel to haue withdraw them
 self in to the hauen of Baruth / but our galeyes ad-
 uaunced them, and ran vpon them by al sydes. There
 8 was grete occysion / and shortly to say the paynemes
 were dyscomfyted, and their nauye take / and aH were
 cast ouerbord¹ or slayne. And the nauye was full of
 grete goodes. And after our barons putte them self in
 12 the see ayen for to haue retourned in to Cypre. but
 by fortune & strengthe of wyndes they were cast to
 Cruly¹ in Armanye. And whan the king of Armanye,
 that was brother vnto the kinge of Cypre, knewe theire
 16 comynyng, he sent anone for to wete what folke they
 were / And the master of Rodes said to them that
 came to wete what they wer: 'Telle the kyng that it
 is the brother of Vryan of Lusynen, kyng of Cypre,
 20 that hath trauersed the see for to wete & knowe yf
 paynemes were on it in armes, for to haue come vpon
 the Cyprians for cause of the saudan that hath be
 dycomfyted & slayn, and al his folke at the grete batayH
 24 of Famagoce.' 'How,' said they of Armanye, 'is there
 any other kyng in Cypre than our kingis brother?' 'By
 my feyth,' said the maister of Rodes, 'ye / For the
 king ²was wounded with a dart enuenyed by the
 28 sawdans hand in so mortal a wyse that he is deed
 therof, and he beyng yet alyue, he gaf his doughtir in
 maryage to Vrian of Lusynen, that slew the saudan
 & dyscomfyted aH his folk.' Whan they thanne vnder-
 32 stode hym, they yede & denounced it to theire kyng,
 which was sorowfull of the deth of his brother. but
 not withstandyng, he came toward the see syde with
 a grete company, and entred in to the vesseH where

take a galley and
 learn the pagans'
 whereabouts.

They set out for
 the fight, and
 gain a victory,

and set sail for
 Cyprus;

but are driven
 by wind to Cruly
 in Armenia.

The King of the
 land sends to
 know who they
 are,

and is sent word
 that it is the
 brother of the
 King of Cyprus.

The King of
 Armenia asks if
 there is a new
 King in Cyprus,

² fol. 93 b.

and the Master
 of Rhodes relates
 how Urian be-
 came King there.

¹ *Truli* in Fr. ed. Afterwards spelt *Cruli*.

The King of
Armenia visits
the fleet of
Guion,

and invites him
to his palace,

which courtesy
is accepted.

The King of
Armenia is a
widower, whose
heir is Flory.

1 fol. 94.

This lady was
joyful at the
visit of the
strangers,
and dressed her-
self and maids
richly to receive
them.

Guyon and the maister of Rodes were in. And whan guyon wyst of his commyng he went ayenst hym, and eche to oþer made grete reuerence. Thenne said the king to the grete Pryour of Rodes, 'Maister, sethen 4 this yong damoyseau is brother vnto my nyghtis lord, I were vncourteys whan he is arryued in my land, yf I receyued hym not honourably as to hym apparteyneth. And of this I pray you, that ye vouchesaf to pray hym 8 on my behalf, that it playse hym to come in to our paleys, and we shal doo to hym the best chere that we can.' 'By my feyth,' said the grete Pryour / 'that shal I doo gladly.' Thanne he spak therof to guyon, 12 whiche ansuerd to hym right gladly, 'I wold doo a greter thinge yf it lay in my power for the kyngis sake. For good feyth & rayson requyreth it.' And thenne they went togider / and guyon lede with hym a fayre 16 companye of knightes / but alwayes they had their cotes of stele on þem, and were in right good aray, as folke vsed to the faytte of armes. And here speke I no more of þem, And shal speke of Florye the 20 doughter of the kyng of Armanye. /

Thistorye sayth that the kyng of Armanye had a doughter, and none other children / but here. 1 And the quene, his wyf, was deed / and wete it þat 24 this kyng and the kyng of Cypre had to their spouses the two susters that were doughters to the kyng of Malegres / and eche of them gate a doughtir on their wyues / of the whiche Ermyne that Vryan spoused 28 was one / and that other was the pucelle florye of whome I haue bygonne to traytte. She was that tyme at Cruly ryght glad & joyous of the commyng of the straungers. She appareyllid and arayed her self 32 moche richely, and so dide all her damoysselles. Soone after came the kyng her fader / guyon / the maister of Rodes, & their felawship, and entred in to the toune, and came to the palleys in to the grete halle. 36

And thenne Florye, that moch desyred theire com-
 myng, came there, and humbled herself moche ayenst
 her fader / and the kyng said to her, 'Cherysshe and
 4 doth feste to this noble men, & receyue them honour-
 ably / and in especiall the brother of my nyghtis lord &
 husband.' And whan the mayde vnderstode that, she
 was full glad & joyous. She thenne came to guyon /
 8 toke hym by the hand swetly, & sayd: 'Sire damoy-
 seau, ye be right welcome in to my faders royalme.'
 'Damoysselle,' sayd Guyon, 'gramercy to you.' There /
 bygan thenne the feest right grete & fayre / and wel
 12 they were festyed, & seruyd with dyuerse meetes &
 wynes / and betwix guyon & Florye were many honeste
 & gracyous talkyng. and wete it for certayn yf guyon
 had had leyser, he had dyscouered his thoughte to
 16 her. but while they were in that grete solace & joye, a
 galeye arryued to the port that came fro Rodes / and
 they that were within were receyued honourably of
 them of the tounne / and joyful & right glad they were
 20 whan they knew that theire maister was there. Wher-
 fore one of them said to the people there, 'Sires,
 vouchesauf to lede one of vs there ¹the lordes befor,
 to aduertysse them of paynemes that ben vpon the see
 24 in grete nombre.' Thanne was a knight brought there
 the maister of Rodes was / and said to hym, that
 paynemes with grete nauye were passed byfore the yle
 of Rodes / and had taken the wind & waye toward
 28 Cypre / and how men said that the Calyphe of Bandas
 with all hys puyssaunce & power was there. Whan
 the maister of Rodes vnderstode these tydynges, he
 went & told Guyon of it. Wherfore, guyon seeyng
 32 hym self as constrayned, humbly said to the pucelle,
 'Damoysselle, right hertily I beseche you that ye
 vouchesaf, sethen I moste departe your presens, to call
 me ofte in your remembraunce / For as to my part,
 36 your vassaill & seruaunt shal I euer be vnder the

She takes Guion
by the hand,
and welcomes
him to the land.

A fair feast is
served,

and Guion and
Flory have much
gracious speech
together.

News comes from
Rhodes

¹ fol. 94 b.

that the pagans
are at sea,

with a great navy
sailing towards
Cyprus.

Guion, on learn-
ing this, bids
Flory farewell,

and asks her not
to forget him.

The sudden part-
ing makes her
sad.

Guion sets sail,

watched by Florye
from a high
tower.

The Caliph of
Bandas and the
King of Brandy-
mount

resolve to avenge
the slaughter of
the Sultan.

¹ fol. 95.

Thinking there
was no King in
Cyprus,
they sail there,

but are seen,
and Urian is
warned,
and prepares to
receive them.

standart of your gouernance.' Florye thanne knowyng
for certayn his soudayn departyng, her herte was fylled
with dueyl & sorowe / how wel she kept contenance
in the best manere that she coude / and louyngly be- 4
held guyon, whiche toke his leue of her fader, that
conueyed hym to the see side, and grete peple with
hym. There thenne entred guyon in to his ship, and
commanded the sailles shuld be had vp to the wynde, 8
that was good & propyce to them. And wete that
Florye was mounted vp vnto the vppermost wyndowe
of an hye tour, and neuer departed thens tyl she lost
the sight of guyons vessel, prayeng god to preserue 12
hym from al daunger. /

Thystorye recounteth & saith here that the Caliphe
of Bandas, and the kinge of Brandymount in
tharse, that was uncle to the saudan of Damaske, herde 16
tydynges how the sawdan was slayn, and al his folke
putte to grete dyscomfytur in the yle of Cypre. Wher-
fore they beyng full sory therof assembled anone their
power / and purposyng to auenge his deth entred their 20
shippes, and toke their way toward Cypre / and ¹they
supposyng the Cypriens had be without king, hyed
them fast thitherward in suche manere that they shuld
not be perceyued where as they shuld arryue. but þey 24
of Rodes perceyued them, and made knowleche þerof
vnto kyng Vryan, that alreedy had assembled his peple,
and putte them in aray for to receyue the batayll. and
morouer had made good ordonnance and gardes for the 28
portes, that assoone as they shuld perceyue them com-
myng to the hauen, that they shuld make a token of
fyre, wherby the Countrey might perceyue the commyng
of their enemyes, and euery man to be redy in armes 32
thitherward / and so was the kingis proclamacion
vpon deth. And wete it that the king kept the feldes
in the myddes of the portes of his royalm for to
be the sooner at the porte where the sarrasyns shuld 36

arryue to take theire landing / And the king made so
grete moustre & semblaunt that he gaf his peple so
grete courage, that *with* hym & his enterpryse they
4 durst wel fight *with* the Caliphe, and *with* his puyssau-
saunce. It happned so, by the grace of god, that the
see was enragid through the stormes and horryble
tempeste, that the sarrasyns were al dysmayed &
8 abasshed / and the tempeste casted them in suche wyse
here & there, that *within* short tyme they ne wyst
where eyghte of theire galeyes were become. And on
the morowe about the hooore of pryme, thayer was al
12 clere, and the wynd cessed, and the sonne shone fayre
& clere / thenne the grete shippes of the paynemes
held them togidre, & toke theire way vnto the port
of Lymasson. And of them I leue to speke / and shal
16 shew you of the viii vessels that were sparpylled by
the tempeste, and what way they held / and in thoo
vessels was aH thartyllery of the paynemes, as gonnes,
bowes, arowes / ladders / pauceys, & such habylements
20 of werre ¹as they had / and so it fortunied that guyon
and the maister of Rodes *with* theire puyssaunce re-
countred them, and perceyued eche other. but whan
oure peple knewe that they were sarasyns / and the
24 sarasyns knew that they were crysten people / they
bygane eche of them to lye and bord^r other *with*
shotte of gonnes & crosbowes / and whan they were
chayned togidre they threw darts as thikk as hayle
28 stones / and the batayH was so grete, hard, & stronge /
but guyon, the maister of Rodes, & theire puyssaunce
assaylled so manfully the paynemes that they knew
not to what part they shuld tourne them to defende,
32 For our people that were in the galeyes faught so
mightly that the paynemes were as dycomfyted. There
might men here them crye on theire goddes / nat that
withstanding they were dyscomfyte & slayne. And
36 thanne whan theire admyraH, that was maister of the

A storm causes
great damage to
the Saracen
fleet;

but on the mor-
row they sail
to the port of
Lymasson.

Eight galleys full
of stores, belong-
ing to the Sara-
cens, sparpylled
by the tempest,

¹ fol. 95 b.

were met by the
Master of
Rhodes,

who attacked
them, and fought
so well as to
defeat the pagan
sailors.

The admiral
seeing he is
defeated,

leaves the fleet
in a boat accom-
panied with eight
persons.

The Christians
enter the ene-
my's vessels,
and throw over-
board or take
prisoners the
Saracens.

The spoils are
divided,

Guion sending
his share to Flory,

¹ fol. 96.

and to her father
the King of
Armenia.

The King wel-
comes Guion's
knight, who con-
veys the present,
and Flory is very
joyful, for she
loves Guion
much.

The King of
Armenia learns
from his Saracen
prisoners that
their comrades
have gone to
Cyprus,

artylery, sawe the dycomfiture tourned vpon them /
he made to be haused a lytel galyote out of the grete
galeye with viii hores / and so entred he and eyghte
personnes with hym of the secretest / and toke thanen- 4
ture of the wynd / & rowed so mightly that our people
meruaylled þerof / but they made neuer semblaunce to
pursiew them / but entred into the paynemes vessels,
& bygan to cast alle ouerbord. but they toke to the 8
nombre of ij C sarasyns prysonners / wherof guyon gaf
oo hondred to the maister of Rodes to make them
cristen, and also two galeyes / and guyon toke the
other hondred sarasyns and two of the moost richest 12
vessels that they had wonne, and toke it to a knyght
of Rodes / and thus said to hym, 'Conduyte me this
two galeys, and þis hondred sarrasyns to Cruly, and
recommand me to the kinge & his doughtir / and on 16
my byhalue ¹presente to the pucelle Florye this two
vessels as they are garnysshed / and to the kyng the
hondred sarasyns.' Wherof the knyght toke the
charge & departed, & hasted hym tyl he came to the 20
Cite of Cruly / and dide his message as he was youen
in commandement / and recounted to them the grete
dyscomfiture and the valyaunt conduyte of guyon.
'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'ye be welcome, and 24
thanking be to that noble damoyseau' / And the pucelle
was so joyous of these nouuelles that she had neuer in
her naturel lyf so grete joye. For knowe ye wel she
loued so entierly guyon þat all her joye was of hym. 28
The king thanne & his doughter yaf to the knight a
riche jewel, wherof he thanked þem, and toke leue of
them, & retourned hastily to Rodes. And anone, after
hys departyng, the kyng of Armenye questyoned with 32
the paynemes where the armee of the Calyphe was /
and they said in Cipre to reuenge the deth of the
sawdan of Damaske that the Cipryens had slayn in
batayll. 'Par ma foy,' sayd the kyng, 'as for you, ye 36

haue faylled of your enterpryse' / And thenne he commanded that they shuld be feteryd with yrons, and to be putte in to parfounde pryson / and the two vessels
 4 to be discharged, and all the goodes that were in to be borne into the Castel. It is now tyme that I speke
 of guyon and of the maister of Rodes, that had questioned the sarasyns wher the Calyphe purposed to
 8 land / and they said in Cypre. Guyon thenne by thauys and CounseyH of his barons for cause they had many vessels & lytel nombre of people / commanded that al thartylery that they had wonne shuld be putte
 12 into theire shippes / and also al other thinges that were of nede to them / and the remanaunt & the vessels also /
 he gaf to the maister of Rodes that sent them to Rodes. And whan this was don they saylled, & hasted þem
 16 toward Cypre. And here leueth thystory to spek of them / and retourneth to speke of the galyote where thadmyraH was in, where it became or toke porte. /

as does Guion.

Guion ships the spoils of the victory,

1 fol. 96 b.

and sets sail for Cyprus.

Thystory sayth that the kyng brandymount & the
 20 Calyphe of Bandas were sorowfuH for þeir losse & grete damage / and so longe rowed thadmyral on the see that he perceyued the port of Lymasson, & sawe grete nauye byfore the toune. And whan he came
 24 somewhat nygh he herd shotte of gonnes & sowne of trompettes, and soone after he knew that it was þe Calyphe of Bandas and his armee, & the puyssaunce of kyng brandymount of tharse,² that assaylled them of
 28 the toune for to take it. But there was the Captayne of the place & his peple³ wel pauelysed, that valyauntly deffended the porte in so moche that the sarasyns gat there nought / but lost many of their men, and
 32 wysshed ofte aftir theire galeyes with theire gonnes & artyllery that were sprad on the see by the tempeste / they wyst not where. Thenne came to them thadmyral that thus said on hyc: 'By my feyth, Calyphe, woo

The boat containing the admiral and eight men is rowed to Lymasson,

where the sound of battle is heard.

The Captain of Lymasson defends his port well, and the Saracens wish for their artillery from the eight vessels, which they think are still at sea.

² Fr. *Turche*. ³ Fr. *v. p]*atout bons parars.

The admiral
announces to the
Caliph the defeat
and loss of his
vessels.

He is grieved,

and says that
Fortune sleeps
for them,
but favours the
Christians.

1 fol. 97.

The admiral ad-
vises the Caliph
not to show his
grief for the
reverse,
else his army will
lose courage;

and that he
should withdraw
to the port of St.
Andrew,

where it will be
easier to land.

The Caliph gives
up the attack,
and sets sail for
St. Andrew,
followed by a
rampin from
Lymasson,
sent to learn the
movements of
the Saracens.

may be to you, For your nauye that I conduyted is lost
& take, For the Cristen recountred vs vpon the see, and
hauc dyscomfyted vs / and none is scaped but only we
that are here / and at oo word al is lost / for to hold 4
you long compte therof that shuld preuayll you nought.
'Thenne whan the Calyphe vnderstode hym he was sorow-
full & dolaunt. 'By my feyth,' said he / 'lordis, here
ben heuy tydinges. For wel I see that Fortune slepeth 8
as to our help / and so hath he doo long / but fauour-
able & moche propice it is as now to crysten peple, For
wel it appereth presently by vs / and so dide but of
late by our Cousyn the saudan, the which & al hys 12
peuple also haue be slayn or dyscomfyte in the same
yle of Cypre.' Thenne said the admyral to hym : 'Sire,
yf ye anounce or shew semblaunce of abasshement by-
fore your folke that shal cause them to be half dyscom- 16
fyte / and ouermore knowe ye to this that I perceyue
of them of this porte & toune, that they be not shappen
to lete you arryue & entre theire land without sore
fyghting and grete sawtes gynyng. For they shew not 20
to be aferd of your pyssauce. therefore I wold adnyse
& counseyH you, that we shaH withdraw vs into the
hye see, & lete coule them self / and about the spryng
of the day we shalbe at a lytel porte that not ferre is 24
heus called the port of saynt Andrew / and there with-
out ony deffense or gaynsayeng we may take land.'
And this they dide. And whan the Captayn of Lymas-
son sawe hys enmyes departe, he made a rampyn or 28
smal galeye to folow them of ferre, pat it coude not be
perceyued of them / and aspyed how at euen they
ancred aboute a myle nygh to saynt Andrews porte.
Thanne retourned the rampyn hastily toward Lymas- 32
son / and to the captayne recounted al that he had
seen / Thenne made the captayn fyre to be putte high
vpon the garde for manere of token / and whan they
of the nerest garde or watching place sawe the token of 36

fyre / soone after fyre was made fro garde to garde,
that knowleche was therof thurgh all the royalme.

The alarm is
given throughout
Cyprus,

Thenne euery man, what on foot & on horsbake, drew

4 them self to the place where kyng Vryan was, that al
redy had sent hys espyes to knowe wher the paynemes
shuld land, and manded to euery captayne they shuld
kepe & defend wel theire fortresses / 'For,' said he,

and spies are
sent to learn
where the Sara-
cens will land.

8 'yf it playse god none of them shal not repasse the see.

And here resteth the ¹hystorye to speke of kyng
Vryan / and bygynneth to speke of the Caliphe. /

¹ fol. 97 b.

12 **I**n this partye sheweth thistorye / that the sarasyns
that were entred in to the see / as soone as þey
apperceyued the day spryng, they deceueryd, & toke
vp theire aneres, and came al in oo flotte to the porte,
& there landed. And wete it wel, that they of thabbey

The Saracens at
daybreak
weigh their
anchors and land
their men and
artillery at St.
Andrew.

16 of saynt andrew perceyued them wel, the whiche im-
mediatly made knowleche to Lymasson / and the Cap-
tayne of þe place gaf vnto the kyng¹ knowlech ther-
of / the which had grete joye therof / and fourthwith

Word is at once
sent to Urian of
their landing;

20 bygan to apparayH hym to go to batayH. And the
Calyphe, hys enemy, made to be putte a land his
artylery out of the shippes / and dide make hys lodgis
therby, as it were half a leghe fro the port, vpon a

24 grete ryuere at a cornere of a lytel wode, to refresshe
hym & his peple also; and lefte foure thousand men
within the shippes, for theire sauegarde / and in the
meane saison guyon / the maister of Rodes, & theire

28 people arryued to Lymasson / where men said to them
how the sarasyns had landed / and how theire nauye
was a leghe fro saynt Andrewes porte. 'By my feyth,'
sayd Guyon, 'we shal thanne goo & vysyte them / For

and Guion learns
that their navy is
unprotected,

32 who that might take them fro the sarasyns, none of
them shuld neuer retourne foot, in sury nor in tharsy' /
and in these wordes sayeng, they putte them in to the
see, & went lightly sayllyng, that they came so nygh

so sets out to
capture the
Saracen fleet,

36 the panemes that they sawe the porte of saynt Andrew,

and the grete nombre of shippes that were there. Thenne they putte themself in aray and in good ordyn-
 aunce / and this done, they rane vpon their enemyes
 as thondre & tempeste, smyttyng vpon the shippes of 4
 the sarasyns byforce of shotte so horribly, that y^l
 bestade were the sarasyns, that wel happy was he ¹that
 myght reconere the land. And by that meane were
 the shippes take / and al the sarasyns that were take 8
 were putte to deth. Thanne guyon sent to the abbey
 foyson of them that he had wonne of the sarasyns /
 and brought to Lymasson with them as many galeyes
 & shippes as there were laden with the goodes of the 12
 sarasyns, except suche as they brent. And þe other
 that escaped, came to thoost of their lord, cryeng with
 a hye voys alarme / and recounted & said how the
 Cristen had by force & strengthe discomfited them. 16
 Thenne was the cost gretly mevyd, & came to the
 port who best coude, and fonde many of their people
 ded, and som were hyd in the busshes. And whan the
 Calyphe perceyued & sawe this grete domage, he was 20
 moche dolaunt. 'By machomete,' said he to kyng
 Brandymount, 'these Cristen that are come hither fro
 Fraunce, ben ouermuche hardy & appert men in armes,
 and yf they sojourne long here it shal be to our grete 24
 domage' / 'By machomet,' said the kyng Brandy-
 mount, 'I shal neuer departe fro this land vnto tyme I
 be al dyscomfyted, or þat I haue put them to flyght, &
 brought to an euyl end.' 'No more shal I doo,' answered 28
 Caliphe. Thenne þey recouered there six of their
 galeyes, & eschiewed þem fro the fyre, and lefte in it
 good wardes for to kepe them; and after they retourned
 to their people. And here cesseth thystorye of them / 32
 and retourneth to speke of Vryan /

Now sheweth thystorye how the kyng Vryan was
 lodged in a fayre medow vpon a ryuere, in that
 self place where the fourragers of the sawdan were 36

¹ fol. 98.

and succeeds,

taking many
 prisoners.

Fugitives arrive
 at the Caliph's
 camp with news
 of the defeat,

which makes
 him doleful.

He says that if
 the French
 knights stay they
 will do much
 harm.

King Brandy-
 mount swears
 he will remain to
 be either victor
 or conquered.

The Saracens
 save six galleys
 from the fire.

dyscomfytē at the brydge, as before is said. And had
 sent his espyes to haue knowlege where his enemyes
 had take theyre lodgys / And thenne came ¹the
 4 maister of Rodes, whiche alighted byfore the kinges
 pauyllon, whom he made reuerence moche honourably.
 And the king, that was moche joyous of his commyng,
 receyued hym benyngly, and demanded of hym how
 8 guyon his brother dyde. 'By my feyth, sire,' said the
 maister of Rodes, 'wel / as the moost assured man that
 euer I knew. Sire, he recommandeth hym to you as
 affectually as he may.' 'Nowe telle me,' said the king,
 12 'how ye haue doo syn that ye departed from vs?' And
 the maister recounted hym fro braunche to braunche
 all thauentures that had happed to them. 'By my
 feyth,' said the kyng, 'ye haue worthyly vyaged; I
 16 thanke & lawde my Creatour therof / and as for myn
 vncle, þe kyng of Armanye, I am moche glad that ye
 lefte hym in good prosperyte. but we most haue
 aduys of our Counseyll, to see how we may dystroye
 20 the Sarasyns / and as touching me & my peple, I am
 redy to departe for to approuche to them, For to long
 they haue sojourned in our land without to haue assayed
 vs. goo thanne toward my brother, and telle hym that
 24 I departe for to goo ayenst the paynymes.' The maister
 thanne toke leue of king Vryan, and hastily retourned
 to Lymasson / and immedyatly the king & his peuple
 marched fourth, tyl they came & lodged them a leghe
 28 nygh to the Calyphes oost, vnknowyng the paynymes
 of it. And the maister of Rodes came to guyon, and
 told hym how the kyng was departed for to recountre
 & fyght with the sarasyns; wherfore guyon commanded
 32 his trompettes to blow, and departed fro Lymasson in
 fayre aray; & came vnto a ryuere, and lodged hym
 therby, vpon the which ryuere were the paynymes
 lodged, & no distaunce or space was betwene them
 36 & their enemyes, but a ²high mountayne. And now

Urian sends
 spies
 to find his ene-
 mies' camp.
 1 fol. 98 b.

The Master of
 Rhodes visits the
 King,

and tells him of
 Guion's bravery,
 and brings
 Guion's regards;

and also tells of
 their adventures.

Urian says he
 may have the
 advice of his
 council how best
 to overcome the
 Saracens,

and sends back
 the Master to
 Guion.

King Urian
 marches his peo-
 ple within a
 league of the
 Saracen host.

The master of
 Rhodes gives
 Guion the King's
 message,

and then Guion
 also marches his
 men near the
 Saracens.

resteth thistorye of hym, and retourneth to speke of Vryan his brother.

Thystorye sayth that kyng Vryan desired mochi to knowe where the sarasyns were lodged / also to 4 haue true knowlege of theire conuyn; wherfore he called to hym a knyght, that knew wel al the Countrey, and said to hym: 'putte on your harneys, and take the surest hors that ye haue, and come alone here byfore 8 my payyllon: and telle nobody of it / & ye shal come with me there as I shal lede you' / and anone the knight dide his commandement / and wel horsed & armed retourned to hym byfore hys tente, wher he 12 fonde king vryan redy on horsbak, the which said to some of his barons, 'Sires, meue not your self fro this place tyl ye haue tydinges of me / but yf I cam not hither ayen / loke ye doo that I shal lete you wete by 16 this knyght.' And they ansuerd that so shuld they doo / 'but take good hede,' sayd they agayn, 'where ye goo' / 'be not in doubte therfore,' said vryan to them / And thenne they departed; and Vryan said to 20 the knight, 'conduyte me now the surest waye that ye can, tyl that I may see the porte where the sarasyns landed.' And the knyght lede hym vnto the hylle ryght high, & said: 'Sire, yonder is the porte that ye 24 desire to see.' 'And how,' said the kyng, 'it hath be said to me that theire nauye was al brent, and yet I see yonder some grete vessels? Fro whens myght they be come now?' / and thenne behild the king / at the 28 synester syde in to the founs¹ of the valey, and sawe his brothers oost, that was lodged vpon the ryuere / and at the ryght syde of the hille he sawe þe Caliphes oost, that were in grete nombre. 'By my feyth,' said 32 the kyng, 'yonder is grete multitude of peple pay-neme / them I knowe wel ynough; but þey ²of this other syde I knowe not what they be. abyde me

Urian and a knight

prepare to reconnoitre.

Urian tells the barons that they are to obey the orders of the knight, who is with him, until his own return.

The knight leads the King to a high hill,

where he sees some vessels,

his brother's and the Saracen host.

² fol. 99 b.

He does not recognize his brother's army,

¹ Fr. *font*.

here, and I shaft goo wete what folke they be, yf I may.' The kyng thanne rode tyl he came nygh his bropers oost, and founde a knight on his way, which he
 4 knew wel; and anoon called hym by hys name, and demaunded of hym yf his brother guyon was there /. Whan the knight vnderstode hys wordes, he beheld & knew hym, and soone kneeled byfore hym, say-
 8 eng in this manere: 'My liege & souerayn lord, your brother guyon is yonder *with* al hys people, and the maister of Rodes also.' Thenne commanded hym the kyng that he shuld goo to Guyon hys brother, and
 12 telle hym that he shuld come & speke *with* hym vpon the said mountayne. And the knight went & tolde these tydinges to guyon; wherfor he, and the maister of Rodes *with* hym, mounted on horsbak / toke
 16 the way to the mountayneward, wher as Vryan retourned to his knyght, whome he said: 'Frend, wel it is *with* vs, For that is my brother guyon which is lodged yonder.' Thenne came per guyon & the maister of
 20 Rodes where the two bretheren made moche, eche of oper. The kinge after shewed to them thoost of theire enemyes / and whan they sawe it / they said / 'we wyst not them so nygh to vs.' 'Now,' said vryan,
 24 'they may not escape vs, yf it be not by the meanes of yonder galeyes,' wherof guyon was abasshed / 'For,' said he / 'these deuels haue brought moo vessels, For *within* these foure dayes last passed we toke & brent
 28 al theyre nauye.' 'Thenne,' said the maister of Rodes, 'I suppose wel what that is / happely some of them were not fonde, which haue eschewed that few shippes fro the fyre.' 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'thus it
 32 may wel be / but *perto* ¹We most puruey of gardes, For therby shuld mowe escape the chief lordes of theire oost, that happly might adommage vs in time to come.' 'How, sire,' said the maister of Rodes, 'it
 36 semeth that ye haue dycomfyted them al, redy, and

and so rides to it.

On the way he meets a knight he knows well.

The knight kneels to him, and tells him to whom the host belongs.

King Urian sends for Guion,

who, accompanied with the Master of Rhodes, comes to the King.

Urian says that now the Saracens cannot escape, except by the vessels. Guion is abashed at the Saracens having vessels, as he believed he had burnt or captured them all, but the Master says, these are some saved from the fire.

¹ fol. 100.

The King orders guards to be ready to prevent any one embarking,

that it ne resteth more but to kepe the Calyphe and brandymount, that they scape not at þat porte.' 'Certaynly,' ansuerd the kynge, 'yf they be nomore than I see, we nede not so grete peple as god hap leued vs.' 4

and sends his knight with orders to his men to march to the foot of the mountaine.

The kinge thenne commanded his knight, þat he shuld goo to hys oost and make them to be putte in aray, and that he shuld conduyte them vnto þe foot of the said mountayne. The knight departed, & dide as it 8 was youen to hym in commandement / and al thoost obeyed hym, and came in fayre aray & good ordynauunce vnto the hille. Also guyon went and made hys peple to be armed, and brought þem at the other 12 syde of the ryuere, so nygh the paynemes oost that he might wel perceyue theire manyere & contenance.

Guion marches his men near the pagans.

The Master of Rhodes is ordered to prevent the Saracens withdrawing to their ships.

And the kyng commanded the maister of Rodes, that he with all hys peple shuld entre in to þe see / and 16 that they shuld trauerse, rowyng nygh the porte, to thende yf the sarasyns shuld putte & withdraw them self into theire shippes, that they might not escape / 'And I goo,' sayd vryan, 'putte my peple in aray, forto 20 gyue batayH to these paynemes.'

The King leads his forces in battle array towards the Saracens,

The kynge thenne came to his oost, and made his archers & crosbowe men to marche & goo fourth ; and after folowed the wynges. & the arryergarde came 24 after in fayre ordonnance / and assoone as þe sarasyns perceyued them, they bygan alarme, and euery payneme armed hym self / but or they were all armed, Vryan sent vpon them a thousand¹ good men of armes wel 28 horsed, that moche adommaged them, for they fonde them vnpurueyed & out of aray. But notwithstanding, they assembled them in batayH & aray. Thanne bygan the stoure fyers & cruel. For there had ye seen arowes 32 flee as thykk as motes in the sonne / and after Vryan and his auantgarde assembled to his enemys ; and so manfully they faught, that they made the sarasyns to withdraw bakward. For vryan made there so grete 36

¹ fol. 100 b.

and before they can arm sets a thousand men on to them.

At last the Saracens array themselves, and the fight becomes fierce.

The Saracens are driven back,

- fayttes of armes, and gaf so pesaunt & horryble strokes both to the lyft & right syde, that al them that he recountred he smote & threw down fro theire horses to
 4 the erthe, in so moch that his enemyes fled byfore hym as the partrych doth byfore the sperehauke. And whanne the Calyphe of Bandas perceyued hym, he shewed hym to kyng Brandymount, sayeng, 'yf we be
 8 abashed and yl bestad of this man only, al the other shal preyse & doubte vs nought' / and sayeng these wordes, he broched his hors with hys sporys that blood rane out of bothe sydes / And know it wel, that this
 12 Caliphe was one of the moost fyers & strengest man that was that tyme alyue / he casted hys targe behynd his bakk / toke hys swerd, & rane vpon vryan, the
 whiche he recountred / and by grete yre gaf hym so
 16 meruayllable a stroke vpon that one syde of hys helmet, that hys swerd redounded vpon hys hors nek by suche myght that nygh he cutte his throtte of. Thanne came kyng Brandymount vpon vryan, the
 20 which, seeynge his hors almost deed, stood vpon hys feet, & lete goo hys swerd fro his hand, and embrased his enemy; and by the strengthe of his two armes, pulled hym from his hors down to therthe. There was
 24 the prees grete, both of Sarasyns that wold rescue theyre lord / and of cyprians also, that wold haue holpen vryan theire kyng, to bryng hys enterpryse at affect. The batayll was there mortall fyers & doubtful
 28 for bothe partyes. but vryan drew a short knyff out of the shethe that hanged at his lyft syde, and threstid it vnder the gorgeret thugh brandymontis nek, and thus he slewgh hym. Thanne stod vryan vpon his feet
 32 ayen, and cryed with a high voys 'Lusynen, Lusynen' / and the Poyteuyns that herd that, putte them self in prees by suche vertu, gyuyng so grete strokes that the sarrasyns that were about vryan lost & voyded the
 36 place. Thenne was kyng vryan remounted vpon kyng

Urian doing great
feats of arms.

The Caliph, a
strong man with
sword and shield,

runs upon Urian,

and gives him a
heavy blow,

nearly killing
his horse;

King Brandy-
mount rushes on
him also,

Urian dismounts,
and pulls the
Saracen King
from his horse.

1 fol. 101.

The fighting
becomes fierce at
this point;

but Urian stabs
his foe in the
neck, and so
slays him;

and his com-
panions put to
flight the Sara-
cens,

then Urian pursues the Caliph.

Guyon on his side falls upon the Saracens,

and seeing his forces hemmed in, the Caliph with eleven men flies in a boat to his vessels,

weighs their anchors, and puts to sea.

The Saracens seeing Brandimount dead, and the Caliph fled,

² fol. 101 b.

lose heart, and try to escape;

but they are all slain,

and all their riches captured.

The Caliph swears he may yet live to avenge himself on the Cyprians;

brandymontis hors, and pursiewed the Caliphe of Bandas / and thus bygan ayen the batayH to be reforced, in so moche that grete occysyon was don on eyther partye. And in that meane season came guyon 4 with his peuple, and courageously rane vpon peire enemyes. And whan the Caliphe saw hym be surprysed on eche syde by his mortal enemyes / he with xi departed in the secretest manere that he coude out 8 of the batayH, and fled toward the see / where the admyraH of Damask was, whiche made them to entre into a lytel galyote, in whiche he escaped, as byfore is said / and soone aftir he made the nauye, that he saued 12 fro brennyng, to take vp theire ancores, & entred in the see. And here seaceth thystorye of hym, and retourneth to speke of the batayH. /

In this partye sheweth thystorye, & sayth þat whan 16 the sarasyns knew the deth of theyre kyng brandymount¹ / and how the Caliphe on whos prowes & strengthe was al theire hope & comfort² was thus departed and fled, they were aH abasshed, and bygan 20 strongly to breke their aray and to voyde the place, puttyng themself to flight.³ What shuld I make you long compte / the paynemes were putt aH to deth, what in batayH, what fleyng as drowned in the see. 24 And after the chaas, retourned kyng vryan and hys barons to the paynemys lodgis, where they found in their tentes & pauyllons grete riches. And here thystorye cesseth of kyng vryan / and I shal shew vnto you 28 how the caliphe of Bandas dyde, the which swore by his machomet & his goddes, that yf he myght euer come to sauete in damask ayen, yet shuld he doo grete hyn-deraunce & enuye to the Cyprians. But as he was 32 rowyng in the see / and supposed to haue escaped al

¹ Fr. *Brandimont de Tarse*.

³ xviii. viii*d.* is noted in margin of MS. If it is price of copying up to this point, it would be about the rate of 1*d.* a page.

- parels / the maister of Rodes that kept the see and wayted after hym, as aboue is sayd, perceyned the sarasyns flote *pat* wold haue retourned to Damask / by-
 4 gan to lye by them and sayd to his people in this manere: 'Fayre lordes and knightes of Ieshu Criste, our desyre and wysshynge is brought to effect, for knowlege we haue ynough that the valyaunt & redoubted
 8 kyng vryan hath obtayned the vycctory vpon his enemyes & oures / yf we be now men of faytte & valyaunt, none of them shal neuer see Damaske.' Who thanne
 had seen the Cristen putte them self in aray, and their
 12 meruayllable shottynge with gonnes & arowes vpon the sarasyns, he shuld haue be meruaylled / and syn oure folke cheyned with them & casted darts & stones with suche strengthe & might, that wonder it was to see.
 16 The sarasyns defendid hem self ¹manfully / but at last they were dyscomfyte. And the admyraht that sawe the grete myschief *pat* feht on them hallid vp saylles /
 rowed in hys galyote with eyght hores and so he
 20 escaped. And the maister of Rodes and hys peple toke the galeyes of their enemyes and aht slew or casted ouer bord / and brought them ayen to saynt andrews porte. Thanne the maister of Rodes accom-
 24 panyed with C knightes, bretheren of his religyon, went toward kyng vryan & guyon his brother, and recounted to them aht their good fortune. but sory was the kyng that the Caliphe and the admyral were so escaped.
 28 kyng Vryan thenne departed & dalt emong his people al the proye of his enemyes that he had wonne / sauf he reteyned for hym the artylery & some pauyllons & tentes, and gaf them leue to retourne in to their
 32 Countrees. These thinges thus don, kyng vryan in grete tryumphe & honour as vycctorious prynce, retourned to his cyte of Famagoe, accompayned of Guyon his brother, of the maister of Rodes, and of al the
 36 barons, wher the quene Ermyne receyued them right
 MELUSINE.

but his fleet is observed by the Master of Rhodes, who is on the watch.

He is attacked,

¹ fol. 102.
and defeated,

but escapes with the admiral in an eight-oared boat.

The master of Rhodes captures the navy, slays or drowns all the Saracens, and takes the vessels back to St. Andrew's Port.

He recounts his victory to Urian, who is sorry at the caliph's escape.

Urian and his companions return to Famagoe.

honourably, thankynge god of the noble vycторыe that they obteyned vpon his enemyes. /

Urian's wife
Hermine, being
with child, he
prepares to give
a feast,

Now sayth thistorye, that Ermyne was grete with child & nygh her terme / and that vryan made 4 a feest to be cryed & proclaimed; For he wold in tyme of peas & rest haue festyed his barons of poytou and al other prynces estraungers & other his subgetts. Eyght dayes toforne the feste, begane grete multitude 8 of people to come to the Cite, wherof the kyng was joyful, and made cryees vpon payne of deth that none shuld make derrer the vytaylles. And trouth it was that thre dayes tofore the feste the quene Ermyne 12 was ¹delyuered of a fayre sone. Thenne bygan the feste to wex grete / and the child baptised and named Henry, bycause of hys auncestre hight Henry. And so encreased the feest in ryches & in yfestes. And 16 there were some of the barons of poytou that toke theire leue of the king & of his brother, and of the quene, for to departe, whom the kynge yaf grete yfestes of riches. And they were in nombre six knyghtes and 20 peire companye, which putte them in to the see. Now wyl I cesse of them that are departed to the see / & shal shewe of the feste that was ryght noble and sumptuous, but soone it was turned to sorowe, bycause of 24 the tydinges of the kingis deth of Armenye that came to the Court. /

Twenty-one Ar-
menian knyghts

come to Urian,

with news of the
death of the King
of Armenia,

Thystorye sheweth aft thus, whan the feest was at best, there came xxiⁱⁱ2 knyghtes of the moost 28 noblest barons of the royalme of armanye, al clothed in black / and it shewed wel by theire contenaunce that they were sorowful in herte. And whan they cam tofore the kyng they dide theire obeyssaunce ryght nobly / 32 and the kynge receyued them with grete honour / and they said to him: 'Sire, the kynge of armenye, your vncke, is passed out of this world, on whos sowle god

- haue mercy / and hath lefte to vs a ryght fayre pucelle
 begoten of his body by lawfuH maryage / and she is
 alone hys heyre. Now knowe ye thenne, noble kynge,
 4 that in hys playn lyf he dide doo make this *lettre*, and
 commanded vs to directe it to your noble grace / pray-
 eng the same that the tenour of þe *lettre* ye vouchesaf
 tacomplysshe.' 'By my feith, fayre lordes,' said Vryan /
 8 'yf it be of the thing that I may goodly doo, I shal
 fulfyH his wyH ¹right gladly.' Thenne toke Vryan
 the *lettre* & redd it, of the whiche the tenour was this :
 'Ryght dere lord and right wel beloued newew, I re-
 12 commande me to you as ferfourth as I may / prayeng'
 you right hertyly to haue me to my ryght dere & be-
 loued nyghte your wyf to be recommanded. And
 where by these my *lettres* I make to you the first re-
 16 queste that euer I demanded of you / also consideryng'
 that it shal be the last / For certaynly at the making
 of thees my present *lettres*, I felt myself in such poynt
 that in me was none hope of conualescence nor of lyf.
 20 I hertyly beseche you that ye haue it not in reffus nor
 in dysdayne. It is so thanne that none heyre I ne
 haue of my body, sauf only a doughter, the which
 your brother guyon sawe but of late / whan he was
 24 with me. Wherefore I pray you that ye vouchsaf to
 entrette your said broþer in manere that it playse hym,
 to take the cepter of my dignite rygh and my doughter
 to hys lady, and thus to crowne hym self king of
 28 armanye. And though she be not worthy to haue
 hym to her lord, yet is she come of royal blood. con-
 sideryng thanne her consanguinite haue pite on her /
 and yf that mouyth not you to compassyon / yet re-
 32 membre that ye be champion of Crist, exalting his
 feyth. My royalm is now cristen, and hath be long
 soo / Woo were to me / yf for wantyng of a preu &
 valyaunt man it shuld retourne in to the paynemes
 36 handes. Wherefore, noble kyng, haue regarde to this

and that his
 heir is a fair
 maiden.

They bring
 Urian a letter
 from the de-
 ceased king,

¹ fol. 103.

paying respects
 to Urian and his
 wife,

and intimating
 his near end.

The king tells of
 his daughter,
 whom Guion had
 seen,

and begs Urian
 to entreat his
 brother to marry
 the heiress of
 Armenia, and to
 be king of the
 country ;

as the land re-
 quires a valiant
 man to protect
 it from the
 Saracens.

fol. 103 b.
The letter causes
Urian sorrow,
and he promises
to aid the Ar-
menians.

Guion is sent for,
and is told of the
king's death.

He is offered
the hand of the
daughter of the
king of Armenia.

He accepts it,
and thanks his
brother.

The Armenian
knights are joy-
ful, and kneel
before Guion
and kiss his
hands.

The navy is
prepared at Ly-
masson, and
Guion and many
of his friends
sail to Armenia,

that forsaide is,' &c. Whan vryan vnderstode the tenour
of þe lētre he was moche dolaunt of the kingis deth /
& mouyd by compassion & pyte, ansuerd to the ¹Arma-
nyens, sayeng in this manere : ' Lordes & barons, I shall 4
not fayH you at your nede, For yf my brother wyl not
accorde therto, yet shaH I endeuoire my self to gyue
you helpe, ayde, comfort, & counseyl, as ferre as my
power shal reche.' Thanne called he to hym guyon, 8
hys broþer, that thanne knew the kingis deth, wherof
he was sorrowfuH / and vryan to hym sayd the wordes
that here folowen : ' Guyon, receyue this yefte, For I
make you heyre of armenye and possessour of the moost 12
fayrest pucelle that is in aH the land / that is my
Cousyn florye, doughter to the kyng^e of Armanye, which
by the wyH of god is passed out of this world / and I
pray you that ye dayne to take this yefte, For it oughte 16
not to be refused.' ' By my feyth, fayr brother and
my lord,' said guyon, ' I thanke you moche therof, and
hym also that is causer of hit, on whos sowle god haue
mercy.' Thenne were the knyghtes of armanye joyfuH 20
& glad. And as soone as guyon had consentid therto,
they kneeled byfore hym & kyssed hys handes, after
the custome of theire land / And thanne bygan ayen
the feest greter than it was afore. And in that meane 24
saison the king^e dide doo make hys nauye redy, that
was in to the porte of Lymasson, and in the vessels
he made to be putte grete rychesses / and guyon hys
brother, accompanied with the maister of Rodes, & with 28
many barons of poytou and of Cypre, toke hys leue, &
entred in to the see & saylled so long^e that they arryued
in Armenye,² where they were receyued honourably.³

² Fr. *Et tant allèrent, tant de jour comme de nuyt, qu'ils apperceurent et visrent la ballet du Crub, qui est la maiestresse ville du royaume d'Armanie.*

³ There is an omission here; the French version opens a new chapter, entitled *Comment Guion espousa la pucelle Florie et fut roy d'Armanie*, as follows:—*Adonc l'ung des*

There was guyon wedded with Florye / and after the feste all the barons of the land came to Cruly & made theyre homage to guyon, whiche crowned himself 4 king & regned honourably. And after these thinges doon the maister of Rodes & the barons of Poytou toke theire leue of guyon, whiche yaf to them grete yestes of ryches, & they entred in to theire shippes and rowed 8 tyl they ¹cam at Rodes, where as the said maister festyed worshipfully the estraungers, and so dide al the knightes brotheren of hys relygyon. And at thende of viii dayes the barons of Poytou entred agayn in to 12 the see, and in short tyme they arryued in Cipre, And recounted to Vryan al the trouth of the fayt, and how his brother guyon was honourably receyued in armanye / and how he had wedded Florye, and was crowned 16 kyng of the land & loued of al the peple there, wherof moche thanks rendred guyon to god. Within few dayes after many of the knightes of poytou toke theire leue, and to them yaf vryan grete yestes of 20 ryches / and sent worl by them in wrytyng to his fader & moder of al thestate & prosperous fortune of hym & of hys brother. And thus departed the barons & entred in to theire shippes, whiche they fonde wel 24 purueyed of al that was necessary to them, and toke theire way toward Rochelle in poytou.

² Now sayth thystorye, that the barons of poytou sailled so long that they perceyued & sawe 28 Rochelle, where they arryued with grete joye / and

where he weds Florry. The barons do their homage to him, and he is crowned, and reigns honorably.

His friends set sail to Rhodes, 1 fol. 104. where the Master entertains them,

and from thence to Cyprus, where they relate to Urian all the adventure.

Some knights of Poitou, after receiuing gifts from Urian, and a letter for his parents,

set sail for Rochelle.

They arrive,

barons d'Armanie parla moult hault addressant sa parole à Guion, et dist: Sire, nous vous avons esté querir pour estre nostre seigneur et nostre roy; si est bon que nous vous deliurons tout ce que nous vous devons bailler. Et voiez cy ma damoiselle qui est toute preste de accomplir tout ce que nous vous avons promis et au roy Urian votre frère. Par foi, dist Guion, ce ne demourera mie à faire pour me; and continues then as above.

² This begins a new chapter in the French version, entitled, *Comment les messagiers apportèrent les lettres à Raimondin et à Melusine de ses deux enfans qui estoient rois.*

and three days
after ride to
Lusignan,

where Raymon-
din and Melusine
receive them
with great joy.
They deliver the
letters from
Urian and Guion,

which please
their parents.

This year Melu-
sine builds the
Church of our
Lady and many
other abbeyes,

1 fol. 104 b.

and Odo marries
the daughter
of the Earl of
March.

Anthony and
Regnald, hearing
of the brothers'
success,

desire to follow
their example ;

so they ask per-
mission to go out
into the world
to earn the order
of knighthood.

there they refresshed them self the space of thre dayes,
and after mounted on their horses & rode toward
Lusynen, where they founde Raymondyn and Melusyne
and their other children with þem, whiche receyued 4
them with grete joy. And þenne they delyuered to
them the lettres of kynges Vryan & guyon their sones.
And whan they herde & vnderstoð the tenour of
them they thanked god of the good auenture that he of 8
his grace had youen to their two sones / and yaf grete
jewelles & ryche yestes to the barons that brought
tydyngis of þem. And that same yere melusyne fownded
the chirch of our lady in Lusynen & manie other 12
abbeyes in þe ¹lande, and endowed them with grete pos-
sessyons. And thenne was the trayttee of maryage
made betwix Odon her sone and the Erle of marchis
doughtir, And was the feest grete & noble holden in 16
a medowe nygh to the Castel of Lusynen. /

Thystorye sheweth here, that Anthony & Regnald
were right glad whan they vnderstode the ty-
dinges of the fortune & noble fayttes of armes of their 20
two bretheren / and that in so short space of tyme they
had sore adommed the enemyes of god, and said one
to other, 'My ryght dere brother, it is now tyme that
we goo seke auenture thurgh the world, For here to 24
dwell any lenger we may not acqyre nor gete honour,
as oure brethern Vryan & guyon haue don.' Where-
fore they come to their fader & moder, and to them
said humbly in this manere, 'My lord and you my 28
lady, yf ye vouchsaf it were tyme that we went thurgh
the world at our auenture, for to gete & acquere
thordre of knyghthode as our bretheren vryan &
guyon haue don / how wel we be nat worthy to receyue 32
it so nobly nor in so noble a place as they haue doo /
but yf it playseth god our entencion is to endeuoire
vs þerto.' Thenne ansuerd to them Melusyne their
moder, 'Fayre sones, yf that playseth wel your fader, 36

Their parents
consent.

I me consent to your requeste.' 'By my feyth, lady,' said Raymondyn, 'doo your wyH therof, For what someuer ye wyl I me consent thereto.' 'Sire,' said

4 Melusyne, 'it semeth to me good that from hens fourth they begynne to take on them som vyage for to knowe the world & the straunge marches / also to be renommed & knowen / and to knowe & discerne good from euyl.'

8 Thenne the two bretheren kneeled byfore theire fader & moder, & thanked them moch humbly of the honour that they promysed them to ¹doo. And here ceaseth thystory to spek of them / and speketh of another

¹ fol. 105.

12 matere.

In this partye sayth thistorye, that in the marches of Allemayne, betwene Lorayne & Ardane, was a noble Countrey, the which was somtyme called the

16 Erledome of Lucembourg, and now it is named a duchye. In that same Countree was some tyme a lord erle of the land, whiche after his decesse lefte a fayre doughter his heyre / she was clepyd Crystyne, and her

At the time
when the ruler
of Luxembourg
was a maiden
named Christine,

20 fader was named Asselyn. Alle the barons of the land made theire homage to her as to the rightfuH heyre of the lande. On that tyme was in Anssay a kynge whos wyf was deed in her child bed at the birthe of a

the wife of the
King of Anssay
died.

24 doughter, whiche the fader made to be baptised & named Melidee. Whan this kynge thanne herde how the Erle of Lucembourg was passed out of this world, and that none heyre he had but a doughter, whiche

28 was the fayrest damoyseH of aH the land / he sent in ambaxade to her the moost noble & secretest men of hys CounseyH, to speke & treate the maryage of hym with her. But the pucelle Crystyne wold neuer con-

He wished to
marry again, and
made proposals
to Christine,

but was rejected.

32 sent therto / wherfore he wexed sorowfuH in herte / and sware god that outhre by force or by her wyH he shuld haue her, whatsoeuer it might faH therof. Thenne made he his mandement, & chalenged the mayde & alle

In revenge he
swore he would
have her by
force, and chal-
lenged her and
her land.

36 her lande. Whan thanne the barons & noble men of

the lande & all the commynalte wyst it / they said
 & sware that syth theyre lady wold not haue hym to
 her lord / they shuld shewe to hym that he dide wrong
 to the pucelle and to them also. And immediatly they 4
 garnysshed theire Cites, tounes, & Fortresses. ¹And
 the moost part of the barons drew themself to the
 toune & Castel of Lucembourg with Cristyne, theire
 owne propre lady. What shuld I make you long compte / 8
 they were nat that tyme strong ne puyssaunt ynough for
 to fyght ayenst the kyng of Anssay. For he came vpon
 them with a grete puyssaunce of peple & moche adom-
 maged the lande / and came al brennyng vnto byfore 12
 the toune & Fortresse of Lucembourg, where he layed
 siege. And of faytte theire was grete scarmysshing and
 grete losse of one parte and of oþer. It happed thanne
 that one of the noblest barons of the land, the whiche 16
 had be with Vryan at the conqueste of the royaume of
 Cipre, and euer was with hym at all the baytayhes that
 he had ayenst the paynemes / the whiche was come
 ayen with the barons of Poytou vnto Lusynen / and 20
 had receyued of Melusyne riche jewels & grete yeftes
 of ryches / and sawe there Regnald and Anthony, that
 were moche strong and grete, & of fyers & hardy
 contenaunce / and wel it semed to hym that they 24
 shuld ensiew the condicions & maneres of theire
 bretheren, and theire high prowes & enterpryse / drew
 the noble men of the land apart, and said to them in
 this manere: 'Fayre lordes, ye may conceyue and wel 28
 perceyue that we may not hold longe ayenst the puy-
 saunce of the same kinge. Wherefore yf it seme you
 good, myn oppynyon were to see a remedy be had to it
 rather to fore than to late, For good it is to shette the 32
 stable or euer the horses be lost.' And they ansuerd,
 'that is trouth / but we may not perceyue no remedy
 therto without the grace of god be.' 'For southe,' said
 the forsaid baron, 'Without godis grace none may but 36

1 fol. 105 b.

The people put
 it in a state of
 defence,

but they were
 not strong
 enough to with-
 stand the King
 of Anssay,
 who came and
 did them great
 damage.

A baron, who
 had been with
 Urian when he
 conquered
 Cyprus,

takes the barons
 of Luxembourg
 apart,

lytel or nought doo, but with that it is good to take
 ayde who that may ¹haue it.' 'Certaynly,' said the
 barons, 'ye say right wel; yf ye thanne know some
 4 gentylman worthy to haue our lady, and valyaunt &
 preu to deffende vs ayenst our enemyes, lete vs knowe
 hym. For ye be therto hold & bounden bycause of
 your alygeaunce.' This gentylman thanne rehersed to
 8 them fro hed to hed how vryan & hys brother departed
 fro Lusynen, and aH thauenture of theire vyage / also
 thestate of theire fader and moder / and ouermore, he
 shewed to them the fayre maynten & countenaunce of
 12 Anthony & Regnault / and that he knew for certayn /
 that who so went to seke & requyre the socours and
 helpe of the two bretheren, they shuld come with
 grete puyssaunce, whan they shuld haue knowledge of
 16 the faytte. 'By my feyth,' said the noblemen, 'ye say
 fuH wel.' Thenne they fourthwith went tofore Cry-
 styne theire lady, and worde to worde they recounted
 to her aH this affayre. And sho said to them, 'Fayre
 20 lordes, I recommande you my land and yours / doo
 what semeth you best to thonour of me and of you, for
 the commyn wele of aH my land. For wete it for
 certayn, that for to dey or to be dysherytred, I shal not
 24 haue the kyng of Anssay to my lord / how be it he is
 better than to me apparteyneth, but for asmoche that
 he wyl haue by force me & my land.' And they
 ansuerd to her / 'doubte you not therof, my lady, For
 28 yf it playse god, he shal not haue so moche of puy-
 sance as long as we shaH mowe stere our owne bodyes.'
 'Lordes,' said she, 'gramercy.' And thenne they departed
 thens. Thenne said one of the barons to the forsaidd
 32 gentylman in this manere: 'ye that haue putte vs in
 this quarelle / say now what best is for to doo.' 'By my
 feyth,' said he, 'yf it lyke you good, ye shaH delyuere
 me two of you to goo with me to Lusynen, to wete yf
 36 we can fynde there ²ony thing' to vs prouffitable.'

¹ fol. 106.and tells them
of the bravery
of Urian and
Gulon,and of their two
brothers, An-
thony and Reg-
nald, who would
come to their
assistance with
grent forces if
they were asked.The barons have
an audience with
Christine.She puts herself
in their handsand once more
refuses the King
of Anssay.They pledge
themselves to
defend her.² fol. 106 b.

Two wise and noble men are sent as messengers to Lusignan with Urian's knight.

During the great feast, at which Anthony and Regnald distinguish themselves in jousting,

the ambassadors from Luxembourg arrive,

and are welcomed.

Urian's knight is asked by Anthony if he will accompany him and his brother on a voyage

¹ fol. 107.

in search of honour.

Thenne they anoone chose among^t them, that is to wete, two of the wysest & noblest men for to goo *with* hym. And they departed about the first slepe, mounted vpon good & lyght horses, and yssued out of a posterne, and 4 passed by that one side of thoost, so that they were neuer perceyued / and hasted them self on theire way toward Lusynen. And here cesseth thystorye of them, and spekethe of Meluysyne & her children, that is to wete, 8 of Anthony and of Regnald. /

Thystory sayth that the feste was right grete in the medowe byforsaid / and men jousted there valyauntly. but aboue alle the yonge squyers that 12 were there, Anthony and Regnald dyde best after the sayeng & commendacion of the ladyes and gentyl wymen that were there. And there were grete jewels gyuen. but alwayes Melusyne thoughte to purueye to 16 thestate of her children, and made to them fayre robes & ryche raymentes, and ordeyned and purueyed of men to goo *with* them, and in especial wyse, and noble men to endoctrine them, & shew to tham the way of good 20 gouernauce. Duryng yet the feste, came there the ambaxatours of Lucembourg / þe whiche made theire obeyssaunce to Raymondyn & to Melusyne ryght honourably, and also to alle the companye / And joyously 24 they were receyued / & soone was there knowen the knight that had be *with* vryan at the Conqueste of Cypre. and he was honourably festyed, and of hym demanded Anthony, for the wele that he herde saye of 28 hym, yf it playseed hym to goo *with* hym & *with* his brother Regnault in som vyage where he purposed to goo, & to thayde of god, he shuld be wel rewarded. The knyght thanne demanded of Anthony: 'My lord, 32 & whither is your entencion for to goo?' And he ansuerd^t: ¹' At our auenture there as god shal conduyt vs, for to gete honour and cheualrye.' 'By my feyth,' said the knyght, 'I shal telle you the fayrest and the 36

moost honourable auenture that euer gentylman had
that aduentured hym self, and the moost honourable
enterpryse.' And whan the two damoyseaulx vnderstod

The knight tells
of the fair ad-
venture,

4 hym, they made moche of hym, & said in this manere :

'Noble man, vouchesauf to vttre to vs that noble
enterpryse that ye speketh of.' 'By my feyth, lordes,'
said the knight, 'in as moche that I were ryght joyous

and is asked by
the brothers for
full information.

8 you to see enhaunsed in honour, also for to susteyne
ryght & reason, I shal ryght gladly shew to you all the
matere therof.

12 **R** yght dere lordes, it is trouth that all thoo that
loue ryghtwysnes and that be wylling to gete
honour / they oughte to helpe and susteyne the wydowes
an orphenyns. And forasmoche, fayre lordes, it is soo
that in the marche of Lorayne & of Ardane is a moche

He relates that

16 ryche & noble Countree that clepen the duchye of Lucem-
bourg, the whiche duchye a noble man gouerned long
as hys owne propre herytage / the whiche valyaunt man
passed to god but of late, and hath lefte a doughtir hys
20 heyre of the land / to the whiche right noble and fayre
pucelle alle the nobles and barons of the land haue as
now don theyre homage & obeyssaunce. And where

the Duke of
Luxembourg

it is soo that the kynge of Anssay, knowyng the beaute-
24 fulnes of the mayde, and her grete & noble enheryt-
aunce, hath demanded her by maryage / but that pucelle
reffused hym bycause he had be wedded tofore, & of
late he was wydower. Wherefore this kynge of Anssay

and owing to
her beauty and
riches she is
sought as wife
by the King of
Anssay, but be-
cause he is a
widower she has
refused him.

28 hath deffyed her and al her land, and supposeth to
hane her by force & ayenst her wylle / and he is entred
in to the land / and hath brent & slayn al byfore hym
vnto the toune & Castel ¹of Lucembourg, where as

In revenge war
has been de-
clared, and the
king is trying to
get her by force,

¹ fol. 107 b.

32 he hath now besieged the said lady, and hath sworne
that he shaH neuer departe thens vnto tyme he hath
his wylle of her, other by force or by loue. Wherefore,
lordes, me semeth that in all the world nys more honour-

and now he is
besieging her at
Luxembourg.

36 able a vyage ne more raysonnable than that same is,

On hearing the story Anthony agrees to succour the maiden,

and the ambassadors promise to conduct Anthony and help him all in their power.

Anthony and Regnald relate the tidings to their parents, and ask for help.

Raymondin thinks it a good opportunity,

¹ fol. 108.

and Melusine promises to provide well for her sons.

She announces that any man prepared to serve under the brothers, should come to Lusignan.

For alle thoo that loue honour & gentylnesse ought to draw them self that part.' 'In good feyth,' said thenne anthony, 'ye say trouth / and wete it I shaſt shew this matere to my lady my moder, to see what ayde and helpe my lord our fader and she wyl gyue vs / and how so euer it happeth, by thayde of god we shaſt goo and socoure the pucelle that the kynge of Anssay wyl haue by force, wherof me semeth that he is euyl counseyllid.' 'On my feyth, my lord,' sayd thenne the knight, 'yf ye vouchesauf to vndertake that vyage / I & my felawes, two knightes that be here come with me, shal conduyte & helpe you of al our power.' And þe two bretheren thanked them moche, & saide / 'no doubte we shal goo thither, yf it be the playsire of god' / And thenne they retourned toward their moder / and the knight toward his felawes / and reherced to them how he had exployted / and that no nede was to speke ne requere Raymondyn ne Melusyne therof. 'Now, veryly,' said the two barons, 'it is ryght wysly don of you / blessing be god therof.' /

Here saith thistory, that Anthony & Regnald came to their fader & moder, and denounced to them these tydinges, and requyred them of help & ayde to accomplysse this enterpryse. Thenne spake Raymondyn to Melusyne, & said, 'Certainly, lady, herto they may haue a fayre begynnyng in armes. Wherefore I pray you that ye purueye for them in suche wyse that we may haue therof honour & prouffyt.' 'For southe,' said Melusyne, 'Sire, for accomplysse your wylle, I shaſt endeuyre me so diligently therto, that bothe you & they also shal be content.' And thenne she made that ony man that wold take wages vnder Anthony & Regnald of Lusynen, that they shuld come at a certayn day to Lusynen, and there they shuld be payed of þeir wages for one yere / and also she made it to be cryed al about the marches of poytou. /

20

24

28

32

36

IN this partye reherceth thystorye, that within the day that Melusyne made to be cryed and anonced the said wages,¹ were assembled many gentylmen in a meddowe bysyde Lusynen; and grete foyson men of armes, to the nombre of foure thousand helmets and fyue houndred, some archers & oper crosbowe men / and there were no pages, but al strong men / and were al lodged in fayre tentes & payllons, and so purueyed of all maner harneys & of al other thinges necessary to pem, that enery man was content. And while Raymondyn & melusyne payed them theire wages, & purueyed for al thinges that were nedefuH to theyre vyage / Anthony & Regnald araysonned & demanded of the said knight and of his barons, hys felawes, of the estate of the pucelle of the land / And they said to them the very trouth / and were joyfuH in theire hertes of the grete apparayH that they sawe so soone redy, For wel they had take in thanke half of the same to socoure with aH theire lady. Wherfor pey thanked god & our lady his blessid moder, And sent fourth with a messenger toward the barons of Lucembourg, for to anounce to them the noble socours² that god sent to them. Wherof they were joyful & glad. And aftir the barons went & told to theire lady the tydynges, of the whyche she was mochi recomforted, and bygan moche deuontely to lawde god her creatour. And whan the people knew therof, they had grete joye, and thanked god, and made grete fyres, and cryed with a mery voys, sayeng thus: 'Joye & victory to our pucelle.' And whan theire enemyes withoutforth herd them, they wondred mochi, & went & denounced it to theire kynge, wherof he was abashed & pensefuH. And thenne came tofore certayn personnes, that said to hym: 'Sire, doo make good watche, For they of the toune awayte dayly for socours.' 'By god,' said the

On the day appointed for the meeting,

4000 helmets and 500 archers assemble.

They are well armed;

and are paid their wages.

The barons describe the state of the land to the brothers,

and send word of the aid coming to Luxembourg,

² fol. 108 b.

whereat the barons, the lady Christine, and her people are glad.

The king of Ansay is informed of the rejoicing,

¹ waged in MS.

but believes he
will starve them
out, not knowing
of succour on
the way.

kinge, 'I ne wot nor may knowe by no manere fro
whens socours shuld come to them; I doubte not / but
that I shal haue them at my wyll, other by strenght
or by honger and for lack of meete.' And thus the 4
kyng of Anssay assured hym self, But aftirward he
fondt hym self deceyued. Now I shal leue of hym,
and shal retourne to speke of Melusyne and of her two
sones. 8

Melusine calls
Anthony and
Regnald, and
gives them part-
ing advice.

Melusyne thenne called to her Anthony and Reg-
nald, her two sones / and to them she said in
this manere: 'Children, ye now wyl departe fro my
lord your fader & fro me / and happely we shal neuer 12
see you agayn. Wherefore I wyl teche & introdruyte
you for your wele & honour. And I pray you that ye
vnderstand & reteyne wel that I shaH say, For that
shal be to you nedefull in tyme to come. First, ye 16
shal loue / doubte, & preyse god our creatour; ye shal
fermely, iustly, & deuoutly hold the commandementes
of our moder holy chirche / and stedfast shal you be in
our feyth catholical. / be ye humble & curteys to good 20
folke / fyers & sharp to the wicked & euyl folke / and
be ye ¹alwayes of fayre ansueryng, bothe to moost and
leste / and hold talking to euery one whan tyme
requyreth, without eny dysdayn / promyse ne be- 24
heyghte nothing but that ye may shortly acomplysshe
it after your power; withdrawe not rapporteurs of
wordes toward you / byleue not enuyous / nor beleue
not to soone ne lyghtly / For that causeth somtyme 28
the frend to wexe mortal foo; putte not in office
auarycious nor fel folke / acoynte² you not with
another mans wyf / departe or deele to your felawes of
suche thinges that god shal gyue you; be swete & 32
debonnaire to your subjects / and to your enemyes
fyers & cruel vnto tyme they be subdued & vnder
your puyssaunce / kepe your self fro auauntynge & fro

She tells them
to love God
and keep the
commandments
of holy Church,

to be courteous
to all,

¹ fol. 109.

to be cautious
in believing
scandal,

to be fair to the
comrades,

stern with their
enemies,

² Fr. *acointez*.

menace / but doo your faytte *with* few wordes this that
 may be doo. Despyse neuer none enemy, though he
 be lytel / but loke wel about and make good watche /
 4 be not emonges your felawes as maister, but commyn
with them / and worship euerychon after his degre /
 and gyue to them after your power, & after that they
 be worthy. ¹gyue to the good men of armes hors &
 8 harneys & syluer as rayson requyreth. Now, my
 children, I ne wot nat what I shuld more saye to you /
 but that ye kepe euer trouthe in al your dedes &
 affayres. Hold! I gyue eche of you a ryng of gold,
 12 wherof the stones ben of one vertue. For wete it that
 as long as ye haue good cause, ye shal neuer be dys-
 comfytet in batayH.' And thenne she kyssed them in
 moderately wyse, whiche thanked her; and toke leue of
 16 theire fader, that ryght dolaunt was of theire departyng.
 They made thenne theire troompettes to be sowned &
 blowen, and putte them self al byfore, & conduyted the
 auauntgarde / and after folowed the sommage & the
 20 grete batayH in fayre ²aray / and the arryergarde also
 marched forth in fayre ordynaunce. It was a good
 sight to see the state of the vantgarde, whiche the two
 bretheren delyuered to be conduyted to a noble baron
 24 & valyaunt knight of poytou / and them self toke &
 conduyted the gret baytayH / and by them rode the
 ambaxadours of Lucembourg. And of the reregarde
 were captayns the two knightes of poytou that ledd
 28 vryan & guyon in to Cypre, and that first told to them
 that the sawdan had besieged the Cite of Famagoce.
 And to these two knightes Raymondyn & Melusyne
 had recommanded the estate of theire two sones, Reg-

not to be given
 to vain speaking
 Not to despise
 their foes, but
 ever to keep
 good watch.

To treat their
 men-at-arms
 well,

and above all
 to keep to the
 truth.
 She gives them
 each a ring,
 which will pre-
 vent them ever
 being defeated in
 battle in a good
 cause.

The brothers
 take leave of
 their parents,

sound the trum-
 pets,

* fol. 109 b.

¹ Fr. *Donnez aux bons hommes d'armes, chevalx, cottes d'acier, bassines, des premiers, et argent selon raison, et vous se vous roiez ung bon homme de la main qui riennne devers vous mal vestu ou mal monté, si l'appellez moult humblement et luy donnez robes, chevaux et harnois, selon la valeur de sa personne et selon le pouvoir que vous avez alors.*

and march that
night to Mirabel,

where they set
good watch.

Anthony orders
everyone to ride
under his banner
in battle array.

This wearies the
men,

and in ten days
the knight com-
manding the
vanguard

¹ fol. 110.

declares to the
brothers that
the people think
there is no need
to be so arrayed
till they are in
the enemies'
country.

But Anthony
replies that it is
best they should
learn themselves,

rather than that
their enemies
should teach
them.

nald & Anthony. And trouth it is, that on the first
nyght they lodged them nygh to a strong toun vpon
a lytel ryuere / and was that same toun named
Myrabel, þe whiche Melusyne founded / and that same 4
nyght bygan the two brethern to make good watche, as
they had be alredy in land of enemyes, wherof many
gaf themself grete merueyH; but they durst not reffuse
it, For Anthony was so cruel that euery man drad 8.
hym. On the morowe next after the masse was doo /
the two bretheren made cryees vpon payne of hors &
haryneys, & to be banysshed out of the felawship, þat
eueryman shuld ryde armed vnder his banere, in good 12
aray of batayH. none durst not refuse it / but thus was
it doo, Wherof they al merueyllled. And in this manere
they rode by the space of ten dayes, & so long that
they cam in champayne / and many one were wery & 16
ennuyed of their harneys / as moche for þis that it
was no nede / as bycause they were not acustomed of
it / and som spake therof, wherfor the knight that con-
duyted the vangarde cam to the two brethern, & thus 20
said to them: 'My lordes, the moost part of your
people is euyl apayed & content bycause that ye ¹con-
strayne them to bere their harneys; For them semeth
no nede to doo soo tyl that they come nygh to the 24
marches of your enemyes.' 'And how, sire,' said
Anthony, 'thinke you not that the thinge which is
acustomed of long tyme be bettre knowen of them that
exercice it, & lesse greuable than that thinge which is 28
newly lerned?' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the knyght,
'ye say wel.' 'morouer,' said Anthony, 'It is bettre
for þem to lerne the payne for to susteyne their
harneys in tyme, that surely they may so doo at their 32
ease, & to refresshe them surely for to essaye them
self, and knowe the manere how they myght easy
susteyn & suffre it whan nede shalbe. For yf they
muste be thaught of their enemyes / their payne 36

should be greter & doubtous / and ye wote ynough, that
 who lerneth not his crafte in his yougthe, with grete
 peyne & hard it shal be for hym to be a good werke-
 4 man in his old age.' 'Certaynly, my lord,' said the
 knyght, 'ye saye the playne trouth of it, and your
 reason is full good.' And thenne he departed fro
 hym, and anonced to many one this rayson, in so
 8 moche that knowlech of it they had thorough al thoost,
 wherof euery man held hym self wel apayed & content /
 and al sayd that the two bretheren might not fayH to
 haue grete wele, yf god wold send to them long lyf,
 12 and that they shuld come to grete perfection of honour.

The answer
 satisfies the
 host, and the
 men say that
 the brothers will
 come to great
 honour.

Thystorye sayth in this partye, that the same nyght
 the oost was lodged vpon a ryuere that men
 called aisne / and about the first slepe, the two bretheren
 16 made to be cryed alarme through the oost right ferfully.

When the host
 was lodged on
 the Aisne that
 night an alarm
 was raised by
 the brothers.

Thenne was there grete trouble, and in euery syde they
 armed them, puttyng themselves in fayre aray of batayH.
 euery man vnder his banere byfore theire tentes. And
 20 wete it wel, that it¹ was grete beaute to see the good
 contenauce & the noble² ordynaunce & fayre aray of
 the men of armes, and of the two bretheren, that went
 fro bataiH to batayH / and there as fawte was of
 24 ordynaunce, they redressid theire peple to it. And
 the thre barons, ambaxadours of Lucembourgh, beheld
 wel theire maner & contenauce, & said that one to
 that other: 'On my feyth, these two children ben wel
 28 chappen to subdue & conquere yet a grete part of the
 world / now wel may say the king of Anssay, that
 dere he shaH abyge his folye & proude enterpryse, and
 the dommage that he hath borne to our lady, & to
 32 her land & subgets.' In suche party they were long
 tyme, tyl the espyes that secretly were departed fro the
 oost to dyscouere & ouersee the Countre about, yf
 enemyes were nygh / came agayn, & sayd that pey

² fol. 110 b.

The forces
 arrayed them-
 selves for battle,

and spies were
 sent over the
 country to find
 the enemy.

¹ is in MS.

They returned with the news that no enemy was in sight. At last it was known to be a false alarm.

The captains of the van and rear guards complained of the trouble,

but Anthony told them he did it to test the troops.

* fol. 111.

The next day they marched to Dam Castle,

which is twelve leagues from the besieged town.

The ambassadors advise the brethren to halt and refresh their men.

aspyed no personne; whero[f] al gaf them self grete wonder of that alarme & affray, but at last it was wel knowen that the two bretheren caused it. Thenne came the two knightes, captayns of the arryergarde, 4 & also the Captayne of the vantgarde, to the two bretheren, & said to them in this manere: 'My lordes, grete symplenes it is to you thus to traueylle your people for nought.' 'How,' said Anthony to them / 8 'whan ye doo make a new rayment, be it harneys or clothing, make ye not it to be essayed, for to knowe yf any fawte is fonde in it, and to haue it mended & sette as it shuld be?' / And they al ansuerd, 'For certayn, 12 sire, ye / and that is ryght.' Thenne sayd Anthony, 'yf I wold haue assayed my felawes to fore that it had be tyme, for to knowe how I shuld fynd them redy at my nede / sene & consydered that we approuche our 16 enemyes / to thend, yf any fawte we had fond, to haue purueyed of conuenable remedy therto, at our lesse dompage / than yf in dede it had be.' Whane they [heard¹] that word / they ansuerd, 'my lord, ye 20 say but rayson' / and they wondred moche of ²theire gouernement, and of theire subtylte & wyt / sayeng betwene them self / that they shuld yet come to grete perfection. Soone after the day was come, the masse 24 was said and the trompettes sowned; at which sowne the vantgarde marched fourth, and the sommage and Cartes folowed / and after the grete oost deslodged, & went so long by theire journeyes that they came & 28 lodged them vpon a ryuere named Meuse, vnder a Fortresse named Damcastel / And fro thens vnto the siege tofore lucembourgh, were not past two days journey for them. Therne came the barons ambaxadours of 32 Lucembourgh to the two bretheren, & said: 'My lord, we haue no more but xij leghis vnto the siege, it were good that ye shuld refresshe your peple here vpon this

¹ Word scraped out of MS.

fayre ryuer; For here is good soiourne & good abydyng' /
and also is good to take aduys & Counseyl how ye wyl
doo.' /

- 4 **T**hanne ansuerd Anthony ryght boldly: 'By my
feyth, fayre lordes, thaduys is ouerlong take,
For assoone that my brother & I haue sent toward the
kyng of Anssay, yf he wyl not doo after our wyH, he
8 may hold hym sure to haue batayH / and the vycory
shal send god to whom it playse hym / but what / me
semeth we haue good quareH, And therfor we haue
hope on our lord that he shal helpe vs / and also we
12 shal, or euer we fyght, demande of hym ryght &
rayson / but it muste be aduysed who shal goo on the
message.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the Captayne of the
vantgarde, 'I shal be your messenger, yf it please you,
16 and the gentylman that knoweth the Countre shal lede
me thither.' 'In the name of god,' said anthony /
'that playseth me ryght wel / but that shal not be tyl
myn oost be but thre legthes ferre fro them / to thende,
20 yf þe batayH muste be that we may be nere them for
to fyght, and haue thayde of the toun with vs.
1For yf he wyl the batayH we wold be alre dy by
hym.' And thus they lefte to speke of this matere.
24 And on the morne erly, after that the masse was doo,
thoost marched, & passed the ryuere vnder Damcastel
in fayre ordynaunce / and so long they rode that they
arryued on an euen betwene vertone and Lucem-
28 bourgh, and there lodged them self. And on the
morow erly Anthony sent the Captayne of the vant-
garde, and the said gentylman toward the kyng of
Anssay, to whom they said the wordes that herafter
32 folowe. Thenne they hasted them so moche that they
came to the siege, and were brought as messagers
tofore the kyng, whome they salued, & made reuer-
ence as they oughte / and aftir the knyght captayn
36 said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, hither we be sent

But Anthony declines to do so, and says he will send to the King of Anssay, and if he accepts not their terms they will fight.

The captain of the vanguard volunteers to be the messenger.

Anthony says he will send when they are as near as three leagues to the enemy.

1 fol. 111 b.

In the morning after mass the army marches beyond Virton, and rests there.

Next morning Anthony sends the captain of the vanguard and the gentleman to the King of Anssay.

The captain, after making reverence to the king,

says he has been sent to show the outrage that has been committed on the noble lady of Luxembourg.

If the king will make amends for the wrongs he has done and depart, he can do so; if not he must fight.

The King of Anssay mocks the knight,

1 fol. 112.

who now demands a speedy answer.

The king replies that he cares not a straw for the knight's masters; whereupon the knight defies the king on behalf of his lords.

from our redoubted lordes, Anthony & Regnald, of Lusynen bretheren, for to shew vnto you the fawte & grete oultrage that ye doo to the noble damoyselle lady of Luxembourg / the which our lordes redoubted 4 mande, & lete you knowe by vs that yf ye wyl restablysshe the dommage, & to make raysounable & lawful amendes of the Iniury & vylonnye that ye haue don to her / to her subgets & to her propre enherytaunce, 8 and after to departe out of her land ye shal doo wel, and they make them strong^e to make your peas with her / and yf ye wyl not so deelee with her / their entencion is for to take reparacion vpon you of the 12 dommages beforsayd by strengthe of their armes & by batayll. and gyue to vs an ansuere what your wyll is to doo / and after morouer I shal telle you as I am commanded to doo.' 'How, sire knyght,' said the 16 kyng, 'are ye come hither for to preche vs / by my feith lytel or nought ye may gete here. For as to your lettres ne to your preching, I shal not be letted of myn entencion / but as long ye may preche as ye wyl, For I 20 vouchesaf. ¹For I take my dysport in your talkyng & prechement. And also I trow that ye ne doo or saye suche thinges but for dysport.' 'By my heed, sire,' said the Captayne, that was angry / 'yf ye doo not 24 promptly & anoone this that our lordes mande by vs vnto you / the dysport that ye speke of / shal hastily tourne you to grete myschief & sorowe.' 'Sire knight,' said the kyng, 'of menaces ye may gyue vs ynoughe. 28 For other thing ye shal not haue ne withbere fro me, For your maisters, nor your menaces I preyse not worth a strawe.' 'Thenne, king of Anssay, I deffye you on my ryght redoubted lordes byhalf.' 'Wel 32 thanne,' said the kyng, 'I shal kepe me fro mystakyng & fro losse & dommage, yf I may' / 'By ² my sowle,' answerd the Captayne, 'grete nede ye shal haue to do

² MS. read *My*.

soo.' And without any moo wordes they departed / And
 whan they were out of thoost or siege / the gentylman
 toke leue of the Captayne, and secretly entred in to
 4 the tounse for to recounte the tydynges of the two
 brethern / and whan he came to the gate he was
 anone knowen, and the yate was opened to hym, &
 gladly he was welcommed of eueryone / and they
 8 demanded tydynges of hym / whiche ansuerd to them.
 'Sires, make good chere, For soone ye shal haue the
 moost noblest socours that euer was seen / and wete it
 wel that the king of Anssay abydeeth so long, that he
 12 shal be certaynly othre slayn or take, & his people al
 dyscomfyted, take, or putte to deth.' Thenne byganne
 the joye to be so grete thurgh the tounse that they with-
 outforth herd the bruyt therof, and woundred moche
 16 what it might be / and announced it to the kyng.
 'By my feyth,' said the kynge, 'they recomforte them-
 self for the commyng of thoo two children by whome
 that knyght hath deffied vs, For ¹as I trow, they
 20 haue herd some tydynges therof, and perfor they make
 suche joye.' 'In the name of god,' said an auneynt
 knight, 'al this may be / but good were to take heede
 therto / For there nys none litel enmy, but we ought
 24 to haue doubte therof. For I know them wel ynough
 by semblaunt. For or euer they come hyther from
 poytoun we shold haue brought about a parte of our
 wyll.' Now I shal leue to spek of the kynge / and shal
 28 retourne to speke of hym that brought tydynges of the
 two bretheren in to the tounse. Whan the knyght
 thanne was entred as byfore is said, he went fourth
 vnto the Castel where the pucelle Cristyne was / and
 32 after hys obeyssaunce don vnto her, he reherced to her
 al the playn trouthe of the mayntene & countenaunce of
 the two bretheren / and he said to her / 'how Anthony
 bare a claw of a Lyon in his face' / and shewed to her
 36 hys grete fyerste & his grete strengthe / Also how

The captain and the gentleman leave the king. The gentleman secretly enters the town to give tidings of the brethren.

He tells the people that the King of Anssay will be either slain or taken, and his people overcome;

whereat they make a joyful noise.

The King of Anssay says they rejoice because of the succour of

¹ fol. 112 b.

the children who have defied him.

An ancient knight advises the king to take heed of the report.

The Luxembourg knight goes to the castle where the maid Christine dwells,

and describes Anthony and Regnald to her.

Regnald had but one eye / and the beaulte of theyre bodyes & of theire membres / wherof she merueylled moche, & said that it was grete dommage, Whan eny contreyfayture was in the membres of suche noble men. 4 And now cesse thystory to speke of them / and retourneth to tell of the captayne that retourneth to thoost toward Anthony and Regnald. /

The captain arrives at the two brethren and their host,

and recounts the king's proud answer, and how the knight left him to go to Luxembourg.

¹ fol. 118.

The brethren send word through the host that those who have no will to fight can go home,

but the host cries, 'Let us go forth upon your enemies.'

The host marches forward to a little river,

where they rest, sup, and appoint a good watch.

At day-spring they are ready; 200 men of arms and 100 cross-bowmen are left to take charge of the camp.

Thystorye sayth that so long rode the Captayne 8 that he came in to thoost of the two bretheren, & recorded to them how he had fulfilled hys message, & recounted word by word the proude ansuere of the king, and how he had deffied hym in theire byhalf / 12 and also how the knyght was departed fro hym, & was gon to Lucembourg to tell there ¹ of theire commyng / And whan the two bretheren herd hym they were full joyous / and soone made cryees thrughe theyre oost, 16 that al they that had no wyll for to fyght & abyde the batayll shuld draw themself aparte, & gaf to them leue to retourne agayn in theire Countrey / but they escryed them self *with* an hye voys. 'Ha / a, franc 20 demoyseaux make your trompettes to be sowned, & lete vs go forth vpon your enemyes / For we ben not come in your companye / but for to take thauenture *with* you suche as god shal send vs / Ha, lordes, goo we 24 & renne vpon our enemyes, For *with* goddes grace, & *with* the good wyll that we be of, they shal soone be dyscomfyted.' Whan thenne the two bretheren herd the ansuerd of theire peple they were joyfull, and made 28 theire oost to departe, & came & lodged vpon a lytel ryuere / and the vantgarde & the grete bataill lodged togidre, bycause they might goo no ferper / and they soupped togidre, and after went to reste them, & made 32 good watche / and at day spryng they were al redy / and lefte to kepe their lodgis two houndred men of armes *with* an £ crossbowes / and thenne the oost in fayre aray marched forth. There myght men see 36

baners & standarts in the wynd, and vnder them the
 flour of cheualrye in good aray & fayre ordynaunce /
 there had ye sene salades & helmets shynyng clere /
 4 and harneys knokyng togidre that grete beaute it was
 to see. They kept & marched nygh togidre, so that
 one passed not that other. And Anthony and Regnauld
 rode at the first frount, mounted vpon two grete horses
 8 armed of aH pieces. And ¹in that estate and aray they
 went tyl they came vpon a lytel mountayne / and
 sawe fro thens in the valey the toun & Castel of
 Lucembourgh, and the gret siege that aduyrouned it
 12 about. And wete it pat they of the siege had not yet
 perceyued thoost of the two bretheren / but they were
 all asured pat they shuld haue the batayH. Thenne
 sent anthony foure houndred helmets for to scarmysse
 16 the siege / and the oost folowed with lytel paas
 in fayr aray of batayH / And on the wynges of
 thoost were knightes and Crosbowes in fayre ordy-
 naunce. Now telH we of the foure houndred fyghting
 20 men that went for to scarmysse with them of the
 siege. /

Thystory saith that the foure houndred fyghtyng
 men entred vpon their enemyes, and slew &
 24 hew doune aH that they recountred / And whan they
 were come nygh to the kingis tente, they of the night
 watche that were not yet vnarmed went ayenst them, for
 the cry that they made that was 'Lusynen' / many sperys
 28 were putte there aH to pieces, and many one cast doune
 to the ground / and the gretest damage tourned vpon
 them of the siege / but sodaynly the kyng armed hym
 self, and putte hym vnder his banere byfore his tente /
 32 and whiles they held foot alle thoost was armed, &
 drew them toward the kyngis banere. And he de-
 manded of them, 'Fayre lordes, what affray is this?'
 'By my feyth,' said a knight, 'they are men of armes
 36 that entred in your oost ryght fyersly, and they caH

They march forth
 in good order ;
 Anthony and
 Regnauld in
 front on two
 great horses.
 1 fol. 113 b.

They come to a
 little mountain,
 from which they
 see the town and
 castle of Luxem-
 bourg and the
 siege around it.
 The besiegers do
 not see the
 relieving host.

Anthony
 sends 400 skir-
 mishers in
 advance.

These knights
 slay all they
 encounter,

and come nigh
 the king's tent,
 which was de-
 fended by his
 night watch.

The king arms
 himself,

and asks his
 men what affray
 is this?

A knight answers
 that men of
 arms have

damaged them
sore, but the
night watch has
driven them
back.

¹ fol. 114.

Anthony with his
men comes up in
battle array,

and the king
comes forth to
meet him.

The battle
begins, and
much blood is
spilt.

Anthony fights
so well

that the most
hardy dare not
abide him.

Regnald also
does great feats
of arms.

² fol. 114 b.

Lusynen, and they haue adommaged you sore / and yf
it had not be the nyght watche the losse had be greter,
For they haue faught *wit*h them valyauntly / and haue
made ¹them to goo back by force.' 'By my feyth,' said ⁴
the kyng / 'these damoyseaulx, in whos behalf I am
deffyed, haue not taryed long to come & bere dom-
mage to me / but wel I think for to auenge me therof.'
Thenne is come Anthony and his batay^H, which made ⁸
his trompettes to be sowned clerly. And whan the
kyng perceyued them he came *wit*thforth the lodgis
in fayre aray & batay^H renged. And thenne the
bataylles recountred eche other / and archers & cros- ¹²
bowemen approuched & bygan to shoote, and there were
slayne & hurt many one of the king of Anssays party,
and neuertheles the grete batay^H assembled togidre /
and there was grete occysion & fyers medlee. And ¹⁶
thenne anthony broched his hors *wit*h the sporys, the
spere alowed, & smote a knyght by such vertue that the
targe nor his cote of stele might not warauntyse hym,
but that he threw hym doune to therthe al deed. ²⁰
And thenne he drew out his swerd, and smote on the
lyfte syde & on the ryght syde, gyuyng grete & pesaunt
strokes, in so moche that in a short while he was so
knowne thugh al the batay^H that the moost hardy ²⁴
of them alle durst not abyde hym. Thenne came
Regnald mounted vpon a grete Courser calling 'Lusy-
nen,' which made so grete appertyse of armes that alle
his enemyes redoubted hym. Thenne was the baytay^H ²⁸
fyers, cruel, and mortal on bothe partyes / but alwayes
the gretest losse & domage tourned vpon the kyng of
Anssay & his peple, which was moche dolaunt & sorow-
full, & envertued hym self strong, and made with his ³²
handes grete vasselage / but al that preuaylled hym
nought, For the poyteuins ²were ryght strong, hard, &
fel lyke lyons / and theire were the two lordes so
puyssaunt that none so bold was there that durst abyde ³⁶

them. Thenne sawe wel the kyng by the puyssaunce & strenght of the two brethern, that he myght no lenger suffre theire force.

The King of Anssay sees he cannot withstand them.

4 Cap. XXV. How Anthony & Regnald dyscomfyted the kyng of Anssay tofore lucembourg / and how he was take.

The kyng¹ thenne, which was a valyaunt man & strong, cryed with a hye voys 'Anssay, Anssay, lordes & barons be not abashed, For the batayll is oures' / and at his callyng¹ his people toke courage, & assembled them self ayen togidre about theire kyng, and made a fyers enuahye¹ vpon the poyteuyns / there was many man slayn / hewen & sore hurte with grete douleur. That mornynge¹ was fayre & clere, & the soonne shoone bright vpon the helmets / and caused the gold & syluer ther on to² resplendysse, that fayre it was to see. And they of the tounes that herde this grete affray, toke theire armes; & eche of them made good watche, For they were ryght ferdful & doubtous of treson. And the knyght which anonced to them the socours of the two brepern was with the pucelle Crystyne in a hye toure, & loked out at a wyndowe / and he knew wel that it was Anthony & Regnald, that were come for to fight ayenst the king and his peple, & anon called with an hye voys, 'My lady, come hither & see the floure of knyghthod, of prowess & hardynes / come & see honour in his siege royall, & in his mageste / come & see the god of armes in propre figure.' 'Frend,' said the pucelle / 'what is that ye say to me?' 'I calle you,' sayd the knight, 'to come hither & see the flour of noblesse & of all curtoysye, that fro³ ferre land is come hither for to fyght with your enemyes for to kepe your honour,

He encourages his people,

they rally and again fiercely attack the Poiteuins.

² fol. 115.

The noise of the battle is heard by the townsfolk, and by the knight messenger who is with the maid Christine.

He asks her to look at her champions,

¹ Fr. *envaye* = attack.

³ *for* in MS.

the children of
Lusignan.

When the maid
sees the slaughter

she is full of
grief for being
the cause of
such deeds.

1 fol. 115 b.

Anthony, seeing
the havoc made
on his host,

resolves to fight
the King of
Anssay.

He rushes upon
the king,
smites him,

and casts him
from his horse.

He makes him
prisoner.
Four knights are
appointed to
guard him.

your lande, & your peple / this are the two children of
Lusynen, that be cōme for to deffend you ayenst the
king^e of Anssay & aH his puyssaunce, and to putte
theire honour & lyf in auenture for to kepe your 4
honour^e sauf.' Thenne came the mayde at the wyn-
dowe, & beheld the mortal batayH & horryble medlee /
sayeng in this manere: 'O Veray god, what shaft doo
this pouere orphenym / better it had be that I had 8
drowned myself, or that I had be putte to deth in
some other wyse, or elles that I had be deed whan I
yssued out of my moders wombe / than so many
creatures shuld be slayne & perysshe for myn owne 12
synne.' Moche dolaunt & heuy was the yong^e damoy-
selle of the grete myschief that she sawe, For in
certayn thoccysyon was grete on both partyes, For the
king recomforted his peple by his wo[r]py conten- 16
aunce & valyaunt maynten; For with his propre swerd^e
he moch adommaged his enemys poyteuyns. ¹But
Anthony, seeyng the grete dommage that the kynge
bare vpon his peple / he was dysplaysed with, & sayd 20
in hym self: 'By my feyth, thy lyf or myn shal not
be long^e, For rather I wold dey than to suffre & see my
peuple so murdryd before me.' Thenne he sporyd hys
hors / and fyersly as a lyon rane vpon the king^e. and 24
with his swerd^e of stele smote hym vpon the hiest part
of his helmet by suche strength & vertue that he made
hym to be enclyned vpon þe hors neck, so sore astonyed
that he ne wyst wheþer it was nyght or day, nor he 28
had no force ne power to helpe ne redresse hymself
vpward / and Anthony that this sawe, putte his swerd^e
in the shethe ayen; & toke the king by the middes of
the body / drew hym fro the hors, & so rudely cast 32
hym to therthe that vnnethe hys herte brake within
his bely / and after toke hym to foure knightes, and
charged them on their lyues that they shuld kepe
hym, so that þey myght ansuere hym of it. And they 36

- said that so shuld they doo / and they thanne bonde
 hym & lede hym out of the batayH, and called xxv^{ti}
 archers with them. And after these thinges thus doon
 4 Anthony retourned in the prees, callyng' 'Lusynen'
 with a hye voys, & said: 'Now lordes & barons, gyuo
 grete strokes, & spare none, For the journey is ours
 thankynge be to god; For I haue take the kynge of
 8 Anssay my prysonner, that so grete vylyonny hap don
 to the gentyl pucelle Cristyne.' Thenne was the
 medlee rude & paryllous / and there dide the bretheren
 so moche of armes, that al tho that saw them said that
 12 they sawe neuer two so valyaunt knyghtes. What
 shuld preuayH you long compte. ¹Whan the Anssays
 people knew that theire kynge was take, they neuer
 syn made no deffense / but wer alle outhre slayne or
 16 take. And there gate the poytevyngs grete conqueste &
 noble proye, and lodged them self in the pauyllons &
 tentes of the king of Anssay & of hys peple. And
 was the kinge brought in Anthonys tente, which a
 20 lytel byfore was hys owne propre tente; wherfore the
 king' myght not hold his owne tonge, but said: 'By
 my feyth, damoyseaulx, wel sayth he trouthe that sayth /
 "that god doth / he doth anoone" / For this day, in
 24 the mornynge, men had doo here within but lytel for
 your commandement.' 'Sire,' sayd Anthony, 'your
 folyshnes & synne is cause therof; For tofore ye wold
 rauysshe by force the pucelle Crystyne lady of this
 28 toune / but therof ye shaft be payed after your
 deserte, For I shal yeld your self vnder her subgec-
 tion.' Thenne whanne the kyng' vnderstode hym, he
 was shamfast & woofuH / and as dysolate & dyscomfyte,
 32 fuH heuily ansuerd in this manere: 'Sith now it is
 thus vnfortunatly happed with me, rather I wyl dey
 than to lyue.' 'Nay,' sayd Anthony, 'ye shal delyuere
 your self / no doubte of / vnto þe mercy & subgection
 36 of the pucelle.'

They lead him
out of the battle.

Anthony now
urges his men
to give great
strokes, and to
spare none, and
tells them he
has made the
king prisoner.

¹ fol. 116.

The king's people
give up hope
after he is taken.

He is brought
to Anthony,
and confesses
that 'that god
doth, he doth
anoone.'

Anthony tells
the king that he
is to blame for
desiring to seize
Christine,

and announces
that he is to be
delivered into
her hands.

Cap. XXVI. How the kyng of Anssay was lede byfore the pucelle Crystyne.

¹ fol. 116 b.

Anthony de-
spatches the
King of Anssay
under guard
to Christine,

¹Thenne called Anthony to hym the two barons,
ambaxadours that were come to Lusynen, with 4
the said gentylman fro Lucembourgh and xx^{ti} other
knyghtes of poytou, and to them said in this manere:
'Now lede me this kinge tofore þe damoyselle Crystyne,
and recommande vs moche vnto her / and that we send 8
her / her enemy prysonner, for to do with hym her
wyll.' And thenne they departed, & lede the kinge as
they were youen in commandement / and came to the
tounne, where they were wel festyed & honourably 12
receyued. And thenne the Citezeyns conduyted them
toward the pucelle, theire lady Crystyne, with grete
joye. 'Noble lady,' said the messagers, 'the two yong
damoyseaulx of Lusynen recommande them hertyly 16
vnto you, ²and send you this kyng your enemy
prysonner, to doo with hym after your dyscrecyon &
wylle.' 'Fayre lordis,' ansuerd the damoyselle / 'herto
behoueth gret guerdon / but I am not puyssaunt 20
ynough for to reward them as they haue deseruyd. I
pray to god deuoutely that of hys grace he wyl rewarde
them to whom I am moch bonden / and I pray you,
fayre lordes, that on my behalf ye wyl pray my two 24
yong lordes that they vouchesauf to come and lodge
them self here within, & as many of theyre barons
with them as it shal lyke them good. & in þe meane
while men shal burye the deed bodyes, & the deed 28
horses shal be brent / and also they of my Counseyl
shal take theire best aduys to see how I shal reward
them of theire grete peyne & traueyl, that they haue
suffred for me vnworthy þerof, and to recompense 32
them of theire grete expenses & dommages in the best
wyse that we can or shal mowe. And ye, kyng of
Anssay, ye swere vnto vs by your ryalte that ye shal

² fol. 117.

who gives great
thanks,

and hopes God
will reward
them.

She says her
council will
consider how
to recompense
her deliverers,

and binds the
king to promise
that he will stay

- not departe from hens without the wyll & gree of the
 two noble damoyseaulx, that here haue sent you toward
 me. For yet so moch I knowe / thankyng to god /
 4 that I shuld mysdoo to cast you in pryson / not for
 your sake / but for loue of them that hither haue sent
 you.' Whan thenne the kynge vnderstode the wordes
 of the pucelle, he ansuerd al ashamed, ' Noble damoy-
 8 selle, I swere you on my feyth that neuer hens I shal
 departe without your leue & theirs also ; For so moch
 of wele / of honour & of valyauntnes I haue sene in
 them, that moche I desyre to be acoynted with them /
 12 how be it that grete damage they haue borne vnto
 me & my men.' And thenne the noble mayde made
 hym to be putte into a fayre chambre & riche, & with
 hym ladyes & damoysselles, ¹also knyghtis & squyers,
 16 for to make hym to forgete his losse, & forto reioye &
 haue hym out of melencolye. And thus don, the
 messagers retourned toward the tentes, & reported the
 mandement & prayer of the pucelle Cristyne vnto the
 20 two bretheren, whiche were counseilled to goo thither ;
 and ordeyned the mareshal of the oost for to gouerne
 their peple vnto tyme that they came agayn / and
 also he commanded hym to make the deed bodyes to
 24 be buried, & to make the place clene where as the
 batayll had be. Thenne they departed, acompanyed
 with their baronnye / and ayenst them came, in their
 best wyse, an houndred gentylmen / and also the
 28 barons of the land mete with them, & made their
 obeyssaunce full honourably vnto the two brethern,
 prayeng them yet agayn, on their ladys behalf, that
 they vouchesauf to come & lodge them in the tounne /
 32 And they ansuerd that gladly they wold doo soo.
 Anthony was mounted vpon a grete Courser / and he
 had on hym a jacke of Cramesyn velvet, all brouded &
 sette with perlis, and held a grete vyreton in his hand.
 36 And in lyke & semblable manere went hys brother

in the town until
 the brethren are
 satisfied.

This done
 he is given a fair
 chamber.
 Knights and
¹ fol. 117 b.

ladies are sent
 to keep him
 company.

The guard of the
 king returns to
 the brethren,

who leave their
 army in charge
 of the marshal,

and accompanied
 with their barons
 go towards the
 town.

The barons of Luxembourg, who come to meet them, are astonished at the appearance of the brethren,

and marvel at Anthony's claw,

and at Regnald's one eye.

¹ fol. 118.

They enter the town amid the sound of trumpets.

The houses are richly decorated,

and the windows full of women.

As the brethren ride through the town, the people say that it would not be wise to oppose them.

Regnald. And whan the barons of Lucembourg sawe the two brethern, they wondred moch of their fyersnes, gretnes & myght, and wel said that there was no man that might withstand ne abyde their puyssaunce / and moche they merueylled of the Lyons claw that appiered in Anthonys cheke, & said that yf ne had be that he were the fayrest man in the world / and moche they playned Regnald of that he had but 8 one eye, For in al his other membres he passed of beaulte al oper men.

¹ In this partye sayth thistorye, that in noble estate & fayre aray entred the two brethern in to the toun 12 of Lucembourg; & before them sowned trompettes in grete nombre, with heraults & menestrels; And Cyte-seyns had hanged their houses withoutforth toward the stretes, with their best & rycheest hangyng clothes / 16 and the stretes where the said lordes passed were couered on high with lynyen clothes, that no rayne or other fowH wedryng myght lette peire entree within the toun / and many noble & worshipful ladyes, bourgeys 20 wyues / damoysselles and fayre maydens, were in their best rayments, eche one after the state & degree that she was of / lokyng out at wyndowes for to behold & see the noble brethern & their felawship. 24

Thystorye thanne sayth that the two bretheren departed out of their tentes with noble compagne, as barons, knightes, squyers, & other gentylmen / and as vycoryous prynces rode full honourably vnto 28 Lucembourg, and through the toun, where as they were behold with joyous herte of euery one, sayeng that one to other: See yonder be two the fyers men, bretheren that are to be redoubted / he is not wyse 32 that taketh noyse or debat with them / and they had grete wonder of Anthonys cheke / and also for certayn it was a straunge thing to behold & see / but the grete beaulte that was in his body caused that inconueny 36

- ence to be forgotten / And thus they rode toward the Castel. The ladyes & damoyelles beheld them out of the wyndowes / and said that they neuer sawe two
 4 damoyseaulx of more noble affayre. And thenne they came to the Castel, wher they alighted, and entred fourthwith into the hall, where as the noble Crystyne mete them at the gate, wel acompanyed of ladyes &
 8 damoyelles in grete nombre, and of knightes & squyers / and with a joyous contenaunce & gracyous maynten honou'rably receyued them & gretyly festyed them. The halle was hanged nobly with ryche clothes after
 12 the vse of the land, and fro the halle they went in to another chambre, mochi noble & ryche, & pere the pucelle Cristyne bygan to say to them in this manyere :
 'My right dere lordes, I thanke you mochi, as I may
 16 of the noble socours & help that ye haue don to me / I am not so mochi worth as ye ought to be rewarded of / not that withstanding I sha't endeuyre me therto / al shuld I laye of my land in pledge this tene yere day.
 20 And also, my lordes, of your noble grace ye haue sent to me the king of anssay, myn enemy, of the which plaise it you to knowe that I am not she to whom oughte be punysshement of hym / but to you appar-
 24 teyneth to doo therwith your playsire & volente, that haue had the parel & payne for to ouercome & take hym your prysonner / wherfore after that right requyareth he is yours, & may doo with hym whatsoeuer
 28 it please you / and I remyse hym in your pcession. For as touching my persone I gyue hym ouer vnto you, & loke not to medle any more with him tofore you.' 'Noble damoyelle,' said thanne anthony, 'sethen it is
 32 your playsire, we shal ordeyne wel perof, in suche wyse that it shal be to your grete honour & prouffyte / and to hym grete shame & confusyon / no doubt of / And wete it that my broper and I are not come hither for
 36 loue of your siluer, but for to susteyne rayson & right /

The ladies say they have neuer seen such noble youths.

At the castle Christine meets them in the hall,

and receives them honour-
 1 fol. 118 b.
 ably, and richly feasts them.

She thanks the brethren for their help,

and promises to reward them.

She gives back the King of Anssay into their hands

to deal with as they wish.

Anthony replies that they came not for silver, but to sustain justice,

and because
they think all
noble men
should aid
widows and
orphans.

¹ fol. 119.

He declines all
reward,
save the lady's
favour and good
grace.

Christine is
abashed,

and wishes to
pay the soldiers
of the brethren,

but her offer is
refused.

The steward an-
nounces dinner;

they wash,
and send for the
King of Anssay,

who sits down
to dinner with
them.

¹ fol. 119b.

also considered that alle noble men oughte to helpe & ayde the wydowes, orphenynis, and the pucelles also. And forasmoch also that we were truly informed, that the kinge of Anssay made grete werre ¹anest you & 4 your land wrongfully, wherfor no doubte of / of aH your goodes we wyl not take the value of one peny / but alonly to be receyued in your noble fauour & good grace, aH vylounye excepted.' Whan the pucelle 8 Cristyne vnderstode these wordes, she was abasshed of the grete honour that the two bretheren dide vnto her / not that withstanding she ansuerd in this manere: 'For southe, my gracyous lordes, at lest it were no 12 raison, but that I payed wel your peple that be come hither to take your wages as sawdoyers.' 'Damoyselle,' said penne Anthony, 'vouchsaf to suffre that we haue said, For my lord our fader, & my lady our moder, 16 haue payed them alredey for a hole yere day, or euer they departed out of our land / & yet it is not fullyssh a moneth complet syn that we departed thens; And ouermore wete it that syluer & gold we haue ynoughe. 20 Wherfore, noble demoyselle, ye lese your wordes to speke therof, For certayn it shal none other be' / and she thenne thanked them in her best manere ryght humbly. 24

Thenne came the styward, & enclyned hym tofore the pucelle, & said: 'My lady, ye may wesshe whan it playse you, For al thing is redy to dyner' / 'whan, my lordes,' she said, 'be redy perto, I am 28 playsed.' Whom Anthony ansuerd: 'noble damoyselle, we be al redy whan ye vouchesaf to go therat.' and thenne they toke eche other by pe handes & wesshe. And Anthony desired the king of Anssay to be sent 32 for / and made hym sette first of aH at the table / and after the pucelle and syn Regnauld / and anthony satte last. And nygh to them satte foure of the noblest barons of the land. And along the halle were ¹other 36

tables dressed, wherat sette aH other gentylmen, barons
 & squyers, eche one after hys degree. Of the seruyse
 I nede not to hold you long compte, For they were so
 4 nobly & haboundauntly serued, that nothing accordyng
 to such a ryaH feste they wanted of. And whan they
 had dyned they wesshe handes, and graces were said,
 and all the tables voyded. thanne said the king of
 8 Anssay in this manyere : ' Lordes damoyseaulx, vouche-
 sauf to here my wordes. It is trouth that the wyH of
 god & myn vnfortune hath brought me to that caas,
 that by your valiauntnes & prowes I am & haue be
 12 bothe myself & al my peple dyscomfyte, & ouer that ye
 haue take me your prysonner / but I ensure you, con-
 sideryng your high prowesse, your bounte, & your
 noble affayres, I am glad & joyous to fynde me now
 16 with you, For I shal be the bettre therfore al my lyf
 naturel ; and syth, fayre lordes, pat my presence & long
 abydyng here with you may nought preuaylle to you /
 humbly I besech you, as I best can, that it playse you
 20 to putte me to raisounable raunson & payement port-
 able to me, so that I be not al dystroyed nor dys-
 heryted / thagh it lyeth now in your power / but
 haue pyte on me, & punysshe me not aftir the regarde
 24 of my follysshe enterpryse / how be it pat rygour of
 justice requyreth it.' ' By my hed,' said Anthony,
 ' who that shuld punysshe you after the regarde of the
 grete iniurye, vylonnye, & dommage that ye haue don,
 28 and yet had purposed to do to this noble damoysele
 without eny lawful cause / ye were not puyssant to
 make amendes suffysaunt therof / but for as moche that
 ye knowleche your synne the lasse penytence shal ye
 32 haue / and I wyl wel that ye knowe that my brother
 & I be not come from our countre hither for hoop of
 getyng of siluer vpon you nor vpon other / but for
 desire & hope of getyng of honour & good fame or
 36 renommee, without to haue any wyH or appetyt to

MELUSINE.

Dinner over,
 hands washed,
 and grace said,

the King of
 Anssay
 declares himself
 discomfited,

and beseeches
 that a reasonable
 ransom may be
 named,

and prays that
 he be not dealt
 with according
 to the extreme
 rigour of justice.

Anthony answers
 that he would be
 unable to make
 amends if he
 were duly pun-
 ished for the
 wrong he had
 committed ;

but as he and
 his brother seek
 honour and not
 silver,

1 fol. 120.

they give him liberty on condition that he pay Christine for all the cost his attempt has put her to,

and that he undertakes never again to injure her.

The king agrees to these terms,

and Anthony adds,

that the king must build and endow a priory for twelve monks,

who shall pray for the souls of those who have been slain in the battle.

The king swears on the *Evangelis* to keep these terms;

haue mortal rychesses. Wherefore, as touchyng our part, we ¹now remyse & putte you free quytte & at your lyberte / sauf that we taxe you to pay to this noble pucelle aH such *dommages* that she hath had at your 4 cause / and *perof* ye shal gyue good pledges or euer ye departe hens, And yet morouer ye shal swere vnto her vpon the holy *Euaungiles*, that neuer ye shal bere, ner ye shal suffre to be borne ony manere of *dommage* ne 8 dyshonour to the forsaid pucelle that is here present / but at your power ye shal gyue her ayde, help, & comfort at al tymes anenst aH them that iniurye or *dommage* wold doo to her. And wel I wyl that ye 12 knowe that yf ye wyl not swere & accorde to that I haue said with your good wyll, I shal sende you in to such a place, wherout the dayes of your lyf ye shal not escape. And whan the kynge vnderstode these wordes 16 he ansuered in this manyere. 'Sire, I am wylyng & redy to swere that *conuenant*, yf the noble mayde be content of that ye haue ordeyned & said.' 'By my feyth,' said she, 'I consent me therto, syn it is my 20 lordes plaisure' / and yet morouer said Anthony suche or semblable wordes as folowen /

'**Y**et, sire, I haue not al said that ye muste doo, For ye muste doo founde a Pryoure of twelue 24 monkes & the pryour, in suche place there as my lady shal ordeyne / and ye shal endowe & empossesse them with rentes & reuenue conuenable for their lyuyng & for their successours for euermore / the said monkes & 28 pryour to pray there for the sowles of them that haue be slayne of your part & of myn in this batayH.' 'By my feyth,' said thenne the king, 'I promyse you pat so shal I doo, and good pledges & hostages I shal gyue 32 you, & to my lady to be asured therof.' Thenne sware the kynge by hys feyth vpon the holy *Euaungiles* that he shuld hold & accomplysse al that beforesaid is / & gaf & delyuered good hostages / & *lettres* patentes were 36

therof made vnder hys seal, & the seales of aH the
 1 barons of his lande. And that don, Anthony said
 to the kyng / 'I now gyue you, and delyuere free aH
 4 the prysonners that we & our folke haue take, and your
 tentes & pauyllons also / but the hauoir that is departed
 amonges my felawes I may not it rendre or yeld to
 you / And thenne he made to be delyuered to hym
 8 foure thousaund prysouners or therabout, al men of
 estate & faytte / And thenne the kyng enclyned hym-
 self, & thanked hym moch therof. What shuld I
 make long compte / the feste bygane sumptuous &
 12 grete thurgh the toun of Lucembourgh, & specially
 in the Castel / and eueryone spake of the grete noblesse
 and curtoysye that Anthony & regnald his brother had
 shewed to the king of Anssay /

and he and his
 lords delivered
 1 fol. 120b.

letters patent
 agreeing to the
 same under all
 their seals.

Anthony then
 delivers four
 thousand
 prisoners to the
 king.

There is a great
 feast in Luxem-
 bourg.

and all men
 praise the
 courtesy of
 Anthony.

16 Cap. XXVII. How the kinge of Anssay
 called to hym al the barons of Lucem-
 bourgh to Counseylle.

2 **T**henne called the king of Anssay aH the barons of
 20 the land to CounseyH, and said to them: 'Fayre
 lordes, Whan the yron is hoot it moste be wrought &
 forged; how be it thenne that I haue be yl wyller
 bothe to you & to your lady / the tyme is now come
 24 that I wold her honour and prouffit & youres also /
 lyst & here, For god hath sent good auenture to you,
 yf ye can take it in gree.' Thenne said the barons:
 'Now, sire, syth that ye haue entamed þe matero /
 28 vouchesauf to declare vnto vs the sentence therof.'
 'Ye moste,' said the kyng, 'fynde the manere &
 meane that Anthony take your lady to his wyf, and
 he to be your lord, For thenne ye shal mowe saye
 32 surely, þat no nede ye haue of none other / & none so
 hardy were to take an henne from you ayenst your
 wyH.' And they ansuered thus: 'Sire, yf Anthonye

1 fol. 121.

The King of
 Anssay calls the
 barons of Lux-
 embourg to
 council,

and advises
 them to find
 means to make
 Anthony marry
 Christine.

They say they
will be glad to
do so.

The King of
Anssay goes to
Anthony and
asks him to send
for his brother
and his council.

This is done.

Anthony and his
people come to
the barons of
Luxembourg,
who do them
reverence.

¹ fol. 121 b.

The King of
Anssay, in the
name of the
barons of Lux-
embourg says,
seeing that
Anthony and
his brother will
accept no gift
of Christine,

will Anthony
grant them a gift
of a kind which
will not lessen
his possessions?

Anthony answers
he will, if it is
something he can
do honourably.

wold do soo we were therof full glad & joyous.' 'Now
thenne, fayre lordes, lete me deele therwith / and I
hope to god I shal brynge the matere to a good ende.
Abyde and tary here a lytel, & I shal goo speke with 4
hym.' Thenne came the kynge tofore Anthony, &
said: 'Noble man & curtoys damoyseau, the barons of
this land desire & pray you, that ye, your brother, &
your CounseyH come and entre in to this chambre. 8
For they desyre moch to speke with you for your
prouffyt & honour.' 'By my feyth,' said anthony,
'ryght gladly.' And thenne he called to hym hys
brother & them of their CounseyH / & syn entred in 12
to the chambre / and the barons of the land that were
there enclyned themself, & made grete reuerence to the
two brethern. Thenne spake the kynge of Anssay, &
said: 'Fayre lordes, these two noble damoyseaulx are 16
come hither at your requeste & prayer / declare now
to them your wylle.' And they ansuerde to hym:
'Noble kinge, humbly we beseche you, that ye anounce
& shewe to them our entencion, that ye knowe ¹wel 20
ynoughe.' 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'I wyl.'
And thenne suche wordes as folowen he bygan to say /
'**A**nthonny, noble man, curtoys & valyaunt knight,
ye barons of this Countree haue had regarde to 24
the grete honour that ye haue borne & shewed to their
lady, to her lande, & to them / also they haue con-
sidered how nought ye wyl take of theyre lady ner of
them / and for asmoche that they desyre your wele & 28
honour, they humbly beseche your good grace that it
playse the same to graunte to them a yefte, the which
shaH not lasse your good nor hauoyr / but shal rather
augmente your honour.' 'By my feyth, noble kynge, yf 32
it be of that thing that I may recouere / touching myn
honour, I graunt it right gladly.' 'Certainly,' said the
king, 'their requeste is thenne fulfilled, For they
desyre none other but your honour.' 'Now, sey thenne, 36

said Anthony, 'what they desyre of me.' 'Damoyseau,' said the kinge / 'they wyl gyue you the Duchesse of Lucembourgh, peire liege lady, to your wyf / reffuse 4 not that noble yefte' /

The king offers the Duchess of Luxembourg to Anthony to wife.

Whan anthony vnderstode hym he stood^r pensful long tyme / and syn said in this manere: 'By my feith, fayre lordes, I supposed neuer to cōme vnto this 8 countre for that quarrell; but sethen I haue accorded to you I shal not gaynsay it / lete now the pucelle be sent for, For yf she be playsted therwith I consent me perto.' Thenne was the damoysselle fete thither by 12 foure of the noblest barons of the land, the whiche recounted to her al the faytte, wherof she was ryght glad & joyous / how wel she made of it no semblaunt.

When Anthony understands the position,

he asks that the maid should be sent for, and says if she agree, he will consent.

Christine is told what has been done, and is right glad.

And whan she entred in to the Chambre she made her 16 obeyssaunce tofore antony, & salued alle the barons there / and as she beheld Anthony she bygan to waxe in her vysage more rede than a rose / and thenne the barons reherced & shewed vnto her all this affayre.

She enters the chamber.

20 And whan the pucelle had herd^r them speke 'she ansuerd^r to them in this manere: 'Fayre lordes, I rendred & yeld thankes & mercys vnto almyghty god, to his blessed moder, and to you also, of the grete honour 24 that now happeth to me, For I pouere orphenyme am not worthy to be addressed in to so highe a place as to haue to my lord the flour of knighthode and the noblesse of alle the world / and of that other part, I 28 wote & knowe wel that ye whiche are my liege men, that bettre knowe myn own affayres than I doo my self / wold not counseylle me that thinge, but it were to my grete prouffyt & honour. Wherfor I ne oughte 32 nor wyl not gaynsey it / but I am al redy to do therof your playsire.' /

When she sees Anthony, her face becomes redder than a rose.

¹ fol. 122.

She declares that though unworthy she is ready to do their pleasure.

Cap. XXVIII. How Anthony espoused
Crystyne, Duchesse of Lucembourg. /

¹ fol. 122 b.

Anthony and Christine are assured together, and on the next morning they are married.

That night Anthony begets a valiant heir, who is called Bertrand.

The King of Anssay gives leave to his people to return home, while he remains to fulfil his treaty.

Anthony, Regnald, and the king go through the land and visit the towns and fortresses.

After his return Anthony adds the figure of a lion to his arms.

³ fol. 123.

A messenger arrives from the King of Bohemia,

¹ 'Forsoothe, noble lady,' said the Barons, 'ye say right wel & manerly.' What shuld I bring 4
forth prolixie or long talkyng? For shortly to say, they were assured togidre *with* gret joye / and on the next morne after they were espoused & maryed togidre, & was the feste holden right grete & noble, and the peple 8
of the land was ryght joyous when they vnderstode & knew therof / and *pat* same nyght lay Anthony *with* the noble mayde Crystyne, and gate on her a moche valyaunt heyre, & was called Bertrand. The feste 12
thenne endured longe sumptuous & grete, & grete ryalte was seen there / and anthony gaf noble & ryche jewels / and receuyed the homages of the lordes & barons of the land. And the king of Anssay yaf leue to his people 16
to retourne into theire Countrees / and abode *with* anthony with a pryuy² meyne for to fulfyll & accom-
plisshe that he had promysed at traytee makyng of the peas. And soone after the duc Anthony *with* his 20
brother Regnald and the king of Anssay and the baronnye, went thurgh the land to vysyte the tounes & fortresses & putte al thing in good ordonnaunce / in so moche that euery man said, that he was one of the 24
moost wysest prynce that euer they sawe / and whan he had vysyted all *pe* land he retourned to Lucembourg, where the duchesse Cristyne receyued hym right joyously / And thanne by thaduys of his Coun- 28
seil he adiousted to his armes the shadow or fygure of a Lyon, for cause of the duchery, wherof the lady Cristyne had oftyme prayed hym to fore. And thus they soiourned at Lucembourg *with* grete dysport & 32
joye / tyl that a messenger came fro the king of Behayne there, whiche was brother to the king ³ of

² Fr. *privet maisnée*.

Anssay, and was besieged within his toun of praghe
by the paynemes & sarrasyns.

who is besieged
by the Sarasins
at Prague.

Cap. XXIX. How the kyng, of behayne
4 sent a messenger toward the king, of Anssay
his brother. /

Thystorye sayth that a messenger came to Lucem-
bourgh fro the kyng^r Federyk of behayne, that
8 was moche valyaunt & a true man, whiche ryght strong^r
susteyned the feyth catholickaⁿ ayenst the Sarasyns /
It is so that the paynemes entred in to his land / and
seeving hym self not puyssaunt ynough for to gyue
12 them iourney of batayⁿ, drew hym self & his peple
with hym in to hys toun of Praghe / and had this
kyng^r Federyke but one only doughtir to his heyre,
whiche was named Eglantyne / & certayn it is that he
16 was brother to the king^r of ¹Anssay. Wherefore he sent
a messenger to Lucembourg there as the kyng of Anssay
his brother was at that tyme. And shortly to speke,
the messenger came & directed his lettres to the king^r
20 of Anssay, whiche opened & redd^t it / by the tenoure of
whiche he vnderstode & knew the myschief where his
brother was in / and sayd al on high in heryng^r of
eueryone there in this manere : ‘ Ha / a, Fortune, how
24 art thou so peruerse & so crueⁿ, certaynly² wel is he
deceyued þat trusteth in the nor in thy yestes by no
manere. it hath not suffysed the to haue ouerthrauen
me fro the vppermost stepp of thy whele vnto the
28 lowest / but vtterly wylt dystroye me for euer, whan my
brother, whiche [is] one of the moost trewest & valiaunt
kyng^r in the world^r, thou wylt so dysempare & putte
out fro his royaume, yf god of his grace purueye not of
32 remedy therto’ / and thenne he retourned hym self
toward anthony, & sayd : ‘ Ha / right noble & valyaunt

The valiant King
Frederick of
Bohemia,

unable to give
battle to the
Paynims, with-
drew to Prague.

His heir is his
only daughter,
Eglantine.

¹ fol. 123 b.

He sent a letter
to his brother,
the King of
Anssay,

telling him how
matters stood.

The king after
reading it com-
plains against
fortune,

and tells
Anthony that it
is worse than
ever with him,

² Fr. version reads: *Certes l'homme est bien deceu que en
toy ne en tes dons se fie en riens.*

because now
that Anthony
has overthrown
his chivalry,

he is unable to
help his noble
brother Fre-
derick against
the infidels.

² fol. 124.

Anthony is
sorrowful to
hear these
complaints.

He is given the
letter to read,
whereby he un-
derstands that
Zelodius, King
of Cracow, is be-
sieging Frederick
of Bohemia at
Prague.

Anthony asks
the king whether
he could be
soon ready to
accompany him
to succour
Frederick.

prynce, it is now *with* me wers than euer was / For
your noble cheualrye & puyssaunce haue not only
mated me & made lasse myn honour, but also ye haue
dyscomfyted *with* me the moost true & valiaunt kyng⁴
that euer was of my lynnee, & that more valyauntly
hath deffended the cristen feyth ayenst thenemyes of
god. For Federyke, my brother, noble kyng⁴ of Be-
hayne, beyng sore oppressed & besieged *within* his
toun of praghe by thinfideles & enemyes of god,
writeth¹ vnto me ful tenderly for help & socoure /
alas, now your grete fayttes in armes haue kept me
therfro, so that I may not help hym / how be it that al
this commeth through myn owne fawte & folysshe en-
terpryse, For god hath punysshed me lasse ynough
than I haue deseruyd.' And thenne he bygan to make
suche sorowe that grete pite it was to see. / 16

² **T**hystorye sheweth in this partie that the duc
Anthony was ryght dolaunt & sorowful whan
he vnderstode the pyteous bewayllyng⁴ of the king of
Anssay, and said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, telle
me why ye demene & make such dueyl.' 'By god,'
sayd the kynge, 'wel I have cause / loke & see what
the tenoure of this *letre* specyfyeth.' Thenne toke
anthony the *lettre* and redde it al ouer, Wherby he
vnderstode & knew the grete myserye & myschief
wherin Zelodyus, kyng⁴ of Craco, held Federyk⁴, kyng⁴
of Behayne, besieged *within* the Cite of praghe. And
thenne the noble duc Anthony consideryng⁴ the grete
myschief wherinne the Cristen peple was hold by the
puyssaunce of the paynemes, his herte was al replenyssed
with pite, and said in hym self that yf he might the
Sarasyngs shuld bye fu^h derly the payne whiche they
made the Cristen peple to bere / and he thenne said
to the kynge: 'Sire, yf I wold helpe you for to socoure
your brother, wold ye not be soone redy to goo thither-

¹ vnriteth in MS.

- ward?' And whan the kyng vnderstod thoos wordes
 he kneled doune tofore the duc, & said: 'Sire, yf ye
 wyl graunte me so moche of your grace / I swere &
 4 promyse you feythfully that I shall make Regnald your
 brother kyng of Behayne after the decesse of my
 brother, whiche is elder than I almost xx^{ti} yere. For
 weete it that he hath none heyre sauf only a ryght fayre
 8 doughter, which is cleped Eglantyne / and she is about
 xv yere of age, & that pucelle shall I gyue, yf ye vouch-
 esauf, to Regnald your brother.' 'By my feyth,' said
 thenne Anthony, 'and I accorde therunto. / goo thanne
 12 hastily to Anssay and make your mandement, and be
 with vs ayen within this thre wykes, and lodge your
 people in yonder medowe, Where your tentes¹ as yet
 ben, and in the meane season I shal sende for my men,
 16 whiche are with a knyght of myn at the Leffe, where
 men had doon wrong to hym.' And the king ansuerde,
 'Noble & curteys lord, he rewarde you therof, that
 suffred deth for vs and bytter passyon.' And thenne
 20 he toke his leue of the duc and of the duchess, of
 Regnald, & of all the baronnye there, & syn mounted
 on horsback / and with his owne meyne rode tyl he
 came in to his land of anssay, sorowful for his losse
 24 & joyfull for the socours that the Duc Anthony pro-
 mysed to hym, for to helpe his brother ayenst the
 panemes & enemies of god. /
- T**he veray hystorye testyfyeth that so long rode the
 28 kinge of Anssay that he came in his land, where
 he was welcommed of his baronnye / and soone went to
 vysyte & see his doughter Metydee, that was not yet
 two year old / and syn retourned with his barons / to
 32 whome he shewed al his affayre, and how he moste
 go socoure his brother; Also how Anthony & Regnald
 his brother shuld helpe hym therto with al their pus-
 saunce. 'By feyth,' said thenne the barons, 'syth it is
 36 soo that thoo two brethern medle with this enterpryse,

The king is glad,
 and says that if
 Anthony will go,

he will make
 Regnald king of
 Bohemia on his
 brother's death.

Anthony then
 asks the king to
 go to Anssay and
 to return with his
 people in three
 weeks.

¹ fol. 124 b.

The king thanks
 him,

and takes his
 leave.

He rides to
 Anssay, sorrow-
 ful for his losses,
 but glad that
 Anthony will
 help his brother
 against the
 Paynims.

The king arrives
 in his land,
 and visits his
 daughter
 Metydee.

He returns to
 his barons, and
 explains all his
 affairs.

The barons think
 that as the breth-
 ren of Lusignan

are going to help
their king's
brother, they are
sure of success.

The king assem-
bles a host of
seven thousand
men.

He leaves his
land in charge
of a noble baron,
and in three
weeks is back
in Luxembourg.

¹ fol. 125,

The duke has
nine thousand
five hundred
men;

one thousand of
whom he leaves
behind to guard
the land, which
is left in charge
of the lord of
Argemont.

Christine is sad
at Anthony's
departure,
and begs him to
return soon.

² fol. 125 b.

Anthony bids
her take care
of herself on
account of her
unborn babe,
and directs if it
be a boy he is
to be named
Bertrand.

hit may not fare but wel. For ayenst theire puyssaunce
& worthynes may none *withstand* nor abyde / hast you
thenne to make your cryees & mandement, For we al
shaß go *with* you.' Thenne made the kyng¹ his oost ⁴
to be boden & sent for, & prayd al his frendes & alyez /
& *within* a lytel space of tyme he assembled about
seuene thousand fyghtyng men / and departed fro his
royalme, whiche he lefte in good gouernaunce vnder a ⁸
noble baron of the land. And syn dide so moche by
his journeyes, that at thende of thre wykes he came &
lodged hym & his oost byfore Lucembourg, ¹in the
medow where his tentes were lefte. And thenne were ¹²
also cōme the dukes people, that were in nombre
fyue thousand helmets and a thousand V.C. archers &
crosbowe men, beside them of the duchery, that were
in nombre thre thousand, of þe whiche anthony toke ¹⁶
with hym two thousand and the other he lefte behynd
for the sauegarde of the land / of þe whiche he ordeyned
chief captayne and protectour a noble baron of poytou /
and that was the lord of Argemont. / ²⁰

Cap. XXX. How the duc Anthony toke hys
leue of the Duchesse Crystyne, and went
toward praghe *with* hys oost.

Now sayth here thystorye, that whan the Duc ²⁴
Anthony toke his leue of the Duchesse hys wyf,
she was right dolaunt & sory in herte, how wel she
durst make no semblaunt / but she prayed hym to
retourne assoone as he goodly myght / and he said ²⁸
to her that so shuld he doo / And, morouer, he said to
²her in this manere / 'Duchesse, take good heede of
your fruyte that groweth in your blood, and cheryssh
your self / and yf goddis grace gyue that it be a sone, ³²
make hym to be baptysed & named Bertrand, For thus
is my playsire. Thenne they embraced & kyssed eche

other, takyng leue one of other / and syn departed the
 duc & came to hys people, and made his trompettes
 to be sowned. Thenne mounted spere men on hors-
 4 back, and bygane euery man to marche forth in fayre
 aray. The vantgarde conduyted & lede the kyng of
 anssay and Regnald with hym, which was mounted
 vpon a hys Courser, armed of al pyeces except his
 8 helmet, and held a grete staf in hys fyst, and putte
 his men in ordre ful wel, & semed wel to be a prynee
 courageous & of hys enterpryse / and after folowed the
 Cartes, Charyots & bagage, & the grete batayH / and
 12 after siewed the ryergarde, which Anthony conduyted
 in fayre ordynaunce of batayH, For it was tolde hym
 pat in that countre were many theevys / but the duc
 Anthony manded, & sent word fro fortresse to fortresse
 16 that yf they were so bold to take on hym or on hys
 people ony thing, that he shuld punysse them in
 suche wyse that other shuld take ensample therof.
 And so he passed thurgh all the Leffe / and no man
 20 was so hardy that he durst take ony thing on hys oost.
 It is trouth that on an euen he lodged hym tofore the
 Cite Acon¹ with all hys oost / and the Citezeyns there
 made & presented to hym grete yeftes of ryches, wherof
 24 he thanked them moche, and proffred to them his ser-
 uyse, yf they myster of it. And on the morne after
 the masse he deslodged, & so long^t marched fourth on
 his way with his oost, that he came & lodged vpon
 28 the ryuere of Ryne, which is grete & meruayllous.
 And ²they of Coloyne made grete daunger to lete
 passe the oost thurgh the Cite at brydge / wherof
 anthonye was angry & dolaunt, and fyersly sent worde
 32 to them how he had entencion to reyse the siege, that
 the king of Craco had layed, & sette with lx thousand
 Sarasyns tofore the Cite of praghe, wherinne was in
 grete oppression and dystres the king of behayne,

The army
 marches away
 to the trumpet
 sound.
 The vanguard is
 led by Regnald
 and the King of
 Anssay;

then comes the
 baggage in the
 middle, as
 Anthony was
 told the country
 was full of
 thleves, and then
 the rearguard
 led by Anthony
 in good order.

At last they
 arrive at the
 Rhine.

* fol. 126.

The men of
 Cologne object
 to the host pass-
 ing through the
 city.
 Anthony angrily
 tells them the
 reason of the
 expedition,

¹ Fr. *Ays* :—*Aix la Chapelle*, Ger. *Aachen*.

and asks if they
are on the
Paynims' side
or not.

When the men
of Cologne un-
derstand how
matters are,

they send four
burgesses,

who tell Anthony
they will let him
pass through on
condition that
the citizens are
protected from
all damage by
Anthony's men.

Anthony replies
that he wishes
them no harm,

and inquires if
any of his
ancestors had
at any time
done them any
misdeed.

¹ fol. 126 b.

The burgesses
return to the
city, and tell
their story to
the Council,

who can re-
member no
quarrel with
the Dukes of
Luxembourg.

and that they shuld send hym word yf they held *with*
the paynemes or nat / and vpon that he shuld take
hys aduys what he shuld doo / and also that magre
them he shuld fynd good passage, but not so short as 4
by theire Cite. And whan they of Coloyne under-
stode this mandement, & were wel infourmed of the
grete prowes & fyersnes of the two bretheren, they
were dredfuH & doubtings. And soone after they sent 8
toward Anthony foure of þe notablist & moost worship-
fuH burgeys of the cyte, whiche came & made to hym
ryght honourable and humble reuerence / and wondred
moche of hys fyersnes and proude contenance / not 12
that *withstanding*, they said to hym in this manere :
'right high & myghty prynce, the Citezeyns and com-
mynalte of Coloyne haue sent vs toward your good
grace. And know ye þat gladly they shal suffre you 16
& al your oost to passe peasibly thurgh the Cite, soo
that ye shal kepe & preserue them fro al damage
that your peple might bere vnto them.' 'By my
feyth,' sayd Anthony, 'yf I had be wylling to doo the 20
contrary of theire wyH, they shuld haue had of me
knowlege therof / and also I haue no cause to doo soo,
For I knowe not that they haue mysdoon to me of ony
thing, nor to the myn nother / How wel they cause 24
me to thinke other wyse / goo and telle to them, yf
they remembre not of old some mysdede don to them
by myn auncestry, or of the Dukes, my predecessours,
wherof as yet they be ¹not pacyfied & accorded / 28
that they wyl suffre me & myn oost passe surely / or
ellys to send me wordes therof.' Whan they vnder-
stode hys wordes & knew his wyH, they retourned to
the Cyte, & announced to the Commynaltee the mande- 32
ment of the Duc Anthony. And they anone as-
sembled theire counseyH, & the auneynt men / and
found that neuer they had no hate ne dyscorde *with*
the dukes of Lucembourg, nother to theyre frendes 36

nor alyez / and that sethen he was so noble a man & so
valyaunt, they shuld lete hym passe, and al his oost
also. And they remanded to hym theire wylle with

They agree to let
Anthony and his
host pass,

4 grete yeftes of ryches that they made to be presented
to hys grace / and purveyed for hys oost moche of
vytayH, as bred, wyne, and flesshe / & ootys for theire
horses / And whan the Duc vnderstode theire ansuere

and send him
many gifts for
himself and
victuals for his
host.

8 & sawe theire grete yeftes, he thanked them moche /
and was joyous of that they of Coloyne wold be hys
frendes. Wherfor he said to them, that yf they had
nede of hym & of hys powere, he was redy at theyre

When the duke
understands
their answer, he
thinks them,

12 commaundement / and they thanked hym ryght
humbly. And the duc Anthony made to gyue to
them that had brought to hym the said presents of
vytayH, many ryche yeftes, that asmoche were worth, or
16 more than the presents & yeftes gyuen to hym by the
toun, For he wold not that thabytants of the Cyte
shuld suppose or thinke that he wold haue ought of
them for nought.

and gives them
as rich gifts and
presents as had
been sent to him.

20 **I**n this partye sheweth thystorye, how that same
nyght soiourned the oost byfore Coloyne, & was
wel refresshed of them of the Cite & of theire vytayH.

The host remains
opposite Cologne
for the night.

For as the dukes commaundement was / they were
24 departed in suche wyse tha[t] euery man there had
part therof. And on the morne erly, ¹the Duc entred
into the Cite with hym, two houndred men of armes /
and made his cryees, vpon peyne of deth, that none
28 were so hardy to take any thing of them of the toun ;
but he payed wel for after raison. And soone after

¹ fol. 127.

passed the vantgarde in fayre aray ouer the bridge, and
so forth through the Cyte. And so passed al thoost,

In the morning
the river is
crossed, and the
host marches
through the city.

32 and lodged them at the oper syde of the ryuere of
Ryn / and it was about euen tyme, or euer al the
Cartes, Charyots, & bagage were past. And that nyght
the Duc & grete part of his barounye lodged within the

The duke and
his barons stay
all the night in
the city,

36 Cyte, where as grete honour was doon to them. The

and give a great supper, and great gifts to the ladies of the town.

He leaves in the morning, after thanking the townspeople,

who offer him aid.

As the duke comes from mass,

four knights and five hundred men arrive from the city.

¹ fol. 127 b.

The knights say that the commonalty of Cologne wish to be his allies, and ask him to accept the help of the five hundred men of arms.

One of the knights offers to guide the army to Cracow.

duc Anthony bode at souper *with* hym aH the ladyes of the Cyte, & festyed them ryght honorably, & gaf grete yeftes ar he departed in so moche that they of the Cyte wysshed hym to be theire lord. 4

In the morne the Duc toke his leue of them of the toun / and thanked them moche of the grete honour that they had shewed to hym & to his barons. And they ansuerd aH *with* one voyce: ‘Noble Duc / 8 the Cite / we & aH our goodes ben at your commande-ment more than to ony other lord that marcheth about vs / and spare vs not of nothing¹ that we may doo for you, For we be now, & shal euer be, redy to do you 12 playsure, ayde, & comfort at your mandement and first calling¹’ / And he departed fro them, and went in to his tente. And on the morne as he came from the masse, & commanded the trompettes to be sowned for 16 to departe & meve / there came fro the Cite foure knyghtes wel mounted on horsbak, & armed of aH pyeces sauf the helmet, whiche alyghted byfore the duckes tente *with* foure houndred men of armes, and 20 C crosbowe men in theire felawship. These knyghtes made their obeyssaunce / and syn sayd in this manere: ‘Right noble & puyssaunt duc, the Cite & commynalte of Coloyne recommande them to your good grace / 24 and where as þey haue sene so moche of noblesse & curtoysye in you / ¹desyryng right affectuely to be frendes & alyez vnto you, they send¹ you foure hondred men of armes & an C crosbowes, al payed of theire 28 wages for tene monethis day, for to goo *with* you where so euer it playse you to goo.’ ‘By my feyth,’ sayd Anthony, ‘thankyng be to them, whome I am moche beholden to / this curtoysye is not to be reffused / 32 & wete it I shal not forgete it / but remembre in tyme & place.’ ‘Sire,’ said one of the foure knyghtes, ‘there nys none of vs foure, but he knowe wel al the way fro hens to Craco / and yf it mystier, we shal guyde & lede 36

you wel & surely thurgh the passages & ouer al
 the ryueres betwix this & that.' To that ansuerd the
 Duc & said / 'this that ye say hurteth not our affayre,
 4 and I gaynsay not your sayeng, whan tyme shalbe.'
 Thenne he putte them in ordynaunce, and receyued
 them vnder his banere. And penne desloged the vant-
 garde, the grete batayll, & the ryeregarde, and marched
 8 on their waye in fayre aray so long, that they entred
 in the land of Bavyere, nygh to a grete Cite named
 Nuenmarghe, where as the Duc of Ode was with a
 grete compaignie of people, For he doubted the kyng
 12 Zelodus of Craco, that had besieged the kyng Fed-
 eryke of Behayne, and held hym in grete necessite,
 For he had with hym foure score paynemes / and the
 Duc Ode was doubtful lest he shuld come vpon hym,
 16 yf he subdued and dyscomfyted the kyng Federyke.
 And therefore, he had assembled his Counseyl to knowe
 & see what best was to doo. /

The duke accepts
 the company,
 and puts them
 under his banner.

The army
 marches to
 Bavaria, nigh to
 Nuenmarghe,

where the Duke
 Ode is taking
 counsell what to
 do about the
 siege.

Thenne cam to the Cite an auneynt knyght that
 20 was of the Duc Ode, to whom he said after his
 obeyssaunce made: 'My lord, by my sowle I come
 from the marches of Almayne / but there is ¹commyng
 a grete oost hitherward of the moost goodlyest men of
 24 armes and best arrayed that euer I sawe in my dayes /
 but I wot not where they purpose to goo / but so
 moche I know, that they draw them self hitherward.'
 'By my feyth,' said the Duc, 'I gyue me grete wonder
 28 what folke they may be, yf the king of Anssay had not
 be of late dyscomfyted tofore Lucembourgh, I shuld
 suppose that it were he that wold socoure his brother
 Federyke ayenst the Sarasyns / and on my sowle yf it
 32 were he I shuld goo with hym for to helpe his brother.'
 'My lord,' said the knyght, 'it were wysely doo to haue
 knowleche certayn what folke they be, ne yf they pur-
 pose other wyse than wele.' 'Sire knyght,' said thanne
 36 the Duc, 'ye muste your self goo to knowe & reporte

¹ fol. 128.

An auncient
 knight tells
 Duke Ode of
 the approach of
 a great host.

The duke says
 if it were the
 King of Anssay
 he would go with
 him to help
 Frederick.

The duke sends
 the knight to
 ascertain what
 host it is.

He comes upon
the host in a
valley

where they are
taking exercise.

¹ fol. 128 b.

The knight
thinks them
worthy men of
war.
He enters the
host, and asks
for the governor.
He is brought
before Anthony.

The knight says
he is sent by
Duke Ode to
inquire why the
host had come
into his land.

Anthony an-
swers that he
is the Duke of
Luxembourg,
and with him is
his brother and
the King of
Anssay, and that
they are going to
raise the siege of
Prague.

the certaynte of it, syn ye haue sene them' / And he
ansuerde, 'By my feyth, my lord, I am redy therto.'
And soone he departed, and so long¹ he rode that he
perceyued thoost in a valey by a ryuere. There he 4
sawe grete companyes of gentyl men here & there,
some castyng¹ the barre of yron / other held their
spere & shild and esproued them self that one on þat
other / some assayed their harneys with shoot, with 8
strokes of swerdes, and in many other appertyse of
armes they exercyted them self. 'By my feyth,' said
therne the knight / 'there is fayre mayntene and noble
contenaunce of men of armes / suche folke is to be 12
doubted and dredde.' Therne he loked on the ryght
syde vpon a lytel mountayne & sawe the grete batayH,
and sawe the watche and the scourers al about the
oost. 'By my feyth,' said the knight that moche thing 16
had sene in his dayes / 'this ben ¹worthy men of
werre and able to subdue ony lande.' And therne he
entred in to thoost / and demanded after hym that had
the gouernaunce & guydyng of it / And soone he was 20
brought tofore Anthony. And whan he saw the Duc
he was moche abasshed of his facion / but alwayes he
salued hym ryght curtoysly / and syn said to hym,
'My lord, the Duc Ode hath sent me toward you to 24
wete of you what ye seeke in hys land / and yf ye thinke
or purpose other wyse than wele / also what ye be that
conduyteth so fayre company of people that I see here
assembled. For he woteth wel that ye come not hither 28
with suche a felawship without it be for som grete af-
fayre' / 'Frend,' sayd anthony / 'tell your lord that we ne
demande ought of hym, nor suppose not to damage his
land in no wyse. Also ye may telle hym that it is the 32
kinge of Anssay / Anthony of Lusynen, Duc of Lucem-
bourg, and Regnald his brother, with their puy-
saunce that supposen to goo reyse the siege of praghe,
that the Sarasyns haue besieged.' 'Sire,' said thaun- 36

- eyent knyght, 'god graunte you good vyage.' And so
 he departed and retourned toward the Duc Ode of
 Bauyere, to whom he rehersed as aboue is said, and
 4 shewed hym the fyersnes and facion of Anthony, and
 the contenaunce of his oost / sayeng that they were
 folke to be redoubted & dreð. 'By my feyth,' said
 thenne the duc Ode, 'It commeth of noble courage to
 8 that two bretheren to haue come fro so ferre lande
 for to seke auenture of cheualerye & honour, and also
 for to come & gyue ayde & socour to kynge Federyke
 anenst the enemyes of god / and I promyse god that
 12 shal not be *without* me, For it shuld be tourned to me
 to grete shame yf that I went not thither / seeyng that
 he is my Cousyn, & that my land is so nygh his
 royalme / and that the straungers come fro so ferre
 16 for to ayde & helpe hym ayenst the paynemes.' And
 thenne had the Duc Ode ¹made his mandement but of
 late, and had assembled al redy foure thousand fighting
 men. What shold I make long compte / thoost desloged
 20 and passed byfore Murmych. And thanne the Duc
 Ode yssued out of the toun *with* a fayre companye of
 people, and came and presented hym self and al his
 peple tofore the kinge of Anssay, Anthony / and his
 24 broþer, whiche Joyously receyued them / and thus
 marched thoost forth in fayre aray and good ordynaunce
 by the space of six dayes. And now seaceth thistorye
 to speke of them, and spekethe of the kinge Federyke
 28 and of the siege. /

The knight re-
turns, delivers
his message,
and describes
the host.

The King thinketh
the brethren
courageous,

and resolves to
go with them

against the
paynims.
¹ fol. 129.

He assembles
four thousand
men,

and presents
himself with his
company to the
King of Anssay
and the brethren.

- H**ere sheweth thistorye how the puyssaunce of
 Zelodyus, kyng of Craco, was ryght grete / and
 the king Federyk durst not goodly haue yssued / but
 32 alwayes he scarmousshed ofte with his enemys / and
 almost dayly was at the barrers / the medlee was grete
 & stronge / and there were *within* the toun about
 a houndred helmets of Hongery, that were valyaunt
 36 knyghtes & good men of werre / the whiche yssued /

Frederick is
unable to cope
with Zelodius,

though he often
tries skirmishes.

Early one morn-
ing the pagans
assault the town.

Frederick drives
them back to
their camp ;

but the king of
Cracow comes
with fifteen
thousand Sara-
cens,

and forces
Frederick to
retreat.

Frederick sees
Zelodius,
1 fol. 129 b.

cuts his way
up to him,

and smites him
on his helmet.

Zelodius is suc-
coured by his
men ;

and launches
a dart at
Frederick,

ofte & dide grete dommage to the sarasyns. It happed
on a mornynge erly that the paynemes gaf a grete sawte
to the toun / and the king Federyke with his people
yssued out vnto the barrers / and there the scarmyssh- 4
ing bygan grete & mortall / and so manfully faught
the kyng, that with the help of his men he gretly
dommaged his enemyes / and made them to cesse of the
sawte / & made them to goo back vnto theire lodgys. 8
And that tyme was the kyng of Craco mounted vpon a
grete hors, his banere to the wynd accompanied with
xv M^e sarasyns, and came in fayre ordynance to the
batayll. There was many stroke gyuen & receyued / 12
and by force of armes the kyng & his peple was con-
strayned to withdrawe hym back vnto the barrers.
There was grete occysyon made, For horryble strokes
were gyuen of bothe sydes, and the king Federyke re- 16
comforted wel his peple, For he dide grete faytte of
armes of his owne handes. And whan he perceyued
¹kyng Zelodyus that sore dommaged his peple, he
sporyd his horse and toke his swerd in his fyst / and 20
rane smyttyng on the lyft syde and on the ryght syde
vpon his enemyes tyl he made place, and came &
smote Zelodius vpon his helmet, by suche strengthe &
vertue that he made hym to enclyne vpon his hors neck 24
al astonyed / and lytel faylled that he was not ouer-
thrawen to the erthe, For he lost bothe the steropes /
but soone he was socoured of his men whiche redreced
hym vp ryght / and the king Federyk adreced hys 28
swerd vpon a payneme, & suche a stroke he gaf hym
that he slew hym therewith. The king of Craco was
thenne redreced as said is / and he perceyuyng the kyng
Federyk / that hewed legges & armes, & casted to 32
therthe al that he recountred of the sarasyns / had
grete anger in his herte and came nygh at hym / and
with an archegaye or dart launched at hym, by suche
strengthe that the dart entred so depe into hys body 36

that the heek of it was sene at the back syde of hym.
 That doon the kynge Federyk that felt the dystresse of
 deth myght no more hold hym self up ryght, but fell
 4 & reuersed deed fro his hors to the ground. Thenne
 was his peple full heuy and dolaunt, and withdrew
 them self anoone, and reentred into the toun & shetted
 the gates after them. And thenne byganne the sorowe
 8 to be grete in the town al about. /

which pierces
 his body through
 and through.

He falls to the
 ground.

His people with-
 draw to the town
 and close their
 gates.

Cap. XXXI. How the kinge of Craco dide do
 take the body of kynge Federyke that he
 had slayn and commanded it to be brent.

12 ¹ The king of Craco thenne glad & joyous for cause of
 kyng Federykes deth, commanded the corps to be
 brought byfore the gate, & there to be brent for to haue
 abasshed the more pem of the Cite, seying theyre king
 16 in a fyre. Whan the Cyteseyns & commynalte of
 praghe knew the deth of their kynge / and the grete
 tyrannye of Z[el]odyus, they made grete sorowe / but in
 espesial the pucelle Eglantyne, his doughtir, was sorow-
 20 full in herte, and so pyteously bewaylled and lamented,
 that grete pyte it was to here & seo / sayeng such or
 semblable wordes: 'Ha / god! who might comforte me
 whan I see my faders deth byfore me, & the total dys-
 24 comfytur of hys peple, & also the destruction of my
 self, For I see no way wherby myght come any socoure
 vnto me, For I haue herd say that myn vncle, the
 kynge of Anssay, on whome I trusted more than to
 28 all ² other men in the world, hath be dyscomfytet
 tofore Lucembourg. Ha, veray god! creatour of Crea-
 tures, I ne wote other reffuge for me for to escape the
 tyraunt Z[el]odyus handes than the mercyfull bosom
 32 of your grace to hyd me therin. O ryght noble, ryght
 puyssaunt, & ryght excellent prynesse! virgyne &
 moder of god! Marye, my lady & maistresse / haue

1 fol. 130.

Zelodius com-
 mands Fre-
 derick's body
 to be burnt.

The citizens of
 Prague are sor-
 rowful for the
 death of their
 king.

His daughter,
 the maid Eglan-
 tine, piteously
 mourns her
 father's death,

2 fol. 130 b.

and calls on the
 Virgin Mary.

Those who see
her grief are
full of pity.

The commonalty
propose to yield,

but two true
knights upbraid
them,

and advise them
to wait tidings
from the King
of Anssay :

and bid them
trust in Christ.

The people are
comforted, and
refuse to yield,

² fol. 131.

whereat Zelodius
is angry.

He sorely as-
saults their city.

compassion on me! poure orphenyn & faderles.' Cer-
taynly the pucelle Eglantyne bewayled, syghed, &
complayned so piteously that no persone beheld her /
but they were of pyte constrayned to wepe how hard 4
that theire hertes had be, For in her anguysshe &
sorowe she made none ende, but euer she wept &
rendred teeris habundauntly. Thenne the commynalte
of the toun, sore agast and timerous, were in propos 8,
& wylle for to yeld the toun & themself ouer to the
kyng Z[el]odyus, þat made them to be requyred & ad-
mounsted¹ therof / shewing to them how they myght
not long endure nor withstand ayenst his grete puyss- 12
saunce / & that theire CateH & goodes shuld be sau-
ed to them / but yf he toke theire Cyte byforce, he shuld
make þem bothe theire wyues & children to be brent
al to asshis, as theire kyng was. Wherfore the cyte 16
henge in balauunce to be delyuered & gyuen ouer to the
Sarasyngs. But emonge other were there two good
men, true & auneynt knightes, that said in this
manere : ' False people, what wyl you now doo, yet is 20
not the messenger come agayn that rode toward the
king of Anssay for socour, take courage & comfort
your self, For within short space of tyme ye shal here
good tydynges / thinke that ye be Cristen / & that 24
Criste shaH helpe vs or it be long.' And whan they
herd hym so speke they were aH recomforted, &
ansuerd to the paynemes ambaxatours that they shuld
neuer yeld them ouer vnto the last ²mans lyf of aH 28
them. And whan the kyng Zelodyus knewe theire
wyll, he was wood angry & sorowful, & sware his
goddess that he shuld putte al on fyre. /

The kyng³ Zelodyus was mouyd to yre & grete 32
T anger for thansuere of the commynalte of Pragh,
wherfor he scarmysshed them sore, & gaf grete sawtes
to theire Cite, but the noble and valyaunt men that

¹ Fr. *faisoit remonstrer*.

³ kyng of: MS.

were w^{it}hⁱⁿ deffended it strongly. I wyl now retourne
 to speke of the Duc anthony and of hys brother Reg-
 nauld, of the kyng of Anssay / and also of Ode, Duc
 4 of Bauyere, whiche conduyted theyre oost, & marched
 fourth hastily, For they had tydinges of the myserye
 that they of the Cite were in / but nothing they knew
 of the deth of king Federyke. And on a thursday at
 8 euen, they lodged themself nygh to a grete ryuere, a
 leghe & a half fro the Cite of Prague / and that same
 euen was a knight of that same Countree that was in
 their felawship commanded that on the morne he
 12 shuld anounce their commyng to them of the Cite /
 and he on the morne erly mounted on hys hors, and
 toke his way toward the Cite / and after a grete sawte
 was seaced for fawte of daylight, he cam vnto a lytel
 16 posterne / and they of the garde there knew hym anone,
 and lete hym entre the toun / and as soone as he was
 entred he rode softly along by the gardes, cryeng alowde
 in this manyere: 'Lordes, deffende you wel, For here
 20 commeth the floure of knighthode to your socours &
 helpe with the kinge of Anssay, & anoone ye shal see
 them bygynne the bataylle / and be a good chere, For
 on my hed not one Sarasyn shaft escape, but he be
 24 deed or take.' And ¹whan they vnderstode hym, they
 bygane to make such a Cry, & so lowde, that it was
 wonder to here sayeng: 'Lawde & thanki^{ng} be to god
 almighty perof.' And thenne they employed them self,
 28 & defended so valiauntly, that no sarasyn durst no
 lenger abyde nygh the wa^{ll} a bowe shotte / & many
 paynemes were thenne slayne, in so moche that the
 dyches watre was as toured & dyed w^{it}h theyre blood.
 32 And whan Zelodyus sawe the grete & courageous
 deffense of them of the toun he was abasshed, &
 meruaylled moche of their joyful contenance. /

36 **T**henne whan Zelodyus perceyued that his folke
 withdrewe them self thus backward, he was

The relieving
 host marches
 hastily,

and arrives on
 a Thursday even-
 ing a league and
 a half from
 Prague.

A knight is sent
 to the city with
 the news of their
 approach.

He enters, and
 bids the lords
 fight well be-
 cause of the
 succour that is
 near.

1 fol. 131 b.

The people thank
 God for the good
 news,

and slay many
 Saracens.

Zelodius is
sorrowful that
this assault has
failed.

Anthony and
his host ap-
proach.

They see the
Saracens' camp.

Anthony calls
a halt,
and orders
archers to his
wings.

1 fol. 132.

The paynims
perceive their
coming, and tell
Zelodius.

He is wroth,
and commands
his men to as-
semble in battle
array.

Anthony's host
advances against
the paynims.

The air is full
of arrows.

Christians and
paynims fight
manfully.

sorowfuH & dolaunt, & had grete merueyлле, why & wherefore they of the toun were of so corageous deffense more then in other sawtes tofore gyuen / but soone after hys doleur & sorowe encreced moch more, For 4
anthoni approuched in fayre aray. He, & Regnald hys brother, conduyted the first batayH; and the kyng of Anssay, & his Cousin the duc of Bauyere, ledd the aryer garde. There had ye seen fayre companye of 8 gentilmen in good aray / the baners & standarts dysplayed / helmets & salades wel garnysshed with fyn gold & syluer, which resplendysshed fuH clere / And so they cam & sawe the Cite that the paynemes assaylled, 12 & gaaf grete sawte / & sawe theire tentes & pauyllons, where were grete nombre of sarasyns. Thenne made Anthony his folk to tary and be styl a while, tyl the aryergarde were nygh to them / and ordeyneH archers 16 & crosbowes to be vnder the wynges of hys batayH. and thenne they were apperceyued, 1 and seen of the paynemes, which went & made knowlege therof to theire kyng, sayeng in this manere: 'Sire, leue the 20 sawte, that in an euyl heure was bygonne / wete it that such a multitude of Cristen peple be commyng hitherward that all the felde be couered with.' Whan Zelodyus vnderstode these tydynges he was wood 24 wroth, & gretly abasshed, and lefte the sawte, and made the trompettes to sowne the retrayte, & that euery man shuld assemble togidre vnder hys banere. he thenne ordeyned his bataylles as he coude best. 28 And Anthony commanded hys trompettes to be sowned for to bygynne the batayH / and they approched the paynemes, keping good ordynaunce. Thenne bygan the shotte to be grete & thikk as snowe in the ayer / 32 and syn the men of armes medled togidre, and entred one vpon other, & valyauntly brake speres, & ouerthrew eche other as it happed. The Cristen faught corageously / and the paynemes withstode & susteyned theire 36

- grete strokes manfully. There was many sarasyn re-
 uersed to therth & slayn. Wel assayed the poyteuyns
 them self, & dyde grete faytte of armes vpon theire
 4 enemyes. But the king Zelodyus putte his sheld
 tofore his brest, & held his spere alowe, and broched
 his hors with the sporys, & rane vpon the Crysten;
 and aftir hym folowed xv M^t paynemes. Zelodius
 8 dide there grete merueyHe of armes, and ouerthrew
 many a Cristen to therthe, & gretly dommaged them.
 For his folke that folowed at back syde of hym faught
 meruayllously. Thenne cryed the kyng Zelodius his
 12 baner: 'Lordes, barons, auaunce, the journey is oure,
 For they may not vs escape' / And they of poytou
 receyued them moch hardyfly, and wete it wel that
 there was grete losse of peple of bothe partyes.
 16 Thenne came duc Anthony with the swerdt¹ in his
 fyst / and whan he perceyued his peple recule a lytel,
 nygh he deyed for sorowe / and cryed: 'Lusynen!'
 with a high voys, and putte hym emong the sarasyns
 20 more hastyfully than thundre falleth fro heuen, and
 faught & smote on eche syde vpon his enemyes, and
 ouerthrew aH them that he recountred. and his peuple
 folowed at back syde of hym that were al wondred of
 24 his grete fayttes & valyauntnes, For there ne was so
 hardy a sarasyn pat durst hym abyde / but fledd &
 reculed vnto theire tentes. And this seyng the king
 Zelodius, he cryed: 'auaunt, lordes & barons, and
 28 deffend you / how is that for one man alone that ye
 flee / it is to you grete shame.' And aftir these wordes
 he retourned, & assembled his peple ayen togidre, and
 gaaf grete batayl mortal vnto anthony & the poyteuyns.
 32 Thenne came thadmyral with ten thousand fighting
 men / and thenne enforced the batayH ryght horryble,
 For there were many of the sarasyns slayn and sore
 hurt.

Zelodius with
a great host
rushes on the
Christians,

and greatly
hurts them,

and cries 'the
day is ours.'

1 fol. 132 b.

Anthony sees
his people re-
treating; he
cries 'Lusignan,'
and falls on the
Saracens like
thunder from
heaven.

The Saracens
flee.

Zelodius up-
braids them,

they rally and
fight again.

The admiral
arrives with ten
thousand men.

Cap. XXXII. How the king¹ of Craco was
slayn in bataylle.

¹ fol. 133.

The rearguard,
under the King
of Anssay, comes
up and fights
vigorously.

Anthony and
Regnauld
give marvellous
strokes,

and wherever
they are they
cause the Sara-
cens to run.

² fol. 133 b.

Zelodius en-
courages his folk,
and does great
damage.

Regnauld spurs
his horse against
him.

Zelodius hurts
him in the thigh,

but Regnauld
hits him back,

¹Thenne came the ryerward² that the kinge of Ans-
say and the Duc Ode conduyted þat entred 4
vygourously into the batayll, where was grete occysyon,
For the batayll was mortal on bothe partes. And vpon
that arryued Anthony & Regnauld, that entred by one
assent vpon the sarasyns, making suche occysyon that 8
there ne was sarasyn ne Cristen, but he meruaylled of
þe meruayllous strokes that they gaf. And in con-
clusyon there was none so hardy a sarasyn that durst
withstand² them, For wher someuer they sawe them 12
they fledd, and so strongly faught the cristen / that
the sarasyns tourned theire back, puttyng them self to
flight / but the kyng Zelodyus valy²auntly encouraged
& reteyned them togidre. And wete it wel that he dide 16
grete dommage to the Crysten. But whan Regnauld
perceyued the king¹ Zelodius, that rendred so grete a
stoure & batayll mortall to hys folke / he sware that
he shuld dye or he shuld delyuere the place fro the 20
sarasyns / Thenne tourned he the targe behynde and
sporyd his hors by grete yre and came vpon the king¹
of Craco. And whan Zelodyus the kynge sawe hym
cōme he haunced² hys swerd² and smote hym vpon his 24
helmet / but his swerd² glenced doune by the lyfte
syde vnto his thye, & hurted hym in such manere that
the blood rane vnto his foote / And thenne Regnauld
þat was full dolaunt, with bothe handes lyfte vp his 28
swerde and smote the kynge Zelodyus vpon the helmet
with so grete yre that he was therwith astonyed, in so
moche that the swerd² fel² out of his hand² and bowed
vpon his hors neck, and therwith brake the taches of 32
his helmet. And thenne Regnauld retourned & smote
hym ayen, and charged hym with so many hydouse
strokes that he moste nedes parforce fall to therth.

- And fourthwith was the prees grete aboute hym bothe
 of horses & men / but hys peple came & socoured
 hym fro the horses feet / but in conclusyon they coude
 4 not obteyne nor hym ayde / but he was slayne. And
 whan the sarasyns sawe that they went to flight / And
 the cristen peple pursiewed þem manfully and slough
 them bothe in feld & in wodes. And wete it wel
 8 that there escaped but few, and thus was the batayll
 fynnyshed. And this don the Cristen lodged them in
 the tentes of the sarasyns. And the two brethern /
 the king of Anssay and the Duc Ode departed with
 12 a C. ¹knyghtes with them toward the Cite, where as
 they were nobly receyued, For the Citezeyns had so
 grete Joye of the vycторыe that they had wonne vpon
 the sarasyns. And thenne came they & descended at
 16 the palays ryatt. Thenne came the pucelle Eglantyne
 and recountred her vncl the king of Anssay and all
 his barons.

and though
 Zelodius' people
 come to defend
 their king,

Regnault slays
 him.
 The Saracens
 then flee;
 many are slain,

and but few
 escape.

The Christians
 take the camp
 of the Saracens.

1 fol. 134.

The brethren
 enter the town.

Cap. XXXIII. How the kynge Zelodius &

- 20 the other saracyns were brent and bruyled¹.

- T**he pucelle Eglantyne was thenne joyfull & glad
 for the dyscomfytüre of the paynemes and also of
 the commyng of her uncle. But not withstanding she
 24 had sorowe at herte for the kynge, her faders deth,
 that she might not forget it. And neuertheles, whan
 she cam byfore her vncl she enclyned & honourably
 made to hym her obeyssaunce, sayeng: 'My right dere
 28 vncl, ye be right welcomme / playsed god that ye
 were arryued two ²dayes rather, For thenne ye had
 found my fader on lyue, whiche Zelodius hath slayne
 & made to be brent & bruled to the moost vytupere &
 32 shame of the Catholycal feyth.' And whan the kyng
 of Anssay vnderstoð it he was wroth & dolaunt, and
 sware that thus and in suche wyse shuld he do of the

The maid Eglan-
 tine is glad for
 the victory.

She welcomes
 her uncle, the
 King of Anssay,

2 fol. 134 b.

and tells him
 how Zelodius
 has burnt her
 father's body.

He swears

to treat the
Saracens the
same way.

Their bodies are
laid in a heap,

and are burnt ;

but the bodies
of the Christians
receive Christian
burial.

The King of
Anssay is woful
for his brother's
death.

He has the
cathedral pre-
pared for his
brother's obse-
quies ;

1 fol. 135.

and goes toward
the Saracens
camp,

where the breth-
ren were dividing
the spoil.

The King of
Anssay tells how
his brother was
slain and his
body burnt,

and how he
burned the
Saracens.

kyng Zelodius and of aH the sarasyns, that he coude fynde deð or alyue. And anoon were cryees made through the toun, that of euery hous one man shuld goo in to the feld for to assemble the deed bodyes of the 4 sarasyns togidre vpon a mountayne, and that men shuld bryng thither wod ynough for to brule & brēne the corps. And thus it was don. And was the corps of Zelodyus sette vpon a stake so that it was seen aboue 8 al other / And so was the fyre grete about them / and so they were al brent & bruled / and aH the deed bodyes of the cristen men that were found were buried there as cristen people ought to be. And þese thinges 12 doon, the kyng of Anssay made al thing to be redy for to make thobsequeye of the kyng his brother, and that moche honourably as it is shewed herafter. /

In this partye, sayth thystorye, that wooful & sory 16 was the kyng of Anssay for the deth of his brother / but syth it plesed god to be so he lefte & passed his deucl the best wyse that he coude. Thap- pareyl was thezne made for the obsequeye whiche was 20 don in the Chirche Cathedral of the Cite. And syn the kyng of Anssay and the duc of bauyere ¹mounted on horsback and many barons of behayne with them, and al clothed in black went toward the sarasyns tentes, 24 where the two bretheren were whiche had do cōme per aH the Sommage, Cartes, Charyotes, & bagage, And syn departed among theire people aH that they had wonne vpon the paynemes /. Thenne arryued there 28 the kyng of Anssay, the duc Ode, and all the baronnye and nobly salued the two brethern, And the duc Anthony, & Regnauld hys brother receyued them joyfully. Thenne reccounted the kyng of Anssay to þe 32 two bretheren how the kyng ffederyk was slayn in the baytayH, and how Zelodyus had made hys body to be brent in despyt of aH cristianyte / and therfore he had doo like wise of Zelodyus body & of aH the sarasyns 36

- that were founde alyue or deed. And Anthonye penne
 ansuerd, 'On my feyth ye haue don right wel / and
 veryly kyng Zelodius mysdede ouermochte grete cruelte,
 4 For syn a man is deed / grete shame is to hys enemy
 to touche hym ony more.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said
 the duc of Bauyere, 'ye say trouthe, but the kyng of
 Anssay is come hither to you for to beseeche you &
 8 your brother to come to the obsequye of the kyng
 Federyke his brother.' And thenne ansuerd the
 bretherne, 'we shal thither goo gladly.' Thenne they
 mounted on hors back & rode toward the Cite, wher
 12 as the ladyes and damoysselles, knightes & squyres /
 cytyzeyns & commynalte beheld them fayne and mer-
 uaylled moche of the Lyons clawe that shewed in
 An'thonyes cheke / and preysed moche his fayre & wel
 16 shappen body, and also of Regnauld hys brother / and
 said among themselves, 'these two bretheren ben able for
 to subdue al the world.' And thus they came to the
 church where thobsequye shuld be made and there
 20 alyghted.

Anthony thinks
Zelodius was
cruel.

The duke Ode
asks the brethren
to the obsequies.

They agree to
come;

and are well
received in the
city.

1 fol. 135 b.

Cap. XXXIV. How the two brethern were
 at buryeng and obsequye of kynge Fe-
 deryk of behayne.

- 24 **E**glantine that was in the Cirche came and re-
 countred the two bretheren, whom she made hum-
 bly her obeyssaunce, thankyng them mekely of their
 noble socours that they had doo to her, For they had
 28 saued her honour, her lyf, and her land. And thenne
 anthony ansuerd humbly to her, sayeng, 'Damoysselle,
 2 We haue nought doo but that we ought to doo, For
 euery good cristen is hold & bound aftir the playsire
 32 of god toppresse & dystroye thenemyes of God.' The
 pucelle was there nobly acompanyed of the ladyes &
 damoysselles of the land, thobsequye was honourably &

Eglantine meets
the brethren at
the church, and
thanks them for
saving her.

2 fol. 136.

After the service,
which is nobly
done,

the brethren
convey Eglantine
to the palace,

where they have
dinner.

The King of
Anssay calls
the barons of
the land,

and tells them
they must take
council how to
govern the
kingdom.

They say that
in his presence
they must not
speak.

1 fol. 136 b.

He advises them
to marry their
lady.

They ask the
king to seek her
a worthy man.

nobly doon as it apparteyned to suche a noble kyng^r as he was. And after the seruyse fynysshed the two bretheren mounted on theire horses, and theire meyne also, and conueyed the pucelle Eglantyne vnto the 4 paleys where they descended, & syn mounted in to the haH where the tables were redy couered / and therne they wesshe theire handes & satte at dyner / and syn were nobly seruyd^t & festyed / and after dyner the tables 8 were voyded & take vp & wesshe handes / and syn þey conueyed Eglantyne vnto her chambre, þat was euer sorowful for her faders deth. And þenne the kinge of Anssay called to hym al the baronnye of the land, & 12 said to them in this manere :

‘**L**ordes, barons, ye muste CounseyH emong^r you, & take your best aduys how ye myght haue a valyaunt man for to gouerne the royaume, For the land 16 which is in the gudyng & gouernaunce of a woman only is not surely kept. Now, loke thenne what best is for the prouffyt & honour of my cousyne Eglantine, & for þe common wele of this land.’ Thenne ansuerd 20 one for them alle & sayd: ‘Sire, we knowe none that oughte to medle hymself therwith tofore you, For yf your Cousyn were passed out of this mortal lyf, that god forbede, al the royalme of Behayne shuld appar- 24 teyne to you. Wher^lfor we al bes[e]che you that therto ye puruey after your playsire.’ Thenne ansuerd the king, & thus said: ‘Sire, as touching my personne, I may not long abyde with you to be rewler & protectour 28 of this land, For thanked be god I haue land ynoughe to entreteyne myn estate with / but in conclusyon lete my cousyn take some valiaunt man to her lord, that shal deffende the land ayenst the enemyes of god.’ 32 Thenne ansuered the barons fourthe with, ‘Sire, yf it please you þat your Cousyn be maryed, seke for her some noble & worthy man to be her lord & oure, For tofore you none of vs oughte to medle withaH.’ Thenne 36

ansuerd the kyng in this manere, 'We thenne shal
 purueye therto to her honour & prouffyt & to yours
 also / and that anoone, For I go to speke with her for
 4 this cause.' The kyng thenne departed and came in
 to the Chambre where his Cousin was, that moche hum-
 bly receyued hym. And the kyng said to her in this
 manere, 'Fayre cousyne, thankyng to god your affayres
 8 be now in good party, For your land is delyuered fro
 the paynemes by the puyssance of god & of the two
 brethern of Lusynen. Now it muste be aduysed &
 sene how best your reauume may be guyled in good
 12 gouernaunce to your prouffyt & honour, and of your
 people also.' Thenne ansuerd the mayden, 'My right
 dere vncle, I ne haue noon of CounseyH & comfort but
 you / so I requyre you that of good remedye ye pur-
 16 ueye therto. And conuenable & lawful it is that I
 obey you more than any other personne in the world,
 & so wyl I doo.' Thenne had the kyng pite on her
 & said, 'Fayre Cousyn, we haue alrede purueyed
 20 therto / ye muste be maryed to suche a man that can
 kepe and deffende you & your land ayenst alle enemyes,
 the whiche is fayre, noble, & valyaunt damoyseau, &
 not ferre hens.' 'Certaynly,' ansuerd the pucelle.
 24 'Dere vncle, wel I knowe for certayn that ye wold
 neuer CounseyH me þat thing but it were to my grete
 honour & proffit, and for the commyn wele of all my
 land / but ryght dere vncle, I to be maryed so soone
 28 after my faders decesse / shuld not shewe semblaunt of
 dueyH for his deth. Wherfor me semeth I were
 blamed to doo soo / and suche shuld shew to me fayre
 semblaunt byfore me,² that wold moke me at a pryvy
 32 place /'

He promises to
 find one,
 and leaves to
 speak to his
 cousin on the
 subject.

She receives him
 humbly.

He tells her that
 the way must be
 found how best
 to govern the
 land.

The maid asks
 his advice.

1 fol. 137.

He says she must
 get married.

She answers
 that she knows
 he gives good
 counsel,

but she thinks
 she should not
 marry so soon
 after her father's
 death.

The King replies
 that one must
 choose the lesser
 evil.

To that ansuerd the king, & said: 'My right fayre
 Cousyn, of two euylles men ought to choose
 the lasse, whan nedes muste one be had. But, fayre

² Fr. *qui en tendroit mains de compte derrière.*

He would like to wait to be at her wedding,

but he lives afar off.

Then the brethren must be rewarded,

but half of her kingdom would not be sufficient for this,

¹ fol. 137 b.
and she is not worthy to have Regnault as her lord.

Then the maid was ashamed,

and told her uncle to do with her and her kingdom as he thought best.

The King bids her cease weeping.

He goes to the brethren,

Cousyn, it is wel trouth, that who myght goodly tary the day of your weddyng^r it were your honour / but what, fayre Cousyn, my dwelling place is ferre hens / and here I may not make long^r sojourne, without my 4 grete damage, as wel of other mens goodes as of myn. Also the two bretheren most be recompensed & rewarded of their noble socours, outhre of my goodes or of yours / and some saith that bettre is to haue 8 more of prouffyt & lasse honour. And to say that ye coude recompense them as they oughte to be, by raison of the grete curtoysye by them shewed vnto you; the half of your royaume shuld not suffice. And ouer 12 more, fayre Cousyne, wete it that ye be not to suffysaunt ¹for to haue suche & so noble a man to your lord as is Regnault^d of Lusynen, For in certayn he is wel worthy to marye the gretest lady in the world^d. What 16 for his noble lynee, as for his bounte, beaute, & noble prowess.' Whan the noble pucelle Eglantyne vnderstode the kyng^r her vncl^e, she was shamfu^{ll} & hontous / and on that other part, she consydering^r the daunger 20 where bothe she & her peple had be & myght be wyst neuer what to say, and bygane to wepe / but at last she ansuerd^d in this manere: 'right dere vncl^e, all my trust, my hoop & comfort is in god & in you, wherfor 24 doo with me & with my reaume what it playse you' / 'Fayre Cousyn,' said the kyng^r, 'ye say right wel / and I swere you by my feyth, that nothing I shal say in this party ne doo, but that it shal be for the best. 28 Now thenne, noble Cousyne, seace your wepyng^r, & delyuere you of this affayre, For the more long^r that these baronye with their peple that be in nombre xv. M^l. be sojourning^r in your land^d the greter damage 32 shal ye haue.' And she that wel knewe he said trouth, ansuerd^d to hym in this manere: 'Dere vncl^e, doo therof al your playsyre.' Thenne came the kyng^e in to the grete halle where the two brethern were, & the 36

- baronye *with* them, and said to Anthony in this
 manyere: 'noble Duc, vouchesaf to understand my
 wordes, the barons of this land that be here present,
 4 beseech your good grace / & as touching my self, I
 hertyly praye you that it plesse you, that Regnauld your
 brother be king of this royalme, and that he take
 Eglantyne my Cousyn to his lady / prayeng hym that
 8 he this wyl not refuse, For the barons of the land
 desire hym moche to be their lord.' 'Sire,' answered
 anthony, 'this requeste is worthy to be graunted, &
 also shal it be. Doo hither come the noble da'moy-
 12 selle.' And fourthwith the kynge & the Duc Ode
 yede & fette the pucelle, and despoyled her of her
 dueyl & black clothing / and syn was arrayed ful
 rychely of her noblest raymentes, and acompanyed
 16 with her ladyes & damoysselles, she was conueyed by
 the forsaid lordes vnto the presence of the noble
 bretheren, whiche merueylled moche of her grete
 beaute / and she humbly enclyned byfore them, mak-
 20 yng her obeyssaunce. Thenne bygan the king of
 Anssay to speke, & thus said /
- N**oble Duc of Lucembourgh, hold ye to vs your
 couenauntes; this is wherof we wyl hold oure
 24 promesse.' 'For sooth,' said Anthony, 'it is wel reason.
 come hither Regnauld brother, receyue this pucelle to
 your lady, For she maketh you kynge of behayne.'
 Thenne said Regnauld, in heryng of alle that were
 28 there present / 'thankyng be to god, to the kynge, &
 to all the baronye of this lande, of the grete honour
 that they doo to me. For yf this noble pucelle had
 not one foot of land, yet wold I not reffuse her loue
 32 to haue her to my lady, after the lawes of god requyren.
 For with thayde of almighty god, I hoop to conquere
 ynoughe to hold & entreteyne therwith her noble
 estate' / 'Fayre brother,' said penne anthony / 'ye say
 raison / this royaume ye haue wonne alre dy / god yeue

and asks An-
 thony to make
 his brother
 marry Eglantine
 and rule her
 kingdom.

Anthony agrees.

1 fol. 133.

The maid, richly
 arrayed,

is brought before
 the lords and the
 two brethren.

The King asks
 Anthony to keep
 his promise.

Anthony calls
 on Regnauld to
 take the maid
 to wife.

Regnauld ac-
 cepts her for her
 merits, not for
 her lands,

and says he
 hopes to conquer
 still more.

Anthony hopes
that he will.
The bishop
comes and af-
fiances Regnauld
and Eglantine;
after that the
feast is great,
and the towns-
folk make much
joy.

[¹ MS. the the]

² fol. 138 b.
Rich robes are
made for the
ladies.

The maid is led
to the tents,

good watch is
set,
and a good sup-
per is served

before bedtime.

you grace to subdue & conquere other reames & landes
vpon her enemyes.' And in conclusyon, the bysshop
was sent for, & assured them togidre. And syn bygane
the¹ feest sumptuous & grete, For soone it was knowen 4
thruh al the toun, wherof the peple made grete joye /
and were the stretes hanged with ryche clothes, & grete
& noble apparayH was there made, as to suche a feste
apperteyned / and was ordeyned that the wedding⁸
shuld be hold^t in the feld^t within the chief pauillon.
Many riche rayments & robes were made what ²for the
spouse / as for the ladyes & damoysselles. That nyght
passed, and on the morne on which day they shuld 12
be espoused / the pucelle nobly was conueyed^t & ledd
vnto the tentes, whiche were al of cloth of gold / And
that night was good watche made as þe enemyes had
be nygh to them / and there the feste encreessed, & 16
were honourably seruyd at souper. And whan tyme
was, euery one went to bed vnto the morow erly, when
Aurora shone clere. /

Cap. XXXV. How Regnauld espoused 20 Eglantyne, daughter to the kynge of Behayne. /

At day spring
many ladies
accompany the
spouse to mass.

³ fol. 139.

where the bishop
solemnly es-
pouses Regnauld
and Eglantine.
They return to
the pavilion to
dine.

Here sheweth thistorye, & sayth that whan the day
spryng^t appiered, & the day was ful fayre & clere, 24
the spouse nobly & rychely arayed in her robes of cloth
of gold, & fourred^t with Ermynes, & purfylled^t aH with
precyous stones, accompanied with grete nombre of
ladyes & damoy³selles, was right honourably conueyed 28
vnto the place where as the masse shuld^t be sayd^t; and
solemply the bysshop espoused them here / and aftir
the masse, she retourned to the paunyllon with al the
noble baronye with her, where they fond^t al apparaylled 32
& redy to dyner. They were ful wel & nobly seruyd
of al thinges that to suche a feste be requysite & con-

uenable. And after they had dyned, graces were said,
 & wesshe theire handes, and syn were the tables
 voyded, thanne bygane they to daunce & to make grete
 4 joye. /

after which they
 danced and made
 great joy.

Cap. XXXVI. How the knightes & esquyers
 jousted after dyner.

Thistorye sayth that after the daunce was seaced the
 8 T ladies & damoysselles mounted vpon the scaffolds.
 Thenne cam the knightes rychely armed, & bygan to
 joust / trompettes sowned, & knightes reuersed eche
 other / but none might withstand the noble bretheren,
 12 but he was ouerthrow, bothe hors & man / so that no
 man dide there nought ¹to the regarde of theire prowes.
 Wherefore, they seyng that the ioustes affeblysshid for
 cause of them, they departed fro the lystes & toke of
 16 theire armeures / and syn dured the jousting tyl tyme
 of souper came. And thenne the joustes seaced, and
 the knightes & squyers departed, & went & dysarmed
 them. Thenne mynestrels with dyuerse Instruments
 20 of musique sowned & played melodyously the first
 cours of the souper / & syn they were nobly serued of
 al maner wyne / and after souper they daunced. But
 whan tyme was, the spouse was ledd to bed with grete
 24 honour & Joye. And anone after came Regnault
 there, whiche went to bed with the pucelle. Thenne
 voyded euery one the chambre / some to theire rest /
 some retourned to the daunce / some sang, & other
 28 made grete reueyH. Regnault, thenne that laye nigh
 Eglantyne, swetly embraced & kyssed her / and she
 to hym moche humbled her self, sayeng in this manere :
 ‘ My lord redoubted, ne had be the grace of god / your
 32 curtoysye & prowes, this poure orphelym had be / no
 doubt of / exilled, desolat, & lost. Wherfor, my right
 redoubted lord, I yeld thankyng to god, & to you also

The knights be-
 gin to joust ;

the two brethren
 cannot be over-
 thrown.

1 fol. 139 b.

Supper time
 arrives.

Minstrels play
 while it is served.

After some danc-
 ing the spouse
 is led to bed, and
 is followed by
 Regnald.

Eglantine de-
 clares that his
 prowess has
 saved her from
 exile,

and thanks him
for making her
his wife.

Regnald declares
she has done
more for him
than he for her.

1 fol. 140.

He begets
Olyphart,

who became
famous for deeds
of arms.

In the morning
before dinner
letters are
brought to An-
thony from
Christine

that haue dayned to take to your wyf her that was
vnworthy therto.' 'By my fayth,' said Regnald,
'dere herte, & my best beloued, ye haue do moche
more for me than euer I dide ne possible is to me to 4
doo for you / sene & consydered the noble yefte youen
by you to me / that is your noble lady / and yet besyde
that of your noble royaume ye haue endowed me / and
with me nought ye haue take / sauf only my symple 8
body.' Thenne ansuered Eglantyne, & said / 'Ha /
noble lord, your valyaunt body is derer to me & bettre
worth than ten other suche royames as myn is / &
more it is to be preysed.' Of ¹theire wordes I wyl 12
seace / but that nyght was begoten of them a noble
sone that was named Olyphart / he made in tyme after-
ward grete faytte of armes, and subdued & gate al the
low marche of holland & Zeland, Vtreyght, & the 16
Royame of Danemarche / and al the partyes of North-
weghe also. On the morne the day was fayre & clere.
Thenne was the noble lady Eglantyne ledd to here the
masse / and al the baronye, ladyes & damoysselles, acom- 20
panyed her thitherward. And after the mass was doo,
they retourned to the ryche pauyllon / and as they were
redy to sette pem at dyner / came there two knightis
fro Lucembourg, that brought *lettres* to Duc Anthony 24
from the Duches Crystyne his wyf / the whiche after
theire obeyssaunce honourably made, said to hym in
this wise: 'My lord, ye oughte to take grete joye /
For my lady the Duches is brought to bed of the most 28
fayrest sone that euer was seen in no land.' 'Now,
fayre lordes,' said anthony, 'blessid be god therof / and
ye be right welcome to me' / & syn toke the *lettres*.

Thistorye sayth that anthony, Duc of Lucem- 32
bourg, was joyful & glad of these tydynges,
and so was his brother Regnald. Thenne opened he
the *lettres*, wherof the tenour was acording to that the
knightes had said. Thenne made anthony moche of 36

which tell of the
birth of a fair
son.

- them, gyuyng to them grete yeftes of ryches. Thenne
 he satte hym at dyner nygh to Eglantyne / and dured
 the feest eyght days, sumptuose & open houshold.
 4 And whan the feste was fynysshed, they reentred in to
 the Cite *with* gret honour & joye. And on the morne
 next the kyng of Anssay / Anthony & the Duc Ode, &
 al theire baronye toke theire leue of ¹Regnauld & of
 8 Eglantyne, whiche were dolaunt of theire departing.
 And anthony made couenaunt *with* Regnauld hys
 brother, that yf the paynemes made ony moo werre
with hym, he shuld come & aȝ his baronye *with* hym
 12 to ayde & helpe hym. And the kyng Regnauld thanked
 hym mochi. And eche of them thanked & kyssed eche
 other at departyng / Soo long marched thoost pat they
 came to Mouchyne² in Bauyere / & lodged them in a
 16 fayre medowe nygh the toun. There the Duc Ode
 festyed them right honourably the space of thre dayes /
 and on the foureth day they departed & toke theire
 leue of the Duc Ode / and rode so long tyl [they]³
 20 came a day journey nygh to Coloyne. And there the
 foure knightes that conduyted the Coloyners auauuced
 them self byfore Duc Anthony, & to him said in this
 manere: 'My lord, it is best that we hast vs byfore
 24 you toward the toun, to apparayH & make al thing
 redy for your passage.' 'By my feyth,' said the Duc
 Anthonye, 'that playseth me wel.' Thenne departed
 the foure knightes & theire men *with* them, & rode
 28 tyl they came to the Cite of Coloyne, where they were
 receyued *with* Joye / and the Cytezeyns & gouernours
 of the cyte demanded of them how they had exployted
 in theire vyage / And they recounted to them aȝ the
 32 trouth of the fayte and the valyauntnes & noble prowes
 of the two brethern / & how regnauld was made kyng
 [of] Behayne. And whan they of Coloyne ⁴understode
 them they were ryght glad & joyous, sayeng they

Anthony gives
the messengers
great gifts.

The feast lasts
eight days.

Anthony, the
King of Anssay,
¹ fol. 140 b.
and Duke Ode
take leave of
Regnauld.

Anthony pro-
mises to help
him against the
paynims.

They march to
Mouchine, where
the Duke feasts
them, and

on the fourth day
they march
again.

They arrive near
Cologne.

The four knights
go in advance to
Cologne and

are joyfully re-
ceived.

They tell the
news of the ex-
pedition.

⁴ fol. 141.
The Cologners
are glad

² Fr. *Muchin*. ³ MS. has *day*.

to have the
friendship of
such noble lords.

Anthony and the
king arrive at
Cologne.

They are nobly
feasted,

and promise the
townspeople
their succour if
it should be
wanted.

Anthony arrives
near Luxem-
bourg.

Christine is joy-
ful at her lord's
return.

² fol. 141 b.

His people re-
ceive him with
shouts of wel-
come.

He feasts the
King of Anssay
and frees him
from all his obli-
gations except
the founding of
the priory.

were wel happy & ewrou¹ to haue acqyred the loue
& good wy^H of two lordes of so grete valeur. And
thenne they made grete apparay^H for to receyue the
Duc Anthony, and the king^t of Anssay with their^e 4
baronye. Soo long^t rode thoost that they came to Co-
loyne, where the Cytezeyns cam & mete hem honour-
ably / and to the prynces they made grete reuerence,
prayeng them that they wold be lodged that nyght 8
withⁱⁿ the toun, where they were nobly festyed &
honourably seruyd at souper. And on the morn
Anthony & his oost passed ouer the Ryn, and toke his
leue of them of Coloyne, whiche he thanked moche, 12
sayeng : ' yf they were in ony wyse oppressed by their^e
enemyes he wold^t be euer redy for tayde & socoure them
after hys power.' Wherof they thanked hym moche.
Thenne the Duc Anthony & the king of Anssay dyde 16
so moche by their^e journeys, that on an euen they
came & lodged them in the medow nygh^t by Lucem-
bourg. /

The duchesse Cristyne was replenysshed with joye, 20
whan she knew the commyng of her lord anthony /
and immedyaty she, nobly acompanyed, yssued out of
the toun / and all the noble cyteseyns folowed her to
mete with their^e lord, the whiche they recounted a 24
half a myle fro the toun. What shal I say / greter
joye was neuer sene than that was made for the retourne
of Duc Anthony. The Duchesse made humbly her
obeyssaunce vnto hym / and ²hertyly welcommed hym. 28
The people cryed on hye for Joye, sayeng thus :
'welcomme our lord ryght redoubted.' The joye was
grete thugh the toun where the Duc festyed the kyng^e
of Anssay by the space of six dayes contynuelly, & for- 32
gaf & rendred to hym all his obligacions, and held^t hym
quytte / except the Foundation of the pryore, where as
sowles shuld be prayed for / for the loue of Regnault

¹ Fr. *eureux*.

- his brother. And the kinge of Anssay thanked hym moche, & toke his leue of hym / departed, & came in Anssay, where as he was receyued *with* joye / And the
- 4 Duc anthony abode *with* the Duchesse Cristyne, on whom he gate a sone that same yere which was clepid Locher, whiche afterward delyuered the Countroy of Ardane fro theyrs, murdrers, & robbeurs; and in the
- 8 wodes there he founded an abbeye, and endowed it *with* grete pcessyons / And he also dyde doo make the bridge of Masyeres vpon the ryuere of Meuze, and many other fortresses in the basse marche of holland /
- 12 and dyde many fayre fayttes of armes *with* the kinge Olyphart of behayne, that was his Cousyn, & sone to kyng^r Regnault. It happed not long after the kyng^e of Anssay was retourned in to his royaume, that warre
- 16 meuyd betwix hym & the Duc of austeryche & the [Erle] of Fyerbourgh. wherfor he besought the Duc Anthony for socour, that gladly obtempered to his requeste, in so moche that he toke by force of armes
- 20 the Erle of Fyerbourgh / and syn pas^lsed in Austeryche, where he dyscomfyted the Duc in batay^{ll}, and made hym to be pacyfyed *with* the kyng^e of Anssay, to the grete prouffyt & honour of the kinge. And bertrand
- 24 theldest sone of the Duc Anthony, was assured *with* Melydee the sayd king^r of Anssays doughter / the whiche Bertrand afterward was kyng^e of anssay, and hys brother Locher was Duc of Lucembourg, after
- 28 the decesse of the Duc Anthony hys fader. But of this matere I wyl no more speke at this tyme / but shal retourne to speke of Melusyne & of Raymondyn, and of their other children. /
- 32 **N**ow sayth thystorye, that Raymondyn by hys noblenes & grete vasselage conquer^d grete countrees / and to hym many barons dyde homage vnto the land of Brytayne. And Melusyne had two yere after
- 36 that two sones, the first was named Froymond, that

Anssay thanks him, and afterwards returns to his country.

Anthony begets Locher, who frees Ardennes from thieves,

and builds fortresses, and does feats of arms along with his cousin Olyphart of Bohemia.

The King of Anssay asks the help of Anthony against his enemies.

1 fol. 142.

Anthony assists him.

Bertrand is assured to Melydee, the daughter of the King of Anssay.

Raymondin conquers great countries, and many barons do homage to the land of Brittany.

Melusine bears two sons, Froymond,

who became a monk,

and Theoderick.

Geffray with the Great Tooth was the most enterprising of all his brethren.

¹ fol. 142 b.

He hears tidings that the people of Garande will not pay his father their tribute.

He goes to Garande against his father's will.

Raymondin's partizans there offer to help Geffray.

He thanks them,

but declines their aid.

They tell him his enemies are very powerful.

entierly louyd holy Chirch, and that was wel shewed in his ende, For he was professid^t monke in to thabbeye of Maillezes, wherof there befeH a grete & an horryble myschief, as ye shal here hereafter by thystorye / and 4 the other child that they had the yere folowyng^t was named Theodoryk, the whiche was ryght batayllous. Here I shal leue to speke of the two children / and I shal shewe you of Geffray with the grete toth, that 8 was yrous & hardy / & most enterpryse dide of aH^t hys bretheren. And wete it wel that the said geffray doubted neuer man / And thystorye ¹sheweth, & the true Cronykle that he faught ayenst a knight, that was 12 gendred with a spyryte in a medowe nygh by Lusynen, as ye shal here hereafter. It is trouth that thenne Geffray was grete & ouergrown / and herde tydynges that there was in Garande peple that wold not obey to 16 hys fader / thenne sware Geffray by the good lord that he shuld^t make them to come as reason requyreth, and to do that he toke leue of hys fader, that was right wroth of hys departyng / and had with hym to the 20 nombre of fyue houndred men of armes, and a houndred balesters, and so went in to Garande / and anoone enquiryed after them that were dysobedyent / and they that held the party of Raymondyn shewed hym the 24 Fortresse where they were, & armed them to goo with hym to helpe to dystroye hys enemyes. 'By my feyth, fayre lordes,' sayd Geffray with the grete toeth / 'ye are ryght true & loyal peple / & I thanke you of 28 thonour that ye proffre me / but as for this tyme present I shall not nede you, For I haue men of armes ynough for tacomplyssh myn enterpryse.' 'For soothe, sire, ye haue more to doo than ye suppose, For your 32 enemyes ben ryght strong & of meruayllous courage, & they be frendes & cousyns, and of the grete & moost noble blood^t of al the Countree.' 'Fayre sires,' said Geffray, 'doubte you not, For thrughe thayde of god 36

omnipotent I shal the matere ¹wel redresse. And wete
 it wel there shal be none so myghty / but I shal make
 them to obeye my commandement or to deye of an euyl
 4 deth. And also, fayre lordes & true frendes, yf I nede
 you I shaH send for you / And they ansuerd, 'we are
 now al redy, and also shal we be at al tymes that it
 playse you vs to calle.' 'Fayre lordes,' said Geffray with
 8 the grete toth / 'that ought to be thanked for.' Thenne
 toke Geffray hys leue of them / and went forth on his
 way toward a Fortresse that was called Syon / & within
 the same was one of the enemyes of geffray that hight
 12 Claude of Syon, & were thre bretheren. Moche were
 the thre brethern yrous & proude / and wold haue sub-
 dued and putte vnder theire subjection aH theire neygh-
 bours. Thenne sent geffray with the grete tooth wordes
 16 of deffyaunce / outhre to come & make theire obeys-
 saunce to hym for Raymondin his faders. And they
 ansuerd to the messenger, 'that for Raymondyn ner for
 no man on his byhalf they shuld nought doo / and that
 20 he shuld no more retourne to them for this matere, for
 than he were a fole.' 'By my feyth,' said the mes-
 sager, 'I shal kepe me wel therfro / but that I bryng
 with me a maister in medecyne, that shal make suche
 24 a lectuary or drynk wherof ye shal be poysonned, &
 syn hanged by the neck.' And of these wordes were
 the iij bretheren wood wroth. And wete it wel that
 yf the messenger had not hasted his hors away he had
 28 be take & deed without any remedye, For ²they were
 fuH yrous & crueH, and doubted not god nor no man
 lyuyng. Thenne retourned the messenger toward geffray
 and recounted hym the grete pryde & auauntyng of the
 32 bretheren. 'By my heed,' said Geffray with the grete
 tooth, 'a lytel rayne leyeth down grete wynd / & doubte
 you not but I shal pay them wel theire wages.'

36 **T**hystorye sayth, that whan geffray vnderstode the
 grete pryde & the fel ansuere of the thre brethern,

¹ fol. 143.

Geffray says he
 will compel his
 enemies to obey.

He goes against
 Claud of Sion,

one of three
 proud brethren.

He sends his de-
 fiance, and orders
 them to make
 obedience to him
 on Raymondin's
 behalf.

They refuse, and

² fol. 143 b.

the messenger
 tells Geffray of
 their pride and
 boasting.

Geffray says that
 "a little rain
 layeth down a
 great wind."

Geffray approaches near the fortress.

He arms, mounts; and takes a squire with him; and orders his men to rest till he sends them word.

A knight, who well knew his boldness, follows with x men.

Geffray arrives at the Fortress of Sion.

He sees its strength on one side,

and spies all round it.

¹ fol. 144.

He finds that it is weakest by the bridge,

and returns toward his men.

Philebert and his fellowship keep out of Geffray's sight.

He sees xiv armed men in Geffray's way, and is afraid,

without any moo wordes he came & lodged hym & his people half a leghe fro the said Fortresse. Thenne toke he his armures & armed hym of al pieces; toke with hym a squyer that wel knew the Countrey / 4 mounted on horsback / commanded his men that they shuld not meue them thens vnto tyme they had word of hym, & departed with hys esquyer / but there was a knyght that wel knew hys noble & fyers courage, & 8 that he doubted nothing of the world / which toke x. men of armes with hym and went after Geffray, folow- yng^r hym fro ferre, For he moche loued geffray. Geffray rode so long^r that he sawe the Fortresse of Syon vpon 12 a hye roche. 'By my feyth,' said thenne geffray, 'yf the Fortresse be so strong at that other syde as it is at this syde, hit shal gyue me moche payne or euer it be take, I must see & know yf it be also strong^r at that 16 other parte.' Thenne he & his esquyer aduyronned the Fortresse about, al along^r by a lytel wod^r, that they might not be aspyed ne sene. They came & de- scended ¹in a valey / and euer the forsaid knyght that 20 was named Philibert² folowed hym a ferre / and so long rode geffray tyl he had ouer sene the said fortres al round^r about / and hym semed wel that it might be take by the brydge syde, For it was the feblest syde of 24 it / Thenne entred geffray & hys esquyer in a lytel path, & retourned vpon the mountayne toward^r hys lodgis, where his peple were hym abydyng^r. Philebert, that sawe Geffray retourne, thought he would^r lete hym 28 passe tofore hym, Wherfor he and his felawship reculed within the wode, to thende thay shuld not be perceyued of hym / but soone after they sawe a companye of men of warre comynge that same way that geffray came 32 toward^r the Fortresse, and were to the nombre of xiiii personne wel armed. Wherfore the said knight phili- bert was abasshed & agast, lest they shuld mete with

² Fr. Ver. *Philibert de Mommoret*.

geffray, For wel he wyst that geffray wold fyght with them / as he dide / and that shal ye here hereafter.

because he knows Geffray will fight them.

In this partye, sayth thistorye, that vpon the topp of
 4 the mountayne geffray recountred the said com-
 panye, And who that shuld enquire of me what folke
 they were; I shuld say it was one of Claude of Syon
 bretheren that came toward his brother at his mande-
 8 ment. And wete it wel, that the way was there so
 narrow that vnuethe one hors myght passe by other.
 And whan Geffray with the grete ¹teeth recountred
 them, he sayd to hym that rode first of alle that he
 12 shuld tary and make his company to stand asyde tyl
 he were passed the mountayne. 'By my feyth,' said
 he þat was proude & orgueyllous, 'Sire daw fole,² wel
 we muste first knowe what ye be, that say that we
 16 retourne vs for you.' 'By god,' said Geffray with the
 grete toth / 'that shal you knowe anone, For I shal
 make you retourne ayenst your wyll. I am Geffray
 of Lusynen / tourne back / or elles I shal make you to
 20 retourne by force.' Whan Guyon the brother of Claude
 of Syon vnderstode hym & knew that it was geffray
 with the grete teeth / he cryed to his folk, 'auaunt,
 lordes barons, For yf he escape grete shame shal be to
 24 vs / in an euyl heure is he come in to oure land for to
 demande seruytude of vs.' Thenne whan geffray vn-
 derstode these wordes he drew out his sword & smote
 the nethermost of alle vpon his hed, so grete a stroke
 28 that he ouerthrew hym all astonyed doune to the
 erthe, and syn passed forth by hys hors, & ouer hym
 that laye along the way, in suche wyse that he al to
 brusid the body of hym / And thenne geffray atteyned
 32 another in the brest foynnyng with hys swerd, so that
 he fel doune deed to therthe / and syn cryed affir
 the oper, 'False traytours, ye may not escape, ye shal
 retourne to your euyl helthe.' Thenne he passed fourth

Geffray encoun-
 ters one of
 Claud's bro-
 thers and his men
 on a narrow road.

¹ fol. 144 b.

Geffray asks
 them to stand
 aside till he has
 passed.

They ask who he
 is.

He answers,
 "Geffray of Lu-
 signan," and bids
 them turn, else
 he will make
 them.

Guien cries to
 his men not to
 let Geffray es-
 cape.

But Geffray
 draws his sword
 and smites one
 of his company
 so hard that he
 is overthrown.

He foins at
 another in the
 breast, and kills
 him.

- 1 fol. 145. to the iii^{de}, which was grete & strong, ¹& smote Geffray
 vpon the helmet *with* al his strengthe / but the helmet
 was hard & þe swerd glenced asyde & dommaged
 hym nought / but Geffray toke his swerd with two 4
 handes and smote hym vpon the coyffe of stele vnto
 the brayne, & reuersed hym deed to the erth. And
 whan guyon perceyued this myschief he was wode
 wroth & full of yre, For he might not come to geffray, 8
 wherfore he commanded euery man to retourne, that
 they might haue them self at large to deffende eche
 other. Thezne euery man tourned back & fledd, &
 yssued out of that narrow way in to a playn feld, And 12
 geffray with the grete toth pursiewed them, the swerd
 in his hand. Now shaft I speke of the knight phili-
 bert, whiche was approched nygh the said way, and
 herde the noyse / so he called to hym his felawes. 16
 And thenne guyon and his men were in þe playn &
 assaylled geffray on al sydes of hym / but as preu &
 valyaunt he deffended vygourously his flesshe / and
 also hys esquier bare hym valyauntly / and was ryght 20
 strong the batayll. Now most I speke of hym which
 geffray first ouerthrew to therthe in the path forsaid,
 For whan he perceyued that guyon was retourned by
 the force of geffray / and sawe his two felawes lyeng 24
 deed by hym, he was moche dolaunt, and beheld ²all
 about hym & fond his hors, wher on he *with* grete
 payne mounted, for he was al to brusyd in hys body, &
 hasted hym as he coude best toward Syon. And whan 28
 he came to the fortresse he fond Claude at yate and
 some of his men *with* hym / the whiche perceyued
 that he that was commyng toward hym was al bloody
 and knew hym wel / & of hym demanded who so had 32
 arayed hym / And he recounted thadventure how they
 had recountred geffray, and how he adommaged them
 and had made guyon hys brother to retourne fro the
 narow lane by force, & that yet lasted theyre bataylle. 36
- He cuts open the head of a third.
- Guion is wroth because he cannot get at Geffray. He commands his men to retreat.
- They flee to a field. Geffray pursues them.
- Guion's men set on Geffray on all sides. He and his squire fight bravely.
- 2 fol. 145 b.
- The knight that Geffray dismounted hastes as he best can to Syon.
- He finds Claud at the gate,
- and tells him of the adventure,
- and that the fighting is still going on.

Thenne whan Claude vnderstode hym he was sorowfuH
& angry, and yede and armed hym, and made his men
to be armed.

Claud orders his
men to arm,

4 **M**oche dolaunt was Claude whan he vnderstod of
the vylounye & damage that geffroy had don
to Guyon his brother / and how yet they were fyghtyng
togidre / & armed of al pieces. his men with hym rode
8 thitherward / and were in nombre thre score bassynets.
But for nought he toke hys waye, For philibert with
his ten knyghtes were come to the batayH, & faught in
suche wyse that al guyons meyne were slayne & he
12 take / and soone sware Geffray that he shuld make
hym to be hanged by the neck. Thenne came the said
esquyer, whiche was retourned in to the forsayd land,
to fette a fayre swerd, that he tofore sawe fall fro one
16 of Guyons men / & said to Geffray in this manyere,
'My lord, I haue herd grete bruyt of men armed
commynge hitherward.' And whan Geffray vnderstode
hym he fourthwith made Guyon to be bound at a tree
20 within the wod nygh by them, & syn retourned with
hys men toward the said path or lane for to abyde
there his auenture. And philibert rode vnto the top
of the hyH, and perceyued Claude & hys felawship
24 that entred the lane / thanne he retourned to his
felawes & sayd to Geffray, 'Sire, the best that ye can
doo is to kepe wel this pathe, here come your ene-
myes.' And Geffray with the gret teeth ansuerd /
28 'doubte you not / but it shal be wel kept & deffended.'
Thenne he called to hym the squyer that was come
with hym, & said: 'renne hastily toward thoost, &
make my folke to come hither.' And he anone de-
32 parted toward thoost, and whan he was there arryued
he said to þem, 'Fayre lordes, now lightly on horsback,
For geffray fyghteth ayenst his enemyes.' And they
armed them & soone mounted on their horses, and
36 hasted them to folowe the squyer that gyuded them

He rides to aid
his brother,

but is too late;

as the men are
slain and his
brother is Gef-
fray's prisoner.

A knight tells
Geffray that
more men of
arms are ap-
proaching.

¹ fol. 146.

Guion is bound
to a tree.
Geffray and his
company return
to the path to
wait the arrival
of Claud.

Geffray sends a
messenger to his
host.

His lords haste

to succour him.

the nerest way there he supposed to fynd^d Geffray, fighting^d with his enmyes.

Geffray blocks
the path,

Thystorye sayth that geffray, philibert, & theire knightes were at thentree of the pathe / and 4 thenne came Claude & his men with grete puyssaunce along^r through the lane, & wel they supposed to haue mounted the montayne. But Geffray was at thentre of the path that vygourously & valyauntly deffended 8 the passage / and wete it wel there was none so hardy but he made hym to recule. For there were two of his knightes that descended fro theire horses, & stode at eyther syde of geffray, & proudly rebuckyd Claudes 12 men with theire speres, & many of them were there slayne. Philibert ¹was thenne descended from his

¹ fol. 146 b.

while the Knight Philibert and three men ascend the mountain, and throw stones on Claud and his men.

hors, and thre othre of his companye, and recouered the montayne aboute the pathe, where as they gadred 16 stones and threw them vpon them that were in the lane, through suche yre & grete strenght, that there was none so strong^r bassynets nor armure but it was perced^d; and therewith they were astonyed^d or elles ouerthrowen / 20 and wete it wel þat there were more than xx^{ti}. slayn.

Geffray's company arrives, and is ordered to prevent Claud returning to his fortress.

Thenne came there the squyer with the batay^{ll} that he brought. And whan geffray knew it, he commanded thre houndred men of armes, that they shuld^d 24 draw at the other ende of the lane to kepe the passage, that Claude nor hys peple should not retourne to theire fortresse. And anone from thens the squyer with his companye departed, & came hastily to fore the medowe, 28

Clerevald, third brother of Claud, takes Geffray's company to be friends.

& passed byfore the Fortresse. And whan Clerevald^d, the iii^{de} brother of Claude, sawe them, he demed that it was some socours that came to them / For he trowed not that in the land^d shuld haue be so many enemyes. 32 The whiche esquyer with his companye came with amyable contenance, shewyng no semblaunt but as frendes. And thenne Clerevald, that byleued wel that they were theyre frendes lete fall the bridge, & opened the 36

yate where he stode *with* xx^{ti}. men of armes. And
 whan the squyer & his companye perceyued þat the
 bridge was down & the gate open, they drew them
 4 hastily in the way to passe the Fortres. And passyng
 by the Fortresse, Clerevald demanded what they were /
 and they ansuerd: 'We be frendes.' and in approuch-
 ing of the said bridge to the nombre xx^{ti} knightes, they
 8 enquyred after Claude of Syon: 'For fayn we wold
 speke *with* hym.' And Clereuauld them approuched,
 sayeng: 'he shal retourne anoone, For he is departed to
 fyght with Geffray with the grete tooth our enemye,
 12 that he & Guyon our brother haue enclosed in yonder
 mountayne that is there byfore you / and wete it wel
 that Geffray may not escape them, though he were
 tempred *with* fyne stele, but that he shal be slayne
 16 or take.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the squyer, 'this be
 good tydynges.' An thenne he approuched with his
 xx^{ti} knightes nerer & nerer, askyng hym where shal
 we goo to helpe hym. 'By my feyth,' sayd Clere-
 20 uauld, 'gramercys it shal not nede at this tyme.'

Thystorye sheweth that the squyer approched to
 Clereuauld so nygh by his fayre wordes, that he
 & hys companye came vpon the bridge / & thenne he
 24 cryed to hys peple / 'auaunt, lordes, the fortresse is
 oure.' And whan Clereuauld herd these wordes, he
 supposed to haue reculed & to haue lyft vp the bridge /
 but the squyer & his people came so rudly that it
 28 was not in theire powere to haunce the bridge / but
 bare it doune by force, and anone alighted & entred in
 at the gate / and with two speres vndersette the porte-
 collys / & immediatly descended more than an houn-
 32 dred of the squyers men on foot, & came & entred into
 the Fortres. Thenne was clereuauld take, and al hys
 people that were there *with* hym, & brought vnto a
 chambre fast bounden, where they were surely kept
 36 *with* fourty men of armes / ²And after this don, they

He allows them
to come near the
fortress.

Clerevald asks
who they are;

¹ fol. 147.

"We be friends,"
they answer.

The squyre and
his companye by
fair words get on
the bridge. He

then cries, "The
fortress is ours."

Clerevald tries
to pull up the
bridge, but is too
late.

He and his men
are taken prison-
ers.

² fol. 147 b.

assembled them, & toke Counsey^H how they might best send word vnto geffray of this faytte, & how they shuld kepe them *within* the Fortresse to thentent to take Claude yf it happed hym to retourne / And thenne 4
said the squyer that he hym self shuld goo to gyue .
Geffray knowlege of this auenture. And thenne anone he departed and came to Geffray, to whom he shewed aH the trouth of the faytte / and whan geffray knew 8
thauenture he was joyful, & made hym knight, & gaaf hym the gouernaunce of a houndred men of armes / & commanded that he shuld go anoone in to the countrey, to kepe wel that Claude shuld take none o^{per} way, but 12
the way to the Fortresse ; For yf he escaped he might do grete harme tofore he were take, & that bettre it were to close hym in that lane, & there by force to take hym. ‘Sire,’ said the new knight, ‘doubte you not he 16
shal not escape you, but yf he cane flee, yf that I may come by tymes to the lane.’ Thenne he departed & descended the mountayne *with* hys men of armes. And geffray taryed at the pathe, that mightily faught with 20
his swerde vpon his enemyes. And wel fourty knyghtes were alighted on foot vpon þe hylle, & threw stones vpon Claude & his peple in suche wyse, that by force he & hys peple was constrayned to retourne / And 24
Geffray & his peple entred in to the lane & chaced þem / but vnnethe he might passe to pursiew men for deed men that were slayn *with* castyng^t of stones. Now shal I shew you of the new knight that was com- 28
myng^t at the o^{ther} lanes ende *with* his company / but whan he herd the bruyt of the horses / he thought wel that ¹Claude returned / and he toke the couert of the mountayne & suffred Claude to take the way toward 32
the Fortresse.

Thystorye telleth that Claude hasted hym fast to come out of the lane for to saue hym self & his peple in the Fortresse of Syon, but that the fole 36

The squire returns to tell Geffray of their deed.

Geffray is glad, and knights the squire, and gives him a hundred men to prevent the escape of Claud.

Claud is obliged to retreat,

Geffray chases him.

The new knight hears the noise of the retreat, and

¹ fol. 148.

suffers Claud to return to the fortress.

- thinketh oftymes commeth to foly. It is veray trouth
 that he spede hym so fast that he was out of the lane
 & came to his large / and so he ne taryed neyther for
 4 one nor for other / but came walapynge toward the
 Fortresse. And whan he was nygh, he cryed *with* a
 high voyce / 'open the gates' / & so they dide / and
 thenne he passed the bridge and entred, & was alyghted
 8 afore that he perceyued that he had lost the Fortresse /
 and fourth*with* he was seasyd & bounde by hys enemyes.
 Thenne was he gretly abasshed ; For he sawe not about
 hym no man that he knew. 'What dyuel is this ?
 12 where are my men become?' 'By my feyth,' said a
 knight / 'ryght foorth shal ye knowe, For ye shal lodge
with them' / And so immedyatly he was brought to
 the chambre where Clereuauld, his brother & his people
 16 were in pryson. Thenne whan he perceyued them bound
 & kept as they were, he was ryght dolaunt. And whan
 Clereuauld sawe hym, he said : 'Ha / a, Claude, fayre
 brother, we are fah by your pryde into grete captiuite /
 20 and doubte it not we shal neuer escape from hens *with*-
 out losse of our lyues, For to cruel is Geffray.' And
 Claude ansuerd hym : 'We muste abyde aH that therof
 shal fah.' Thenne came Geffray ¹ryght foorth*h* to the
 24 Fortresse, & had slayn or take aH the residu of Claudes
 peple / saaf hys brother Guyon which was brought
with hym, & putte prysonner in the said pryson where
 as Geffray entred / and emong al o*per* said to Claude :
 28 'How,' said he, 'thou fals traytour, durst thou be so
 hardy to hurte or *dommage* my faders Countre & his
 people, thou that owest to be his subget / and by the
 feyth that I owe to my fader I shal punysse the, in
 32 exemple of aH other, For I shal doo the hang*er* byfore
 Valbruyant, the Castel in syght of thy Cousyn Gueryn,
 that is a traytour as thou art, vnto my lord my fader.'
 And whan Claude herd that gretynge, wete it wel / he
 36 was not ther*with* playسد. But whan the peple of the

Claud and his
 people reach the
 fortress, and cry,
 "Open the
 gates."

He is seized and
 bound.

He asks about
 his men.
 He is told that
 he will see them,
 as he is to be
 lodged with
 them.

Clerevald sees
 his brother, and
 upbraids him.

¹ fol. 148 b.

Geffray arrives
 and brings his
 prisoner Guion.

Geffray tells
 Claud that he in-
 tends to hang
 him before Val-
 brulant, the
 castle of his
 cousin Guerin,
 who is also a
 traitor.

The people of the land are glad that Claud and his people are taken or slain;

because they robbed them and despoiled all passers by the fortress.

Geffray sets up a pair of gallows and hangs all the people of Claud, but spares his two brothers.

Geffray leaves the castle in charge of a wise knight,

¹ fol. 149.

and departs to Valbrulant.

He erects gallows in front of the castle, hangs Claud and his brothers, and orders them of the castle to yield on pain of hanging.

Guerin departs from his castle to Mountfrain to have counsel.

Countray knew that Syon the Fortresse, & Claude and his brethern were take & theire peple slayne / thenne came playntes of robberyes & other euyl caas vpon Claude & vpon his people, & within that same Fortresse 4 were founde more than a C prysonners of the good peple of the Countray, as marchants & straungers that were robbed passyng by the way / For tofore that tyme none passed by the said Fortresse vnspoyled. And 8 whan geffray herd of this tydynges, he made to be sette vpon the syde of the hille a payre of galowes / & therat dide do be hanged al the peple of Claude / and his two brethern he spared for that tyme / and gaaf the 12 Castel in keping vnto a knight of the Countray that was ryght valyaunt & wyse / & commanded hym ¹vpon his lyf to kepe it wel / and to gouerne lawfully his subgets, & to kepe good justice / And he promysed 16 hym so to doo, For he gouerned the countre wel & rightfully. And after his commandement he departed on the morowe toward Valbruyant / and toke the thre bretheren with hym, the whiche had grete fere of 20 deth / and that was not without cause / as ye shal here hereafter.

Thystory sayth that geffray & his people rode tyl they cam tofore Valbruyant / wher as tentes were 24 dressed & sett vp, and euery man lodged in ordre. Thenne made geffray ryght foorth to sette vp galowes tofore the Castel gate, and there dide do hang incontynent Claude & his two bretheren / and sent worde 28 to them of the Castel / yf that they yelded not to hym the Fortres, that he wold hang them yf he had it by force. And whan Gueryn of Valbruyant herd these tydynges, he sayd to his wyf: 'It is so for trouth, 32 madame, that ageynst this strong dyueH I ne may withstand ne kepe this Fortresse, wherfor I wyl departe & goo vnto mountfrayn to Guerard my newew, & to other my frendes for to haue CounseyH how we may haue 36

traytye of pais with Geffray.' And thenne the wyf
 that was right sage & subtyl said to hym / 'go foorth /
 by the grace of god, & kepe you wel that ye be nat
 4 take by the waye, and departe not from Mountfrayn
 tyl ye haue tydynges fro me, For by thayde of god I
 hoop that I shal purchasse a good traytye with geffray
 for you ; For had ye don after my CounseyH, & byleued
 8 me, ye shuld not ¹haue medled with the werkes of
 Claude & of his bretheren / not with standing yet haue
 ye not falsed your feyth toward your liege lord Ray-
 mondyn of Lusynen.' Thenne Gueryn her said : ' My
 12 dere sustir & spouse, doo that ye thinke best, For
 my fyaunce is in you / and I wyl byleue all that ye
 may counseylle.' And thenne departed he by a prvy
 posterne vpon a swyft hors, and passed by the couerts
 16 of the wodes, so that he was not aspyed. And whan
 he was a lytel passed he sporyd his hors, and the hors
 bare hym swyftly, and wete it that he had so grete fere
 lest he shuld be aspyed, that he was almost out of his
 20 wyt / & thanked god moche whan he fond^t thentre of
 the Forest þat dured wel two leghes / and toke the way
 toward Mountfrayn, as moche as he coude ryde.

Thystory testyfyeth, that so long rode Gueryn that
 24 he came to mountfrayn, where he found^t guerard
 hys nenew, & recounted to hym al these werkes ; and
 how Geffray with the grete toth had take Claude
 theire Cousyn & his two brethern, & brought tofore
 28 Valbruyaunt, where he dide al thre to be hanged / and
 how he was departed thens, doubtyng to be take with-
 in the Fortresse. 'By my feyth,' said Guerard, 'Fayre
 vncle, ye haue do wysely, For after that men speke of
 32 Geffray, he is a valyaunt knight of hye & puyssaunt
 enterpryse / and he is moche cruel & moche to be
 doubted. Woo is to me that euer we went to Claude !

For wel we knew that he & hys bretheren were of euyl
 36 gouvernement, & that none passed foreby theire For-

His wife tells
 him not to leave
 there till she
 sends him tid-
 ings ;

she declares she
 will make a
 treaty with Gef-
 fray.

¹ fol. 149 b.

Guerin tells her
 to do her best,

and leaves on a
 swift horse by a
 privy door.

He rides fast, as
 he fears to be
 seen.

He tells Gerrard
 the news, how
 Geffray has
 hanged Claud
 and his two
 brethren,

and how he had
 fled to escape
 capture.

Gerrard says he
 has acted wisely,

and is sorry they
 had had to do
 with Claud,
 because Claud
 and his brethren
 were of evil con-
 duct.

¹ fol. 150.

Guerin and Gerard send to their friends to come to Mountfrain to devise means of excusing themselves to Geffray.

The lady of Valbruiant

mounts her two children on horseback

and accompanies them to the gate of the castle,

where she tells the new knight that she will go to Geffray herself,

³ fol. 150 b.

as her lord has done nothing to displease Geffray or his father.

tresse vnrobbed. Now pray ¹We god, that he preserueth bothe our lyues & honour in this affayre. Fayre vnkle, vpon this caas we muste seke remedy / It is good that we lete haue knowledge to our parents & frendes ⁴ perof, þat haue be of this folyssh alyaunce.' And gueryn ansuerd: 'that is trouth.' Thenne they sent wordes to theyre frendes that they shuld al cōme to mountfrayn, so that they might haue Counseill togidre ⁸ vpon this faytte, & to seke the meane to escuse them toward geffray. Now resteth thystory of them / and speketh of the lady of Valbruyant that was moche subtyl & sage / and she euer blamed her lord of that he ¹² had consented to Claude & to hys brethern. This lady had a doughter, whiche was of the age of ix yere / & fayre & gracyous; and also a sone that was ten yere of age, whiche was fayre & wel endoctryned. And thenne ¹⁶ this lady as she had of nothing be abasshed² / mounted upon a palfray rychely arayed, & dide do be mounted her two children vpon two horses, and ordeyned two auncyent gentylmen to conduyte theire horses / and ²⁰ accompanied with six damoysselles, dide open the gate where she fond the new knight that brought the mandement of geffray, which she receyued benyngly, and he that coude moche of honour made to her the ²⁴ reuerence / and the lady seyde to hym temperatly: 'Sire knight, my lord is not within / and therefore I wyl go myself toward my lord your maister to knowe ³what is his playsyr, For it semeth me that he is come hither ²⁸ to make werre / but I byleue not that it is for my lord nor for none within this fortresse. For god deffende that my lord or ony of this place had do that thing that shuld dysplayse geffray or my lord his fader / and ³² by aduenture yf some of his synester frendes haue informed geffray otherwyse than raison, I wold humbly beseche & pray hym that he vouche sauf to here my

² Fr. *Adonc la dame ne fut ne folle ne esbahie*,

said lord & husband in his escuses & deffenses' / and
 thenne whan the knight herd her speke so sageously /
 her ansuerde: 'Madame, this requeste is reasonable,
 4 wherfore I shal conduyte you toward my lord / and I
 hope that ye shal fynd hym frendly, & that ye shal
 haue a good traytye with hym / how be it, he is in-
 fourmed of gueryn your lord ryght malyciously / but I
 8 byleue that at your requeste he shal graunte a part of
 your petycion' / And thenne they departed & came
 toward the lodgys of Geffray.

The new knight
 undertakes to
 conduct her to
 Geffray.

12 **T**hystorye sayth that whan geffray saw the com-
 myng of the lady he yssued out of his tente &
 came ayenst her / and she that was wel nourrytured
 held her two children tofore geffray, to whom she made
 humble reuerence / and thenne geffray enclyned hym
 16 to her, & toke her vp right humbly, & said: 'Madame,
 ye be right welcome' / and 'my lord,' said she, 'I
 see þat I desyre' / and thenne her two children dyde
 1 theyre obeyssaunce in the moost humble wyse / and
 20 he gaf to them ayen his salut. Thenne toke the lady
 the word / and feynnyng as though she had knowen
 nothing of hys euyl wyll / said vnto hym in this wyse:
 'My lord / my lord! myn husband as for this tyme he
 24 is not present in this Countre. Wherfore I am come
 toward you to pray you that it may playse you to take
 your lodgys in your Fortresse, and take with you as
 many of your peple as shal you playse; For, my lord,
 28 thanked be god, there is ynough to plesse you with /
 and wete it wel that I & my meyne shal receyue you
 gladly, as we owe to doo the sone of our souerayn
 lord naturall.' Whan geffray vnderstode her requeste
 32 he was gretly abasshed how she durst desyre hym /
 consydering how he was infourmed ageynst Gueryn her
 husband. Neuerthele he sayd, 'By my feyth, fayre
 lady, I thanke you of your grete curtoysye that ye offre
 36 me / but this requeste I ought not to agree, For men

Geffray issues
 from his tent,

inclines to her,
 and bids her
 welcome.

¹ fol. 151.

She feigns to
 know nothing of
 her lord's ill-
 doings.

She tells Geffray
 that her lord is
 away from home,

and invites Gef-
 fray to lodge in
 the fortress.

Her request
 abashes Geffray,

who says that he has been told that her lord does not deserve such recognition,

but that in her lord's absence she and those in the fortress are safe.

1 fol. 151 b.

The lady answers that neither herself nor her husband have done wrong;

and hopes that Geffray will hear her husband's excuses.

haue youen to me knowlege that your husband hath not deseruyd it ayenst my lord, my fader, & me / how be it, my fayre lady, I wyl wel that ye knowe that I am not come for to make warre ayenst ladyes & damoy- 4 selles / and be ye of this sure, that neyther to you nor to none of your fortres I wyl nought say nor hurt, yf your husband be not there' / And she thenne said : 'gramercy, my ¹lord. But I requyre you, that it playse 8 you to shew me the cause of your indignacyon that ye haue vnto my lord myn husband, For I am in certain nother he nor I haue neuer do no thing to our knowleche that shuld be your dysplaysure / and I byleue 12 that yf it might plese you to here my lord & husband & his escuse, that ye shal fynð them that thus haue informed you, be not matere of trowth / and my lord, therupon I make me strong that in conclusyon ye shal 16 fynde as I say.'

In this partye sheweth thistory, that whan geffray herd the lady thus speke he thought a lytel, & syn ansuerd & said : 'By my feyth, lady, yf he goodly can 20 excuse hym that he haue not falsed hys feyth, I shalbe glad therof / & I shal receyue hym gladly in his excusacyons with his felawes & all theire complices / and from this day seuen nyght I gyue hym saaf gooyng & 24 commyng, and fourty personnes with hym.' Thenne toke the lady her leue & retourned to Valbruyant, where she lefte her children / and acompanyed with ten knightes and squyers, & with thre damoysselles 28 departed, & rode so long tyl she came to Mountfrayn, where she was receyued joyously of her lord & his frendes, to whom she recounted how gueryn her lord had safconduyte of geffray for hym, & fourty personnes 32 with hym / & yf he may excuse hym geffray shal here hym gladly, ²and shal admynystre hym al rayson. 'By my feyth,' said an aunicyent knight, 'thenne shall we haue a good traytye with hym / For there nys none 36

Geffray promises to listen to them,

and gives him a safe conduct for a week.

The lady goes to Mountfrain

and tells her lord of her interview.

2 fol. 152.

An ancient knight says that they will have a

- that may say that euer we mysdyde in eny thingⁱ ayenst
 our souerayne lord naturel. Yf Claude, that was our
 Cousyn, had vs requyred of ayde, yf he neded, & we
 4 had promysed hym to helpe hym / not for that we nō
 haue yet mysdon / nother geffray nor none other may
 not say that euer we had the helmet on heed, nor þat
 we yssued euer out of our places for to comforte or
 8 ayde hym ayenst geffray by no wyse / goo we thenne
 surely toward geffray, & lete me doo there witha^{ft}, For
 I doubte not but that we shal haue good traytye with
 hym.' The frendes & cousyns of gueryn confermed
 12 this propos, & made theire appareyl for to goo toward
 geffray on the iii^{de} day folowyng. And thenne the
 lady departed, & retourned to Valbruyant, where sho
 sent for breed, wyne, capons, chikkons, conyns, & suche
 16 vytay^{ft}, with hey & ootys, and presented it to geffray /
 but he neuer receyued of it / but suffred that who
 wold toke of it for his money / and the said lady lete
 geffray haue knowleche how her lord & his frendes
 20 shuld come toward hys grace. /

- H**ere sayth thystory, that Gueryn of Valbruyant &
 guerard hys neuew, taryed for theire frendes at
 mountfrayn / and whan they were come they mounted
 24 on theire horses & rode tyl they came to valbruyant /
 and on the morne ¹they sent word to Geffray of theire
 commyng, and that they were al redy to come toward
 hys good grace to theire excuse. And geffray ansuerd:
 28 þat he was apparaylled to receyue them. And þenne
 they departed fro the Castel & came tofore the tente
 of geffray, to whom they made theire obeyssaunce ryght
 honourably. And there thauncyent knight of whiche
 32 I spak tofore toke the word, & said: "Mighty & puyss-
 saunt lord, we are come hither toward your highnesse
 for this, that we vnderstand how ye are infourmed
 ayenst vs, that we were consentyngⁱ to the ylnesse &
 36 dysobedyence of Claude ayenst our souerayne lord

good treaty with
Geffray,

for they did not
help Claud
against Geffray.

The lady returns
to Valbruiant

and sends vic-
tuals to Geffray,

and tells him
how her lord is
about to come
before him.

Guerin and Ger-
rard arrive at
Valbruiant,

¹ fol. 152 b.
and send word
to Geffray,

who announces
his readiness to
receive them.

They present
themselves and
make their obedi-
ence.

The ancient
knight
tells that he has
heard that Gef-
fray thinks they
consented to
Claud's miscon-
duct.

He relates how
Claud had asked
their help,

but did not give
the name of the
enemy,

1 fol. 153.
and how they
promised to as-
sist him.

They helped
Claud against
some of his ene-
mies,
but after his dis-
obedience to
Raymondin they
had not aided
him.

Therefore he
thinks Geffray
should not be in-
dignant against
him,

because they
cannot think
what they have
done displeasing
to Geffray's
father,

naturel, your fader. My lord, it is wel trouth that the
said Claude our Cousyn, tofore hys folysshe enterpryse,
he assembled vs togidre, & thus said to vs: 'Fayre
lordes, ye be aH of my lynage & kynrede / & I of 4
yours / wherfore rayson requyreth that we loue eche
other.' Thenne sayd we / 'by my feyth, ye say
trouth / but wherfor say ye soo?' And thenne he
ansuerd couertly: 'Fayre lordes, I doubte me to haue 8
shortly a strong werre & to haue a doo with a
strong partye; Wherfor I wyl wete yf ye wold helpe
me' / & we thenne asked of hym / ayenst whom /
he ansuerd: 'we shuld knowe it al in tyme, & that 12
he was not parfytte frend, who that relenquysshed
hys cousyn at hys nede.' Thenne said we to hym,
'we wyl wel that ye knowe that there nys none so
grete in this countrey, ¹ne so myghty, yf he wyl 16
hurt or domage you, but that we shal helpe you to
kepe & susteyne you in your ryght.' and vpon that
he departed / and syn had he many rancours ayenst
some where we ayded hym / but my lord wete it wel 20
that fro the tyme of hys dysobedyence to my lord your
fader, we ne doubte nor fere neyþer god nor man that
we euer putte piece of harneys on vs / nor that none of
vs aH yssued out of his fortres, nother for hym nor for 24
his faytte / and the contrary shal be nother knowen
nor fond, For herof we wyl not haue grace / but we
requyre only right & justice / and yf there be other
cause that our euyl wyllers might haue contruyed vpon 28
vs thugh enuye or hate / I say by right that ye ne
owe to be therfore indignant ayenst vs, þat are very
subgetts & obedyent to my lord, your fader Raymond-
yn of Lusynen, For yf some were wylling to vexe or 32
moleste vs by ony wyse ye oughte to helpe & kepe vs /
and herof I can no more say, For we can not thinke
that none of vs dide euer that thing that myght dys-
playse my lord your fader. Wherfor we al present 36

beseche & pray you that ye be not infourmed but of rayson." /

and beg
to be informed
of their fault.

4 **W**han geffray had herd thexcuse of the old knyght
that spake for aH, he called his CounseyH to
hym / and syn said to them: 'Fayre lordes, what seme
yow of this fayte? ¹me semeth that these folke excuse
them self fuH wel.' 'By my feyth,' sayd they aH in
8 commyn, 'that is trouth / nor ye can not aske of
them, but that ye make them to swere vpon the holy
Euaungylles, that yf the siege had be layed tofore
syon / they had socoured Claude or not ayenst you /
12 and yf they swere ye / they are your enemyes / and to
the contrary, yf they swere that noo / ye owe not to
bere to them euyl wyH.' To this they aH accorded /
& therewith concluded theire counseyH. And thenne
16 were gueryn & hys frendes called tofore geffray / and
after he had recorded to them the sayd conclusyon /
they said that gladly they shuld swere as they dyde.
Wherfore they had peas with geffray, and syn went
20 with hym al about the Countre vysytyng the Fortresses
& places by the space of two monethes. And after
Geffray toke leue of the Barons there / and lefte gouvern-
ours to kepe & rewle the Countrey / and syn departed
24 & retourned to Lusynen, where he was gretly festyed
of hys fader & moder, that were glad of his retourne.
Thenne was there come a knyght of poytou fro
Cypre, whiche had reported tydynges how the Calyphe
28 of Bandas, and the grete Carmen were arryued in
Armenye / and moche they had adommaged the kynge
Guyon. Also how kynge vryan had tydynges how
they entended to make werre ayenst hym in Cypre.
32 Wherfore he made hys assemble of men of armes & of
shippes, for to recountre & fyght with them in the see.
²For his entencion was not to suffre them to entre in his
land. Whan thenne Geffray vnderstode these tydynges
36 he sware by the good lord, that shuld not be without

¹ fol. 153 b.

Geffray tells his council that he thinks they have made a good defence.

The council advises that Guerin and his friends should be made to swear that they would not have helped Claude had his castle been besieged.

Guerin is ready to swear; so he has peace with Geffray.

Geffray returns to Lusignan, and is greatly feasted.

News comes from Cyprus that the Caliph of Bandas is attacking Guion, King of Armenia.

Urian is assembling ships to fight his brother's enemies.

² fol. 154.

Geffray resolves
to aid his brethren.

hym, and that to long he had kept his fyre / and said
to Raymondin hys fader, & to Melusyne his moder /
that they wold make hym cheuysaunce of help for to
goo ayde hys bretheren ayenst thenemyes of god / And 4
they accorded therto / so that he promysed them to
retourne within a yere day toward them.

Geffray asks the
knight from Cyprus
to accompany him.

Ryght joyous was geffray whan his fader had
graunted hym his wyll. and thenne he prayed 8
the knight that was come fro Cipre, that he wold
retourne with hym, & that he shuld reward hym wel
therof. 'By my feyth,' sayd the knight / 'men telleth
me as touching your prowes may none compare / and I 12
shal go with you for to see yf ye can doo more than
Vryan & Guyon your bretheren ; For thoo two I knowe
ryght wel.' 'By my feyth, sire knight,' said geffray,
'it is a lytel thing of my faytte concernyng the puy- 16
saunce of my lordes, my brethern / but I thanke you
of this lyberaill offre to goo with me / & I shall meryte
you, therefore, yf it playse god.' Thenne he made hys
mandement & dyde so moche, that he assembled xiiii. C. 20
men of armes, & wel iij. C. arbalestres, and made them
to drawe toward Rochelle / And raymondyn & melu-
syne were there, whiche had don arryued many
vesselles, & wel purueyed of¹ vytaylles necessary. 24
And ²thenne Geffray toke leue of his fader & of hys
moder, & entred into the see with his companye, &
saylled so pat they lost syght of land, For they made
good way. Here resteth thystorye of them to speke / 28
and begynneth to speke of the Calyphe of Bandas & of
the Sawdan of Barbarye, that was newew to the sawdan
that was slayn in the batayll vpon the heed of Saynt
Andrew aboute the black montayne. 32

He assembles
xiiii. C. men of
arms and iij. C.
archers, and
marches them to
Rochelle,
where Raymond-
in had provided
and victualled
many vessels.

² fol. 154 b.

Geffray sets sail.

The Saracen
lords resolve

Thystorye sheweth vs that the Caliphe of Bandas &
the Saudan of Barbarye / the kyng Anthenor
of Anthioche / and the admyral of querdes³ had made

¹ *Orig.* of of.

³ *Fr. Cordes.*

togidre theire affyaunce, that neuer they shuld retourne
 tyl they had dystroyed the kyng Vryan of Cipre, and
 guyon the kyng of Armanye his brother / and had wel
 4 assembled to the nombre of xvi.^m sarasyns, & had
 theire shippes all prest to thentent to arryue first in
 Armanye / & first of all theire werkes to dystroye
 the yle of Rodes, & after the royalme of Armanye / &
 8 so passe in to Cypre to dystroye & putte to deth / &
 had sworne that they shuld make kyng Vryan to dey
 on the crosse / & hys wyf & his children they shuld
 brenne. But as the wyse man saith / 'the fole pro-
 12 poseth & god dysposeth' / and at that season were
 many espyes among them as wel of armenye as of
 rodes / and there was one of the maister of Rodes spyes
 that was so ¹Lyke a Sarasyn that no man mysdymed
 16 hym for other than a Sarasyn, & had the langage as a
 man of the same Countrey; the whiche knewe the
 secretes of the sarasyns / and syn departed fro them &
 came to baruth, where he fond a barke þat wold sayh
 20 to Turkeye to fette marchandyse, and entred in it. And
 whan they had good wynd they toke vp theire ancrs
 & saylled so long that they sawe the yle of Rodes,
 where they came to refressh them there / and soone
 24 after the sayd espye went out of the shipp and toke
 hys way toward the Cite of rodes, where he fonde the
 maister of rodes, that welcommed hym & demanded
 what tydynges. And the spye recounted to hym al
 28 that the Sarasyns entended for to doo / the which
 tydynges the maister of rodes dyde doo knowe by
 wrytyng to the two bretheren kynges of Armanye & of
 Cipre / and that they shuld entre in to the see with
 32 þeire power / and that he shuld mete with them at the
 porte of Japhe / and thenne whan guyon kyng of
 armanye vnderstode this he entred in to the see, & had
 with hym to the nombre of six thousand men of armes,
 36 & wel iii.^m balesters, & came sayllyng to Rodes, where

to destroy Urian
of Cyprus and
Guilon of Ar-
menia.

They intend to
first destroy the
Isle of Rhodes,
afterwards the
kingdom of
Armenia, and
then to capture
Urian of Cyprus,
and make him
die on the cross.

¹ fol. 155.

A spy of the
Master of
Rhodes among
the Saracens

returns to his
master and tells
all that they in-
tend to do.

Word is sent to
the Kings of Ar-
menia and Cy-
prus, and they are
asked to set out
to sea and to
meet the Master
of Rhodes at
Jaffa.

Guion sails to Rhodes, where the prior receives him joyfully.

¹ fol. 155 b.

They set sail to Jaffa.

Urian gathers his barons at Lymasson,

takes leave of Ermyne,

and soon sails out of sight.

Geffray arrives three days after at Lymasson, but the master of the port will not let him enter.

as he fonde the grete maister at the porte / And whan the grete pryour of Rodes sawe him he had grete joye, & forthwith he entred with hym & al his puyssaunce into the see to the nombre of ¹ iii.C bretheren men of armes, 4 & vi.C balesters or crosbowmen. Whan they were assembled togidre fayre was the Flote, ²For by very estymacion they were fonde to the nombre of ten thousand men of armes / & about xviii.C what balesters 8 as Archers. And wete it wel, it was a fayre syght, For the baners & standarts wayued with the wynd & and the gold & azure vpon the helmets & armures resplend-ysshed brigh & clere, that it was grete meruayll / and 12 syn they rowed toward the porte of Japhe, wher the Sarasyns had made theire nauye to dryue. And here resteth thystorye of them to speke, & sheweth of vryan as ye may here herafter. / 16

Thystory sayth, that the kyng Vryan made & sent his mandement thugh al his land of Cypre, for to gadre his baronye togidre with theire puyssaunce, & whan they were assembled at the porte of Lymasson he 20 toke leue of the quene Ermyne, his wyf, & entred into the see. And wete it they were in nombre, what men of armes as balesters & archers xiiii.^m, And perne they departed fro the porte, & saylled by suche force of 24 wynde that quene Ermyne, which was vpon a hye toure, lost soone the syght of them. And wete it wel that geffray with the grete toth, within thre days after arryued vnder Lymasson / but the maister of the porte 28 suffred them not to entre within the porte. how be it he was abasshed to see the armes of Lusynen in theire baners vpon the toppes of theire shippes, & wyst not what to deme or say ; wherfore he went anoone to the 32 Castel & anonced these tydynges to the quene / And she pat was full sage, said to hym / 'go ye to know

² Fr. *six mille hermins et bien trois mille arbalestriers. Hermins = Armenians.*

what folke¹ they be, For *without* treson, they are some
of my lordes lynce / speke thenne *with* them, hauyng
your men prest & redy vpon the porte to thende, yf
4 they wolde arryue by force, that ye may *witstand*
them' / And he anone fulfylled the queenes commande-
ment & came to the barryers of the clos & demanded
of them what they sought. Thenne ansuerd the knight
8 whiche tofore that tyme had be in Cypre / 'lete us
arryue, For it is geffray, kyng¹ vryans brother, that
commeth to socoure & ayde hym ayenst the Sarasyns.'
And thenne whan the maister of the porte vnderstode
12 þe knight he knew hym anone, & thus sayd: 'Sire,
the kyng¹ is departed from hens thre dayes agoo, &
hath take hys way and hys puyssaunce with hym
toward the porte of Japhe, For he wyl not suffre, yf he
16 may, that paynemes entre in his royaume / but pray, my
lord, hys brother, that it playse hym to come & see
the quene that ryght ioyous shal be of hys comyng.'
And he al this said to geffray, whiche anoone entred
20 into a lytel galyote, & *with* hym the said knight and
other of hys felawship, & rowed to the chayne² that
anoone was open / & so they entred in to the hauen,
where as they fonde many noble men that honourably
24 receyued geffray & his felawship, whiche meruaylled
them gretly of hys grete courage & of hys fyersnes, &
brought hym toward the queene that abode for hym,
holdyng her sone Henry in her armes. And as Geffray
28 approached to her she enclyned herself tofore him / and
geffray to her made his obeyssaunce & toke her vp &
kyssed her / & ³syn said to her, 'Madame, my sustir, god
yeue you joye of al that your herte desyareth' / And
32 she welcommed hym frendly & honourably. And
thenne geffray toke vp his neuwe Henry, that kneled
tofore hym. What shuld I now make long compte.
Geffray was thenne glad / & the port was open & hys

¹ fol. 156.

The Queen says
they may be of
her husband's
lineage.

The master of
the port is told
it is Geffray, the
king's brother,
who is in the
ships.

He tells the
knight that the
king sailed for
Jaffa three days
before.

Geffray visits the
queen,

² fol. 156 b.

and is welcomed.

His navy enters
the port and is
refreshed.

Geffray asks for a
pilot.

The queen orders
the portmaster
to prepare a gal-
ley with the
sagest mariner
that can be
found.

He has a rampin
ready, which
guides Geffray,

who soon sails
out of sight.

¹ fol. 157.
Urian comes to
Jaffa,
and sees the
Saracen fleet
there.

The Saracens
intend
to sail against
Rhodes.

nauye entred, & whan they were wel refreshed geffray said to the quene: 'Madame, I wyl departe, lete me haue a marozner that wel knoweth the costes of this see, so that I may fynd^t my brother.' 4

To this ansuerd^t the quene, 'My right dere brother / By my feyth, I wold it had cost me a thousand poundes that ye were now with my lord, your brother, For wel I knowe he shal haue grete joye of your 8 commynge.' and thenne she called to her the maister of the porte, & sayd / 'go make a galyot to be shipped redy with ten oores, & seke for the sagest marozner & best patron that can be fond^t, for to conduyte my 12 lord my brother toward my lord.' 'Madame,' ansuerd^t the maister of the port, 'I haue wel a rampyn alrede shipped to rowe, wel armed & vytaylled, & resteth no more than to meve & departe.' Thenne was geffray 16 right glade & toke hys leue of the quene & of his newew, & entred in to his shipp / and the said rampyn or galley gyded hym / & so departed with hys flote, & rowed & made good way, so that in short space they 20 of the porte lost the syght of them. And the quene Ermyne prayed deuoutely to god that they myght re-tourne with joye. Of hym I shal leue to speke. But Vryan his broþer rowed so long^t tyl they perceyued the 24 porte ¹of Japhe, & the bygge & grete vesselles that were there assembled / and thenne was there comme the Caliphe / the Saudan of Barbarye, the kyng^t of Anthioche, & thadmyral of querdes, with their puy- 28 saunce. And was by them concluded the king^t anthenor & thadmyraH shuld make vantward, & shuld hold the way toward rodes / and yf that they neded socour they shuld wryt to the Caliphe & to the Sawdan, 32 whiche alwayes be redy to helpe & ayde them / and the kyng^t antenor of Anthyoche & thadmyral of Cordes departed fro the porte of Japhe with fourty thousand panemes, & toke their way toward Rodes by suche 36

wyse that Vryan knew nothing of theire departyng^r /
 and had rowed but two dayes journey whan they per-
 ceuyed kyng guyon & the nauye of rodes, and also the
 4 Cristens perceyued them / Thenne was there grete
 alarme of bothe partes, and soone they borden togidre.
 There was grete occysyon & horryble medlee / and at
 the first recountryng were six galleyes of the sarasyns
 8 sounken & perysshed in the see / And the noble crystens
 endeuoyred them self wel & faught valyauntly, But
 the force & the quantyte of the Sarasyns was grete /
 and the Crysten people susteyned grete charge, & had
 12 be dyscomfyted yf god of hys grace had not conduyted
 geffray that part as it sha^{ll} be recounted herafter.

They meet Guion,
 and fight.
 There is much
 slaughter,

six Saracen gal-
 leys are sunk ;

but because of
 the multitude of
 Saracens the
 Christians would
 have been de-
 feated,

Thystory saith, that geffray & his peple saylled in
 the see by force of wynd pat they had at theire
 16 wyth so long, that they ¹approched the place where
 the batay^{ll} was. And first of all the rampyn that con-
 duyted them approched so nygh that they sawe them
 fyght / and anone retourned & said to geffray, 'Sire,
 20 commande al men to be redy, For we haue perceyued
 the batay^{ll} / & as we suppose they are sarasyns &
 crysten fyghting togidre.' Thenne rowed the galyote &
 came so nygh the baytay^{ll} that they herde crye on hye,
 24 'Cordes & Anthioche' / and at the other part 'Lusynen
 & saynt Jo^{hn} of Rodes' / and immedyatly retourned the
 rampyn toward geffray, & said to him, 'Sire, at that one
 party they ben sarasyns / and at the other part theire
 28 callyng is Lusynen & Saynt Johan of rodes / but cer-
 tainly it is not the kyng^r vryan / but I byleue, my
 lord, that it is the kyng guyon hys brother & the
 maister of Rodes that thus fyght with the Sarasyns.'
 32 'Ryght foorth,' sayd geffray, 'goo we to them asprely' /
 thenne they haunced saylles vp & saylled foorth by
 such wyse that it semed as it had be the vyreton of a
 Crosbow, & stemed the shippes of the sarasyns in suche
 36 manere that they were sparpylled, so that there rested

¹ fol. 157 b.
 had not Geffray
 come to their aid.

Geffray is told
 that it is a fight
 between Chris-
 tians and Sara-
 cens.

He sails swift as
 an arrow and
 breaks up the
 Saracen fleet.

He cries, 'Lusignan,' which makes the Armenians think Urian has come to help.

The Christians take heart.

¹ fol. 158.

The Saracens rally and attack their enemies.

Geffray damages the Saracens;

boards the vessel of Anthenor,

and causes many to enter the Admiral of Cordes' ship.

King Anthenor and the admiral see that they have been dis-

³ fol. 158 b. comforted, so set sail to Jaffa.

not foure of al the flote, and cryed 'Lysynen' with a high voys. Wherfor the Ermayns & they of Rodes byleued pat it had be the kyng Vryan that were cōme fro cypre. And thenne toke they good herte to them 4 courageously. And the kyng of Anthioche ¹& thadmyraH of Cordes gadred ayen theire peple, and rane vpon the crysten with grete force. But geffray & hys people, that were fresshe & new, ouerrane them in 8 suche manere that they dommaged gretly the sarasyns / and thenne the vessel where geffray was / borden the vessel of the kyng anthenor & were chayned togidre. And geffray entred into the vessel of the kyng & bygan 12 to make grete occysyon of the sarasyns, & his peple entred & faught so valyauntly with suche a strength that there was no sarasyn so hardy that durst shew hym or make deffense / and many of them for theyre 16 relyf supposed to haue entred into thadmyral shipp & they were drowned / the whiche admyral, guyon & his peple assaylled strongly, & drowned foure of the sarasyns shippes.² The batayH was fyers & horryble 20 & thoccsyon hydouse / and briefly to say, the sarasyns were putte in suche manere so low that they had noþing them to deffende. /

Moche was the batayH hard & strong, but aboue al 24 other faught geffray manfully, & so dide the poyteuyns that were come with hym there, & so dyde guyon the maister of Rodes & theire peple / but they were abashed for this that they cryed 'Lusynen' / 28 but thenne it was no saison tenquere. And thenne the kyng anthenor & thadmyral perceyued wel pat the dyscomfiture fyH on them, For they þenne ³had lost more than the two partes of theire peple, wherfore they 32 made the resydu of theire peple to withdraw them

² In Fr. *et toutesfois le roi Anthenor se sauua au vaisseau de l'admiral de Cordes et fut tantost son vaisseau pillié de ce qui y estoit de bon, et puy fut effronné en mer.*

toward the port of Japhe to haue socour / and the said
 kyng¹ & admyral put them self in a shipp of auantage
 & made grete sayH fro the batayH, and whan the sara-
 4 syngs perceyued they went after, he that might. But
 the Ermayns & they of Rodes ouertoke the moost part
 & putte them to deth & threw þem ouerbord. But
 whan geffray perceyued the departyng¹ of the kyng¹
 8 anthenor & the admyral, he dyde make sayH & went
 after *with* al hys nauye, & made so fast way that anoone
 he lefte the Ermayns & the maister of Rodes at sterne.
 And whan the rampyn ship of auantage perceyued
 12 geffray, the patron cryed to hys people *with* a hye
 voys / 'after / after / fayre sires, For yf geffray leseth his
 way & faylleth to mete with hys brother, I shal neuer
 dare retourne to my lady.' And thenne the kyng
 16 Guyon, that knew the rampyn, asked of the patron
 what was that lord cristen that so had socoured them.
 'By my feyth,' said the patron, 'it is geffray *with* the
 grete toth, your brot¹per.' And whan the kyng guyon
 20 vnderstoð it he cryed *with* a hye voys, 'make more
 sayH, þat we were *with* our brother, For yf he were
 perysshed I shuld neuer haue hertly joye.' But þe
 rampyn went tofore so fast that in short tyme he ouer-
 24 toke geffray, that was neer the ¹sarasyns that ap-
 prouchd the porte of Japhe. Here I shall leue to
 speke of them, & shal shew of Vryan that tofore was
 come to the port and had fyred the sarasyns shippes
 28 there / but the paynemes rescued them in their best
 manere / not that withstanding there were more than
 ten vesselles brent.

In this partye sheweth thystorye that Geffray *with*
 32 the grete toth pursiewed so long the king anthenor
 & thadmyral of Cordes, that they approuched nygh to
 the port of Japhe, where they entred in / and geffray
 after them; For by no manere he wold leue them /
 36 though men shewed to hym the grete multitude of

Geffray chases
 them,

and is followed
 by the rampin
 to Jaffa.

¹ fol. 159.

Urian had been
 there, and had
 set fire to some
 of the Saracen
 fleet.

Geffray enters
 the port of Jaffa
 after the king
 and the admiral.

He fights them ;

they take to land.

They tell the caliph and the sultan their adventures.

¹ fol. 159 b.

The sultan repeats an old prophecy that says that people who believe in Mahomet cannot withstand the Lusignans on the sea.

Geffray meanwhile drives the Saracens from their ships.

They fly to Jaffa.

Geffray orders the horses to be landed.

paynames that therne were entred in to the vesselles to socoure the kyng¹ anthenor. But he anoone bygan the batayll that was hard & mortall, in so mochn that the kyng and thadmyra^{ll} were constrayned to take land⁴, and went to the toune of Japhe, where they fond^d the calyphe of Bandas and the Sawdan of Barbarye that were gretly abasshed^d that so soone they were retourned, and demanded^d of the cause wherfore / and they re- 8 counted to them al thaduenture, And how the kyng of armenye & the maister of Rodes were dyscomfyted^d, had not a knyght araged or wodd^d that came & socoured them with a few people that cryed^d ‘Lusynen’ / 12 & there may none withstand^d hym, whiche is now yonder at the porte where he fyghteth ayenst our people / and al that he recountreth is brought to hys ende. And whan the sawdan vnderstod^d it he had no wy^{ll} to 16 lawghe / but said, ‘By machomet, it is tolde me of old^d that I, & many other of our sette and lawe, shall susteyne grete parels vpon the see, by the heyres of Lusynen / but yf we might haue them on land^d, and 20 that our people were out of þe shippes they shuld be soone all dyscomfyted.’ ‘By all our goddes,’ said the Caliphe, ‘ye say trouthe, / and also yf they were here dystroyed^d we shuld subdue lyghtly Rodes, cypre, & 24 armanye / Lete vs thenne make our people to come to land^d, and suffre the Cristen to take peasybly theire landing^d.’ But in certayn for nought they spake soo, For they yssued out without ony commandement, by 28 the vertue & strength of Geffray that therto constrayned them / and Geffray with his people pursiewed them at land^d, & chaced them vnto the Cite of Japhe / and all thoo that were ouertake were put to deth / and they 32 that entred in the toun cryed^d ‘treson, treson!’ Thenne were the gates shette, and euery man went to hys garde / and geffray retourned to his shippes / and commanded that the horses shuld be had^d out aland^d. For 36

he said that neuer he shuld departe but he shuld dey
or he shuld make men to say, that Geffray with the
grete toth hath be here.

4 **T**hystorye telleth vs that whyle Geffray was about
to haue out of the shippes hys horses, the
rampyn perceyued the baners & penons of the kyng^r
vryan, that moch strongly scarmysshed the nauye of

Urian is seen by
the men of the
rampin.

8 the sarasyns that knew nothing^r that geffray had take
land^r, For they had take the deep of the porte. And
1 the kyng and thadmyra^h were arryued at the narrowest
syde to be the sooner on land^r. Thenne departed the

1 fol. 160.

12 rampyn shipp of anauntage, and rowed toward vryan.
And thenne they recountred^r guyon, whiche asked of
the patron tydynges of geffray. 'Yonder he hath take
land,' said the patron, '& hath chaced^r the paynemes

They row to
him,

16 vnto þe Cite / and yonder is the kyng vryan your
broþer, that scarmyssheth theire nauye, to whom I goo
for to anounce hym your auenture, and the commyng
of geffray, his brother' / And thenne the rampyn
20 rowed fast, and came to vryan to whom, after his
obeyssaunce don, he recounted al the faytte. Wherof
Vryan thanked god deuoutely / & cryed to hys peple,
'anaunt, lordes, thinke to doo wel, For our enemyes

and tell of
Geffray's doings.

24 may not escape vs, but that they be other slayn or
take.' Thenne the crysten borded theire enemyes, the
which were gretly abasshed of this, that they had
knowleche that the kyng^r anthenor & thadmyra^h were

Urian drives the
Saracens to land.

28 retourned to Japhe. wherfor they toke land who that
might, & fledd toward the toun. And thenne whan
the Calyphe and the sandan sawe theire peple aland^r,
they dyde send ambaxades toward the prynces Cristen

They fly to the
toun.

32 for to haue trews the space of thre dayes, & that they
shuld suffre theire landing, & on the foureth day they
shuld gyue them journey of batay^h. Kinge Vryan
accorded therto, and sent word^r therof to his brethern

The caliph asks a
truce for three
days.

36 guyon and geffray / and thus they landed peasybly, and

Urian agrees to
it.

The brethren
land their hosts,
1 fol. 160 b.

assembled theire peple togidre. Thenne¹ was the Joye grete among^t the thre bretheren, and theire oost was nombred xxii.^{MI} what men of armes / balesters & archers.

greet each other,
and refresh them-
selves.

Thestorye sayth that the thre bretheren and theire peple made moche eche of other, & refresshed them during^t the trews. But panne the Sawdan of Damaske that had knowleche of the crystens landing⁸ sent word^t to the Calyphe & to the sawdan of Barbarye, that they shuld not fyght *with* the crysten tyl he were come *with* them, & that they shuld take othre thre days of trews / & so they dide; wherto the 12 noble prynces crysten accorded. And duryng that terme the Caliphe &² the sawdan of Barbarye dyde *with*draw theyre peple toward Damaske to thentent that they might have the Cristen more *within* the land^t, 16 so that none might flee to theyre nauye; but he were ouertake & slayne. For they wend^t to haue aH theire wyH vpon the Crysten. For they were after the sau- dan of Damaske was assembled *with* them to the 20 nombre of VII score thousand^t fyghtyng men / and pe crysten were but xxii.^{MI} good men / the which, whan they knew of the departyng^t of the sarasyns fro Japhe, they were fuH dolaunt; For they supposed they had 24 fledd / but for nought they wend soo / for at ende of six dayes they came & approuched nygh them, & on the morne gaf them batayH. Thenne came a trucheman mounted vpon a dromadary, whiche alighted tofore the 28 tentes of the thre bretheren, and humbly salued them / and they rendred hym³ gretyng^t / and he beheld them long or he spake. For he wondred moche of theire noble maynten & fyers contenance / and in especial 32 he meruaylled moche of Geffray that was the hiest of personne, & saw the tooth that passed ouer the lyppe along hys cheke; wherof he was so abasshed that almost he coude not speke / but at last he said to 36

The truce is
lengthened.

The Saracens
march inland to
prevent the
Christians escap-
ing after the
battle.

The hosts are
140,000 Saracens
against 22,000
Christians.

The Christians
think the Sara-
cens have fled.

An interpreter
comes to the
brethren.

³ fol. 161.

He wonders at
their fierceness;
especially at Gef-
fray's tooth.

kyng Vryan in this wyse. 'Noble kyng of Cypre /
 my right redoubted lordes the Sawdants of Barbarye &
 of Damaske / the Calyphe of Bandas / the kynges of
 4 Anthioche & of Danette & thadmyrah of Cordes send
 word by me to you that they be prest¹ redy to lyuere
 you batayh, & they tary after you in a medowe vnder
 Damaske where ye, *with* al your puyssaunce may
 8 come / saf and peasybly there to make and take
 there your lodgys tofore them wheresomeuer it playse
 you / and by auenture whan ye haue sene theire puyssaunce ye shal fynd some good & amyable traytye
 12 *with* my said lordes. For certaynly it is not to your
 power to *withstand* theire strength.' And whan
 geffray herd there wordes, he sayd to hym / 'goo thou
 to thy kynges & sawdants, & to thy Caliphe / and say
 16 them that yf there were none only but I & my people,
 yet wold I fyght / & say them pat of theire trews we
 haue nought to doo / and whan thou shalt come to
 them say that geffray with the grete toth deffiyeth them /
 20 and anoone after that thou art departed from hens I
 shal sawte the Cite of Japhe, & shal fyre it / and al the
 sarasyns that I shal fynd, I shal putte them to deth /
 and say to them, as thou passe by² that they puruey
 24 them wel, For I ryght foorth shal departe to asayh
 them.' And whan the trucheman or messenger herd this
 ansuere, he was al abashed / and *without* eny more
 proces he lept vpon his dromadary, For he had so grete
 28 feer of the fyersnes of geffray that alwayes he loked
 behynd hym, for fere that he had folowed hym / &
 sayd in hym self: 'By mahon, yf al the other were
 suche as that *with* the grete toth, our lordes, nor theire
 32 puyssaunce were not able to *withstand* them.' And
 thenne he came to Japhe, & said to them that geffray
with the grete toth wold come anon tassayh theire
 Cyte, and that he had sworne that he shuld putte in

He delivers his message,

that the Saracen lords are ready for battle.

He suggests a treaty.

Geffray bids him return to the Caliph

with his defiance,

and the news that Geffray is about to assail Jaffa and to slay all the Saracens he finds there.

² fol. 161 b.

The interpreter leaps upon his dromedary and full of fear rides away, thinking that his lords cannot withstand many Geffrays.

He tells the people of Jaffa that Geffray is about to assail them.

¹ Fr. *prets*.

Many fly to
Damascus.

Geffray ap-
proaches Jaffa.

The interpreter
returns

¹ fol. 162.
to the Saracen
knights,

and relates the
result of his em-
bassy.

subjection of hys swerd^d al them that he fond^d. Therne
were they a^{ll} abasshed / and wete it wel that the more
parte of the peple there fled for fere toward Damaske,
and toke *with* them theire goodes. And anon geffray 4
dide blow vp hys trompettes, & armed hys peple, & went
incontynent to sawte the toun, and wold^d neuer cesse
therof, For ony thing that his breþern said / and sware
by god that he shuld shewe them suche tokens that men 8
shuld knowe that he had ben in surye. But here seaceth
thistorye of hym, & speketh of the forsaid messenger
þat rode so long that he came tofore the lodgys of the
sarasyns at Damaske.

12

In this party, sayth thystory, that the messenger rode
so fast vpon his dromadary that he cam / vnto
thoost tofore Damaske / & fond^d in the tente of the
Calyphe the two sawdans, ¹ the kyngⁱ anthenor / thad- 16
myral of Cordes, the kyngⁱ golofryn of Danette, &
many other that asked tydynges of the Cristens. And
the messenger them said / ‘I haue don your commande-
ment & message / but whan I shewed vnto them, 20
yf that they had seen your puyssaunce it wold haue
be a meane of traytye with you / and therne one of
them that had oo grete toth, wold not suffre the kyng
of Cypre to haue the wordes, but he hymself said þus, 24
“Goo thou to thy kynges and sawdants, & say them we
haue not to doo *with* theire trews, / & that yf there wer
but he & his peple only, yet wold he fyght with you” /
and morouer said to me / that assoone as I shuld come 28
to you that I shuld take you ayen þe patents of your
trews, & that ye shuld beware of hym / and that in
despyte of you a^{ll} he wold^d assawte Japhe, & putte the
fyre thugh al the toun & destroye them for euer / and 32
that thus I shuld say to them whan I passed by the Cite /
and so haue I doo / and wete it wel that the more²
part of the Cytezeyns be come after me, & immedy-

² MS. has *more* twice.

atly after my departyng I herd hys trompettes blowe
 thassawte of Japhe / & ye coude neuer thinke thorryble
 & fyers contenaunces of the prynces crysten with theire
 4 puyssaunce / And wete it wel after the semblaunce that
 they shew, ye be not of power tabyde them, & in
 especial he with the grete toth hath none other fere
 but that ye shal flee or they come to you.' And whan
 8 the saudan of Damaske vnderstod it, he bygan to lawgh,
 & said, ' By machomid, in asmoche as I haue perceyued
 now your hardynes, ye shal be the first in batayll ayenst
 hym with the grete toth.' Wherto ansuerd ¹ the mes-
 12 sager / ' vnhappy be that heure or day that I approche
 hym / but yf there be a grete ryuere or the toures or
 walles of Damaske or some other Fortres betwix hym
 & me / and yf I doo other, lete my lord mahomid
 16 drowne me,' / & therewith bygane euery personne to
 lawhe. But there were suche that lawhed, that afir-
 ward, yf they might haue had leyser, they wold haue
 wept. Now shaH I shew how geffray assawted Japhe,
 20 and toke it by force, and putte to deth all the sarasyns
 there, and toke their hauoir and goodes out of the Cyte /
 & bare it vnto the vesselles, and after sette fyre on the
 Cite / and this don, retourned the crysten to theire
 24 lodgys, where geffray requyred his bretheren that they
 shuld take hym, the maister of Rodes, & hys people, to
 make the vantgarde / & they were agreed / and that
 same nyght they rested them tyl on the morowe.
 28 **T**he next day, as the hystory wytnesseth, after the
 masse herd, desloged the vanward, and after the
 grete batayll, & the sommage & syn the ryergarde /
 and it was a noble syght to see thoost & the fayre
 32 ordynaunce to departe. Therne came a spye to
 geffray, & hym said: ' Sire, about half a leghe hens
 ben a thousand sarasyns, whiche drawe them toward
 baruth to kepe the hauen of the toun.' to whom
 36 geffray asked / ' canst conduyte me thither?' / ' ye, by

He tells the Saracens that he thinks they are unable to withstand the Christians.

The Sultan of Damascus jeers and says he will make the interpreter the first to fight Geffray.
¹ fol. 162 b.

The interpreter declares he will not fight Geffray.

Geffray assaults Jaffa, slays the inhabitants, and takes their goods to his vessels.

The battle is arranged.

The host marches in good order.

A spy tells Geffray of the march of a thousand Saracens to Beyruth.

my feyth, sire,' sayd the spye. Thenne said geffray to the maister of rodes, that he shuld conduyte the vanwarde, puttyng fyre vpon the way where he went, to thentent he shuld not fayH to fynd^d hym by the trasse 4
^{1 fol. 163.} of the fumyer / and the maister of ¹Rodes said / 'it shal be don.' And thanne departed geffray with the spye, and went before, where he perceyued the sarasyns commyng fro a mountayn ; & he shewed to geffray the 8 sarasyns, which was joyful therof, & hasted hys people. and whan he had ouertake them / he sware : ' by god / ye gloutons ! ye may not me escape ' / & so rane vpon them, & ouerthrew the first that he recounted to the 12 erth, & syn drew hys swerd^d, & dyde meruayllous fayttes of armes, & his people in lyke wyse. What nede is to speke more of the sarasyns, they were dyscomfyte, & fled toward Baruth, & the Crysten in the 16 chaas. And whan the sarasyns of baruth sawe the fleers, they anoone knew them, & lete fall the bridge, & opened the gates & barryers / thenne the fleers entred within the toun / but alwayes geffray folowed^d so 20 .
^{They fly to Beyrouth, chased by the Christians.} hastily, that he entred with them within the town with wel fyue C men of armes. And whan Geffray was entred he commanded to kepe [the] gate² tyl the resydu of hys people were come / And thenne bygan 24 the batayH to be fyers & strong^d / but neuertheles the Sarasyns might not endure, but fled at another yate out of the toun. And he that penne had a good hors was wel bestad^d, For they sporyd fast, som toward the Cite 28 of tryple, & some toward Damaske. And geffray & his peple slew al the sarasyns that they fond^d in the toun, and threw them in the see / and he that sawe the toun strong & the Castel nygh the see, fayre porte 32 garnysshed with toures for the sauegarde of the nauye / sayd / ' that place shuld be kepe for hym self ' / and there geffray lefte two houndred men of armes & a
^{and says that he will keep the place.}

² Fr. à garder. MS. has *repegate* = *kepe* [the] gate.

C balesters of his peple / and he hymself ¹soiourned
 there all that same nyght. And on the morne he toke
 leue of his men that he left there, & rode after thoost
 4 by the trace of the fumyer & smoke / but the maister
 of Rodes was aferd lest he shuld haue grete empesche-
 ment /. Here seaceth the hystorye of hym / and sheweth
 of the fleers out of Japhe toward Damaske, whiche
 8 came to thoost at the tente of the Sawdan, where as the
 lordes sarasyns were / and pyteously recounted to them
 the dystuction of Japhe / how the Cristen had putte
 to deth bothe yong & old, & sette fyre on eche part
 12 of the toun. Whan the saudants & kynges sarasyns
 vnderstod it, they were full dolaunt. 'By al our
 goddes,' said the saudan of Damaske, 'Moche hard
 ben the crysten, & they doubte nought as it semeth /
 16 but full wel they knowe that they are not of power to
 withstand our grete puyssaunce; wherefore they make
 semblaunt, that nought they fere vs, & make suche
 sawtes while that we are ferre fro them / but yf we
 20 marched foorth / no doubte they wold recule & with-
 drawe them in to theire shippes.' 'By mahon,' said
 the sawdan of Barbarye / 'yf they were here alle rosted
 or soden, & yf it were custome to ete suche flesshe, they
 24 were not to the regarde of our peple suffysaunt for a
 brekfast / by my lawe, yf there were but I & my people
 only, yet shuld none repasse of them homward.' But
 whan the trucheman or messenger herd hym so speke
 28 he coude neuer hold hys tonge, but that he sayd /
 'myghty sawdan, yf now ye sawe the kyng Vryan /
 the kyng guyon hys brother, & he with the grete toth,
 theire horryble & fyers contenaunce, shuld cause ²you
 32 to be in peas & cesse your grete menaces. And wete
 it wel, or the werke be ful doo ye shal not haue them
 fo[r] so good chep as ye say / but oft he that menaceth
 is somtyme in grete fer & drede hym self, & afftirward
 36 ouerthrowen' / And thenne whan the saudan vnder-

¹ fol. 163 b.

He leaves three hundred men to guard it,

and by the guidance of the smoke rides to the Christian host.

The fugitives from Jaffa recount their mishap to the sultan.

The Sultan of Damascus says the Christians would fall back if he marched against them.

The Sultan of Barbary says there are not enough Christians to make the Saracen host a breakfast;

but the interpreter says if the sultan saw the brethren he

² fol. 164.

would cease his threats and make peace

stode the messagers wordes, he said to hym: 'By Mahomid, fayre sire, I see wel by the grete hardynes that is in you, ye wold fayne be ordeyned at the first recountre of þe batayll ayenst Geffray with the grete 4 toeth.' & he ansuerd: 'By my lawe, sire, yf he be not recountred of none other but of me / he may wel cōme surely; For I shal tourne myn heelys toward hym / ye / one leghe or two ferre fro his persone.' 8 Thenne the lawhing was there grete / but soone after they herd other tydynges, wherof they had no wyll to lawhe, For the fleers fro baruth forsayd came to thoost, and to them recounted the dompage & pyte of 12 the toun of Baruth, and how geffray with the grete toth had chaced þem by force, & al the resydu of them he had slayn / & 'by mahon,' said they, 'wete it wel he is not of purpos to flee, For he hath lefte garnyson 16 at Baruth, & wel vytaylled it, & commeth hyperward in al haste to hym possible / & men see nothing through al the Countre where he passeth but fyre & flāme, & the wayes be all couered with sarasyns that he & hys 20 people haue slayn.' Thenne whan the saudan of Damaske vnderstode it he was moch dolaunt & angry. 'By mahomid,' said he, 'I byleue fermely that he with the grete toth hath a dyuel in his body.' Thenne said 24 the saudan of Barbarye, 'I am in doubte of that is told me.' 'What is that?' 1 said the saudan of Damaske / 'it is said that the heys of Lusynen shal dystroye me, and that our lawe shal by theire strengthe be hurt & dom- 28 maged.' Thenne was there none so hardy a Sarasyn but that he shoke for fere. And now cesseth thystorye of them, & retourneth to geffray.

Thystorye sheweth in this partye, that so long rode 32 geffray with hys felawship, that he ouertoke the vanwarde that the maister of Rodes conduyted, whiche was glade of his retourne, & asked how he had ex- ployted. And geffray recounted to hym how he & his 36

The fugitives
from Beyrouth

relate how they
have been chased
by Geffray,

and that he is
approaching.

The Sultan of
Damascus be-
lieves Geffray to
have a devil in
his body.

1 fol. 164 b.

He refers to a
saying about the
heirs of Lusignan
destroying him.

Geffray over-
takes the Master
of Rhodes,

- peple, *with* thayde of god, he had wonne the toune, castel, & hauen of baruth, and that by force they had chased a grete part of them that were *within*, and the
 4 resydu they had putte to deth / & how he had lefte certayn nombre of his peple to kepe it. 'By god,' sayd the maister of Rodes, 'ye haue wel don, & nobly & valyauntly exployted' / and soone these tydynges
 8 were knowen thugh thoost / & Vryan & Guyon were joyfuH therof. 'By my feyth,' said Vryan to Guyon: 'Oure brother Geffray is of grete enterpryse & ryght valyaunt in armes, and yf god of his grace yeue hym
 12 long lyf, he shal do yet many grete actes worthy to be had in mynde.' 'By my feyth,' said guyon, 'ye say trouth.' Long tyme went the two bretheren thus spek- yng of the prowes of geffray / And so long marched peir
 16 oost, that on an euen they lodged them by a ryuere fyue myle fro Damaske / & there came theire espyes, that declared to them all the manyere & contenaunce of the sarasyns. And themne they toke Counseyl to
 20 wete what best was to doo, & they ¹concluded that on the morne theire oost shuld lodge a leghe nygh to the Sarasyns as they dide. And thus on the morne they departed, & was commanded that none shuld
 24 sette fyre on his lodgys, nor in none other place; to thende that the Sarasyns shuld not soone perceyue theire commyng. And briefly to say, so long they went tyl they came to the place where they lodged
 28 them togidre, & made þat nyght good watche toward theire enemyes. & after they souped & lay al nyght in theire harneys. And anoone aftir middenyght geffray, accompanied *with* a thousand fyghting men, toke a
 32 guyde that wel knew the Countre, & went toward thoost of the Sarasyns al the couert. & nygh therby was a forest that dured a myle, and there he embusshed & sent word to thoost that they shuld be redy as to
 36 receyue theire enemyes.

and relates how he captured Beyruth.

The news spreads, and Urian and Guion are joyful.

The brothers speak of the prowess of Geffray.

The host arrives close to Damascus.

¹ fol. 165.

Next day they march still nearer.

At midnight Geffray ambushes a thousand men near the Saracen host.

He takes two hundred more men, and tells those of the ambush not to fight until he and his company fall back; and that then they should rush upon their pursuers,

Geffray marches to the Saracen host.

1 fol. 165 b.

It is asleep.

When he sees the great multitude he says that they would have to be dreaded if they were Christian, but as they are, they are only dogs.

Geffray sees a rich tent;

he enters and smites those inside.

They awake;

Thystorye testyfyeth that geffray at the day spryng, mounted on horsbake, with ij. C fyghtyng men, & commanded them of thembusshe pat for nothing that they sawe they shuld not meue them tyl that they sawe 4 hym & hys company recule, and thenne vpon them of the chaas they shuld renne. Thenne departed geffray, & went vpon a lytel montayne, and sawe the sarasyns oost aH styl, & herd nothing, as nobody had be 8 there. Thenne was he dolaunt, that sooner he had not knowen theire contenaunce, For yf hys bretheren had be there with theire peple, they shuld haue had good chep of sarasyns / but not withstanding, he sware that 12 syth he was so nygh, that he shuld make them to knowe his commyng. Thenne said geffray to hys felawes: 'ryde we fast, & see that ye be not aslepe as they are / & make no bruyt tyl I shal command you.' 16 And they said that nomore shuld they doo. Thenne they rode al the couert nygh togidre, & and entred into thoost, & wel perceyued that they were aslepe on euery syde / geffray behel & sawe the grete multi- 20 tude of people / and syn he said in this wyse: 'By my feyth, yf þey were crysten, they were to be ferd & dredd / but yet they be not so good as dogges.' and with his felawship went vnto the myddes of thoost, or they 24 made eny stryf. And there geffray perceyued a ryche tente, and supposyng that it had be other the Caliphes tente or one of the saudants / said vnto hys peuple / 'auaunt, lordes & good men, it is now tyme to chere & 28 awake these houndes, for to long they haue slept.' Thenne Geffray, & ten knyghtes with hym, entred in to the sayd tente, & vpon them that were in smote with theire swerdes, makyng heedes, armes, & legges to leue 32 the bodies. There was the noyse, & the cry grete & hydous to here / & wete it that it was þe tente of the kyng Gallafryn of Danette; which anoone rose vp fro hys bed, & wel he supposed to haue fled out at the 36

- backsyde of hys tente, but geffray perceyued, & gaf
 hym suche a stroke with his swerd that was pesaunt, &
 cutting sharp as a raser, that he cleft hys heek vnto
 4 the brayne / & the sarasyn kyng fell down deed / and
 none escaped of them that were in the tente ; but they
 were all slayne. And thenne cryeng 'Lusynen' they
 retourned through thoost, puttyng to deth al the sarasyns
 8 that they recountred. Thenne was thoost wel awaked
 & made grete alarme / And anoone came these tyd-
 ynges to the tente of the sawdan of Damaske, that
 said : 'What noyse is that I here yonder ¹without?'
 12 Thenne a sarasyn that came fro that part, which had
 a broken heek, in such manere pat hys one eere lay
 vpon hys sholder / sayd to hym : 'Sire, that are x
 dyuelles, and theire meyne that haue entred into your
 16 oost, which slee & ouerthraw al them that they re-
 countre in theire way / and they haue slayn the kyng
 of Danette your cousyn, and theire cry is "Lusynen!"'
 Whan the saudan vnderstoek it he made hys trompettes
 20 to blow vp, that euery man shuk be armed. And
 thenne the saudan & x. M^l sarasyns with hym went
 after. And geffray went with hys peple through thoost
 making grete occyson of sarasyns, For they were
 24 vnarmed, & might not endure nor withstand. And
 wete it that or euer they departed fro thoost, they
 slough & hurt more than iii M^l sarasyns / and whan
 they were out of the lodgys, they went al softe &
 28 fayre / And the sawdan of Damaske hasted hym after.
- M**oche dolaunt & angry was the saudan of Damaske,
 whan he perceyued the grete occyson that the
 crysten had don vpon hys peple / & sware by hys
 32 goddes Appolyn and mahon, that forthwith he shuld
 be auenged on them, & that not a crysten shuld be
 take to mercy, but shuld al be slayn. thenne he
 folowed geffray with x thousand Sarasyns. And
 36 thenne geffray that perceyued, & sent word therof to

Geffray cuts
Gallafrin's
head open.

The Christians
crying 'Lusig-
nan,' return
through the host
and slay many
Saracens,

¹ fol. 166.

The Sultan of
Damascus hears
the tidings,

and with x. M^l
Saracens

hastes after
Geffray.

hys bretheren by his peple feynnyng¹ to flee / and he entred² w^{ithin} the busshe where his peple was, for to putte them in aray / And the saudan folowed alway, & passed³ byfore thembusshe. Wete it wel that the 4 maister of Rodes that conduyted the vanward⁴ was thenne in fayre ¹batayH. And whan he sawe the saudan that folowed the crysten / he ranne ayenst the sarasyns, the spere in the rest, and there they medled⁸ togidre & faught strongly / and w^{ithin} a lytel space of tyme the Sarasyns were dyscomfyte. For at the first recountre w^{ith} the speerys, eche cristen ouerthrew a sarasyn to the erth. And whan the sawdan sawe 12 that he might no lenger w^{ithstand} he reculed, & assembled his peple in hys best wyse, abydyng the sarasyns that came after. But geffray & hys companye yssued out of thembusshe and ranne vpon them 16 put went w^{ithout} ordonauce after the saudan. And w^{ithin} a whyle there were slayn of the sarasyns by the way more than foure thousand. And thenne many of them fledd toward theire oost, and fond² the caliphe of 20 bandas, the saudan of barbarye, the king Anthenor, & thadmyral of Cordes, whiche asked them fro whens pey came / And they ansuerd³: 'we come fro the batayH where the sawdan of Damaske hath be dys- 24 comfyted.' And whan they vnderstod⁴ it they were dyscomforted & sorowful, & w^yst not what they shuld say or do. Now I wyl retourne to speke of the batayH.

¹ fol. 166 b.

He is driven back by the vanguard of the Christians.

Then his host is fal en upon by the ambush,

four thousand Saracens are slain.

Some of them escape to their host

and tell the Saracen leaders of the mishap.

The Sultan of Damascus fights manfully.

² fol. 167.

The batayH was horrible & cruel, & the sawdan of 28 Damaske faught manfully put day, after that he had assembled hys peple. Thenne came geffray, that ranne vpon them at backsyde / and the maister of rodes at the other syde, In so moche that there was 32 made grete occysyon of sarasyns. What shuld I make long compte / the feled them assaylled on bothe sydes, wherby ²they were dyscomfyted, & might no lenger defende. And whan the saudan perceyued the dys- 36

- comfyture, he went out of the batayll & tourned the
 targe behynd, and sporyd hys hors, & fled fast toward
 thoost of the sarasyns / and geffray was at that syde,
 4 that wel perceyued hym, & demed wel by hys ryche
 armures that it was he, or some grete lord of the
 sarasyns. Thenne he broched hys hors with the sporys
 after the saudan, and cryed to hym, 'retourne, or thou
 8 shalt dey! For I shuld haue grete vergoyne yf I smote
 the behynd / but alwayes, yf thou not retourne, nedes
 I most do soo.' And whan the sawdan vnderstod
 hym, he sporyd hys hors, & hasted hym more than he
 12 dide tofore / and geffray, that ryght dolaunt was that
 he might not ouertake hym, cryed to hym ayen,
 sayeng: 'Fy on the! recreaunt coward; that art so
 wel horsed, & so nobly & surely armed, and yet darest
 16 not abyde a man alone / retourne, or I shal slee the
 fleeyng / how be it, that shal be ayenst my wyll.'
 And thenne the saudan, vergoynous of geffrays wordes,
 that for fere of a man alone he fledd / returned at
 20 the corner of þe wode, nygh by thoost of the sarasyns,
 in that same place where as geffray had that day
 embusshed hys peuple / and putte hys shild tofore hys
 brest, and the spere in the rest, & thus he cryed to
 24 geffray: 'What art thou, þat so hastily folowest me /
 by mahon! that shal be to thy grete dommage.' /
 'and for thy prouffyt I am not come thus ferre,' said
 geffray / 'but syth that myn name thou axest, thou
 28 shalt ¹it knowe. I am Geffray with the grete toeth,
 broþer to the kinges Vryan & guyon / and what art
 thou?' 'By mahon,' said the saudan, 'that shalt thou
 knowe / I am the saudan of Damaske. And knowe
 32 thou, that I were not so joyous who that had gyuen me
 a C thousand besans of gold, as I am to haue fond the
 so at myn ease, For thou mayst me not escape / I deffy
 the, by machomet my god.' 'By my feyth,' said
 36 Geffray, 'nother thou nor thy god I preyse not a

When discom-
 fited
 he flies to the
 Saracen host.

Geffray recog-
 nizes him, and
 cries to him,

'Return, or thou
 shalt die!'

He hastes away
 the faster;

but Geffray again
 calls on him.

At last the sultan
 turns round and
 asks his name.

¹ fol. 167 b.

Geffray replies
 that he is brother
 to Urian and
 Guion, and de-
 mands his ad-
 versary's name.

The sultan tells
 him, and defies
 Geffray.

rotyn dogge; For soone thou shalt fynd me nerer the,
to thyn euyl helthe / and yf it playsep to god, my
creatour, thou shalt not escape.' /

Geffray cries that
he will not
escape.

Geffray and the
sultan go apart,
then run upon
each other.

Here sayth thystorye, that Geffray & the saudan, 4
that bothe were of grete courage & strength,
reculed eche fro other, and syn ranne vpon eche other /
and the Saudan valyauntly smote geffray, & tronchoned
his spere vpon his shild / but it is wel to byleue that 8
the noble & valyaunt geffray, at this first cours, faylled
not; For he smote the Saudan by suche radeur, that he
lefte hym out of hys arsouns, & bare hym vnto therthe.
and so passed foorth, and immedyatly toke in hys hand 12
hys good swerd / and pretending that men shuld speke
of his fayttes & valyaunces, he smote the saudan by
suche vertu that he perced hys helmet, and effoundred
hys heed almost to the brayne, so that the sawdan was 16
sore astonyed and euyl bestad, in suche wyse that he
nother sawe nor herd / but as geffray wold haue
alyghted to haue take the saudans helmet, to haue
brought it to hys bretheren, & to see yf he ¹was deed, 20
he perceyued wel thre score sarasyns, that cryed after
hym, & said: 'By my lawe, false crysten, your ende
is come.' And whan geffray vnderstode it, he sporyd
hys hors, & brandyssed the swerd; and the fyrst that 24
he recountred, he smote down to therthe al deed. And
who that had be there, he had seen hym execute noble
faytes & armes, as of one man deffendyng hys lyf; For
geffray cutte and smote of heedes & armes, and dyed 28
the place with grete effusyon of sarasyns blood / and
they casted at hym sperys & dartes, and made grete
payne for to haue had ouerthrawn hym to therthi.
And thenne the saudan was come at hymself ayen, 32
and stode vp al astonyed, as he had come fro slepe /
he loke at ryght syde of hym, and mounted on hys
hors, & sawe the batayll, where he perceyued wel
geffray, that made grete occysyon of sarasyns / and was 36

Geffray bears the
sultan to the
earth.

He cleaves his
helmet,

and is about to
take it from his
head,

¹ fol. 168.

when he sees
sixty Saracens,
who cry, 'Your
end is come.'

Geffray smites
the first dead,

and slays many
others.

The sultan comes
to his senses,

- geffray wounded & hurt in many places of his body.
 Therne cryed the saudan, admonnestyng^r his peple,
 sayeng / 'aunaunt! worthy sarasyns / by mahomid, yf
 4 he vs escape, I shal neuer haue joye; For who might
 bryng hym to an euyl ende, the resydu were not to be
 doubted.' Therne was geffray assaylled^r on aH partes /
 & he deffended hym hardyly & so valyauntly, that no
 8 sarasyn durste hym abyde / but casted at hym fro ferre
 sperys, darts, stones & arowes / vyretons & quarelles,
 with theire crosbowes / but it semed not that he ¹made
 any force therof / but as a hongre wolf renneth vpon
 12 sheep / so dide he renne vpon the enemyes of god.
 'By my goddes, Appolyn & mahon,' sayd thenne the
 saudan / 'this is not a man / but it is a grete dyueH,
 come out of heH / or the Cristen god, which is come
 16 hither to distroye our lawe' / And, For certayn, geffray
 was in this auenture wel by the space of two heures.
- I**n this parel was geffray vnto tyme that the new
 knight, which had be with hym in garende, which
 20 had sene hym departe after the saudan / cam at him
 with wel a C men of armes, For he loued hym entierly.
 And thenne, whan he approched the wode, he perceyued
 the batayH, and sawe the sawdan, that dyde his best
 24 for to hurt & dommage Geffray, that faught alone
 ayenst mahondys peple; wherfore he said / 'cursed
 be he of god, that shal not helpe hym now' / and the
 knightes peple ansuerd, 'to theire euyl helthe they
 28 haue recountred geffray.' And forthwith they broched
 theire horses with theire sporys, & came to the
 batayH. but assoone as the saudan perceyued the
 socours, he sporyd hys hors, & hastily fled toward
 32 thoost / & left his peple in that plyght, of the which
 neuer one escaped, but were al slayne. Thenne whan
 geffray perceyued the new knight, that so wel had
 socoured hym, he thanked hym moche, & sayd: 'My
 36 frend, suche rooses ben good, & of swete odour / & the

and incites his
people against
Geffray,

who defends him-
self valiantly,

¹ fol. 168 b.

and
as a hungry wolf
runs upon sheep,
so runs Geffray
upon the enemies
of God.

The sultan cries
that Geffray is
either a great
devil or the
Christian God.

Geffray's new
knight sees his
lord's danger,

and rushes at
the head of his
people to the
rescue.

The sultan takes
flight.

Geffray thanks
the knight,

1 fol. 169.

who advises him
to return to the
Christian host;

because it is
often better to
flee than to abide
a foolish enter-
prise.

Geffray follows
the knight's
counsel.

On the way back
they find the field
covered with the
slain Saracens,
who have lost
xxv. Ml men.

2 fol. 169 b.

Geffray's wounds
are tended, but
they do not
oblige him to
leave off his
armour.

lorde that hat about hym suche cheualrye, may take his rest surely.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'I haue not doo that thing' wherof I owe to be ¹rewarded, For euery trew seruauunt oweth to take heede to thonour & 4 prouffyt of hys maister and lord. And thenne, syth it is soo / no reward ought not to be had therfore / but departe we hens, For it is tyme that ye take your rest : ye haue do this day that wel may suffyse. & also we 8 be lytel nombre of people, & nygh our enemyes, that haue grete puyssaunce / and your woundes and soores must be vysyted and ouersene / and also, it me semeth best, that we retourne toward oure oost by our owne 12 wyH / than yf by force we were constrayned to retourne ; For no doubte / who that retourneth fleeyng, & is chassed by hys enemyes / that may be to hym but blame / how be it, that oftyme it is said / that bettre 16 it is to flee, þan to abyde a folyssh enterpryse.' Thenne said geffray : 'Fayre sire, at this tyme we shal byleue your counseyH.' And they thenne departed, and went toward their oost, & fonð in their way the felde 20 sown with sarasyns deed. And wete it wel, that the same day, byfore none, the sarasyns lost wel xxv^{ti} thousand men, that by fayt of armes were al slayne / and there escaped, fleeyng, XL. Mⁱ. And wete it 24 also, that the Caliphe and the two saudans, the king Anthenor and thadmyral of Cordes fonð of seuen score thousand panemes that the euen tofore were in their oost, but foure score thousand, wherof they were gretly 28 abasshed. Now I shal speke of Geffray, that was returned to thoost, where he was wel festyed of hys bretheren, and of their baronye / and his woundes were vysyted by the Cyrurgyens, that ²said that he 32 shuld not leue the harneys therfor : and they all thanked god. And now I shal shew of the sawdan. /

Thystorye sayth, that whan the saudan was departed fro the batayH, he walaped tyl he came to the 36

sarasyns oost, where as he fond his peple al abashed,
 For they wend he had be slayn. And whan they sawe
 hym, they made grete joye, & made to hym theire
 4 obeyssaunce, and asked how he had exployted. 'By
 mahomid,' sayd þe saudan / 'lytel or nought haue I
 doo, For my peple is al deed.' And incontynent he
 was desarmed, & recounted them al thauenture. And
 8 the two oostes rested them that night, without ony
 approching or cours don of neyther partye. /

The sultan gal-
 lops to the Sara-
 cen host.
 They thought
 him to be dead,
 so receive him
 with joy.

He relates his
 adventure.

Here sheweth thystorye, that on the morow by
 tymes, the Crysten armed them, & rengid &
 12 ordeyned them in batayH, and lefte good watche for to
 kepe theire lodgys / and them that were wounded &
 hurt, that myght bere no harneys / and marched foorth
 in fayre ordynaunce toward thenemyes. In the van-
 16 wardes were geffray, & the maister of rodes, & theire
 peple; & good arblasters were vpon the wynges, wel
 rengid. And in the grete batayH was the king Vryan /
 and the king Guyon conduyted the ryergard / and so
 20 long they marched, that they sawe thoost of the
 sarasyns / And anoone was made thenne, on bothe
 sydes, a meruayllous cry / with whiche they marched
 that one ayenst that other. And bygan the batayH by
 24 the archers and arblasters so aspre that thayer was
 obscurid with the quarelles & arowes, that flewh so
 thyk. ¹The valyaunt geffray was in the Formest
 frount of his peple, and whan the shotte seaced, he
 28 toke his sheld & hys spere in escryeng 'Lusynen' by
 thre tymes, and smote his hors with his sporys, &
 thrested in to myddes of his enemys so swyftly that
 the maister of Rodes coude not folowe hym. Ther was
 32 thenne horryble bruyt with theire cryes / that one
 cryed 'Damaske' / that other / 'barbarye' / some
 cryed 'bandas,' & some 'anthioche,' and other were
 that cryed 'cordes' / and geffray & his peple cryed
 36 'Lusynen & Rodes.' There made the thre bretheren

In the morning
 the Christians
 arm

and march
 against the
 enemy.

The archers be-
 gin the battle.

¹ fol. 170.

Geffray shouts,
 'Lusignai,' and
 rushes upon the
 Saracens.

The brethren do
such deeds of
arms
that all are
abashed.

The Sultans of
Damascus and
Barbary rush on
the brethren;

but the Chris-
tians pluck up
heart and slay
many of the
enemy.

³ fol. 170 b.

Geffray gives the
admiral a stroke
so great that he
dies.

Urian sees the
Sultan of Bar-
bary,

and strikes off his
left arm.

The sultan re-
treats to Damas-
cus, but the
Saracens con-
tinue the fight.

so meruayllous faytes of armes / that not only the
sarasyns were abasshed / but also the crystens merueylled
therof. The saudans of Damaske, & of barbarye, per-
ceyued the thre bretheren, that so ouerthrew & slew 4
theire peple; wherfore they, with xx. M^l sarasyns,
couched theire sperys & rane vpon them. There
reforced the batayH / and with that ¹cours the cristen
the lengthe of a spere ferre. And whan the thre 8
bretheren saw the sarasyns, that thus ouerane theire
peple / bygan to crye 'Lusynen,' & said, admounestyng
theire peple / 'auaunt, lordes barous! these dogges
may not long withstand our armes.' And thenne the 12
Cristen toke herte corageous, & vygourously made an
horryble cours vpon theire enemys; wherby the stour
was strong, & the batayH mortal,² For they ouerthrew
& slough many sarasyns. Thenne was per Geffray, 16
that effoundred heedes vnto the brayne, & smote down
to therthe al that he recountred with his swerd;
Whiche perceyued thadmyral of ³Cordes, that smote on
the Cristen. Thenne thrested geffray through the prees, 20
& cam and smote thadmyral by suche vertu, that he
brake bothe helmet & heed vnto the brayne. There
was the prees grete, For ther came the two saudants
and theire puyssaunce, that supposed wel to haue 24
redressed thadmyraH vpon his hors / but it was for
nought, For he was deed. Thenne came there Vryan,
and sawe the saudan of barbarye, þat moche hated
hym, for cause that he had slayn the saudan his vnle 28
in Cypre. Thenne came Vryan, & smote hym by
suche strengthe, that he made hys lyft arme to flee fro
the body. And whan the saudan sawe hym thus
arayed, he went out of the batayH, & made ten knyghtes 32
to conduyte hym to damaske / and neuertheles faught
euer the sarasyns, For the saudan of damaske, & the
caliphe of bandas, & the king anthenor held them in

¹ Fr. *se reculèrent le long d'une lance.*

² Fr. *greigneur.*

vertu. There was grete douleur, & grete pestylence.
 And wete it wel, that the Cristens were sore damaged /
 but as the veray cronykle sayth, the sarasyns receyued
 4 there ouergrete damage & losse, For of them were
 slayn XL. M^l & more / and dured the batayH vnto
 euen tyme, that they withdrew them eyther other part
 to theire lodgyses. And on the morne the Caliphe, &
 8 the king^s anthenor, & the residu of theire people, with-
 drew them in to the Cite of Damaske. And whan the
 thre bretheren vnderstoð it, they went & lodged, with
 theire puyssaunce, tofore Damaske. And wete it wel,
 12 they were grety febled, & the more part of them hurt.
 And there they rested them by the space of VIII
¹dayes, without sawtyng ne scarmysshing.

Both sides are
hurt, but the
Saracens the
more.

The battle stops
at eventide.

Next morning
the Saracens,
greatly enfeb-
led, retire to
Damascus.

They rest viii.
days.

¹ fol. 171.

Urian and his
brethren

Thystorye sheweth vnto vs that the kyng Vryan
 16 and hys bretheren and the maister of Rodes were
 ryght dolaunt & wroth for the grete losse of theire peple.
 For wel they sawe that yf the sarasyns assembled new
 men, it myght come therof some euyl to them. For
 20 wel they had lost viii^m of theire men. But at that
 other part were the saudans al abashed. For they
 knew not the damage that the Crysten had receyued.
 And they had CounseyH that they shuld requyre kyng
 24 Vryan journey of traytye vpon fourme of peas / and so
 they dide / And the kyng hadd counseyH that he shuld
 be greable to it. And the iourney was assygned by
 thaccorde of bothe partes on the iii^{de} day atwix the
 28 lodgys & the toun / and were the trews graunted &
 were delyuereð good pledges & hostages of both partyes.
 And thenne came they of the toun to selle theire
 marchaundyse in to the Crystens oost. Thenne came
 32 to the iourney of traytye that was assigned the saudants
 and theire CounseyH. And of the other part came
 Vryan & hys bretheren, the maister of Rodes & theire
 baronye with them, and spake, & communyked togidre
 36 of one thinge & of other, / and dede so moch of eyther

see that if the
Saracens as-
semble new men
they may lose,
for they had lost
viii. M^l men.

But the sultans
are abashed, and
ask for a treaty.

It is granted.

The Saracens are to pay the Christians all the costs of their voyage,

and a yearly tribute to Urian and his heirs of xxx. Ml besaunts of gold;

1 fol. 171 b.

also they promise not to wage war against Urian, Guion, or the Master of Rhodes.

The brethren return to Jaffa, accompanied by the Saracen kings.

The sultan makes much of Geffray, but he will receive no gifts.

Urian and Guion take leave of Geffray and go to Jerusalem.

Geffray sails to Rochelle, where he is honourably received.

On the morn he rides to his father at Merment.

partye that they were accorded, and pacyfied by condycion that the Sarasyns shuld restore to the lordes Cristen all their expenses & costes made in their vyage, & to paye yerly vnto kyng Vryan & hys heyres for 4 euermore xxx^M besauns of gold / and trews were made betwene them for £ & one yere, and therof were lettres patentes sealed. And this couenaunt and trayte the sawdan of Barbarye that great douleur felt in 8 hys sholder for hys arme that ¹ was of / and the kyng of Anthioche / ratyfied, / promyttyng that neuer they shuld bere armes ayenst king Vryan, / ayenst Guyon of Armanye nor ayenst the maister of Rodes, nor their 12 peple / and that yf other kynges or prynces sarasyns wold attempte ony werre anenst them, they shuld lete them haue knowleche therof assoone as they might know it / and yf thurgh that cause they had werre 16 ayenst ony king or prynce, Vryan promysed them to socoure and gyue them comfort with all hys power, / & in lyke wyse kyng Guyon & the maister of Rodes promysed to them / And soone after the thre breþern 20 and their peple retourned to the port of Japhe. And the saudan of Damaske, the Calyphe of bandas, & the kyng Anthenor conueyed hym thither. And the sawdan made moche of Geffray, and proffred hym grete 24 yestes, but he wold nought receyue / but that he moche thanked hym of his curtoysye.

Thystorye sayth that Vryan & Guyon entred in to the see, & vowed themself to Jherusalem. Wher- 28 fore they toke leue of geffray their broþer, and hym moche thanked of hys noble ayde & socours / and syn they departed fro the porte of Japhe, and rowed toward Jherusalem. And Geffray toke hys way by the see 32 toward Rochelle, & saylled so long that he came there where as he was honourably receyued & gretly festyed. / And on the morn he departed, and rode with hys companye tyl he came to Merment, where he fond bothe 36

his fader & and his moder, that knew tofore how he &
 his brethern had wrought beyond the grete see &
 festyed hym gretly / raymondyn hys fader kept a grete
 4 feste & grete Court for joy that he had of his commyng.
 But soone aftir ¹came there tydynges that in the
 Countre of the Garend was a grete geaunt that by hys
 grete pryde & orgueyH, & by his grete strength held aH
 8 the Countre in subgection. For no man durst gaynsay
 his commandement. Of these tydynges was Raymondin
 ryght dolaunt; how be it he made of it no semblaunt,
 feryng that geffray shuld knowe & here of it. For he
 12 knew hym of so grete courage that he wold goo fyght
 with the geaunt yf he vnderstod where he was. But
 it might not be kept so secret but that geffray vn-
 derstode þe talkyng of hym / and that come to hys
 16 knowlege / he sayd in this wyse / 'how dyuel my
 bretheren and I haue subdued & made trybutary the
 saudan of damask & hys complyces, and that hound
 alone shal be suffred to hold my faders ryght enhery-
 20 taunce in subgection / by my sowle, in his euyl helthe
 he thought to vsurpe it, For it shal cost hym hys lyf yf
 I may.' Thenne came Geffray to hys fader, & thus
 said to hym. 'My lord, I merueyH of you that are a
 24 knight of so noble enterpryse how ye haue suffred so
 long of that hound Guedon the geaunt, that hath putte
 your countre of garande in subgection / by god, my
 lord, shame is therof to you.' Whan raymondin vnder-
 28 stod hym, he said / 'Geffray, fayre sone, wete it is not
 long syn we knowe therof / & that we haue suffred
 vnto your joyful commyng. For we wold not trouble
 the fest / but doubte you not, guedon shal haue hys
 32 payment after his deserte. He slew my granfader in
 the Counte of pouthieu, as it was told me in bretayn,
 whan I went thither for to fyght with Olyuer, sone to
 Josselyn, that betrayed my fader.' /

Raymondin gives
 a great feast for
 joy of his return.

¹ fol. 172.

Tidings come
 from Garend of
 a great giant who
 keeps the coun-
 try in subjection.

Raymondin hides
 his grief in fear
 that Geffray will
 see it.

Geffray swears
 that he will at-
 tack the giant.

He tells his father
 that he marvels
 that he has suf-
 fered Guedon to
 keep his country
 in subjection so
 long.

Raymondin says
 the giant shall
 have his pay-
 ment.

fol. 172 b.

Geffray says he
is ready to go
against him with
ten knights.

Raymondin sor-
rowfully con-
sents.

Geffray sets out
to find Guedon,

and men marvel
why he wants
him.

Geffray answers
that he brings
Guedon his pay-
ment for his
outrages.

1 fol. 173.

They tell Geffray
that a hundred
like him could
not withstand
the giant.

Geffray is con-
ducted near the
giant's dwelling.

Thanne ansuerd Geffray : ' I ne wot nor wyl not en-
quyre of thinges past, syth that my predecessours
haue therof had thonour & are come to theire aboute /
but at this tyme present that Iniurye shal be soone 4
mended yf it plese god & I may / and as touching your
personne ye ought not to meue your self for suche a
theef & palyard ; For I, with ten knyghtes of myn
houshold only for to hold me companye / not for ayde 8
that I wyl haue of them ayenst hym, I shal goo fyght
with hym' / And whan Raymondyn hys fader vnder-
stoode hys wordes he was dolaunt & sorowful, and thus
said to hym / ' sethen it may none other wyse be / goo 12
thou by the grace of god.' And thenne geffray toke
his leue of his fader & of hys moder, and putte hym
self on the way toward garande accompanied with x
knyghtes, and there where he passed by he enquired 16
after guedon where he might fynde hym / And wel it
is trouthe that it was tolde hym where the geaunt was /
But men were meruaylled, & asked of geffray why he
speryd after hym. ' By my feyth,' ansuerde geffray, 20
' I bryng hym the trybut & payment that he by his
foly & oultrage thaketh vpon my faders lordship / but
it is neyther gold ne syluer / but it is only the poynte
of my spereheed, For none other payment he shal re- 24
ceyue of me but strokes of my swerde withal.' And
whan the good peple herd hym thus speke, they said
to hym in this wyse : ' By my feyth, geffray, ye vnder-
take grete folly, ¹For an hondred suche as ye be shulde 28
not be able to withstand hys cruelte.' 'doubte you
not,' said geffray / ' but lete me haue the feer alone' /
and they held theire peas, For they durst not make hym
wroth. For moche they fered hys fyersnes & yre, of 32
whiche he was replenysshed / but þey conduyted hym
vnto a leghe nygh to the sayde geauntis retrette or
pryue dwellyng / and þene they sayd to geffray : ' Sire,
ye may lightly fynde hym at yonder place within the 36

forest' / and geffray ansuerd, 'I wold fayne see hym,
 For to fynd hym I am come hither' / And here
 cesseth thystorye to speke of geffray / and sheweth of
 4 Raymondyn & of Melusyne. /

The veray and trew hystorye witnesseth that Ray-
 mondin & Melusyne were at merment making
 grete joye for the prosperous estate & good Fortune of
 8 theire children; but this joye was soone tourned to
 grete sorowe, For as ye haue herd how thystorye saith
 tofore that Raymondin promysed to Melusyne that
 neuer on the satirday he shuld not enquire of her nor
 12 desyre to see her that day. It is trouth that on a
 Satirday a lytel byfore dyner tyme, Raymondyn vnder-
 stode that hys brother the Erle of Forests was come
 to Merment for to see hym & hys Noble Court.
 16 wherof Raymondin was ryght Joyous, but sith grete
 myschief came to hym therfore as herafter shal be
 shewed. Thenne made Raymondin grete apparayll &
 ryght noble for to receyue his brother / And shortly to
 20 shewe, he came & recountred hys brother ¹with noble
 company & welcommed hym honourably, & dide moche
 that one of that other, & went to chircheward togidre /
 And after the deuyne seruice was don they came
 24 agayn to the palleyes where al thinges were redy to
 dyner / they wesshe theire handes and syn sett them
 at dyner and þey were worshipfully serued / ha / las !
 thenne bygan a part of the douleur & heuynes. For hys
 28 brother coude not kepe hym, but he asked after Melu-
 syne, sayeng in this manere: 'My brother, where is
 my sustir Melusyne? lete her come, for moche I desyre
 to see her.' And Raymondyn, whiche thought none
 32 euyl, ansuerd, 'she is not here at this tyme / but to
 morne ye shal see her & shal make you good chere.'
 But for that ansuere the Erle of Forests held not hys
 peas / but thus said ayen to his brother: 'Ye are my
 36 brother / I owe not to hyde to you your dyshonour.

Raymondin and
 Melusine are at
 Merment mak-
 ing joy over the
 good fortune of
 their children,
 but great sorrow
 comes.

The history has
 told how Ray-
 mondin promised
 that he would
 never inquire
 after Melusine
 on Saturdays.

The Earl of
 Forest comes
 one Saturday.

¹ fol. 173 b.

After attending
 church they
 return to the
 palace,

and sit down to
 dinner.

The earl asks
 after Melusine,
 and says he de-
 sires much to
 see her.

Raymondin an-
 swers that he
 can see her next
 day.
 The earl says to
 Raymondin,
 'You are my
 brother, I cannot
 hide your dis-
 honour.'

One set of folk
says your wife
goes to another
man every Satur-
day,

and others that
she is a spirit of
the fairies, and
goes on Satur-
days to do pen-
ance.

I know not
which to be-
lieve.'

¹ fol. 174.

Raymondin rises
from the table
full of jealousy;
he girds on his
sword and goes
to the place
where Melusine
retires on Satur-
days.

He finds a strong
door,

and pierces a
hole in it with
his sword.

Now, fayre brother, wete it that the commyn talking of
the peple is, that Melusyne your wyf euery satirday in
the yere is with another man in auoultyre / & so blynd
ye are by her sayeng¹ that ye dare not enquere nor 4
knoweth wher she becommeth or gooth / and also other
sayen, & make them strong¹ that she is a spyryte of the
fayry, that on euery satirday maketh hir penaunce. I
wot not to whiche of bothe I shal byleue / and for 8
none other cause I am come hither but to aduertyse
you therof.' Whan Raymondin thenne vnderstod¹ these
wordes that his brother hym said he roos ¹fro the table
and entred in to his chambre, and anoone aH esprysed 12
with yre & Jalousy, withaH toke hys swerd¹ & girded
it about hym, & syn went toward the place where as
Melusyne went euery satirday in the yer / and whan
he cam there he fond¹ a doore of yron thikk & strong / 16
and wete it wel he had neuer be tofore that tyme so
ferre thitherward / and whan he perceyued the doore
of yron he toke hys swerd¹, that was hard¹ & tempered
with fyn stele, and with the poynte of it dyde so moche 20
that he perced the doore, and made a hoH in it, and
loked in at that hoH, and sawe thenne Melusyne that
was within a grete bathe of marbel stone, where were
steppis to mounte in it, and was wel xv foot of length; 24
and therin she bathed herself, makynge there her peny-
tence as ye shal here hereafter. /

Cap. XXXVII. Here aftir foloweth how
Raymondin by the admounesting of hys 28
brother beheld Melusyne hys wyf within
the bathe, wherfor he toke hys brother
the Erle of Forest in grete indignacion.

fol. 174 b.

Thystorye sayth in this partye that Raymondin 32
stode so long at the yron doore that he perced it
with the poynte of his swerd, wherby he might wel see

- aH that was *within* the Chambre / and sawe melusyno
 within the bathe vnto her naueH, in fourme of a woman
 kymbyng her heere, and fro the nauel downward in
 4 lyknes of a grete serpent, the tayH as grete & thykk as
 a bareH, and so long it was that she made it to touche
 oftymes, while that raymondyn beheld her, the rouf of
 the chambre that was ryght hye. And whan Ray-
 8 mondyn perceyued it, wete it wel that he was ryght
 dolaunt and sorowful & not *without* cause, and coude
 neuer hold hys tonge, but he said, 'My swete loue, now
 haue I betrayed¹ you, & haue falsed my couenaunt by
 12 the ryght fals admounestyng of my brother, and haue
 forsworne myself toward² you.' Raymondin thenne was
 smyten to the herte with suche sorow & dystresse that
 vnnethe he coude speke / and *pensefull with* a heuy
 16 contenaunce retourned hastily toward³ hys chambre, and
 toke some wax wherwith he went & stopped the hoH
 that he had made at the doore of yron, and syn came
 agayn to the haH where he found⁴ hys brother. And
 20 thenne whan therle of Forest perceyued hym and sawe
 hys heuy contenaunce / wel supposed he that he had
 fond⁵ Melusyne in some shamful fayt, and said to him
 in this wyse: 'My brother, I wist it wel / haue ye not
 24 fond⁶ as I said?' Thenne cryed Raymondin to hys
 brother of Forest in this manyere:⁷ 'Voyde this place,
 fals traytour, For thurgh your fals reporte I haue falsed
 my feyth ayenst the moost feythfullest & truest lady
 28 that euer was borne. ye are cause of the losse of al my
 worldly joye & of my totaH destruction / by god, yf I
 bylened my courage, I shuld make you to dey now of
 an euyl deth / but rayson naturel kepeth & deffendeth
 32 me therfro, bycause that ye are my brother / goo your
 way & voyde my syght, that al the grete maisters of

Raymondin sees
Melusine in the
bath,

half woman, half
serpent.

He becomes
sorrowful, and
laments that
he has betrayed
her.

¹ fol. 175.

He returns ha-
stily to his cham-
ber, to procure
wax to stop the
hole in the door.

This done he re-
turns to the hall,

and orders his
brother out of
the place,

and tells him
that were he not
his brother he
should die.

¹ Fr.: *Fuiez d'icy, faultx triste, car vous m'avez fait, par
votre tresmaucais rapport, ma foy parjurer contre la plus
loyalle et la meilleure des dames qui oucques naquit, apres celle
qui porta notre seigneur Ihesucrist.*

The earl and his
people ride home
as fast as they
can.

He repents of his
foolish enter-
prise.

¹ fol. 175 b.

Raymondin cries,
'Alas, Melusine,
I have lost you
for ever.'

He upbraids
Fortune,

that made him
slay his uncle.

and now will
make him lose
his lady.

heH may conduyte you thither' / And whan the
Erle of Forest apperceyued Raymondyn his brother
that was in so grete yre, he went out of the halle & aH
his peple, & mounted on horsbak and rode as fast as 4
they might toward Forests ryght pensefuH & heuy,
repentyng hym of hys folyssh enterpryse; for he knew
wel that Raymondin his brother wold neuer loue hym
nor see hym. Here I leue to speke ¹of hym, & shal 8
shewe you of Raymondin that entred in to his chambre
wooful & angre. /

'**H**alas, Melusyne,' sayd Raymondin, 'of whom aH
the world spake wele, now haue I lost you for 12
euer. Now haue I fonde the ende of my Joye / and
the begynnyng is to me now present of myn euerlast-
yng heuynes / Farwel beaute, bounte, swetenes, amy-
ablete / Farwel wyt, curtoysye, & humilite / Farwel al 16
my joye, al my comfort & myn hoop / Farwel myn
herte, my prowes, my valyaunce, For that lytel of
honour whiche god had lent me, it came thurgh your
noblesse, my swete & entierly belouyd lady. Ha / a, 20
falsed & blynd Fortune, aigre, sharp, & byttir / wel hast
thou ouerthrawn me fro the hiest place of thy whele
vnto the lowest part of thy mansyon or dwellyng¹ place,
there as Jupyter festyeth with sorow & heuynes, the 24
caytyf & vnhappy creatures / be *pou* now cursed of
god. by the I slough ayenst my wyH my lord, myn
vncle, the whiche deth thou sellest me to dere. *helas!*
thou had putte and sette me in high auctoryte thurgh 28
the wyt and valeur of the wysest, the fayrest, & moost
noble lady of al other / and now by the / fals blynde
traytour and ennyous, I must lese the sight of her of
whom myn eyen toke theire fedyng¹. thou now hatest / 32
thou now louest, thou now makest / thou now vndost /
in the, nys no more surety ne rest than is in a fane
that tourneth at al windes. *Halas / *helas!** my ryght
swete & tendre loue / by my venymous treson I haue 36

maculate your excellent fygure / *helas!* myn herte & al
 my wele ye had^t heeled me clene of my first soore / yf
 I haue now rewarded you therfore. Certaynly yf I
 4 now lese you / none other choys is to me / ¹but to take
 myn vtermost exilt there as neuer after no man lyuyng
 shaH see me.'

He cries that he
 will

¹ fol. 176.

go into exile if
 he loses her,

8 **H**ere sayeth thistorye, that in suche *doleur* & be-
 wayHinges abode raymondin al that nyght tyl it
 was day light. And as sone as *aurora* might be per-
 ceuyed, Melusyne came & entred in to the chambre /
 and whan Raymondyn herd^t her come he made sem-
 12 blaunt of slepe. She toke of her clothes, and than al
 naked layed herself by hym. And thenne bygan Ray-
 mondyn to sighe as he that felt grete *doleur* at herte /
 and Melusyne embraced hym, & asked what hym eyled,
 16 sayeng in this wyse: 'My lord, what eyleth you, be ye
 syke?' And whan Raymondin sawe that she of none
 other jing^t spake, he supposed that she nothing had
 knowen of this faytte / but for nought he bylenued soo,
 20 For she wyst wel that he had not entamed^t nor shewed
 the matere to no man / Wherfor she suffred at that
 tyme & made no semblaunt therof / wherfore he was
 right Joyous, and ansuer^t to her: 'Madame, I haue be
 24 somewhat euy^l at ease & haue had an *axez*² in maner
 of a contynue.' 'My lord,' said Melusyne, 'abasshe you
 not, For yf it plesse god ye shal soone be hole.' And
 thenne he that was right joyous said^t to her, 'By my
 28 feyth, swete loue, I fele me wel at ease for your
 commyng' / and she said, 'I am perof glad' / and
 whan tyme requyred they roos and went to here masse /
 and soone after was the dyner redy / and thus abode
 32 Melusyne with Raymondyn al that day / and on the
 morne she toke leue of hym & went to Nyort, where
 she bylded a fortresse. ³And here seaceth thistorye of
 her / and retourneth to speke of *geffray*.

and bewails all
 the night long.

In the morning
 Melusine re-
 turns.
 Raymondin
 feigns sleep.

Melusine lies by
 him. He sighs.

Melusine in-
 quires what is
 wrong.

Raymondin
 thinks she does
 not know of his
 deed.

She does, but
 makes no show
 of her know-
 ledge.

He replies he has
 a fever.
 Melusine says he
 will soon be well.

He says he is
 better since her
 return.

Melusine goes to
 Niort and builds
 a fortress.

³ fol. 176 b.

² Fr. *un peu de fièvre en manière de continue*.

Geffray is received with joy in Garendé.

He asks after Guedon, and is taken to his tower of Mermount.

His guides leave.

Geffray dismounts and arms himself.

He tells his knights to wait for him in the valley, and bids them come to him when they hear his horn.

Geffray mounts to the tower.

* fol. 177.

He calls to the sleeping giant,

Here sayth thystory, that Geffray came in garande, where as he was receyued *with* gret joye / and he asked where the geant guedon held hym self / and, as before is said, they conduyted hym, and shewed to 4 hym the strong tour of Mermount, where the geaunt was, & said: 'Sire, wete it / that yf ye byleue vs, it shal suffyse you to haue sene the toure, & shal retourne 8 *with* vs; For as touching our personnes, we shal goo no neer *pat* horryble geaunt, algaf you to eyther of vs your pesaunt or weyght of fyn gold.' 'By my feyth, sires,' said geffray, 'I thanke you moche, that thus ferre ye haue brought me.' 12

Geffray thenne, as thystory saith, descendid from his hors, & armed hym, and syn girded hys swerd¹ about hym, & remounted on horsback; and after toke hys sheld, & heng it tofore hys brest; & 16 toke a clubbe of stele, & faste it at tharsons of his sadeH; and syn toke a trompe of yuory, and heng it at hys neck behynd; and syn asked hys spere / and thenne said to his tene knightes, in this manere: 20 'Fayre lordes, abyde me in this valey / and yf god graunte me the vycторы of the geaunt, I shal thenne blowe this horne / and whan ye shal here it, ye shal lyghtly come to me.' And they were dolaunt that he 24 wold not suffre them to go *with* hym, and bade hym farweH, prayeng god for hys good spede. Thenne departed the valyaunt & hardy geffray, and mounted the montayne; and anoone cam to the first gate of the 28 toure, & found it open / thenne entred he in to the bassecourt, & went toward the dongeon, that strong was to *meruayH*. And whan he was nygh, he beheld it, & moche ²played hym the facion and byldyng of 32 hit; but he sawe the brydge, that was drawen vp. For the geante slepte. Thenne he cryed *with* a hye voys, sayeng in this manere: 'hourys sone & fals geaunt,

¹ *hys swerd* twice in MS.

- cōme speke *with* me! For I bryng to the / the syluer
that the people of my lord, my fader, owen to the.
And, for certayn, geffray cryed so long that the geaunt
4 awacked, & came at a wyndowe, and beheld geffray,
armed of al pyeces, mounted vpon a courser, that held
hys spere couched / and thus bygan to crye, with a
lowde voyce, 'knyght! what wold thou haue?' 'By
8 my sowle,' said geffray, 'I seke for the, & for none
other / and I come hither to chalange the, and bring
with me the trybut that thou hast ouersette vpon the
people of my lord, Raymondyn of Lusynen, my fader.'
- 12 Thenne whan the geant vnderstode geffray, he was
nygh aragid & mad, that of one knight alone was so
bold to make hym warre, & had sette hym so nygh hys
place. but, notwithstanding, when he had wel aduysed
16 hym, he consydered in hym self that he was a man of
grete valyaunce. Thenne the geaunt armed hymself,
and laced the taches of hys helmet; & toke a grete
barre of yron, and a grete sythe of stele, & came to
20 the brydge, and lete it fall; & came in the bassecourt,
& demanded of geffray: 'What art thou, knight, that
art so bold to come hither?' And geffray ansuerd, in
this manere: 'I am geffray with the grete teeth, sone
24 to Raymondyn of Lusynen, that comeneth hither to
challenge the patiz or trybut, that thou takest thurgh
thy grete pryde, of my lord my faders peple.' Thenne
whan Guedon vnderstod it, he bygan to lawhe, and to
28 hym thus said: 'By my feyth, poue fole, for thy grete
hardynes & the grete enterprise ¹ of thyn herte, I haue
pyte of the. Now wyl I shew to the curtoysye / that
is, that thou retourne lyghtly to make thy warre in
32 other place; For wete thou wel, yf now *with* the were
V. C suche foles as thyself art, yet coudest thou not
endure and *with*stand my puyssaunce. but for pyte
that I haue to putte to deth so hardy a knight, as I
36 suppose thou art, I gyue the lycence & congie to

who comes to his
window and asks
what he wants.

Geffray answers
he bears him his
tribute for his
misdoings.

The giant is
enraged;

he arms

and descends to
the bassecourt,
and again asks
who Geffray is.

He answers that
he is the son of
Raymondin, and
has come to chal-
lenge the tribute
he has heretofore
exactd.

Guedon laughs
at him,

¹ fol. 177 b.

and tells him to
go back, because
V. C like Geffray
could not over-
come him.

He says he will
remit the tribute
for a year.

Geffray is sorrow-
ful that the giant
appraises him at
so little.

He taunts Gue-
don that he is
afraid;

but the giant still
laughs at him.

Geffray there-
upon spurs his
horse and rides
against Guedon.

Geffray knocks
him down.

¹ fol. 178.

The giant rises,
and smites Gef-
fray's horse.

Geffray dis-
mounts and ap-
proaches the
giant with sword
drawn.
The giant comes
against him,

retourne to Raymondyn thy fader / goo thou lyghtly
hens / and for loue of the I shal forgyue to thy faders
peple the payement of a hoß yere of the trybut that
they owe me.' Thenne whan geffray *with* the grete 4
toth herd that the geaunt made so lytel of hym, & that
as nought he preysed hym, he was of it ryght dolaunt,
and said to hym in this wyse: 'Meschaunt creature,
thou alredy ferest me moch / I wyl wel thou wete that 8
of thy curtoysy I sett nought by, For thus spekest thou
for the grete feer that thou hast of my teeth. but wete
pou, for certayn, that I shal neuer departe fro this place
vnto that tyme I haue separed the lyf fro thy body / 12
and therfor, haue pyte of thyself, & not of me, For I
hold the for deed where as thou art / & ryght foorth I
deffye ye.' And whan the geaunt herd hym, he made
semblaunt of lawghing¹, sayeng al this: 'Geffray, fool, 16
thou comcest in to batayß, & thou mayst not endure
one stroke of me only, without I felle the to þe erthe.'
And thenne geffray, without ony more sayeng¹, smote
hys hors with hys sporys, and charged hys spere, & 20
dressed hym toward the geaunt, asmoche as the hors
might ranne; and strak hym through the brest by suche
strength that he bare hym to the ground, the bely
vpward. ¹but the geaunt stert vp lyghtly, in grete 24
yre, & as geffray passed by, he smote hys hors behynd
with hys sythe of fyn stele / and whan geffray wyst
it, he descended lyghtly from hys hors, & came toward
the geaunt, the swerd drawn. and thenne came the 28
geaunt toward hym, holding his sythe in his hand:
where as was grete batayß.

Cap. XXXVIII. How geffray slough Gue-
don, the geaunt, in garande.

32

and raises his
scythe to smite
Geffray,

Al thus, as ye haue herde, geffray was on foot
tofore the geaunt, that held his sythe in his fyst,
& supposed to haue smyte geffray / but he bare

- it vp / & with that, he smote with hys swerd¹ vpon the haffe¹ of the geantis sythe, that it fel¹ in two pyeces.
- And thenne the geaunt toke hys flayel of yron, & gaf
 4 geffray a grete buffet vpon his bassynet, wherwith he was almost astonyed. Thenne came ²Geffray toward hys hors, that laye on the erthe, & toke hys clubbe of yron, that hyng at tharsons of hys sadel, & lightly
 8 tourned toward the geaunt, that haunced hys flayel, supposyng¹ to dyscharge it vpon geffray / but geffray, that was pert in armes, smote with hys clubbe suche a stroke vpon the flayel, that he made it to flee out of the
 12 geantis handes. And thenne the geaunt, full of yre, put hys hand in hys bosom, where were thre hamers of yron ; of the whiche he toke one, & casted it by suche radeur, that yf geffray had not receyued that strok vpon
 16 his clubbe, he might haue be myschieuyd therwith / by the force wherof hys clubbe flogh out of hys handes : and the geaunt toke it vp / but geffray drew lightly his swerd¹, & came to the geaunt, that supposed to haue
 20 smyte geffray with the clubbe of stele on the heed / but geffray, that was light & strong, fled the stroke, & the geaunt faylled ; & the stroke fel¹ to therth, by the force wherof the heed of the clubbe entred in to the grounde
 24 a large foot deep. And thenne geffray smote the geaunt vpon the ryght arme with hys swerd¹, in suche vyolence, & hys swerde was so sharp & trenchaunt, that he made it to flygh fro hys body to the erthe. Thenne was pe
 28 geant gretly abasshed, whan he sawe thus his arme lost / notwithstanding, he haunced his swerd¹ with hys other hand¹, and trowed to haue smyte geffray at herte / but geffray kept hym wel therfro, & smote the geaunt
 32 vpon the legge, vnder the knee, by suche strength that he smote it in two. Thenne the geaunt fel¹, & gaf suche an horryble crye, that al the valey sowned perof, so that they that bode for geffray, her¹ it / but they

who cuts it in halves.

The giant takes his flail and smites Geffray.

² fol. 178 b.

Geffray takes his iron club

and knocks the flail out of the giant's hands.

The giant throws a hammer at Geffray

and drives his club out of his hands.

The giant thinks to hit Geffray,

but he flees the stroke.

Then Geffray smites off the giant's right arm.

The giant tries to strike at Geffray with the other hand, but he cuts the giant's leg in two.

The giant falls, and utters a horrible cry.

¹ Fr. *manche*, a haft or handle. Written 'haste' in MS.

1 fol. 179.

Geffray cuts off
the giant's head.
He blows his
horn, and the
people laud God
when they know
the giant is dead.

Geffray tells
them that the
giant will never
trouble them
again.

knew not the certayn what it was / but ¹alwayes they
had grete meruayH of that horryble sowne. Thenne
geffray cutte the taches of the geant helmet, and after
cutte of his heed / and syn toke hys horne, & blew it; 4
Wherby his peple, that were in the valey, might here
it / and so dide other that were of the countre / and
by þat they knew the geaunt was deed; wherof they
gaaf lawdyng^t to our lord god deuoutely. and imme- 8
diatly they mounted the mountayne, & came to the
place, where they fonde geffray, that said to them of the
Countre / 'this fals traytour geaunt shal neuer more
patyse you, For he as now this tyme present, hath 12
neyther lust nor talent to aske ony tribut of you.' And
whan they perceyued the body & the heed of the
geaunt, lyeng in two partes, they were al abasshed of
hys gretnes, For he was XV foot of lengthe / sayeng to 16
geffray, that he had enterprysed a grete faytte, to haue
putte hym self in so grete parel tassayH suche a
dyueH / 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'the parel is
past. For, fayre lordes, I wyl that ye knowe / thing^t 20
neuer bygonne / hath neuer ende / In euery thing^t
most be bygynnyng^t, tofore the ende commeth.'

2 fol. 179 b.

²Cap. XXXIX. How Froymond, brother to
Geffray, was professed monke at Mayl- 24
lezes, by consentement of hys fader &
moder.

The tidings of
Geffray's deed
are spread in the
country.
Geffray sends the
giant's head to
his father.

Moche were thenne the knightes abasshed, as
thistorye reherceth, of this that geffray had 28
slayn the geaunt, that was so grete & mighty. And
the tydinges therof were spread in the Countre, & in the
marches about. And also geffray sent, by two of hys
knightes, to hys fader, the heed of the geaunt. And 32
in the meane season he went & dysported hym in the
Countre, where as he was gretly fested, & receyued

with grete joye, & presented with gret ryches. Here I
 shal leue to speke of hym / & shal shew you of Froy-
 mond, hys brother, who that prayed so moche hys fader
 4 and his moder, that they were greable that he shuld be
 professed monke at Maylleses / & so he was shorne, by
 the consentement of hys fader, & of ¹his moder;
 Wherof thabbot & aH conuent was ryght joyous.
 8 And wete it wel, there were within the place to the
 nombre of an hondred monkes. And yf they had
 thenne grete joye of Froymonds professyon / it was
 afterward reuersed in to grete douleur / as ye shal here
 12 hereafter / but wete it wel, that it was not thrughe the
 faytte of Froymond, For he was right deuoute, & ledd
 a relygious lyf / but by the rayson of hym came to
 the place a merueyllous auenture. It is trouth that the
 16 two forsaid knightes that geffray sent vnto hys fader
 with the heed of the geant, rode tyl they came to
 merment, wher they fond^t Raymondin, & presented
 hym with the heed of the geaunt, wherof he was joyful.
 20 And the heed was moche loked on / & euery man
 meruaylled how geffray durst assay^H hym. And thenne
 Raymondin sent a *lettre* to geffray, how Froymond^t, his
 brother, was professed monke at thabbey of maylleses.
 24 *helas!* that message was the cause of the trystefuH
 douleur of the departyng of his wyf, wherof neuer
 after he nor she had hertly joye, as ye shal here her-
 after. Trouth it was that Raymondyn gaaf thenne
 28 grete yestes to the two knightes, and delyuered them
 the *lettre*; and sayd that they shuld grete wel geffray,
 & that they shuld bere the hed^t of the geaunt to
 Melusyne, that was at Nyort: For it was not ferre out
 32 of theire way. Thenne so departed the two knightes,
 & held^t on theire way tyl they came to nyort, where
 they fonde their lady; the whiche they salued, &
 presented her with the heed of the geaunt. Wherof
 36 she was ryght joyous, ²and sent it to Rochelle, and was
 MELUSINE.

Froimond prays
 his father and
 mother to
 allow him to
 become a monk
 at Mailleses.

¹ fol. 180.

They consent;
 he is shorn.

The abbot is
 glad,

but Froimond's
 profession causes
 them much pain
 afterward.

The knights
 bring Raymondin
 the giant's head.

He sends back
 word to Geffray
 how Froimond
 was professed
 monk.

He gives the
 knights gifts,

and bids them
 take the head to
 Melusine.

² fol. 180 b.

X

She has it set
upon a spear
at a gate of
Rochelle.

sette vpon a spere at the gate toward guyenne. And
Melusyne gaf the two knightes ryche yestes; and after
that toke theire leue, and went toward the toure of
mountyouet,¹ where geffray was for hys dysport & solas. 4
And here cesseth thystory, & sheweth other matere. /

Thystory sayth that the tydyng was anoone spred
thrughe the Countre, how geffray with the grete
tooth slough the geaunt guedon in batayH, and aH they 8
that herd therof were gretly abasshed. And for that
tyme regned in northomberland a geaunt that hyght
Grymault, & was the moost cruel that euer man sawe,
For he was xvii foot of heyght / and that same grete 12
dyueH held hym nygh a mountayne called Brombelyo /
and wete it wel for trouth he had dystroyed aH the
Countre about in so moche that there ne durst no per-
sonne inhabyte nygh hym by eyght or nene leghes / & 16
so aH the Countre was desert & wyldernes. It befelH
that in Northomberland came tydynges how geffray
with the grete tooth had slayn the geaunt guedon.
Wherfore they of the same Countrey made a grete 20
counseyH, that they shuld sende to geffray, & profre
hym so he wold delyuere them of the cruel murdrer
grymault, euery yere duryng hys lyf he shuld haue
x. M^l besans of gold; & yf he hath yssue male of hys 24
body they to possesse the said annuel rente of x. M^l
besans / and yf he hath a doughter to hys heyre, we to
be quytte after his decesse of our sayd trybute. Wher-
upon they choose eyght of þe moost noble personnes 28
of theire Countre, & sent hem in ambaxade toward
geffray / the whiche departed & came to Mountyouet,
where they fonde geffray, to ²whom they proposed the
cause of theire commyng. And thenne whan geffray 32
vnderstode it / he ansuerd nobly: 'Fayre lordes, I wyl
not reffuse your demande, how be it I shuld haue goon
thithir to fyght with þat geaunt, For I herd tydynges

There was a giant
in Northumber-
land named Gry-
mault,

xvii. foot high.

He lived at
Brombelyo,
and destroyed
the country for
nine leagues
round.

They hear in
Northumberland
of Geffray's deed,

and resolve to
ask him to de-
liver them from
Grymault.

Eight noble per-
sons are sent to
Geffray;

² fol. 181.

and when he
understands
their message he
promises to help
them.

¹ Fr. *Monjouet*.

of hym tofore your commyngⁱ, for the pyte that I haue
of the destruction of the peple, & also for to seke
honour. Wete it that now foorthwith I wyl departe
4 with you without ony lenger delay / and by the help
of god I suppose texille the geaunt.¹ And pey thenne
gaaf hym grete thankinges.

Cap. XL. How the two messangers of Ray-
8 mondin cam in garande toward geffray.

Thenne came the two knyghtes that he had sent
toward hys fader, and salued hym honourably,
and recounted hym the noble chere that they had
12 hadd of hys fader & of his moder, whiche ¹greted hym
wel: 'By my feyth,' said Geffray, 'that playseth me
wel.' and after they delyuered to hym the *lettre* from
hys fader, which geffray toke & opened it / the tenour
16 of whiche made mencon how Froymond his brother
was shorne monke at Mayllezes. And whan geffray
vnderstod it he was wroth, & shewed thenne so fel &
cruel semblaunt that there ne was so hardy that durst
20 abyde the syght of hym; but they all voyded the
place except the two knyghtes and the ambaxatours of
northomberland. /

In this party sheweth thistory, that whan geffray
24 knew the tydynges of Froymonds professyon he
was so dolaunt that almost he went fro his wyt. And
wete it wel that thenne he semed better to be araged
& madd than man with rayson. And he said in this
28 wyse: 'how deueh! had not my fader & my moder
ynough for to entreteyn & kepe thestate of Froymond
my brother, & hym to haue maryed som noble lady of
the land / and not to haue made hym a monke / by
32 god omnipotent these flatterers monkes shal repente
them perof, For they haue enchaunted my lord my
fader, & haue drawen Froymond with them for to fare

The knyghts
salute Geffray,
and tell him of
the noble cheer
they had at his
father's.

¹ fol. 181 b.

They deliver the
letter which tells
how Froymond
had professed
himself monk.

Geffray waxes
wroth at the
news.

He seems to be
mad,

and declares that
the monks shall
repent of their
guile and their
greed.

Geffray tells the embassy that they will have to wait.

With his ten knights he goes to Mailleses,
¹ fol. 182.

and finds the monks in chapter.

He upbraids them for having shorn his brother monk.

The abbot denies having so counselled him.

Froimond comes forward and says he became monk of his free will.

Geffray says he will pay him with the rest.

þe better by hym / but by the feyth that I owe to god
 I shal pay them so, therfore, that they shal neuer haue
 neyther lust ne talent to withdraw no noble man to be
 shorne monke with them.' And thenne he said to the 4
 bassade of Northomberland: 'Sires, ye muste sojourne
 a while & abyde my retourn hither / For I must goo
 to an affayre of myn that toucheth me moche.' And
 they that knewe hys wrathe & anger ansuerd: 'My 8
 lord, so shaþ we doo with a good wyþ.' Thenne made
 geffray his ten knightes to mounte on horsback / and
 also he armed hym and lept on hys hors / & syn de-
 parted ¹fro Mountyoued, esprysed with grete yre ayenst 12
 the abbot & Conuent of Maylleses / and at that tyme
 the said abbot & hys monkes were in Chapitre. And
 geffray thanne come to the place, entred, the swerd
 gird about hym, in to the Chapitre. And whan he 16
 perceyued thabbot & hys monkes, he said al ou hye to
 them: 'Ye false monkes / how haue ye had the hardy-
 nes to haue enchaunted my brother, in so moche that
 thrughe your false & subtyl langage haue shorne hym 20
 monke / by the teeth of god yl ye thought it, For ye
 shal drynk therfore of an euyl drynk.' 'helas! my
 lord,' said thabbot, 'for the loue of god haue mercy on
 vs / and suffre you to be enfourmed of the trouth & 24
 rayson, For on my Creatour, I nor none of vs aþ coun-
 seylylled hym neuer therto.' Thenne came Froymont
 forth, that trowed wel to haue peased the yre of
 geffray hys brother / and þus said: 'My² dere, dere 28
 brother / by the body & sowle which I haue gyuen to
 god, here is no personne, nor within this place that euer
 spake ony word to me touching my professyon, For I
 haue it doon of myn owne free wyll & through deuo- 32
 cion.' 'By my sowle,' said geffray, 'so shalt thou be
 therfore payed with the other, For it shal not be
 wytted³ me to haue a brother of myn a monke' / and

² By in MS. (Fr. Mon.)

³ Fr. *reprouché*.

with these wordes he went out of the Chapter, & shetted the doores fast after hym, & closed thabbot & the monkes thereynne / and incontynent he made al
 4 the meyne of the place to bryng there wode & strawe ynoughe al about the Chapter, and fyred it / & sware he shuld brezne them aH thereynne, & that none shuld escape. Thenne came the ten knyghtes foorth tofore
 8 geffray, whiche blamed hym of þat horryble faytte / sayeng : ' that Froymond, his broþer, was in good purpos, & that happily thrughe hys ¹prayers & good dedes the sowles of his frendes & other myght be
 12 asswaged & holpen.' ' By the toeth of god,' sayd thenne geffray, ' nother he nor none monke in this place shal neuer syng masse nor say prayer, but they shal aH be bruled & brent.' Thenne departed the x
 16 knyghtes from hys presence / sayeng that they wold not be coulþable of that merueyllous werke.

He goes out of the chapter, closes all the monks inside, and has wood and straw brought, and swears he will burn them.

His knyghts re-monstrate with him,

¹ fol. 182 b.

without avail,

and leave him because they will not be culpable of such a deed.

Cap. XLI. How Geffray with the grete
 toeth fyred thabbey of Mayllezes, & brent
 20 bothe thabbot & al the monkes there.

In this partye, sayth thystorye, that Geffray anoon
 after that the ten knyghtes were departed fro hym, he toke fyre at a lampe within the chirche, & sette the
 24 fyre in the strawe aH about the Chapter, where as were in thabbot, & al the monkes of the place, & hys brother Froymond with them. It was a pyteous syght, For as soone as ²the monkes sawe the fyre they bygan to
 28 crye piteously, & to make bytter & doulorous bewaylynges, but al that preuaylled them nought. What shuld I make long compte? Wel it is trouth, that all the monkes were brent / and wel the half of the said
 32 Abbey or euer geffray departed thens. That don he came to hys hors & lepte vp / but whan he cam in to the felde he retourned hys hōrs, & beheld toward

Geffray takes fire from a church lamp and lights the straw.

² fol. 183.

The monks cry bitterly when they see the fire.

They are all burnt, and half of the abbey.

Geffray feels remorse, and begins to sigh bitterly.
He upbraids himself,

and is full of despair, and like to slay himself.

His knights approach, and one says that it is too late to repent.

Geffray rides swiftly to Mountjouet,

and gets ready to go with the ambassadors.

A messenger from Mailleses recounts to Raymondin the piteous tidings

² fol. 183 b.

of the burning of the abbey and the monks.

Raymondin says he cannot believe the story.

thabbaye / & perceyuyng that grete myschief & the
dommage that he had don there, & his vnkynd & ab-
homynable deelyng, remors of conscience smote the
herte of hym, and bygan to syghe and bewayH byttirly / 4
sayeng vnto him self in this wyse : ‘helas! fals, wycked,
& vntrue prodytour¹ & enemy of god / woldest thou
that men dide to the that / whiche thou hast doo to
the true seruantes of god? / nay certayn.’ And thus 8
blamed & wytted hym self, so that no man myght
thinke the dyscomfort & grete dyspaire that he thenne
toke / & wel I byleue that he had slayn hym self with
hys owne swerde yf it thenne had not fortunied that 12
hys ten knyghtes cam to hym there / one of the whiche
bygan to hym saye / ‘ha / a, my lord, ouer late is this
repented.’ And whan geffray vnderstode hym / he
thenne had greter despyte than tofore / but he dayned 16
not ansuere to the knyght, but rode so fast toward the
toure of Mountyouet, that with grete peyne myght his
men folow hym / & so long rode he tyl he came
thither / And thenne made his apparayH for to goo 20
with the ambaxatours there as they shold conduyte
hym / & toke with hym but his x knyghtes. And
here seaceth thystorye of hym, & speketh of Ray-
mondin his fader / 24

Here sayth thistory, that a messenger came toward
Raymondin at merment that came fro mail-
leses,² and after hys obeyssaunce recounted to Raymon-
dyn ryght pyteous tydynges, sayeng to hym in this 28
manere : ‘My lord, wel it is trouth, that geffray with
the great toth your son hath take so grete malencolye
& suche dueyl of the professyon of your son Froymond
that he is com to maylleses, & there he hath fyred the 32
Abbay / & within the chapter brent & bruled all the
monkes, pryour, & Abbot.’ ‘What sayst thou?’ sayd
than Raymondyn / ‘that may not be / I can not beleue

¹ Fr. *proditeur*.

it.' 'By my feyth, my lord,' said the messenger, 'it is
trouth that I telle you; &, morouer, your son Froy-
mond is brent & deed with them / and yf ye byleue
4 me not make me to be putte in to pryson, & yf ye
fynde otherwyse than I saye, lete me be hanged ther-
fore.' Thenne Raymondyn sorowfuH & heuy mounted
foorthwith on horsbak, & toke hys way toward mayl-
8 leses as fast as hys hors myght bere hym / and hys
men, who pat myght folowed hym / and he neuer
seaced tyl he cam thither / where he fonde, as the mes-
sager said, & sawe the grete douleur & myschief that
12 geffray had don. Wherof he toke suche yre & anger
at herte, that almost he was out of hys wyt. 'ha / a,'
sayd he, 'Geffray, thou haddest the fayrest begynnyng
of hye prowes & cheualrye to haue come to the degree
16 of high honour more than any prynee son lyuyng at
this day / and now through thy grete cruelte thou shalt
be reputed & holden vnworthy of al noble fayttes, &
abhomyned for cause of thys vnkyndnes & horryble
20 dede of al creatures. By the feyth that I owe to god,
I byleue it is but fantosme or spyryt werke of this
woman / and as I trowe she neuer bare no child that
shal at thende haue perfection, For yet hath she
24 brought none but that it hath some strange token / see
I not the ¹horryblenes of her son called Horryble, that
passed not vii yere of age whan he slew two squyers of
myn / and or euer he was thre yere old he made dye
28 two gentyl women his nourryces, thrugh hys bytting of
theire pappes? / sawe I not also theyre moder of that
satirday, whan my brother of Forestz to me brought
euyl tydynges of her / in fourme of a serpent fro the
32 nuel downward? / by god, ye / and wel I wote certayn /
it is som spyryt, som fantosme or Illusyon that thus
hath abused me / For the first tyme that I sawe her /
she knew & coude reherce all my fortune & auenture.'

But the messen-
ger says it is the
truth, and that
Froimond was
burnt with them.

Raymondin rides
to Mailleses,

and when he sees
the mischief

he complains of
Geffray,

and how he will
be hated for his
cruelty.

He cries that he
believes it is
spirit work.

He complains
that Melusine
never bore a
perfect child,
and of the
horribleness of
her son Horrible.

¹ fol. 184.

He speaks of
seeing Melusine
half woman, half
serpent, on a
Saturday,

and says he
believes her to
be a spirit.

Raymondin goes
to Mernent.
He retires to his
chamber

and makes pite-
ous lamentation.

The barons are
sad,

and send word
to Melusine at
Nyort,

but this aug-
ments the grief
of Raymondin
and Melusine.

¹ fol. 184 b.

When Melusine
reads the letter
she is sorrowful,
more for the
wrath of Ray-
mondin than
anything else.

She comes to
Lusignan,
where she looks
so sad,

and sighs so
much, that it is
pitiful to see her.

In this partye, sayth thystorye, that Raymondyn,
pensefull and wroth ouer meruayllously, departed
fro Mayllezes, & rode agayn toward Mernent. And
whan he was come thither, he alyghted, & went in to 4
hys chambre, where as he layed hym vpon a bed / and
there he made suche lamentacion, & so pyteous bewayl-
lynges, that there nys in the world herte so harde / but
that it had wepte to here hym. Therne were al the 8
barons ryght dolaunt / and whan they sawe that they
myght not gyue none allegeance to hys dolour, they
toke CounseyH that they shuld lete it wete to theire
lady Melusyne, whiche was at Nyort that tyme / and 12
thithier they sent a messenger, to recounthe to her al the
matere of the fayt. Halas! full euyl dide they, For
they augmented thereby bothe Raymondyn & Melusyne
in theyre douleur & myserye. Now bygynneth theire 16
hard & bytter departyng¹, eche fro other, whiche dured
to Raymondyn his lyf natural / & to Melusyne shal
laste her penitence vnto domysday. The messenger
thenne rode tyl he came to Nyort, & made his 20
obeyssaunce, & syn delyuered the *lettres* to his lady :
¹the whiche she toke, & opened it. And whan she
vnderstode the tenour of the *lettres*, she was ryght heuy
& dolaunt, & more for the yre & wrath of Raymondin 24
than for ony other thing¹; For she sawe wel that the
meschief that geffray had doon might none otherwyse
be as for that tyme present. She thezne made come
aH her people & aray, and sent for many ladyes & 28
damoysselles, for to hold her companye / and so de-
parted fro Nyort, & came to Lusynen / and there she
soiourned by the space of thre dayes / and euer she
was of symple & heuy contenaunce / and went al about 32
in the place, vp & doun, here & there / gyuyng ofte
syghes so grete that it was meruaylle & pyteous to
here / And the hystory & cronykle, whiche I byleue
be trew, sheweth to vs that wel she knew the douleur & 36

- sorow that was nygh her to come / and as to me, I
 byleue it fermely / but her peple thoughte nothing of
 that / but they trowed that it had be for cause of the
 4 grete myschief that was befeH through the fayttes of
 geffray, to thabbay of maylleses / and also for the
 wrathe & anger that Raymondyn toke therof. Melu-
 sync thenne, on the III^{de} day, departed fro Lusynen, &
 8 came to merment wel acompanyed of ladyes & damoy-
 selles, as tofore I haue sayd. And thenne the barons
 of the land, that were there assembled for to haue
 recomforted Raymondin, that they loued entierly / came
 12 ayenst her, & honourably receyued her / & sayd how
 they by no wyse coude make Raymondyn to leue hys
 dolour. 'Wel,' sayd she / 'doubte you no; For, by
 the grace of god, he shalbe soone recomforted.'
- 16 **M**elusine, the good lady, that thenne was wel
 acompanyed of many ladyes & noble damoy-
 selles, & of the barons of the land, entred in to þe
 Chambre where as Raymondin was in / the which
 20 chambre had regarde toward the gardyns, that ¹were
 commodious & delectables, and also to the feldes
 toward Lusynen. Thenne whan she sawe Raymondin,
 humbly & ryght honourably salued hym / but thenne
 24 he was so dolaunt & replenysshed with yre, that he to
 her ansuerd neuer a word / and thenne she toke the
 word, & sayd: 'My lord, grete symplenes & foly it is
 to you that men repute & hold so sage & so wyse a
 28 prynee / you thus to maynten & make suche sorowe of
 that thinge that may none other wyse be, & whiche
 may not be amended nor remedyed / ye argue ayenst
 the playsire & wyH of the Creatour, whiche all thinges
 32 created, & shal vndoo at al tymes whan it playse hym,
 by suche manere wyse aftir his playsire. Wete it that
 there nys so grete a synnar in the world / but that
 is more piteable & mysericordious whan the synnar
 36 repenteth hym, with herte contryte, of his mysdede &

She knows of the
 sorrow that is
 coming,

but her people
 think she is sad
 on account of
 Geffray's mis-
 chief.

She comes to
 Mernent,

where they re-
 ceive her honour-
 ably, and tell her
 of Raymondin's
 grief.

Melusine enters
 his chamber

¹ fol. 185.

and salutes him.

But he answers
 not a word.

Melusine chides
 him for his grief,

and says what is
 done cannot be
 undone,

and that God had allowed Geffray so to do because of the sins of the monks.

She says they have enough to rebuild the abbey, and to endow it richer than it was before,

and she hopes that Geffray will amend his life.

¹ fol. 185 b.

Though Raymondin knows she speaks wisely, he is so full of anger that in a cruel voice he cries,

synne / yf geffray, your sone & myn, hath doon that
oultrageous folye through his meruayllous courage, Wete
it certaynly that suffred god for cause of the monkes
mysdedes & synnes, whiche were of euyl, inordinate, & 4
vnreligious lyuyng / and wold our lord god haue them
to be punysshed in that manere wyse / how be it, that
it is vnknownen to creature humayne, For the jugements
of god be ryght secret & meruayllous. And, morouer, 8
my lord, thankyng to god, we haue ynough wherof to
do make ayen thabbey of Maylleses as fayre & better
than euer it was tofore, & to empossesse & endowe it
better & rychelyer, and therin to ordeyne greter nombre 12
of monkes than euer were there ordeyned. Also, yf it
playse god, geffray shal mende hys lyf, bothe toward
our lord god & the world. Wherfore, my lord, leue
your sorowe, I pray you.' Whan thenne Raymondyn 16
vn¹derstode Melusyne, he knew wel that she sayd
trouth of that she had sayd to hym / and that it was
best, after rayson, so to doo / but he was replenysshed
& perced with yre, that al rayson natural was fled & 20
goon from hym. And thenne, with a right cruel voyce,
he said in this manyere :

Cap. XLII. How Melusyne felle in a
swoune, for this that Raymondyn, her 24
lord, wyted her.

'Go hence, false
serpent!
Thou and thy
children are but
phantoms.

How can the
dead have life
again?

Froimond, your
only perfect
child, by devilish
art has suffered
death.

'**G**oo thou hens, fals serpente / by god! nother
thou nor thy birthe shalbe at thende but
fantosme / nor none child that thou hast brought shal 28
come at last to perfection / how shal they that are
brent & bruled haue their lyues agayn / goode fruyte
yssued neuer of the, saaf only Froymonde, that was
youen to god & shorne monke; the whiche, through 32
arte demonyacle, hath myserably suffred deth: For aH

they that are foursenyd¹ with yre obeye² the comande-
ments of the prynces of helle. And perfor, thorryble
& cruel geffray commanded of his masters, alle the
4 deuclles of helle, hath doon that abhomynable &
hydouse forfaytte, as to brenne hys owne propre brother
& the monkes, that had not deserued deth.' Thenne
whan melusyne vnderstode these wordes, she toke suche
8 douleur at herte, that foorthwith she felH in a swoone
doun to therthe, & was half an ooure long that nother
aspyracion nor breth was felt nor perceyued in her, but
as she had be deed. And thenne was Raymondyn
12 sorowfuller & more wroth than euer he was tofore, For
thenne he was cooled of his yre, & bygan to make
grete dueyH, & moche repented hym of that he had
sayd / but it was for nought, For þat was to late / And
16 thenne the baronnye of the land, & the ladyes & damoy-
selles were ryght sory & dolaunt, and toke vp the lady,
& layed her on a bed / and so moche they dide, that
she came ayen to her self. And whan she myght
20 speke, she loked on Raymondyn pyteously, and said /

² fol. 186.

Geffray burnt his
brothers by com-
mand of his
masters, the
devils of hell.'

Melusine is over-
come by his cruel
words, and
swoons.

He repents, but
it avails nought.

When Melusine
comes to herself
she looks pite-
ously at Ray-
mondin and says,

Cap. XLIII. It is shewed hereafter, how
Melusyne came to her self ayen, and
spake to Raymondyn.

24 'H a / a Raymondyn / the day that first tyme I
sawe the was for me ryght doulourous and
vnhappy / in an euyl heure sawe I euer thy coynted
body, thy facion, & thy fayre fygure / euyl I dyde to
28 desire & coueyte thy beaute, whan thou so falsly hast
betrayed me / how wel thou art forsworn toward me,
whan thou putttest thy self in payne to see me / but for
this, that thou haddest not yet dyscouered nor shewed
32 to no man nor woman, myn herte forgafe³ the / and no
mencion I neuer shuld haue had made therof to the /

'It was an evil
hour when I first
saw your figure.

When you falsely
betrayed me I
forgave you be-
cause you kept
my secret.

³ fol. 186 b.¹ Fr. *enforceez*.

Our love is now
turned to hate.

If you had kept
your oath, I was
to be exempt
from torment.

I should have
been buried at
Lusignan,

and my anniver-
sary would have
been devoutly
kept.

But now my fate
is altered.

I must suffer
grievous peni-
tence till dooms-
day.

Melusine shows
such grief that
all pity her.

The heart of Ray-
mondin is nearly
broken by her
grief.

He kneels to
Melusine and
beseeches her
pardon.

Melusine calls on
God to forgive
him,

and god shuld haue pardoned the. Halas, my frende /
now is our loue tourned in hate, douleur & hardnes /
oure solace, playsire & joye ben reuersed in byttir
teerys & contynuel wepynges, and our good happ is 4
conuerted in ryght hard & vnfortunate pestilence /
Halas, my frend! yf thou haddest not falsed thy
feythe & thyn othe, I was putte & exempted from all
payne & tourment, & shuld haue had all my ryghtes, & 8
hadd lyued the cours natural as another woman; &
shuld haue be buried, aftir my lyf naturel expired,
within the chirche of our lady of Lusynen, where myn
obsequye & afterward my annyuersary shuld haue be 12
honourably & deuoutely don / but now I am, thurgh
thyn owne dede, ouerthrowen & ayen reuersed in the
greuouse and obscure penytence, where long tyme I haue
be in, by myn auenture: & thus I muste suffre & bere 16
it, vnto the day of domme / & all through thy falsed /
but I beseche god to pardonne the.' Melusyne began
therne to make suche douleur, that none was there that
sawe her but he wept for pyte. And whan Ray- 20
mondyn sawe her douleur & heuyenes, almost hys herte
brake for sorowe, in so moche that he nother herd, nor
sawe, nor coude hold contenaunce. /

Thystorye sayth that Raymondyn was right dolaunt; 24
and, for trouth, the true cronykle testyfyeth that
neuer no man suffred so grete dolour, without of his
lyf expired. but whan he was a lytel come to hys
mynde, & sawe Melusyne tofore hym, he kneeled doun 28
on hys knees, & joyntly¹ handes, thus bygan he to
saye: 'My dere lady & my frend, my wele, my hoop,
& myn honour, I beseche & pray you that it playse you
to pardonne me, & that ye wyl abyde with me.' 'My 32
swete frend,' sayd Melusyne, that saw the grete habund-
aunce of teerys fallyng fro hys eyen / 'he that is the
very forgyuer, creatour & omnipotent, forgyue you your

¹ Fr. *joignant*.

forfaytte ; For as touching myself, I forgyue & pardonne as she does ;
 you with al my very herte / but as to myn abydyng but declares that
 with you ony more / it is Impossible / for the veray God will not let
 4 jugge & almighty god wold neuer suffre me ¹to doo her abide with
 soo.' him. ¹ fol. 167.

Cap. XLIV. How Raymondyn & Melusyne
 felle bothe in a swoune.

8 **A**nd with thoo wordes Melusyne toke vp Raymon- Melusine raises
 dyn, her lord / and thenne, as they wold haue Raymondin.
 embraced & kyssed eche other, they fell both at ones in
 a swoune, so that almost theire hertes brake for grete
 12 douleur : Certayn there was a pyteous syght. There
 wept & bewaylled barons / ladyes & damoyselles, sayeng
 in þis manere : 'Ha, fals Fortune ! We shal lese this
 day þe best lady that euer gouerned ony land / the
 16 moost sage / most humble / moost charytable & curteys
 of aH other lyuyng in erthe.' And they al lamented &
 bewaylled so pyteously, & rendred teerys in habund-
 ance, in so moche that it was a pyteous syght. Thenne
 20 retourned Melusyne to her self out of swounyng, and
 herd the heuynes & dolour that the baronne made for
 her departyng / and cam to Raymondyn, that yet laye
 on the grounde, & toke hym vp / and thenne to hym,
 24 in heryng of thassistaunce, she said in this manere /

Cap. XLV. How Melusyne made her testa-
 ment. /

28 **M**y lord & swete frend Raymondyn, Impossible
 is my lenger taryeng with you ; Wherfore
 lyst, & herke, & putte in mynde that I shal saye.
 Wete it, Raymondyn, that certayn after your lyf naturel
 expired, no man shal not empocesse nor hold your land
 32 so free in peas as ye now hold it, & your heyres &
 successours shal haue moche to doo / and wete it shal

'My sweet
 friend, it is im-
 possible to stay
 with you, there-
 fore listen and
 keep in mind
 what I say.
 After your life no
 man shall hold
 your land in
 peace.'

Your heirs
through their
folly shall lose
their inheritance.

¹ fol. 187 b.

Keep Geffray
with you, he will
prove a valiant
man. I will
take care of
Raymond and
Theoderic,
though after I go
you will never
see me again in
woman's form.
I bequeath Par-
tenay to Theo-
deric;

Raymond shall
be Earl of Forest;
Geffray will pro-
vide for himself.

I charge you to
put Horrible to
death.'

Raymondin asks
Melusine to stay
with him,

but she says that
it cannot be done.

She then kisses
him tenderly and
bids him adieu.

be ouerthrawn & subdued, through theire folly, from
theire honour & from theire ryght enherytaunce / but
doubte you not, For I shal help you duryng the cours
of your lyf naturel / and putte not geffray, oure sone, 4
fro your Court / he is your sone,¹ & he shal preue a
noble & valyaunt man. Also we haue two yong chil-
dren male, Raymond & theoderyk / of them I shal take
good heede / how be it, aftir my departyng / that ryght 8
soone shal be / ye shal neuer see me in no womans
fourme. And I wyl & bequethe to theodoryk, yongest
of all our children, the lordshipes with al thappurten-
aunces of Partenay / Vernon / Rochelle, & the port 12
there / And Raymond shal be Erle of Forestz / and as
touching geffray, he shal wel purueye for hym self.
Thenne drew she Raymodyn & hys CounseyH apart,
& sayd to them in this wyse: 'As touching our sone, 16
that men calle Horryble, that hath thre eyen / wete it
for certayn, yf he be lefte alyue / neuer man dide, nor
neuer shal doo, so grete domage as he shaH. Whier-
fore I pray & also charge you that, anoone aftir my 20
departyng, he be put to deth; For yf ye doo not soo /
his lyf shall fuH dere be bought, & neuer ye dide so
grete folye.' 'My swete loue,' sayd Raymodyn, 'there
shal be no fawte of it / but, for goddis loue, haue pyte 24
on yourself, & wyl abyde with me.' And she said to
hym: 'My swete frend, yf it were possyble / soo wold
I fayne doo / but it may not be. And wete it wel, that
my departyng fro you is more gryeuous & doubtous a 28
thousand tymes to me than to you / but it is the wyH
& playsire of hym that can do & vndoo al thinges.'
and, with these wordes, she embraced & kyssed hym
fuH tenderly / sayeng: 'Farwel, myn owne lord & 32
husbond; Adieu, myn herte, & al my joye; Farwel, my
loue, & al myn wele / and yet as long as thou lyuest, I
shal feed myn eyen with the syght of the / but pyte I
haue on the of this, that thou mayst neuer see me but 36

in horryble figure' / and therwith she lepte vpon the
windowe that was toward the felde & gardyns ayenst
Lusynen. /

She leaps to the
window,

4 Cap. XLVI. How Melusyne in fourme of a
Serpent flough out at a wyndowe.

¹ In this partye, saith thistorye, that whan Melusyne
was vpon the wyndowe as before is said, she
8 toke leue sore wepyng, and her commanded to all the
barons, ladyes, & damoysselles that were present / and
after said to Raymondyn: 'here be two rynges of gold
that be bothe of one vertue, and wete it for trouth that
12 as long as ye haue them, or one of them / you / nor
your heyres that shal haue them after you, shal neuer
be dyscomfyted in plee nor in batayll, yf they haue
good cause / nor they that haue them shal not dey by
16 no dede of armes,' and Immediatly he toke the rynges.
And after bygan the lady to make pyteous regrets and
greuouse syghynges, beholdyng Raymondyn right pyte-
ously / And they that were there wept alway ²so ten-
20 derly that eueryche of them had grete pyte, they
syghyng full pyteously. Thenne Melusyne in her la-
mentable place, where she was vpon the wyndowe
hauyng respectiō toward Lusynen, said in this wyse,
24 'Ha, thou swete Countre / in the haue I had so grete
solas & recreacion, in the was al my felicitye / yf god
had not consented that I had be so betrayed I had be
full happy / alas! I was wonnt to be called lady / &
28 men were redy to fulfyll my commandements / &
now not able to be alowed a symple seruauent / but
assygnd to horryble paynes & tourments vnto the day
of fynal iudgement. And al they that myght come
32 to my presence had grete Joye to behold me / and fro
this tyme forth they shal dysdayne me & be ferefull
of myn abhomynable figure / and the lustes & playsirs
that I was wonnt to haue shal be reuertid in tribulaciōs

¹ fol. 188.

and again takes
leave, weeping
sorely.

She gives Ray-
mondin two
magic rings.

² fol. 188 b.

Those present
weep, so full of
pity are they.

She looks from
the window to-
wards Lusignan,

and speaks of her
sad future,

and how all will
disdain her be-
cause of her
abominable
figure.

& grievous penitences.' And thenne she bygan to say with a hye voyce: 'Adieu, my lustis & playsirs / Farwel, my lord / barons / ladyes, & damoyselles, and I beseche you in the moost humble wyse that ye vouche- 4
sauf to pray to the good lord deuoutely for me / that it playse hym to mynusshe my dolorous peyne / notwithstanding I wyl lete you knowe what I am & who was my fader, to thentent that ye reproche not my 8
children, that they be not borne but of a mortal woman, and not of a serpent, nor as a creature of the fayry / and that they are the children of the doughter of kynge Elynas of Albanye and of þe queene Pressyne, and that 12
we be thre sustirs þat by predestinacion are predestynate to suffre & bere grievous penaunces, and of this matere I may no more shew, nor wyl.' And therewith she said: 'farwel, my lord Raymondyn, and forgete not 16
to doo with your sone called Horryble this that I haue you said / but thinke of your two sones Raymond & Theodoryk.' Thenne she bygan to gyue a sore syghe, & therewith flawgh in to thayer out of the wyndowe, 20
trans¹figured lyke a serpent grete & long in xv foote of length. And wete it wel that on the basse stone of the wyndowe apereth at this day themprynte of her foote serpentous. Thenne encreaced the lamentable 24
sorowes of Raymondyn, and of the barons, ladyes, & damoyselles / and moost in especial Raymondyns heuy-nes aboue al other / And foorthwith they loked out of the wyndowe to behold what way she toke / And 28
the noble Melusyne so transffygured, as it is aforsaid, flyeng thre tymes about the place, passed foreby the wyndow, gyuyng at euerche tyme an horrible cry & pyteous, that caused them that beheld her to wepe for 32
pyte. For they perceyued wel that loth she was to departe fro the place, & that it was by constraynte. And thenne she toke her way toward Lusynen, makyng in thayer by her furyousnes suche horryble crye & 36

She tells that her father was

Elinas, King of Albany, and her mother Queen Pressine; and that she is one of three sisters.

She gives a sore sigh, and becomes like a great serpent;
1 fol. 189.

and to this day her serpent's footprint is on the base-stone of the window.

The grief of Raymondyn and his people increases.

They see Melusine fly three times about the place, uttering horrible cries;

then she makes her way to Lusignan, moaning so

noyse that it semed al thayer to be replete with thundre
& tempeste. /

loud that it
sounded like
thunder.

Thus, as I haue shewed, went Melusyne, lyke a ser-
4 **T**pent, flyeng in thayer toward Lusynen / & not so
hygh / but that the men of the Countre might see her /
and she was herd a myle in thayer, For she made suche
noyse that al the peple was abasshed. And so she
8 slawgh to Lusynen thre times about the Fortres, cry-
eng so pyteously & lamentably, lyke the voyce of a
Mermayde. Wherof they of the Fortresse & of the
toun were gretly abasshed, & wyst not what they shuld
12 thinke, For they sawe the fygure of a serpent, and the
voyce of a woman *pat* cam fro the serpent. And whan
she had floughe about the Fortresse thre tymes she
lyghted so sodaynly & horribly vpon the toure called
16 poterne, bryngyng *with* her such thundre & tempeste,
that it semed that bothe the Fortres & the toun shuld
haue sonk and fah / & therwith they lost the syght of
her, and wyst not where she was become. But anoone
20 after that cam messagers fro Raymondyn, ¹that he sent
thithier to haue tydynges of her / to whom was shewed
how she fyl vpon the fortresse / & of theire fere that
they had had of her / and the messagers retourned
24 toward Raymondyn, & shewed hym al the caas. And
thenne bygan Raymondyn to entre into hys sorowe.
And the tydynges were knowen in the Countre, the
pouere peuple made grete lamentacion & sorowe, &
28 wysshed her ayen with pyteous syghes, For she had
doo them grete good. And thenne bygan thobseques
of her to be obseruyd in al abbeyes & chirches that she
had founded / and Raymondin, her lord, dede to be
32 doon for her almesses & prayers through al his land.

She flies through
the air to Lusig-
nan, making a
great noise, and
then flies three
times round the
fortress,

lamenting pite-
ously like the
voice of a mer-
maid.

She alights on
Postron Tower in
such wise that it
seemed the for-
tress would fall.

She disappears.

¹ fol. 189 b.

Messengers are
sent by Ray-
mondin to get
tidings of her.

Raymondin and
all the people
lament.

Her obsequies
are observed in
all the churches
she had built.

Cap. XLVII. How Raymondyn dide do
brenne his sone called Horryble.

MELUSINE.

Y

The barons re-
mind Raymondin
of Melusine's
command about
Horrible.

He bids them
fulfil her order.

Horrible is led to
a cave

and suffocated.

He is buried at
Neufmoustier.

Thenne came tofore the presence of Raymondyn the barons of the land, and said: 'My lord, it behouyth that we doo of your sone horryble this that his moder hath charged you & vs to doo.' And Raymondyn to them ansuerd, 'doo you in this that ye are commanded to doo.' And then they went and toke by fayre wordes this Horryble / & led hym in to a caue. For yf he had had warnyng of their purpos they shuld not haue had take hym without grete payne. And thenne they closed hym in smoke of wet hey. And whan he was deed they buryed hym honnourably in the Abbey called the Neufmoustier. 12

Cap. XLVIII. How Melusyne came euery nyght to vysyte her two children.

Raymondin
goes to Lusig-
nan, and brings
his children Ray-
mondin and
Theoderic.

¹ fol. 190.

Melusine visits
them every day.

They grow faster
than other
children.

Raymondin
when he hears of
her coming,

hopes to have
her back, but in
vain.

Raymondin is so
woful that he
never laughs.

Thenne departed Raymondyn from thens & came to Lusynen, & brought with hym his two children, 16 Raymond & theodoryke / and said that he shuld neuer entre ayen in to the place wher ¹he had lost his wyf. And wete it wel that Melusyne came euery day to vysyte her children, & held them tofore the fyre and 20 eased them as she coude / and wel sawe the nourryces that, who durst no word speke. And more encreced the two children in nature in a weke than dide other children in a moneth; wherof the people had grete 24 meruayll. but whan Raymondyn knew it by the nourryces that melusyne came there euery nyght to vysyte her children / relessed his sorowe / trustyng to haue her ayen / but that thoughte was for nought, For neuer 28 after sawe he her in fourme of a woman / how be it dyuers haue sith sen her in femenyn figure. And wete it that how wel Raymondyn hooped to haue her ayen / neuertheles he had alway suche hertly sorowe that 32 there is none that can tell it / And there was neuer man syth that sawe hym lawgh nor make joye / and

hated gretly geffray with the grete toth / and yf he
 myght haue had hym in his yre, he wold haue dystroyed
 hym. But here seaceth the hystorye of him And speketh
 4 of geffray. /

He hates Geffray.

Thystorye sayth, that geffray rode so long that he
 came in Northomberland with the ambaxatours
 and hys ten knyghtes with hym / And whan the barons
 8 of the Countre vnderstod his commyng they cam ayenst
 hym honourably, & receyued hym solemply, sayeng :
 'ha, sire, of your joyful comyng we owe wel to lawde
 & preyse our lord god, For without it be by you &
 12 through your prowes we may not be delyuered of the
 horryble geaunt and meruayllous murdrer, Grymauld,
 by whom aH this countre is dystroyed.' Thenne an-
 suerde geffray to them : ' And how may ye knowe that
 16 by me ye may be quytte & delyuered of hym ? ' to
 whom they answered, ' My lord, the sage astronomyens
 haue said to vs that the geaunt grymauld ¹ may not dey
 but by your dede of armes / and also we knowe for
 20 certayn that he knoweth it wel. Wherefore yf ye go to
 hym, and that yf ye telle hym your name ye shall not
 kepe hym, but he shall you escape.' Thenne sayd
 geffray to the barons, ' Sire, lede me toward the place
 24 where I may find hym, For grete desyre I haue to see
 hym.' And Immedyatly they toke hym two knyghtes
 of the land that conduyted hym toward the place / but
 that one of them said to that other *pat* they shuld not
 28 approche al to nygh grymauld / and that they myght
 not beleue that geffray shuld haue the vycetry of hym.
 And thenne geffray toke leue of the barons and de-
 parted, the two knyghtes with hym, and so long they
 32 rode tyl they saw the montayne of Brombelyo. Thenne
 sayd the two knyghtes to geffray, ' My lord, yonder ye
 may see the mountayne where he holdeth hym / & this
 way shal lede you thither without ony fayH, For cer-
 36 tainly he is euer at yonder trees vpon that mountayne

Geffray comes to Northumber-land.

The barons tell him they are joyful at his arrival,

because they will be delivered of Grymauld.

Geffray asks how they know.

¹ fol. 190 b.

They answer that wise astron- omers have said that he alone can slay Grymauld, and the giant knows this too, so Geffray must not tell him his name.

Geffray is taken to the mountain of Brombelyo,

where the knights show

where Grymauld
is to be found.
Here they leave
him for fear of
hurt.

Geffray tells
them that it is
well he has not
trusted to their
aid.

for to espye them that passe by the way. Now may
ye goo thither, yf it playse you, For as touching our
personnes we wyl goo no ferþer that way.' And geffray
ansuerd to them in this manere, 'Yf I had come vpon 4
thaffyaunce of your ayde I had faylled therof at this
tyme.' 'By my feyth,' sayd one of them, 'ye say
trouth.' Thenne came they to the foot of the hyll /
and there geffray descended & armed hym, and syn 8
remounted on his hors, and layed the sheld tofore hys
brest, and toke his spere, and thenne he said to the
two knyghtes that they shuld abyde hym vnder the
mountayne, and that they shuld soone see what therof 12
shuld befall. And they sayd that so shuld they doo.

fol. 191.

Cap. XLIX. How geffray *with* the grete
teeth rane ayenst the geaunt & ouer-
threw hym *with* hys spere. / 16

Geffray leaves
the knights
and ascends the
mountain.

He sees the
giant,
who is astonished
at Geffray's bold-
ness in coming
against him
alone.

The giant takes
a club.

1 fol. 191 b.

He demands
Geffray's name,
and threatens
him with death.

Geffray defies
the giant,

In this partye sayth thistorye that Geffray toke leue
of the two knyghtes, & mounted the mountayne,
so that he approached nygh the trees where as he
apperceyued the geaunt *þat satte vnder nethe* them. but 20
assoone as he sawe geffray he meruaylled gretly how
one knyght alone had the hardynes to haue dare
come toward hym, and thenne he thought in hym self
that he cam to treate *with* hym for som patyse or for 24
som peas. but he sware hys lawe that lytel or nought
he shuld entrete hym. Thenne rose vp the geaunt and
toke an horryble grete Clubbe in hys handes, which
ony man had ynough to doo to lyft it vp fro the 28
ground. 1 And so he came ayenst Geffray, and cryed
with a hie voys, 'What art thou that darest come so
boldly toward me in armes / by my lawe wel shal thou
be payed therfor. For who that sendeth the hyther 32
wold haue the deed.' And geffray cryed to hym, 'I
deffye the / deffend thou thy self yf thou canst.' And

- with these wordes geffray couched hys spere & sporyd
 hys hors and ranne & smote the geaunt in the brest so
 myghtily that he ouerthrew hym, the legges vpwart to
 4 the ground / and anon geffray descendid fro his hors,
 feeryng that the geaunt shuld slee hym vndre hym,
 and fasted it by þe brydel at a tree / & pushed his
 sheld behynd, and toke his good trenchaunt sword;
 8 For wel he sawe that it were grete foly to hym to
 abyde the stroke of the geauntis Clubbe. And thenne
 cam the geaunt toward geffray, but almost he coude not
 perceyue hym for cause he was so lytel of personne to
 12 the regarde of hym. And whan he was nygh hym he
 said to hym, 'Say me thou lytel body, who art thou
 that so valyauntly hast ouerthrawn me? / by mahomik
 I shaft neuer haue honour but I auenge me.' And
 16 thenne geffray ansuerde to hym, 'I am Geffray with
 the grete teeth, sone to Raymodyn of Lusynen.' And
 whan the geaunt vnderstod hym, he was ryght dolaunt,
 For wel he wyst that he myght not be slayne but with
 20 geffrayes handes. not that withstanding he ansuerd to
 hym, 'I knowe the wel ynough. thou slough that
 other day my Cousin Guedon in Garande, al the
 deuelles of helle haue brought the now hither.' And
 24 geffray hym ansuerd, 'no doubte / but I shal slee the
 yf I may.' And whan the geant vnderstod it, he
 haunced his Clubbe & wold haue dyscharged it vpon
 geffrayes heed, but he faylled, And thenne Geffray
 28 smote hym with his swerd vpon the sholder. ¹For he
 myght not reche to his heed, & cutte the haulte piece
 of his harneys, and made his swerd to entre in his
 flesshe wel a palme deep, and thenne the blood felt
 32 doon along his body vnto the heelys of hym. And
 whan he felt that stroke he cryed & said to geffray /
 'cursed be that arme that by suche strengthe can
 smyte, & hanged be the smyth that forged that swerd.
 36 For neuer blood was drawen out of my body of no

and rushes
forward and
overthrows him.

Geffray dis-
mounts,

fastens his horse
to a tree,
and takes his
sword and shield.

The giant ap-
proaches Geffray,
but can hardly
see him.

He asks Geffray
who he is.

Geffray answers
that he is the
son of Raymon-
din of Lusignan.
The giant is sad
at this news, be-
cause he knows
that Geffray
alone can slay
him.

The giant says
he knows him as
the slayer of
Guedon.

Geffray tells the
giant that he will
kill him too.

The giant raises
his club, but
misses Geffray.

¹ fol. 192.

Geffray wounds
the giant,

who curses
Geffray's arm,

and strikes back. manere wepen al were it neuer so good.' And thenne
 with his clubbe he wend to haue smyte geffray / but
 Geffray avoids the blow. geffray fled the stroke. For wete it for trouth that yf
 he had atteyned hym he had slayn hym / but god, on 4
 whom hys trust was, wold not suffre it. And ye owe
 The force of the giant's stroke
 drove his club
 a foot into the
 ground. to wete for certayn that with that same stroke the
 Clubbe entred into the ground wel a foot deep / but
 or euer the geaunt myght have haunced his Clubbe, 8
 geffray smote on it with his swerd by suche strengthe
 that he made it fligh out of the geauntes handes. and
 therewith he cutte a grete piece of it.

Cap. L. How the geaunt fled & Geffray 12
 folowed hym.

The giant fears
 to bend to lift
 his club,
 so he strikes
 Geffray with his
 fist. **T**henne was the geaunt ryght dolaunt & abasshed
 whan he sawe his Clubbe þus cutte lyeng on the
 ground, For he durst not bowe hym self to take it vp. 16
 Thenne he lept on geffray & strake hym with his fyst
 vpon the helmet with so grete myght & yre that almost
 geffray was astonyed therwith all. but geffray, cora-
 geous & hardy, smote the geant vpon the þye, so that 20
 he cutte a grete part of it. And thenne whan the
 geaunt sawe hym thus hurt he withdrew hym a lytel
 backward, and syn bygan to flee / but geffray, holdyng
 his swerd, folowed hym / and the geaunt entred into 24
 a hoſt within the mountayne, Wherof geffray was
 abasshed /. Thenne came geffray ¹to the hoſt and loked
 in, but it was so obscure & derk & so deep that he
 sawe nor wyst where the geaunt was become. And he 28
 retourned and toke & mounted ayen vpon his hors, and
 descended into þe valey, & came to hys meyne that
 abode for hym there, whiche had grete meruayll whan
 they sawe hym retourne hole & sauf / and in especial 32
 the two knightes wondred moche & were abasshed of
 it / and they asked hym yf he had sene the geaunt /
 and he said to them, 'I haue faught with hym / and

Geffray smites
 the giant on the
 thigh.

He flies to a hole
 in the mountain.
 Geffray follows

¹ fol. 192 b.
 and looks in,
 but it is so dark
 that he cannot
 see the giant.

Geffray rides to
 his men, who
 marvel at his safe
 return.

The two knights
 ask if he has seen
 the giant.

he is fled & entred in to an hoſſ, where as I may not see hym.' And they demanded of geffray yf he had told hym hys name / and he ansuerd, 'ye' / and thenne
 4 they ſaid that it was for nought to ſeke hym, For wel he wylt that he ſhuld dey by the handes of geffray. 'Doubte you not,' ſaid geffray, 'For wel I knowe where he is entred in / and to morne, with goddes
 8 help, I ſhal fynd hym wel.' And whan they vnderſtoode Geffray to ſpeke they had grete joye, and ſaid that geffray was the moost valyaunt knight of the world.

Geffray tells how he fought him, and how he entered a hole in the mountain.

They ſay that there is no uſe of looking for the giant, becauſe Geffray has told his name.

Geffray ſays that with God's help he will find him next day.

12 Cap. LI. How Geffray went & entred into the hoſſ for to fyght with the geaunt./

And thenne on the morowe by tymes Geffray armed hym & mounted vpon his hors & rode tyl he
 16 came to the ſaid hoſſ vpon the mountayne. 'By my feyth,' ſaid geffray thenne / 'this geaunt is twyes as grete as I, & ſith he is entred here in, wel I ſhal goo through it / and ſo ſhal I do whatſomeuer it befeſt
 20 therof.' And thenne he toke hys ſwerd in his hand, & fayre & ſoftly lete hym ſelf faſt into the hoſſ / and as he was in to the botome of it, he perceyued ſome light, & ſawe a lytel path. And thenne he made the
 24 ſigne of the cros & fourth¹ went that way./

Geffray rides in the morning to the hole where Grimold diſappeared.

He jumps in ſword in hand, and ſees a light and a path.

He makes the ſign of the cros and follows it.

¹ fol. 193.

Cap. LII. How Geffray fonde the ſepulture of the king of Albany, his granfader Helynas, within the mountayn.

Geffray thenne went not ferre whan he fond a
 28 ryche Chambre, where as were grete ryches and grete Caudſtykes of fyn gold, and vpon them grete
 32 meruayſ. And in the myddes of the Chambre he fonde a noble & ryche tombe of fyn gold, al ſette with

Geffray comes to a chamber

that contains a noble tomb,

and an alabaster
statue of a
queen,

with this inscrip-
tion, 'Here lieth
my husband,
King Elynas of
Albany,'
and other writing
regarding his
burial, and his
daughters Melu-
sine, Melior and
Palastine;

and how the
giant was put on
guard until
the arrival of an
heir of one of the
daughters.

* fol. 193 b.

Geffray looks
a long while at
the inscriptions,
but knows not
that he is of the
lineage of Elynas.

Geffray leaves
the chamber, and
makes his way to
a field, where
he sees a great
tower.

He finds the gate,
and enters the
hall, where there
are over a hun-
dred prisoners.

perlys & precyous stones, & vpon it was figured the
fourme of a knyght, that had on hys heed a ryche
croune of gold *with* many precyous stones / and nygh
by that tombe, a grete ymage of Albaster, kerued & 4
made aftir the fourme of a quene, crowned *with* a ryche
crowne of gold / the whiche ymage held a table of
gold / where-as were wryton the wordes that folowen.
'Here lyeth my lord myn husband the noble kyng 8
Elynas of Albanye' / and also shewed al the manyere
how he was buried there, and for what cause. And
also spake of theire thre doughtirs, that is to wete,
Melusyne, Melyor, and Palastyne / and how they were 12
punysshed bycause that they had closed theire fader /
as in thystory tofore is reherced. Also it shewed by
wrytyng how the geaunt had be there ordeyned for the
kepyng & sauegarde of the place, vnto tyme he were 16
putte therfro by the prowesse of one of the heyres of
the said thre doughtirs / and how there myght none
neuer entre *within* yf he were not of that lynage / and
in these tables of gold was wel dyuysed along as it is 20
wreton in the Chapytre of king Elynas / and thus geffray
beholding & seeyng, [pondered] by grete space¹ vpon
²the tables as vpon the beaute of the place / but he
knewe not yet that the tables shewed that he was of the 24
lynnee of kyng Elynas & Presyne his wyf. And whan
he had wel behold a long tyme he departed, & went by
a waye obscure tyl he fonde a feld, thenne loked he
tofore hym, & sawe a grete toure, square, wel batel- 28
mented, & went toward and went about the toure tyl
he fonde the gate the whiche was open, & the bridge
let fall down, & entred in, & came to the hall, where
he fonde a grete yron trayn³, wherein were closed a 32
hondred men & more of the Countre that the geaunt

¹ Fr. *Et à ce veoir et regarder advisa Geuffroy par grant temps.*

³ Fr. *traillis*.

held for hys prysonners./ And whan they sawe
 geffray they meruaylled moche, & hym sayd, 'Sire, for
 the loue of god flee you, or ye shal be deed; For the
 4 geaunt shaH come ryght foorth that shal dystroye you
 al, were ye an C suche as ye are' / And geffray
 ansuerd them al thus: 'Fayre lordes, I am not here
 come but only the geaunt to fynd / & I shuld haue
 8 don to grete foly to be come fro so ferre hither to
 retourne so hastily.' And after these wordes cam the
 geaunt fro slepe. But whan he sawe geffray he knew
 hym, and sawe wel that his deth was nygh, and had
 12 grete feer / and thenne he fledd unto a chambre, the
 whiche he sawe open, & speryd the doore to hym.
 And whan geffray that perceyued, he was ryght sorowful
 that he had not mete with hym at the entryng of the
 16 Chambre./

Thystorye sayth that geffray was right dolaunt whan
 he sawe the geaunt was entred into the chambre,
 and that he had speryd the doore to hym. Thenne
 20 cam geffray toward the doore, rennyng with a grete
 radeur, & smote with his foot so mightily that he
 made the doore to flye vnto the myddes of the chambre.
 1 And thenne the Geaunt swyftly went out at the doore
 24 bycause he might none other way passe, and held in
 his hand a gret mayllet wherof he gaaf to geffray suche
 a stroke vpon the bassynet that he made hym al
 amased. And whan geffray felt the stroke, that was
 28 harde & heuy, he foyned with his swerd at his brest,
 with suche yre that it entred in the geaunt thrughe to
 the cros of the swerd. And thenne the geant made vp
 2 an horryble cry, sayeng, 'I am deed, I am deed.' And
 32 whan they that were in the traylles of yron herd it /
 they cryed with an hye voys, 'Ha, noble man, blessid
 be the ooure that thou were borne of a woman. We
 pray the for the loue of god, that thou haue vs hens,

They are astonished to see Geffray, and advise him to fly from the giant.

Geffray replies that he has come to find him;

and just as he finished speaking the giant appeared. When he saw Geffray he knew his death was at hand. He fled to a chamber, and barred the door.

Geffray bursts it open.

1 fol. 104.

The giant rushes on Geffray, and strikes him with a mallet;

then Geffray thrusts his sword into the giant right up to the hilt.

The giant cries out, 'I am dead, I am dead!'

The prisoners on hearing the cry bless the hour of Geffray's birth, and beg their deliverance.

For thou hast at this day delyuered this land out of the gretest myserye that euer people was in.'/

Cap. LIII. How geffray delyuered the prysonners that the geaunt kept in 4 pryson.

Geffray finds the keys, and releases them.

He tells how he came,

and presents the prisoners with the contents of the tower.

And thenne geffray cerched the keyes so longe tyl he fonde them, & lete the prysonners out; and this doon, they aH kneeled tofore hym / & asked hym 8 by what way he was come. And he said to them the trouth. 'By my feyth,' said they, 'it is not in remembraunce that this foure hondred yere was no man so hardy to passe by the Caue, but onely the geaunt 12 and his antecessours, that fro heyre to heyre haue dystroyed aH this Countre / but wel we shal bryng you another way.' And thenne geffray gaf to them al the hauoir of the toure. / 16

Cap. LIV. How the prysonners led the geaunt deed vpon a Charyott.

fol. 194 b.
The prisoners put the giant's body on a chariot, and burn it. Geffray returns to the valley with the prisoners bearing their shares of the goods of the tower and the giant's head.

Geffray is feasted; he refuses gifts, and leaves the country.

The prisoners take the giant's head about the

The prysonners thann toke the Geaunt deed, & putte hys body in a Charyot, and sette hym ryght vp, 20 & bound hym so that he shuld not faH, & putte fyre all about hym. And this don, they led geffray to the place where he had left his hors, vpon the whiche he mounted, & descended toward the valey with al the 24 goodes that they had. Wherof euery man had his part / and toke the heed hool of the geaunt with them / and came foorth tyl they sawe geffrayis knightes and the more part of the nobles & peple of the Countre, 28 the which fested & dide to geffray grete honour / and to hym wold they haue youen grete yestes, but he wold none take / but toke his leue, & departed fro them. And the prysonners bare the heed of the geaunt thurgh 32 al good tounes for euery man to see, of the whiche

sight euery man had grete meruey^H that one man alone durst be so hardy to assaylle such a deue^H. And here seaceth thistory of that more to speke / and retourneth
4 to speke of geffray.

country, and the people marvel that one man should have been brave enough to have fought such a devil.

In this partye sayth thistorye that geffray rode so long that he came to mountyoue² in garande, where they of the countrey receyued^t hym nobly. And

Geffray is well received at Mountjouet.

8 for thenne was come his brother Raymond to enfourme hym of the yre that their fader had, & of his wordes that he had said of hym, And hym recounted fro the bygynnyng vnto the fyn. And how their moder was

His brother Raymond tells of their father's rage, and how their mother had departed owing to the behaviour of the Earl of Forest; and that she was a daughter of King Elynas.

12 departed and al the manere / And how the first bygynnyng of her departyng^t was through their vncle of Forestz. And how she had said at her departyng that she was doughter of kyng Elynas of Albanye.

16 And whan geffray her^t this word^t he bethought hym of ²the table that he fonde vpon the tombe of kyng Elynas. And by this he knew that he and his brethern

² fol. 195.

Geffray recollects the inscription on the tomb of Elynas, and understands that he is of the king's lineage. He is sorry for his mother,

20 hym self the bettre, but this not *with* standing he was ryght sorowfu^H of the departyng of hys moder, & of the heuynes of hys fader / and knew the^{ne} wel that this misaduenture was cōme & grew by therle of

24 Forestz his vncle. Wherfor he sware by the holy trynyte that he shuld quyte hym. And thenne he made to go to horsback hys brother and his x. knyghtes, and rode toward the Countee of Forestz / and had

and swears revenge on the Earl of Forest.

28 tydynges that the Erle his vncle was in a Fortresse that was edyfyed vpon a roche ryght hye / and was the self Fortres named at that tyme Jalensy, and now it is called the Castel Marcelly.

Geffray takes his brother and ten knyghts, and rides to his vncle's castle.

32 Cap. LV. How Geffray was the deth of the Erle of Forestz hys vncle.

¹ Fr. *Monjouet*.

He enters his uncle's hall, and finds him among his barons, and calls out 'To death traitor, for through thee we have lost our mother.'

Geffray approaches the Earl, with sword drawn.

The Earl runs out of a door followed by Geffray, who chases him to the top of the tower.

1 fol. 195 b.

The Earl gets out of a window to pass to another tower, but loses his hold and falls dead at the foot.

Geffray looks out of the window and upbraids him for the loss of his mother.

Geffray descends to the hall, where none dare to speak against him.

He orders his uncle to be buried, and explains to the barons his uncle's misdeed.

Geffray makes his uncle's barons do homage to his brother Raymondin.

So long rode geffray that he came to the Castel and anoone he alighted & went into the hall where he fond the Erle among his barons / and thenne he cryed with an hye voyce / 'to deth traytour / 4 For thrughe the we haue lost our moder' / and foorth with drew his swerd & yede toward the Erle / And the Erle whiche knew wel hys fyersnes and anoone fled toward a doore open / and that part geffray 8 folowed hym / and so long chassed hym fro chambre to chambre to the hiest part of the toure where he sawe he myght no ferder flee / he toke a wyndowe / and supposed to haue passed vnto a tour nygh but for 12 to saue hym from the yre of geffray / but footyng faylled hym, & fell down deed to the grounde. And thenne geffray loked out of the wyndowe, & sawe hym al to rent & brusid lyeng deed on the erthe / but 16 therof he toke no pyte / but sayd 'False traytour by thyn euyl report I haue lost my lady my moder / now haue I quyted the therfore.' And thenne he came down ayen to þe halle / but none so hardy was there 20 that durst say one word ayenst hym. And he thenne commanded that his vncle shold be buryed / and so he was and his obsequye don. And after þat geffray recounted & shewed to the barons of the land why 24 he wold haue slayne his vncle / and bycause of the Erles mysdede and false reporte they were somewhat peased. And thenne Geffray dide make them to doo homage to Raymond his brother, that was aftirward 28 Erle of Forestz. And now seaceth thistory of hym to speke / and retourneth to shewe of Raymondyn his fader /

Cap. LVI. How Geffray went to Lusynen 32 toward hys fader and prayed hym of mercy.

Thystorye sayth that soone aftir this delyt was
 shewed to Raymondyn, wherof he was ryght
 dolaunt & sorowful / but he forgate it lightly, bycause
 4 that his brother had announced hym the tydynges
 whereby he lost his wyf / and said to hym self / 'this
 pat is doo may be none otherwyse / I most pease
 geffray or he doo ony more damage.' And ¹therefore
 8 he sent word to hym by hys brother Theodoryke that
 he shuld come toward hym at Lusynen. And geffray
 came to his fader at his mandement / and as ferre as
 he sawe hym he putte hym self on his knees / and
 12 prayed hym of pardon & mercy, sayeng in this wyse,
 'My ryght redoubted lord, my dere fader, I besecho
 you of forgyfnes & pardon / and I sware you that I
 shal doo make ayen thabbay of Maylleses fayrer than
 16 euer it was afore / and there I shal found ten monkes
 ouer the nombre of them that were there byfore.'
 'By god,' said Raymondyn, 'al that may be doo with
 the helpe of god / but to the deed ye may not restore
 20 theire lyf. But geffray it is trouth that I muste go to
 a pelgrymage that I haue promysed god to do. And
 therfor I shal leue you the gouernaunce of my land /
 and yf by auenture god dide hys wylle of me, al the
 24 land is yours / but I wyl & charge you this that
 your moder hath ordeyned by her last wylle to be doo
 be fulfilled. She hath bequethed to Theodoryke
 Partenay, Merment, Vouant & al theire appurtenaunces
 28 vnto RocheH, with the Castel Eglon with al that
 therof dependeth / and fro this tyme fourthon I
 enpocesse hym therof for hym and for his heyres.'
 Thenne said Geffray to him, 'Dere fader, wel it is
 32 raison that it be so don.' This doon Raymondyn made
 his apparayH, & with hym mounted on horsback
 many lordes & knightes, and toke with hym grete
 fynaunce & hauoir and so departed and foorth rode
 36 on his way. And Geffray & ²Theodoryke conueyed

Geffray's father
is told the story.

He determines to
appease Geffray.
¹ fol. 196.

He sends Theo-
doric to ask Gef-
fray to come to
Lusignan.

Geffray obeys,
and on seeing his
father falls on his
knees and asks
pardon, and
promises to re-
build the abbey
of Mailleses
better than it
was before.

Raymondin an-
swers that with
God's help he
may fulfil his
promise, but that
will not bring the
dead to life.
He tells Geffray
that he is going
on a pilgrimage,
and that he
leaves his land
in his care, and
makes him his
heir.

Raymondin de-
clares that Theo-
doric has been
left Parthenay
and other lands
and castles by
his mother.

Raymondin then
starts on his pil-
grimage, accom-
panied by many
knights, and well
provided with
money and
goods.

² fol. 196 b.

Geffray and Theodoric go part of the way with their father, and Geffray tells how he found the tomb of his grandfather Elynas at Drombelyo, and what was written on the golden tablet about Elynas' three daughters, one of whom was Geffray's mother.

Raymondin is glad to hear that his wife was the daughter of Elynas and Pressine.

He tells his sons to return, and continues on his way to Rome.

He gives Theodoric a ring, Melusine's parting gift.

hym tyl he bade them to retourne. And as they rode geffray recounted hym how he fonde the tombe of Helynas his granfader within the mountayne of Brombelyo, vpon foure Coulonnes of fyn gold and of 4 the ryches of þe place / and of the fygure of the quene Pressyne that stod vp ryght, and held a table of gold, and of this that was there writon / and how theire thre doughters were predestyned / 'of the whiche,' 8 said geffray, 'our moder was one of them' / and shewed hym al the begynnyng of the matere vnto thenk of hit. And wete it wel that Raymondyn herkned hym gladly, & was wel pleased of that he said that hys wyf 12 Melusyne was doughter of king Elynas & of Pressyne hys wyf. And thenne he gaf lycens to his children to retourne. And so þey departed & retourned toward Lusynen / and Raymondyn held on his way toward 16 Romme. And to theodoryke he gaf the ryng whiche Melusyne gaf hym at her departyng fro hym.

Cap. LVII. How Raymondyn came toward the pope of Romme and confessed hys 20 synnes to hym.

fol. 197.

Raymondin reaches Rome, and does reverence to Pope Benedict.

He confesses his sins.

The Pope gives him due penance. Raymondin dines with the Pope, and next day visits the holy places. When his affairs are attended to he takes leave of the Pope,

Here sayth thystorye that Raymondyn rode so long that he came to Romme and his companye with hym, where he fonde the Pope named Benedictus / 24 & drew hym toward hym to whome humbly he made reuerence, & syn kneeled tofore hym & confessed his mysdedes & synnes in his best wyse / and as touching this that he was forsworne ayenst god and Melusyne 28 hys wyf, the pope gaf hym therfor such penaunce as it playsted hym. and that same day Raymondyn dyned with the pope Benedicte / and on the morne he yede & vysyted the holy places there. And whan he had 32 doon there al that he muste doo, he toke leue to the Pope & said to hym in this wyse, 'Ryght reuerend holy fader, I may not goodly considere in me how euer

I may haue joye. Wherfore I purpose to yeld^d myself into some hermytage.' And thenne the Pope hym demanded thus, 'Raymondyn, where is your deuocyon & wylle to goo?' 'By my feyth, holy fader,' said Raymondyn, 'I haue herd say that there is to Mountferrat¹ in Aragon a deuoute & holy place / & there wold I fayn be.' 'My fayre sone,' said the pope, 'soo it is said.' And to hym said Raymondyn, 'holy fader, my intencion is thither to goo and to yeld^d my self there hermyte, for to pray god that it playse hym to gyue allegeaunce to my lady my wyf.' 'Now fayre sone,' said the Pope, 'with the holy gost may ye goo / & al that ye shal doo with good wyH I remysse it to your penaunce.' And thenne Raymondyn kneeled & kyssed the popes feet. And the pope gaf hym hys benediction. / And thenne departed Raymondyn & came to hys lodgys / & dide doo ²trusse & make aH redy for to departe / and as touchyng his meyne nor of hys way I wyl not make long¹ meneyon / but he rode so long that he came to Thoulouse / and there he gaf lycence & leue to aH hys meyne to departe & retourne / except only a Chappellayn & a Clerc that he toke with him / and wel & truly he prayed ³euery one so that they were content / but sory they were aH of theire maister that so departed fro them / and he sent letres to geffray & to the barons of hys land^d that they shuld doo theire hommage to his sone geffray, & receyue hym for theire lord. And his meyne toke the letres / and soo they departed fro theire lord with grete sorow & heynesse, For he neuer told^d them what way he shuld take / but wete it he had with hym goodes ynough / and dyde so moche that he came to Nerbonne where he rested hym a lytel space of tyme.

Thystorye sheweth in this partye that whan Raymondyn was come to Nerbonne he dide

and tells him that he wishes to be a hermit.

The Pope asks where he would like to go.

Raymondin answers Mountserratt in Aragon.

The Pope bestows his blessing, after Raymondin had kissed his feet.

Raymondin gets on his way, and when he arrives at Toulouse he pays off his men,

³ fol. 196.

and sends them home with letters to Geffray, which order the barons of his land to do homage to Geffray.

His men return sadly, without knowledge of where their master is going. Raymondin goes to Narbonne, where he makes a halt;

¹ Montserrat, the correct reading. ² Fr. *trosser les sommiers*.

and has hermits' habits made for himself, his chaplain and his clerk.

He continues his journey

till he arrives at Mountserrat.

He attends divine service.

He is asked if he will stay the night, and answers 'yes.'

³ fol. 198 b.

Raymondin visits the hermitages, and finds the third cell empty, the hermit having died lately.

doo make many hermyte habytes, and also for his Chappellayn & Clerk suche as they owe to haue / and syn departed & went tyl he came to ¹Parpynen where he soiourned one day / and on the morne ²he passed 4 the destraytte & mounted the mountaynes of Aragon / and so foorth he came to Barselone the Cite where he toke hys lodgys and soiourned there thre dayes, and on the foureth toke hys waye toward Mountferrat where 8 he came & yede & vysyted wel the Chirche & the place there, whiche semed hym ryght deuoute / and there he herd the deuyne seruyse deuoutly / but yet had he on hys worldly gownes / And thenne came to hym they 12 that were ordeyned for to lodge & herberowe the pelgrymes, and demanded of hym yf it playсед hym to abyde there for þat nyght / and he ansuerd 'ye.' Thenne were his ³horses stabled / and they gaf hym a 16 fayre Chambre for hym & for his men. And in the meane while Raymondyn yede & vysyted the hermytages / but he went no ferther than to the vth celle, for that place was of so grete heyght that he myght not 20 goodly goo thither / and fonde the III^{de} celle exempt. For the hermyte there was deed but late tofore that. And there was stablysshed of old a Custome that yf within a terme prefix none came there to be hermyte, 24 he of the nerest Celle gooyng vpward muste entre into that other Celle so exempted / and so al the hermytes benethe hym to chaunge theire places vpward. And so by that maner wyse was the nedermost Celle of al 28 exempt & without hermyt. And the cause of this permutacion was that alwayes the nedermost hermyte most serue hys brother hermyte next aboue hym of meet & drynk after theire pytaunce & manere of etyng, 32 and so foorth dide that one to that other vpward / and

¹ Fr. *Perpignen*.

² Fr. *passa le vellon et le pertuys, et vint à disner à Funères, et au giste à Gnomie*. Omitted above.

thus one *serued* other. And so ferre enquired & knew Raymondyn of theire *maner* of lyuyng that he toke grete deuocion to it more than tofore / that is to
 4 wete to be hermyte there. And thenne he toke leue of the vth hermyte & so dide as he descended of the other. And he demanded after the pryour of thabbey / and it was told hym that he was in the
 8 vyllage nygh by thabbay that was hys, whiche vyllage was called Culbaston / and thenne he desyred them that they wold conduyte hym there as he was. And so Ray¹mondyn left there his Chappellayn & his
 12 Clerc, and with a *seruaunt* of the place went there as pe pryour was, whiche receyued Raymondyn with joyful chere. And there shewed Raymondyn al hys wyH and deuocyon and how the place playsted hym. And thenne
 16 the pryour that sawe Raymondyn of fayre countenance & man of grete worship graunted hym the exempted place, wherof Raymondyn had grete joye at herte. /

Thenne was Raymondyn ryght joyous whan the
 20 pryour had graunted hym the place of the nethermost hermytage and moche panked god therof. and so he bode there with the pryour al that nyght / and on the morow they mounted and came ayen to
 24 thabbay where as Raymondyn toke his habytes and was there made hermyte. And thenne was the deuyne *seruyce* doon, where Raymondyn offred ryche jewels as gold & precyous stones. And after the *seruyce*
 28 they went to dyner / and raymondyn dyde doo send to hys bretheren hermytes besyde theire pytaunce other meetes for recreacion, letyng them knowe hys professyon & *commying*. Wherof al they lawded god,
 32 deuoutely prayeng hym that he wold hold & encrese Raymondyn in good deuocyon. And so dwelled Raymondyn in thabbay, and on the morne he entred in to his Celle wher he bygan to led a holy & strait
 36 lyf. And anoone after was the tydynges spredd

MELUSINE.

Raymondin, after his enquiries, takes a greater liking to the place than ever.

He takes leave of the hermit in the fifth cell and descends.

Raymondin asks to be taken to the prior of the abbey.

¹ fol. 199.

The prior entertains Raymondin,

and at his request grants the empty cell.

The next day Raymondin is made a hermit,

and after divine service makes a rich offering.

Raymondin tells his brother hermits of his profession, and supplies them with extra meats. The hermits praise God, and pray for Raymondin.

He enters his cell, and begins to lead a holy life.

Z

The news that a great prince has professed himself a hermit becomes known,

¹ fol. 199 b.

and many come to see Raymondin and ask him his name, but he will not tell it.

through aH Aragon & Langgedok how that a grete prynce was made hermyte at Mounferrat / but they knew not of what Countre he was. And ¹also he wold^t neuer vtter it / And many noble men went to 4 see hym / and in especial the king^t of aragon was there hym self, which asked hym of his estate & Countre / but of hym he coude neuer wete it. And here resteth thystorye of them / and retourneth to shewe of 8 Raymondyns men that departed fro Thoulouse. /

Raymondin's men return to Lusignan, and deliver the letters.

Thystory recounteth that so long rode the men of Raymondyn after they were departed fro Thoulouse that they came in Poytou & so foorth to 12 Lusynen, Where they fonde geffray and many of the barons of the land^t / and after theire obeysaunce doon they delyuered theire letres to geffray & to the barons as they were commanded by Raymondyn theire lord^t. 16 Whan the baronye vnderstod^t the tenour of theire letres they said to geffray in this manere / 'My lord syth it playseth not your fader vs more to gouerne / and that he wyl that we doo our hommage to you, we 20 are al redy thereto.' 'By god,' said geffray, 'gramercy, Fayre lordes, and I am redy to receyue you to your lygeauns.' And þenne they dyde to hym hommage. And anoone after was knowen through al the Countre 24 how Raymondyn had exilled hymself for the grete sorow that he had for his wyf Melusyne that he had lost. Who thezne had sene the doleur & lamentable heuynes that men dide through aH the Countre 28 wysshyng theire lord & theire lady, he shuld^t haue had hertely pyte. For many one fered geffray for cause of his yre & fyersnes. But for nought they doubted, For he gouerned^t hym rightously & wel. Here I sha[1] 32 leue of þem ²to speke / and shal shewe of geffray that was ryght dolaunt & sorowful of that he had lost both hys fader & his moder through his owne mysdede & synne. For they that were retourned fro hym coude 36

The barons declare that they are ready to do Geffray homage in place of his father.

He accepts it.

When the people know that Raymondin has exilled himself, and that Geffray is lord, they begin to be afraid.

² fol. 200.

not say where he was come. Thenne remorse of
 conscience toke geffray at herte & remembred how he
 fyred thabbaye of Maylleses, & brent hys brother
 4 Froymond & al the monkes *per without* hauyng ony
 lawfuH cause so to doo / and that thurgh hys synne
 he angred bothe hys fader & moder, and by that cause
 he had lost his moder. Wherefore he toke suche sorowe
 8 that it was *meruayH* / and also he remembred the deth
 of the Erle of Forest hys vncle, which through his faytte
 fell down fro the hiest toure of the Castel Marcellly to
 the erthe. And thus remembred geffray aH hys
 12 my[s]dedes and synnes, and sore wepyng bygan to say /
 that but yf god had pyte on hym he was lyke to be
 lost & dampned for euer. And thenne he hymself
 alone entred into a chambre / and there he bygan to
 16 make grete sorowe & lamentable wepynges prayeng god
 with herte contrite that he wold haue mercy on hym /
 and as god wold he toke there deuocion to goo to
 Romme for to confesse his synnes to our holy fader the
 20 pope. And thenne he sent for his broder theodoryke
 that he shuld come to speke with hym, For he loued
 hym aboue al o^{er}. And assoone as Theodoryke
 vnderstod the mandement of hys brother geffray, he
 24 foorthwith mounted on horsback & rode tyl he came
 to Lusynen where geffray was, that receyued hym
 with joye, & said to hym that he wold leue al hys
 land in his gouernaunce, For he ¹wold go to Romme to
 28 confesse his synnes tofore the pope / & that he wold
 neuer come ayen tyl he had found hys fader. Thenne
 Theoderyk prayeH hym that he wold suffre hym to goo
 with hym. And geffray shewed to hym that it were
 32 not good for them bothe so to doo / And thenne
 geffray with noble companye departed and toke with
 hym grete goodes, and toke with hym one of hys
 faders *seruaunts* that was retourned fro Thoulouse for
 36 to conduyte hym aH that way that hys fader yede /

Geffray is full of remorse when he thinks of the loss of his father and mother, and how it was caused by his misdeeds.

Geffray enters a chamber alone, and prays with a contrite heart for mercy.

He resolves to go to Rome to confess to the Pope.
 Geffray sends for Theodoric

¹ fol. 200 b.
 to tell him that he is going to Rome to confess to the Pope, and that he leaves his lands in Theodoric's charge. Theodoric wants to go with him, but Geffray says it would not do. Geffray takes plenty of goods, and sets out on his journey with one of his father's servants.

and he shuld euer take hys lodgys there as hys fader was lodged by the way. And the seruaunt hym ansuerd that gladly he shuld so doo.

Cap. LVIII. How Geffray went to Romme 4
& confessed hys synnes tofore the Pope.

Thystorye sayth that whan geffray was departed fro Lusynen he rode so long by hys journeyes that he came to romme, and drew hym toward our 8 holy fader the Pope, to whome he made humble reuerence and syn deuoutely confessed hym of hys synnes. And the Pope charged hym to make thabbay of Maylleses to be edyfyed agayn & therto ordeyne six 12 score monkes, & many other penitences the pope charged hym doo, the whiche as now present I shal not shewe. And thenne geffray said to our holy fader the Pope how he wold goo to seke hys fader, and the pope 16 told hym that he shuld fynd hym at Mountferrat in Aragon. And thenne he toke leue of the pope & kyssed his feet / and the pope gaf hym hys benediction. And so geffray departed fro Romme & toke 20 hys way toward toulouse where he cam & hys meyne with hym and was lodged where as his fader dede lodge tofore. And there the seruaunt asked of theire hoste yf he coude not telle which way hys lord 24 Raymondyn toke / And thoste said to hym that hys lord had hold the way toward Nerbonne & that no ferther he knew of hys way. And the seruaunt told it to geffray. 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'that is 28 not the next way for to goo to Mountferrat / but syth my fader went that way so shal we doo.' And thus on the morne geffray & hys meyne departed & hasted them toward Nerbonne, where they cam & were lodged 32 there as Raymondyn had tofore lodged. For so moche enquired the seruaunt that he knewe þat hys lord dide

Geffray confesses to the Pope.

He is charged to rebuild the abbey of Maylleses.

Geffray learns that his father is at Mountferrat.

He kisses the Pope's feet, and receives the benediction. Geffray goes to Toulouse, and

finds that his father went from there to Nerbonne.

He follows the same route, though it is not the direct way to Mountferrat.

lodge there, & how he dide do make there many habytes for an hermyte. And on the morne geffray toke hys way toward Parpynen, where he cam, & fro
 4 pens he rode *with* hys meyne to Barselone, & penne to thabbey of mountferrat where he alyghted & sent hys horses to Culbaston / and syn he yede & entred in to the Chirch. And anoon the *seruaunt* beforsaid sawe
 8 the Chappellayn of Raymondyn his lord *within* a ChapeH And immedyatly he tok of it to geffray. Wherof ¹he had grete joye and yede toward the Chappellayne, the whiche whan he sawe geffray he
 12 kneeled tofore hym and said, 'My lord ye be ryght welcome' / and syn he recounted to geffray the good lyf that hys fader led / and how euery day he confessed hym & receyued his creatour / and that he ete nothing
 16 that receyueth deth. And thenne geffray asked hym where he was. And the Chappellayn to hym said, 'he is in yonder hermytage / but my lord as for this day ye may not speke *with* hym, but to morne ye shaH
 20 see hym.' 'By my fayth,' said geffray, 'fayn I wold see hym today / but sith it is soo I must take it in patience ty[1] tomorowe.' 'My lord,' said thenne the Chappellayn, 'yf it playse you ye may here the hye
 24 masse, and therwhiles I shal ordeyne and shew your meyne where your Chambre shal be dressed, and also I shal doo make your dyner redy at your retourne fro the masse.'

28 **T**henne departed the Chappellayn fro geffray, that went to here masse acompanyed *with* x knyghtes and wel xx squyers. And thenne came the monkes of the place to Raymondins Chappellayn and demanded
 32 of hym in this wyse. 'What is that grete deueth with that grete toth? he semeth wel to be a cruel man / wherof knowe you hym / is he of your Countre?'
 'By my feyth,' said the Chappellayn, 'ye / It is
 36 geffray *with* the grete toeth of Lusynen, one of the best

At last Geffray reaches Mountferrat.

His servant reports that he has seen his father's chaplain.

¹ fol. 201 b.

The chaplain welcomes Geffray, and tells him of the good life his father leads; how he confesses and communicates daily, and that he eats nothing that has had life.

The chaplain says Geffray cannot see his father till next day.

Geffray hears mass;

and when he is out of sight the monks ask the chaplain, 'Who is that great devil with that great tooth?'

He tells them,

¹ fol. 202.

and they ask if it is not the same one who killed the Northumberland giant, and burnt the Abbey of Mailleses and all the monks therein.

The chaplain answers that he is.

The monks are much afraid.

The chaplain tells them to be at ease, because the hermitage contains the person Geffray loves most of all in the world.

The monks clean and decorate the church,

and send word to the prior of the arrival of Geffray.

The prior finds Geffray in the church, and does him reverence.

Geffray thanks him, and promises that the place will be none the worse for his visit.

² fol. 202 b.

& moost valyaunt knyghtes of the world & wete it he
 1holdeth grete possessions & grete landes.' And the
 monkes ansuerd, 'Wel we haue herd speke of hym /
 is it not he that sloughe the geaunt in garand and that 4
 other geaunt also of Northomberland / he is also he
 that brent thabbay of Maylleses with all the monkes
 perinne bycause that hys brother was there shorne
 monke without hys leue.' 'By my feyth,' said the 8
 Chappellayn, 'certainly it is that same.' And penne
 the monkes al abasshed and aferd sayd / he is come
 hither for to doo vs some myschief and damage.
 Thenne said one of them, 'wete it wel that I shal hyd 12
 myself in suche place that he shal not fynd me.'
 'Noo,' said the Chappellayn, 'Forsoothe I waraunt
 you he shal doo you no hurt nor damage, but al ye
 shal soone be glad of hys commyng, For suche one is 16
 within this place that he loueth aboue al creatures of
 the world.' And whan they vnderstod the Chappellayn
 they were somewhat assured and went & hanged the
 chirche, and made al the place fayre & clene to their 20
 power as god hymself had descended there / and sent
 word to the Pryour that was at Culbaston that he
 shuld come there, and that geffray with the grete toth
 was come in pelgrymage in to their abbaye, and noble 24
 companye with hym. Thenne came there fourthwith
 the pryour that fond geffray in the Chirche, and
 honourably made hym reuerence and sayd that he
 hymself / the monkes & al the place was at his 28
 commandement. 'Sire,' said geffray, 'gramercy and
 wete it wel I loue this place / and yf god gyf me
 helthe it shal ²not be the wers for my commyng.'
 'My lord,' said the pryour, 'god yeld you.' Thenne 32
 cam the Chapellayn to geffray and hym said, 'My
 lord, your dyner is redy.' And therwith geffray toke
 the pryour by the hand and togidre went into the hall,
 where they wessed their handes & syn sette them at 36

dyner; geffray and the pryour deuysed long space togidre of one thing & of oþer. And thus passed foorth that day. /

Geffray and the prior dine and converse a long time.

4 In this partye sayth thystorye that on þe morne
geffray roos vp and fonde the priour and his faders
Chapellayn waytyng after hym whiche led̃ hym to
here masse / and after the masse they led̃ hym toward
8 the hermytages. And thenne the pryour toke his leue
of geffray & retourned to Chireliward̃ supposyng none
other but that geffray went for to see thestate of the
hermytes and for none other cause. For he had neuer
12 trowed that his fader had be þer. And thenne mounted
geffray toward the first hermitage that was wel lxxx
stepes highe vpon the mountayne. And wete it that
the Clerc was at Raymondyns Celle doore waytyng for
16 the Chappellayn that shuld say masse tofore Raymondin.
And as the Clerk loked downward, he perceyued̃ geffray
that came upward̃ & wel knew hym, and forthwith
entred in the celle & said to Raymondin, 'My
20 lord, here commeth your sone geffray.' And whan
Raymondin vnderstoð it he was ryght joyous and said,
'blessed be god / he is welcomme.' Thenne entred
first the Chappellain in to the Celle & salued
24 Raymondyn / but he bade the Chappellayn to say
geffray that he myght not speke with hym tyl þat hys
masse were doon. And foorthwith the cha^pellayn
dyde as Raymondyn hym commanded. And geffray
28 ansuerd̃, 'his playsire be doo.' This doon Raymondyn
was confessed and herd his masse & receyued the holy
sacrament. And in the meane sayson geffray beheld̃
vpward the great mountaynes whiche were high &
32 ryght vp and sawe thermytages that were aboue hym /
and sawe the Capeñ of Saynt Mychel whiche was the
vth hermytage, and after loked downward / and in hym
self had grete meruayñ how man durst there take
36 habytacyon / and to hym appered the Chirche and

Geffray hears
mass in the
morning, and

goes with the
prior and the
chaplain to
the hermitages,
where the prior
takes his leave.

Geffray mounts
to the first her-
mitage,

and is recognised
by Raymondin's
clerk.

He tells his
master of Gef-
fray's presence.

Raymondin says
'He is welcome.'

1 fol. 203.

Geffray has to
wait till his
father hears mass
before he can see
him.

He looks about
while waiting,
and wonders how
anyone can live
in such a place.

Geffray enters
his father's cell,
and salutes him.

Raymondin
takes him in his
arms and kisses
him.

Geffray tells his
father how he
had been at
Rome, and how
he confessed,
and was told by
the Pope that
his father was at
Mountserratt.

Geffray asks his
father to return
to his country,
but he answers
that he cannot,
as he intends
to stay at Mount-
serratt, and pray
for Geffray's
mother, for him-
self, and for
Geffray.

¹ fol. 203 b.

Geffray takes his
leave.
His father sends
a greeting to his
children and his
barons.

Geffray gives
presents to the
Church;

and at dinner
tells the prior
that Raymondin
is his father, and
asks him to take
care of him, and
the Church will
lose nothing
by it.

housyng of thabbey but as lytel Chapelles. Thenne
cam the Chapellayn & called geffray and he entred
within the Celle of his fader / and anoone kneeled on
his knees & dyde to hys fader reuerent salutacion / 4
And Raymondyn toke hym vp in his armes and kyssed
hym / and thenne made hym to sette vpon a stoole
with hym tofore the awter. And there bygan geffray
to shewe to hys fader how he was at Romme, and how 8
he was confessed of the pope / and the pope hym said
that he shuld fynd hym at Mountferrat. And in this
communycacion had they many materes togidre /
geffray alwayes prayeng hys fader that he wold 12
retourne to his countre. 'Fayre sone,' said Raymondyn,
'that may I not doo. For here I wyl spend my lyf,
always prayeng god for thy moder & me, & for the,
that god wyl amende the, my sone geffray.' And soo 16
geffray was there al that day with his fader. And the
next day in the morowe herd Raymondyn his masse,
& receyued our lord, as hys custome was to doo / and
after, said to geffray, 'Fayre sone, it behoueth the to 20
parte from hens, & to retourne in to thy Countre;
and grete wel al ¹my children & my barons.' And
thenne geffray toke leue of hys fader al wepyng; and
loth he was to departe from his fader. And after 24
came down fro the mountayn vnto thabbaye, where
he was honourably receyued / and the monkes had
grete meruayll wherfore he was so long aboue.

Thystorye sheweth that geffray gaf grete ryches & 28
fayre Jewelles to the Chirche, & after toke leue of
the pryour & his monkes, but the pryour hym conueyed
vnto Culbaston, wher geffray dyned with the pryour /
and told hym in secret wyse that Raymondyn was 32
hys fader, whom geffray besoughte to take hede to
hys fader, and that the Chirche shuld not lese nothing
therby, For euery yere ones duryng hys lyf he wold
come & vysyte hys fader. Thenne ansuerd the pryour, 36

- 'doubte you not, my lord, there shal be no deffawte but I shal vysyte & remembre your fader.' And thenne toke geffray leue & went to Barselone to hys bed.
- 4 And on the morne he departed toward Lusynen wher as Theodoryk hys brother & the barons receyued hym with ryght grete joye, and were glad of his commyng. And whan they were at leyser, geffray shewed to hys
- 8 brother theodoryk the very effect of euery thing touchyng theyre fader. Foorthwith Theodoryk that moche loued his fader bygan to wepe ful tenderly. And geffray seeyng his broþer make suche sorowe to
- 12 hym said thus, 'My ryght dere brother, yet must ye abyde here, For wete it wel that I wyl goo see our two bretheren in almayne, that is to vnderstand Regnauld king of behayne and the Duc Authony of
- 16 Lucembourgh / but I wyl not departe without aray of men of armes, For þer be in thoo marches ryght euyl peple the which¹ gladly wold robbe them that passe by the way.' 'By my sowle, my brother, I hold wel
- 20 withal that ye doo as ye say / but I beseche you ryght entierly brother that we leue our countre in the gouernaunce of our barons & take with vs v.C. men of armes, and that it may playse you I to go with you;
- 24 For I haue herd say that there is grete werre betwix them of Anssay & them of Austeryche.' 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'Ye say wel, For peraventure our brother Anthony is in hand with them.' And whan
- 28 they had made their ordonnaunce, Odon the Erle of Marche came and spake with geffray, and brought in hys company thre score men of armes, For at that tyme he had warre ayenst the Earle of Vandosme /
- 32 and also Raymond their brother Earle of Forestz cam there the same day. And there the foure bretheren made there moche one of other / and were joyfull for the tydynges that they herd of their fader / and said /
- 36 ones they hoped to see hym togidre.

Geffray returns to Lusignan, where he is joyfully received.

He tells Theodoric about their father.

Theodoric weeps at the story.

Geffray proposes to visit Regnault and Anthony.

¹ fol. 204.

Theodoric wishes to go with him,

because he has heard there is war between Anssay and Austria.

They are joined by Odo, Earl of March.

The brothers make much of each other, and are glad of the news of their father.

Cap. LIX. How Geffray reedyffyed the monastery of Maylleses.

Geffray arranges for the rebuilding of the abbey of Mailleses.

He and Theodorie appoint good governors for their countries.

1 fol. 204 b.

Odo and Raymond propose to go with them to Allmain.

The Earl of Vendôme makes his peace with Odo.

The four brethren ride with their company to Castle Duras, near which they lodge.

The King of Anssay was at war with the Dukes of Freiburg and Austria. He was besieged by them at Pourrencreu.

Geffray afore his departyng charged & ordeyned people for the reedyfyeng of the Abbaye of 4 Maylleses, as hym was youen in Charge by the pope by way of penaunce / and to them assygned where they shuld take bothe gold & syluer therwith to paye the werkmen. And so lefte he a good gouernour in 8 hys cowntre / And in lyke wyse dyde his brother theodoryk in his Cowntre. And whan Odon & Raymond sawe that they wold departe to go ¹to see theire bretheren in Allemayne, they sayd in lyke wyse 12 wold they doo. And commanded anoone theire peple to mete with them at Boneuah. And at that tyme were the bretheren acompanyed with two thousand men of armes & a thousand Crosbowes. And whan 16 the Erle of Vandosme herd tydynges therof he supposed certaynly that they came to exille hym, and that Odon had complayned hym to hys bretheren of hym, and so moche he doubted geffray that he came to Boneuah 20 and yelded hym to the grace of Odon erle of Marche. And he pardozned hym of al the mysdedes that he had doo to hym. And the erle of Vandosme made hym homage of the land that was in debat atwix 24 them. /

Here sheweth thystorye that the foure bretheren departed fro Boneual & were in theire companye many grete lordes, and rode in fayre aray tyl they cam 28 vpon an euen and lodged them nygh a ryuere called Meuze, by a Fortresse named the Castel Duras. But as now I shal cease of them to speke / and shal begynne to speke of the kyng of anssay, that had grete 32 warre ayenst the Erle of Frebourgh & with the Duc of Austeryche, the which had besieged hym within a Castel of hys that was called Pourrencreu. Wherfor

he sent word to Regnault kyng of Behayne that was
 maryed *with* his Cousyn / and lyke wyse to the Duc
 Anthony of Lucembourg prayeng them of ayde &
 4 socour ayenst his enemyes, at the whiche instaunce &
 prayer / the two bretheren Regnald & Anthony made
 theire apparayll. ¹And Regnaulde departed out of his
 Royallme of Behayne and came to Lucembourg with
 8 IIII. C men of armes for to haue hys brother Anthony
 with hym toward the siege of Porreueru, wher the
 kyng of ansay was besieged *within*. And þat meane
 sayson came two knightes to Lucembourg from geffray
 12 and his thre bretheren þat were *with* hym, the which
 two knightes brought word bothe to regnault &
 anthony of theire bretheren commyng, and that they
 were nygh the toun and cam for to see them. And
 16 whan kyng regnault and the Duc Anthony knew that
 theire bretheren were commyng toward them, they
 were full glad & immedyatly commanded that al the
 stretes shuld be rychely hanged, and syn mounted on
 20 horsbak, and *with* noble companye they went to mete
 them; and rode tyl they mete *with* the vanwarde of
 theire armee & asked where theire bretheren were /
 and it was shewed to them where they were commyng
 24 vnder the standart. Geffray thenne, that wel vnder-
 stod that anthony & regnault his bretheren came to
 mete hem, he made euery man to stand apart / and
 soone after the six bretheren mete togidre and embraced
 28 & made moche one of other / and after rode foorth
 toward the toun / and afir theire age they rode two
 & two togidre. Odon and Anthony were the formest,
 and after them rode Regnault & Geffray / and them
 32 folowed theodoryk & Raymonnet / and al theire
 oost came after in fayre ordynaunce / and in this
 manere they entred in to the toune, where as the
 Cytezeyns were in theire best rayments al in a rowe
 36 on bothe ²sydes of the stretes, that were rychely

He had sent for
 help to Anthony
 and Regnald.

¹ fol. 205.

Regnald with
 four hundred
 men goes to
 Anthony, to
 accompany him
 to the siege of
 Pourreueru.

Geffray sends
 word that he
 and his three
 brothers are on
 their way to
 Luxembourg.

Regnald and
 Anthony meet
 their bretheren
 outside the
 town.

² fol. 205 b.

hanged / and the ladyes & damoysselles loked out of the wyndowes / and so grete & noble apparayH was there made for theire commying that it was a fayre syght.

Trouth it is that whan the bretheren entred w^{ithin} 4 Lucembourg, Anthony & Geffray rode thenne the formest of al theire bretheren. And wete it that the notable Citeseyns, ladyes, & damoiselles meruaylled moche of the fyersnes and grete height of theire lordis 8 bretheren, sayeng^t that they six togidre wer able & wel shapen to destroye a grete oost / And thus they rode through the toun into the Castel and there they alighted. There were the six bretheren recountred^t of 12 two noble ladyes, that is to vnderstand^t the quene of Behayn and the Duches of Lucembourg, that honourably receyued theire lordes and brethern. And aftir they went into the haH that was al hanged with 16 ryche cloth of gold / and *per* were the tables rychely couered & redy to dyner. And thenne after many playsaunt deuyses and joyfuH wordes, they wessed theire handes and sette them at dyner and were nobly 20 serued. And after dyner geffray shewed & recounted aH hys auentures & fayttes / and how he fonde *pe* tombe of Elynas / & of the quene Pressyne of whiche lynce they were yssued, wherof they were al joyfuH & 24 glad to meruayH / and how theire fader was departed and where he was. For of aH other thinges they knew ynough. And thenne Anthony & regnald told to theire bretheren how the kyng of Anssay was 28 besieged & that they wold help hym. Thenne ¹ansuered Geffray, 'My lordes, my bretheren, wete it wel we are not come hither to take our rest / but we al are redy to goo *with* you whersomeuer ye wyl / & 32 therfor lete vs not make long soiourne / but go we² vpon our enemyes to helpe & socoure our frendes.' And forthwith Geffray and hys bretheren that were

The citizens
marvel at their
appearance.

The brethren
are received at
the castle by
the Queen of
Bohemia and
the Duchess of
Luxembourg.

Geffray tells of
his adventures.
How he had
found the tomb
of King Elynas
and Queen
Pressine, from
whom they had
all sprung, and
how their father
had become a
hermit at
Mountserratt.
Anthony and
Regnald tell
their brethren
that they are to
help the King
of Anssay.

¹ fol. 206.

Geffray answers
that he and his
brethren are
ready to do so
as well;

² 'we' repeated in MS.

come there *with* hym toke theire leue of bothe the
 queene & duchesse theire sustirs & retourned to theire
 oost / and thenne Regnault & Anthony wold haue
 4 conueyed them / but geffray said, 'Fayre lordes &
 bretheren, ye shal come no ferther / but make al your
 apparayH & take leue of your wyues, and to morne, god
 before, we wyl departe toward the said Castel wherin
 8 the king of Anssay our frend is besieged.' And soo
 Anthony and regnault retourned sayeng eche one to
 other, 'Certaynly this man may not long endure / but
 he be other take or slayn. For he fereth of nothing
 12 in the world / & also to counseyll hym, it were but
 for nought, For he suffreth nothing, but as his wyt &
 mynde gyueth hym. For yf he had *with* hym but
 X. M^t men, & that he sawe his enemyes tofore hym to
 16 the nombre of IIC. M^t yet wold he fyght & medle
with them, wherfore we must take heede to hym that
 he vaunce not hym self so moche *with* the enemyes,
 but that we be nygh hym to socoure hym *with* our
 20 people / but for this haste that he maketh we owe
 not to wete hym euyl gree For cause that assoone as
 oon may, he muste aduyse the wayes to hurt &
 dommage his enemys.' And thenne they lefte of
 24 geffray theire brother more to speke / but bothe they
 said that he was ryght hardy & valyaunt. And on the
 morne they ¹toke leue of theire wyues and left in the
 land a good gouernour. And also geffray on that
 28 other part ordeyned & purueyed of al thinges that were
 necessary to hys oost. /

In the next day Geffray made blowe vp hys trompettes,
 that euer[y] man shuld be armed, and after her^t
 32 his masse and syn marched forth *with* hys oost / And
 immedyatly Anthony & regnald came out of the toun
with theire people in fayre aray. And so they departed
 and rode togidre tyl they came into the land of
 36 Anssay / and on an euen lodged them thre leghes nygh

he then returns
to his host.

Geffray refuses
Anthony and
Regnald's
company,
and asks them
to prepare to
start to succour
the King of
Anssay in the
morning.

They speak of
Geffray's
bravery.

¹ fol. 205 b.

In the morning
they take leave
of their wives
and appoint a
governor.

Geffray orders
every man to
arm, and after
mass is said his
host marches.

Anthony and
Regnald join
him with their
people.

They arrive three
leagues from
Freibourg.

A letter of de-
fiance is written
to the Duke of
Austria and
the Earl of
Freibourg,

1 fol. 207.

and sent by a
herald to the
Duke of Aus-
tria at Pour-
rencreu.
It is read in
hearing of all
the nobles there.
They say that
the devil has
sent the breth-
ren against them,
and that only
the fame of the
Lusignans is
now spoken of.
The herald re-
turns to the
brethren's camp.

Geffray takes
five hundred
men, and am-
bushes them in
a wood near
Freibourg.

the toun of Frebourgh. Thenne called geffray al his
bretheren and shewed to them that it behoued not
them for theire honour to renne vpon no man but that
they had defyed hym tofore / And they ansuerd that 4
he said trouth. Wherfor they lete make a *letre* of
deffyaunce of whiche the tenour foloweth. 'Regnauld
by the grace of god kyng of Behayne, Anthony Duc
of Lucembourg, Odon Erle of Marche, Geffray lord of 8
Lusynen, Raymond Erle of Forestz, and Theodoryk
lord of Partenay. To the duc of Austeryche and to
the Erle of Frebourgh, and to al theire alyaunces
gretynge. And where we haue vnderstand that with- 12
out ony lawfull quarell or raysonnable cause ye haue
gretly hurt & dommagd bothe the land & people of
our ryght welbeloued vncle the king of Anssay, the
whiche as now ye haue besieged within his Castel of 16
Pourrencreu, And for as moche that we be therfor
meued, & entende & purpose to entre in your land to
dystroye you & al your people / consydering the
noble ordre of knighthode that it shal not be by vs 20
mynsshed. We perfor by our messenger sende you
oure *letres* of deffyaunce, &c.' Thenne was delyuered
the *letre* to a herault, which rode tyl he came to the
siege of Pourrencreu wher he presented the said *lettre* 24
to the Duc of Austrych. the whiche *letres* were redde
in heryng of al þe lordes there. Thenne said they of
Allemayne the Deuell hath brought hem hyther, none
other renomme is now thurgh al the world but of them 28
of Lusynen. Thenne retourned the herault toward the
six bretheren, and to them shewed the manere how
they of theire enemyes oost were meruaylled. 'By my
feyth they haue herd speke of vs from ferre / but now 32
they shal see vs nere to them.' / It is trouth that
thenne geffray departed with fyue hondred men of
armes from his oost & went and embusshed his people
in a lytel wod nygh the toun of Frebourgh. This 36

doon he & ten knyghtes with hym, & a squyer of
 Lucembourg that ryght wel coude speke Almayn
 tonge & knew al the Countre, went vpon a lytel
 4 mountayne to behold & see how he myght entre in
 the toun / but or he departed he said to them of his
 embusshe in this manere : ' Sires, I entende & purpose
 with the help of god to haue the toun of Frebourgh or
 8 to morne pryme at our playsire. Wherefore this nyght
 I shaH departe with this X knyghtes and this esquier,
 & at the spryng of the day I shal bygynne myn
 enterpryse / and but loke wel whan ye perceyue vs
 12 within the gate that fourthwith ye marche toward vs.'
 And thenne about thre of the clokk after mydnyght
 Geffray / his ten knyghtes and his guyde toke ¹eeche
 of them a sack full of hey and bare it before them
 16 vpon tharsons of theire sadels. In this manere they
 went & came tofore the gate of Frebourgh, where as
 the said esquier called the watche *pat* they myght
 entre, sayeng that they were frendes and that they had
 20 be aH that nyght in fourrage. Thenne asked hym the
 porter what they had in thoo sackes, the squyer ansuerd
 there ben in gownes & suche thinges and suche ware /
 that we haue take vpon our enemyes and we bryng
 24 them hyther to selle them. The porter thenne
 supposyng they had be of Allemayne & theire frendes
 opend the gate & lete faH the bridge. Thenne entred
 geffray first of alle, and foorthwith drew his swerd and
 28 slew the porter / and in conclusyon they slough al
 them of the watche. Thenne was there the cry of
 them of the toun ' treson / treson' / And immediatly
 marched thembusshe & came & entred in the toun.
 32 There was grete occisyon of them of the toun / but
 many of them escaped and fledd. And whan this was
 doon geffray lefte there foure hondred men of armes &
 retourned with the residue toward hys oost that he
 36 mete by the way toward the siege. Of this noble

He then takes
 ten knights and
 a squire, who
 speaks German,
 and knows the
 country, and
 goes to a hill to
 see how he could
 enter the town.

He tells his
 ambush that he
 hopes to have
 Freiburg in the
 morning,

and that when
 they see that he
 and his knights
 have entered the
 gate they are to
 march up to him.

¹ fol. 207 b.

Geffray and his
 knights take
 each a sack of
 hay, and ride to
 Freiburg.

The squire asks
 the watch to let
 them in, as they
 are friends.

The porter opens
 the gate, and
 lowers the
 bridge.

Geffray enters
 first, and slays
 the porter.

At length all the
 watch is slain.
 The cry of trea-
 son is raised.
 The ambush
 comes up, and
 many of the
 townspeople
 are killed.
 Geffray leaves
 four hundred
 men-of-arms in
 charge of the
 town, and with
 those left
 marches back to
 his brethren,

who marvel at
his valiant and
subtle feat of
arms.

¹ fol. 208.

The Earl of
Freibourg is sor-
rowful when he
learns the news.

After mass the
brethren begin
to march.

They are seen by
the besiegers.
The alarm is
given, and they
arm.

The hosts fight;
the ground is
soon red with
blood.

² fol. 208 b.

enterpryse & valyaunt fayt the brethern of geffray and
al theire peple were meruaylled / sayeng that geffray
was the moost valyaunt knyght & subtyl in the faytte
of armes that lyued at that day. And joyous & glad ⁴
they marched courageously ¹toward theire enemyes.
Anoon after came tydynges to the siege how Frebourgh
was lost, wherof the Duc of Austeryche and in especial
the Erle of Frebourgh were sorowful & wroth. 'By 8
my feyth,' said thenne the Duc of Austerych, 'they
be subtyl men of warre & moch to be doubted. Yf we
loke not wel about vs they myght wet gyue vs a grete
chak.' Wherfor they called theire CounseyH. 12

In this partye sayth thystorye that on the next day
by the morowe the six bretheren herd masse, and
after ordeyned peire bataylles / geffray & his thre
bretheren that were come with hym conduyted the first 16
batayH, Anthony had the second, And regnauld the
III^{de}. And so marched forth in fayr ordynaunce, and
so wel renged that it was a fayre sight to behold.
And whan the sonne bygan to shewe bryght & clere 20
they came vpon a lytel mountayn into the valey.
Thenne were they Percyued, and they of the siege
bygan to cry alarme. Thenne armed hym euery man,
And in theire best wyse came & renged them before 24
the bataylles of the brethern. Thenne bygan the
bataylles of bothe sydes to approche eche other / and
with grete cryes of one part & of other medled & ranne
with theire sperys vpon eche other. The grounde was 28
there soone dyed rede with grete effusyon of blood.
For Geffray with hys swerd smote at the lyfte syde
& at the ryght syde vpon his enemyes & ouerthrew or
sloughe aH them that he recountred. And ²the six 32
baners of the bretheren rengid them togidre in fayre
aray. There were the armes of Lusynen wel shewed
and knowen in pycture, and also by pesaunt and
horryble strokes, For the six bretheren perced the 36

- prees & smote, cutting heedes, armes, & legges of
theire enemyes here & there, and made suche oceysyon
that it was meruaylle / Geffray recounted by aduenture
4 the Duc of Austryeh, on whom he discharged hys
swerd by such myght that he made hym to staker al
astonyed, And thenne theodoryk that was nygh by,
strak hym fourthwith and ouerthrew hym, and so
8 incontynent he was take. And the noble and valyaunt
Anthony dyde ryght valyauntly, For he toke the Erle
Freburgh and made hym to delyuere his swerd to hym,
and after betoke hym to foure knyghtes. What shuld
12 I make long compte. they of Allemayne were dys-
comfyted and bygan to flee. Thenne came the kyng
of Anssay out of the Fortres glad & joyous of the
dyscomfyture of hys enemyes, and came to the brethern
16 tentes where he thanked them moche of theire noble
socour and gretly festyed them. And were brought
there tofore hym the Duc of Austeryche & the Erle of
Frebourgh with syx noble barons / and to hym said
20 the bretheren, 'Sire, here ben your enemyes as
prysonners, doo of them your playsyr.' And the kyng
thanked them gretly & humbly. And this doon geffray
and hys bretheren that were cōmo¹ with hym toke
24 leue of the kyng of Anssay, of theire brethern Anthony
& Regnauld, and retourned in theire Countre. But
thystory sayth that aftirward all the bretheren fonde
eche other togidre at Mountferrat, where they held a
28 noble feste for leue of Raymondyn theire fader, whiche
was ryght glad & joyous to see there his children,
but soone he toke leue of them and retourned in to hys
hermytage. And thenne the six bretheren gaaf grette
32 ryches & jewels to the chirche there, and after departed
and toke leue eche one of other & retourned to theire
Countrees, some by the see & other by land.

36 **H**ere testyfyeth thistorye that as long as Raymondyn
lyued, Geffray & theodoryk came there euery

The brethren
slay many of
their enemies.

Geffray en-
counters the
Duke of Aus-
tria, and strikes
him with his
sword.

Theodoric, who
was at hand,
gives him
another stroke,
and overthrows
him. The Duke
is taken.
Anthony cap-
tures the Earl
of Freiburg.

The Germans
begin to flee.
The King of
Anssay comes
out of his for-
tress, and thanks
the brethren.

and feasts them.
The Duke of
Austria and the
Earl of Freiburg
are brought
before him, and
the brethren tell
him to do what
he pleases with
them.

¹ fol. 209.

The brethren
return home.

They afterwards
meet at Mount-
serrat on a visit
to their father,
who is joyful at
seeing them.

They give rich
gifts to the
church.

Geffray and
Theodoric go to
Raymondin
euery year;

but one day
when they were
about to journey
to Mountserratt,
a great serpent
is seen on the
battlements of
Lusignan castle.

It has a woman's
voice.

The people are
abashed, and
know it to be
Melusine; the
brothers weep.
When the ser-
pent sees them
she inclines her
head, and utters
a dolorous cry.

Geffray and
Theodoric go to
Mountserratt and
find their father
dead.

1 fol. 209 b.

They mourn, and
dress themselves
and their men
in black, and
arrange their
father's obse-
quies.

The King of
Aragon, and
many lords,
attend and hear
mass.

After the burial
Geffray thanks
them.

A tomb is placed
over Raymondin.

yere ones to see hym / but it befeH on a day, as they
were bothe at Lusynen redy for to go to Mountferrat,
a meruayllous auenture, For there was seen vpon the
batelments of the Castel a grete & horryble serpent the 4
which cryed with a femenyne voys, wherof all the
people was abasshed / but wel they wyst that it was
Melusyne / whan the two bretheren beheld it, teerys
in habundaunce bygan to fall fro their eyen; For they 8
knew wel that it was their moder. And whan the
serpent sawe them wepe, she enclyned the heed toward
them, casting suche an horryble cry & so doulorous
that it semed them that herd it that the Fortres shuld 12
haue fall. And anoone aftir the two breþern geffray
& theodoryk departed toward Mountferrat where they
came and fonde their fader deed, whereof they
lamented & made grete sorow and anoone clothed 16
themselves and al their meyne in blak, and ordeyned
for thobsequeye of their fader. There came the kyng
of aragon with many grete lordes that offred at the
masse. And whan the seruyse was doon & the corps 20
buried honourably / geffray went & thanked the
kyng and his barons of thonour that þey had doon to
hys fader and to his brother & hym. /

Thus as thystorye sheweth was thobsequeye of 24
Raymondyn deuoutly & nobly doon, and a ryche
sepulture was made & sette vpon his graue, & trouth
it is that Bernardon the neuw of Geffray was there
that ryght wel coude behaue hym among the ladyes, 28
in so moche that the quene of Aragon, that was there,
desyred her lord to demande of Geffray what that yong
gentylman was / and that / the kyng dide gladly.
And theñne geffray ansuerd, 'Sire, he is my neuw, 32
sone to the Erle of Marche my brother.' 'Certaynly,
Geffray,' said the kyng, 'Wel I byleue that, For he is
wel nourrytured and semeth wel to be of noble

extraction / and wete it wel that his contenaunce
 playseth vs ryght wel and so dooth lyke wyse to the
 quene / and verily yf it played you to suffre hym
 4 abyde *with* vs in our Court we wold doo for hym that
 he & you bothe shuld be playseth ther*with*.' 'Sire,'
 said geffray, 'his fader hath another sone and two
 doughtirs, & syth it is your playsir to haue hym he is
 8 come hither *with* vs in a good heure & that playseth
 me wel.' And thenne the kyng thanked hym moche,
 and so dyde the quene. And wete it that Bernardon
 1 Wedded aftirward, at thinstaunce & prayer of the
 12 kyng of Aragon, the doughtir of the lord Cabyeres that
 had none to hys heyre but her. And thenne the
 kyng and the quene, lordes & ladyes, toke their leue
 of the two bretherne, the whiche after grete yestes of
 16 ryches by them youen to the church toke leue of the
 pryour and hys monkes, and after departed and
 retourned to Lusynen, where as they called to them all
 the baronnye and there was thobsequye of Raymondyn
 20 honourably doon. And aftir Geffray shewed to his
 brother Odon, Erle of Marche, how & wherfore hys
 sone Bernardon was lefte *with* the kyng of Aragon,
 wherof he was glad. And thenne the bretheren and
 24 the barons toke leue of Geffray and retourned to their
 countrees. And Geffray abode at Lusynen and dyde
 aftirward moche good; For he reedyfied the noble
 Abay of Maylleses and dyde grete almesse to the poure
 28 people.

Thystorye sayth that all the heyres of Raymondyn
 and Melusyne regned nobly, that is to wete
 Vryan in Cipre, Guyon in Armenye, Regnault in
 32 Behayne, Anthony in Lucembourgh, Odon in Marche,
 Raymonet in Forestz, Geffray in Lusynen, and
 Theodoryk in Partenay. And of theyre lynce are
 yssued them of Castel Regnault, They of Penbrough

The Queen of
 Aragon takes
 Geffray's nephew
 to her court.

1 fol. 210.
 He afterwards
 marries the only
 child of the Lord
 of Cabyeres.

Geffray and
 Theodoric givo
 great gifts to
 the church,

and return to
 Lusignan, where
 the obsequies of
 Raymondin are
 honourably done.

Geffray tells
 Odo that Bernar-
 don had been
 left with the
 King of Aragon.

Geffray rebuilds
 the Abbey of
 Mailleses.

The nine heirs
 of Raymondin
 and Melusine
 reign nobly,

and from them
 are issued the
 lords of Castle
 Regnault, of
 Pembroke,

of Cabyeres, and
of Cardillac.

Geffray governs
his land well,
and administers
good justice.

For ten years he
asks no ac-
counts from his
receivers, who

³ fol. 210 b.

are told when
they wish him
to examine the
accounts, that
when justice is
done, and his
towns and
castles are well
provided for, and
he has plenty
of money, he
is content.

But his stewards
ask, for their
own safety, that
he should give
them quittance.

Geffray looks at
his accounts,
and sees an item
of ten sous that
was paid yearly
for the pommel
of the highest
tower of Lusig-
nan Castle.

He is told that
it is an annual
rent.

Geffray declares
he holds the
castle direct
from God,
his Creator.
His stewards
tell Geffray that
they do not know
to whom they
pay the ten sous.

in England / they of Cabyeres in Aragon,¹ and they of
²Cardillak in Quercyn. /

Here after saith thistory that geffray ten yere affir
the decez of Raymondin his fader gouerned⁴
ryght wel & kept good justice in his land / but duryng
that long space of tym he asked of his receyuours none
acomptes, but whan the ³receyuours wold haue shewed
theire acomptes he to them ansuerd in this manere : 8
'What acomptes wold ye shew to me? For as touching
myself I wyl none other acompte, but that justice be
wel and truly kept through al my land, and my townes
& Castels wel entreteyned, and gold & syluer to hold 12
& kepe myn estate / trow ye, that I wyl make a paleys
of gold / the stone that my lady my moder me gaf,
suffyseth me ryght wel.' And thenne hys stywardes &
gouernours ansuerd, 'certainly, my lord, it behoueth 16
wel to a prynce to here and see what he spendeth, at
lest ones in a yere / al were it but for the saluacyon
of hys receyuours in tyme to come and for to gyue
them quyttaunce.' 20

Here sayth thistory that geffray consentid to here
thacomptes of his receyuours. And it came to
an article where he vnderstod that ⁴X. ³ were payed
euery yere only for the pommel of the hiest toure of 24
hys Fortresse of Lusynen / he anone rested there and
asked why it was not made so strong that it myght
laste many wynter. 'My lord,' ansuerd the receyuours /
'it is rente annueH.' 'What say ye?' said geffray / 'I 28
hold not the fortresse but only of god my Creatour /
wel happy I were yf he held me quyte therfor of all
my synnes / but telle me to whom ye paye.' 'Certaynly,'
said they / 'we wot not' / 'How thenne,' said Geffray / 32
'ye desyre of me quyttaunce therof / so wyl I haue

¹ Fr. version gives in addition '*ceulx du Chassenage du Dauphiné; ceulx de la Roche.*'

² Fr. *Candillac*.

⁴ Fr. *dux soublz*.

- quytaunce of hym that receyueh it of you / as rayson
is / but by god ye shal not begyH me soo, for yf I may
knowe who that taketh that annuel rente of me, he
4 shal shew me good^t letres therof made / or he or ye
shaH yelk^t me ayen the said annuel rente fro the tyme
that ye first alowed it in your acomptes ¹ynto now.’
Thenne said the receyuours to Geffray in this manere :
8 ‘My lord, trouth it is / that six yere agoo after the
doulorous departyng of my lady your moder from your
fader / euery yere vpon the last day of August was
sene a grete hand^t that toke the pommel of the said
12 toure & pullyk^t it fro the toure by so grete strength
that the rouf of the tour brak therwithal, and so it
costed^t euery yere to make ayen xx^{ti} or xxx²ti. thanne
came a man to my lord your fader which he nor no man
16 knew what he was, and counseyllled hym that euery
yere vpon the last day of August he shuld doo take
— a purse of hertis leeder and to be put in it xxx pieces
of syluer, eche piece worth ³foure penys, that made in
20 *summa* ten sheling, And that this purse shuld be putte
vpon the pommel of the said toure / and by that shuld
the pommel abyde styl and not hurt nor dommaged /
and euer syth tyl now it hath thus be doon.’ And
24 whan geffray vndersto^k this meruayH he bygan to
thinke, and long he was or he ansuerk^t or said^t ony
word^t. /

- Thystorye witnesseth that long thought Geffray
28 **T**vpon this faytte, and after he said in this manere :
‘Sires, how wel that I byleue that it is as ye say,
Neuertheles I charge you vpon payne of deth that ye
no more paye the said annuel, but at the last day of
32 August bryng to me the purse and the money, For I
wyl make the payement myself.’ Thenne sent geffray
for hys brother theodoryk in Partenay, and also for
hys brother Raymond in Forestz, that they shuld be

Geffray says that
he who takes the
money must
show letters
patent proving
his right,
or he will have
to return it.

¹ fol. 211.

The receivers
tell how six years
after the depar-
ture of Melusine,
and the last day
of August every
year,

a great hand
pulled down the
pommel of the
tower, which
cost twenty to
thirty livres to
repair.

Then an un-
known man came
and advised Ray-
mondin to put
thirty pieces of
silver on the
pommel the last
of August each
year,

and the tower
would be un-
injured.

Geffray marvels
much at the
story :

at length he for-
bids his steward
to pay the rent
again on pain
of death ;
but says on the
day the money
is to be given to
him, and he will
pay it himself.
Geffray sends for
Raymondin and
Theodoric,

² Fr. *livres*.

³ Fr. *quatre deniers*.

1 fol. 211 b.
and tells them
the story, and
that he is not
going to pay
again until he
knows why the
fortress is so
bound.
On the last of
August Geffray
hears mass,
and arms
and takes the
money.

He bids his
brethren fare-
well,

and goes to the
top of the
donjon.

He waited from
noon till three
o'clock, but saw
nothing.

Then he heard a
great noise that
shook the don-
jon, and he saw
an armed knight
who said, 'Gef-
fray, wilt thou
deny my tri-
bute?'

Geffray asks
for his letters,
and says, 'If
thou hast them,
I will pay thee.'
The knight
answers he has
none, but that
he has always
been paid
regularly.
Geffray tells the
knight that even
if it were a good
debt he would
find it difficult
to get,

with hym at Lusynen the xxvith day of August. And
whan they were come he shewed ¹to them al the
matere of the said annuel rente, and said that he neuer
shuld suffre it to be payed; but that he first knew to 4
whom and why the fortres of Lusynen was bound thus
for to doo. And whan the last day of August came,
Geffray herd hys masse and receyued ryght deuoutely
the holy sacrement and immedyately armed hym, and 8
bad the preste putte the stolle about his nek / and
aftir toke the purse with the money therin. And
penne he bad his bretheren farwel, sayeng in this
manere: 'I wyl departe and serche for hym that thus 12
yerly taketh trybute of my fortresse / but I assure you
yf he be no more of strength than I am I shaft hastily
byreue hym of hys trybute.' And so he yede vp to
the vpermost stage of the donjon / and his bretheren 16
and the barons taryed benethe in grete doubte and fere
that geffray shuld be perysshed / but geffray was therof
not agast / but loked long yf he coude see eny thing.

A H thus as thystory sheweth geffray rested there 20
fro none to thre of the klok, that he ne herd nor
sawe nothing. but anoone after he herd a grete noyse
wherwith att the donjon shook / and as he loked
tofore hym he perceyued a grete knyght armed of al 24
poynts, that said to hym with a hye voys, 'Thou
geffray, wilt thou denye my trybute that of ryght I
ought to haue vpon the pommel of this toure of the
whiche I was seasyd & enpocessid by thy fader?' 28
'Thenne,' said Geffray, 'where are the letres? yf thou
hast them, shew it how my fader was bound, and yf I
see thou hast good ryght / here is the money redy to
paye the.' and thenne the knyght ansuerd in this 32
manere: 'I had neuer letres therof / but wel & truly
haue I be payed and neuer denyed tyl now.' 'By my
feyth,' said geffray, 'al were it good debte and thy
ryght to haue it / yet shuldest thou haue grete payne 36

to recouere it of me. And on the other part thou
 holdest me for thy subget & ¹woldest hold me in
 seruitude and thou hast therof nothing to shew. but
 4 what art thou that thus by the space of ²XVI. yere
 hast thevely take this trybute? / I now deffye the by
 the myght of my sauour and the I chalenge for myn
 herytage.' 'By my feyth,' said the knyght, 'doubte
 8 not therof but that I am a creature of god, and myn
 name shalt thou knowe tyme ynough.' And without
 eny more questyon eche of them recountred other with
 myghty & gret strokes. And what with that and with
 12 the stampyng of theire feet, the noyse was so grete
 that al þey that were benethe were abasshed, and
 supposed that the donjon shuld haue fah. Wherfor
 they wyst wel that geffray had somewhat to doo. And
 16 his bretheren shuld haue assysted hym, but geffray had
 them deffended so to do. And wete it wel whan the
 knyght of the tour fond Geffray so fyers & so strong,
 he putte his swerd vp in the shede and thurgh his
 20 paueys behind hym. And whan Geffray sawe hym
 that doo / he dyde lyke wyse with his sheld / but he
 with bothe his handes smote the knyght vpon the
 helmet with his swerd so myghtyly that he stakend
 24 perwith. And thenne the knight toke geffray in his
 arnes / and with that geffray lete fah his swerd and
 wrestled with hym / and wete it wel ther was lytel
 fauour shewed on neyther part. And whan the
 28 knyght perceyued the purse about geffrays neck he
 supposed to haue had it from hym / but geffray kept
 hym therfro / sayeng / 'or thou haue purse or money
 it shal cost the the best blood in thy body / but for
 32 trouth I meruayll how thou mayst so long withstand
 me.' 'By my feyth,' said the knight, 'I haue more
 meruaylle how thou mayst withstand my strengthe /
 but to morowe shalt thou haue a new day with me,

¹ fol. 212.

but as he has nothing to show that it is due, he demands his name, and desies him.

The knight replies that he is a creature of God, and that Geffray will learn his name soon enough.

They fight, and make so great a noise that those below think the donjon will fall.

His brethren would have come to his help, but Geffray had forbidden them to do so.

The knight sheathes his sword, and puts his shield behind him.

Geffray strikes him on the helmet so that he staggers.

He wrestles with Geffray,

and tries to take the purse from him.

¹ fol. 212 b.

The knight appoints another struggle in a meadow by the river next morning on condition that Geffray comes alone. Geffray agrees, and the knight disappears.

Geffray comes down and brings the shield he had won in his right hand, and the purse in his left.

His brethren are abashed, and ask whom he had found.

He answers, the most valiant knight he had ever seen, and tells of his covenant, and of the sudden departure of the knight. They laugh at the story, but when they look at Geffray's helmet they see there has been a great fight.

In the morning Geffray goes to the meadow.

He calls to the knight. 'Be ye he that will take tribute upon my fortress?'

² fol. 213. The knight says he is.

For now the sonne is to his rest, ¹ and thou shalt fynd me yonder vpon that medowe beyond the ryuere al redy armed to chalenge the and my ryght. But thou shalt assure me þat no personne shal passe the ryuere ⁴ but thou.' 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'I the assure no more ther shal not,' and with that he departed that geffray wüst not where he became. 'By my feyth,' sayd thenne geffray, 'here is apert messenger, I haue 8 grete meruaylle what this may be,' and so came he doun and brought with hym the knyghtes sheld that he had wonne.

Thystorye witnesseth whan Geffray was come doun, ¹² hys sheld about his neck and the knyghtis pauys in his ryght hand that he had wonne / and in his other hand the purse with the money, hys bretheren and the baronne pere were abashed therwith, and ¹⁶ asked hym whom he had fond. And thenne he said he had fond the moost valyaunt knyght that euer he dyde dedes of armes withal. And to them shewed al the maner of batayll & of theire couenaunt / and how ²⁰ he wold haue had the purse, and how he departed so sodaynly. and they bygan to lawhe, sayeng þat neuer tofore they herd of suche a thing. But whan they sawe geffrays helmet & al hys harneys so perysshed ²⁴ with strokes, they had no courage to lawhe. For they knew wel there was sore batayll. And on the next day erly geffray roos, and he & hys brethern herd masse & drank ones. And thenne armed hym at al ²⁸ pieces & mounted on horsbak / And his bretheren and þe barons yek to conueye hym to the ryuere, where he toke leue of them and passed ouer on the other syde of the ryuere. / ³²

Thystorye telleth that anoone Geffray fond þe knyght and to hym said with a hye voys, 'Sire ² knyght, be ye he that wyl take the trybute vpon my Fortresse?' And he ansuerd, 'ye by my feith.' And ³⁶

ryght forth said geffray, 'I chalenge the, wherfor
 deffende the.' And whan the knight vnderstod this,
 he sette the spere in the rest and geffray lyke wyse /
 4 and so eche of them recountred other / by force wherof
 they brak thaire speris to the hard fyst in many pieces.
 And whan they had thus manfully broken theire speris
 they drew out theire swerdes and smote eche other
 8 with grete & myghty strokes that the fyre sprang out of
 theire harneys, wherof the peple vpon the ryuere syde
 had grete meruayll & were al abasshed how that euer
 they might endure the grete strokes, For they left not
 12 one piece of harneys hool. And they faught fro the
 morow vnto thre of the. Clok at aftirnone and neuer
 seaced. And so grete was the batayll that none
 1 [wist] which of them had the bettre. And thenne
 16 the knight bygan to say to geffray / 'here me now, I
 haue the wel assayd / and as touching the trybute I
 the quyte. And wete it wel that / that I haue doo,
 it hath be for the prouffyt of thy fader & of his sowle,
 20 For it is trouth that the pope enjoyed hym by way
 of penaunce for the forsweryng that he had don to
 thy moder to founde a monastery, the whiche penaunce
 was not by hym obserued. but it is so yf thou
 24 wylt edyfyne an hospital, and founde therin a preste to
 syng dayly for thy faders sowle / thy fortres fro this
 day fourthon shalbe quyte of ony trybute / how be
 it there shal be sene about the tour more meruaylles
 28 than in any other place of þe world.' And geffray
 ansuerd, 'yf I knew for certayn that thou were of god
 I wold gladly ²fullfuH thy wyH in this byhalf.' /
 And he said he was. And thenne geffray said / 'be
 32 thou sure this shal be doon yf it playse god. but I
 pray the say me what thou art.' And the knyght
 ansuerd, 'Geffray, enquere no ferther, For as for this
 tyme thou mayst knowe no more / but only that I am

Geffray chal-
lenges him.

They break their
spears,

and draw their
swords, and give
each other
mighty strokes.

They fight till
three o'clock,
and no one can
tell who has the
better of the
fight.

The knight tells
Geffray that he
forgives him the
tribute.

What he had
done was for the
good of Geffray's
father's soul,
who was to
have founded a
monastery as
penance, but had
not done so.

If Geffray will
build an hospital
and endow a
priest, he will
quit him of his
tribute alto-
gether.

Geffray answers,
that if he knew
the knight were
of God he would
do his will.

² fol. 213 b.

He declares he
is, and Geffray
promises that
his will shall be
done.

¹ which in MS.

The knight disappears without telling his name.

Geffray crosses the river to his brethren.

They ask where his enemy has gone.

Geffray says that they came to an agreement, but he cannot tell where the knight has gone.

Geffray hung the shield he wore in his hall.

After Geffray had built the hospital the shield vanished. Here ends the history of the heirs of Lusignan.

Long after the death of Gulon of Armenia there was a wilful young king,

who heard tell of a castle in Great Armenia, where dwelt the fairest lady in the world.

She had a sparrowhawk, and to any noble knight who could

³ fol. 214.

watch it three days and nights without sleep, she gave whatever they asked, save herself.

The young king resolved to go, and said he would take nothing but the lady's person.

'¹a Creature of god.' And therewith he vanysshed that geffray wyst not where he became / wherof meruaylled moche they that were by *pe ryuere*. And thenne came geffray ouer the ryuer to his bretheren, whiche asked 4 hym how he had doo and where hys party aduerse was become. And geffray to them sayd that they were acorded togidre, but where he was become he conde not tell. And thezne they retourned to Lusynen 8 where geffray dide doo hang^t the paueys, that he had wonne vpon the knyght of the toure, in the myddes of his haH. Where as it heng tyl geffray had edyfyed the said hospytal, For theznn it vanysshed away that 12 no man wyst where it became. And here fynyssheth the hystory of the heyres of Lusynen. but bycause that the kynges of Armanye ben yssued of that lynce, I wyl shewe herafter an auenture that befeH to a kyng 16 of Armanye.

Thystorye sayth that long after the deces of kyng guyon of Armanye, Ther was a kinge of that land^t yong and fayre, lecherous and folowyng his wyH. 20 The kyng vnderstod^t by the report of som knightes vyageours, that there was in the grete Armanye a Castel whereas was in the most fayre lady that men wyst at that tyme in al the world / the whiche lady 24 had a ²sperhawk / and to al knightes of noble extraction that thither went & conde watche the said sperhawk duryng the space of thre ³dayes and thre nyghtes without slepe / the lady shuld appiere tofore them and 28 gyue them suche worldly yestes as they wold wysse and were desyryng to haue, except only her self. This kyng thenne that was lusty and in his best age, and that vnderstod^t the renomnee of the excellent beaulte of 32 the said^t lady / said he wold go thither / and that of the lady he shuld nothing take but herself. But wete it that in the said Castel might none entre but ones in

¹ Fr. *de par Dieu*.

² Fr. *espremier*.

a yere / and that was the day tofore the vygille of
 saynt Johan / and the next day after saynt Johans
 day euery man must departe thens. Whan the said
 4 kyng was redy he departed & rode with noble company
 so long that he cam to the forsaid Castel at the day
 assygned, tofore the which he dide dresse vp a ryche
 payllon and there he souped, and aftir went to rest.
 8 And on the morne he roos and herd masse / and after
 that the masse was do, he drank ones, and syn armed
 hym and toke leue of them that were come with hym,
 which were sorowfuH for his departing, For they
 12 trowed that neuer he shuld haue come ayen. And
 this doon the kyng yed toward the sperhawk in the
 Castel. /

16 **H**ere saith thistory that whan the king was at
 thentree of the Castel, an old man al clothed in
 whyte cam ayenst hym, & asked hym who that had
 brought hym thither / and he ansuerd in this manere:

'I am come hither to seke thauenture and to haue the
 20 Custome of this Castel.' And the good old man said to
 hym / 'ye be ryght welcome, folow ye me, and I shal
 shew you the auenture that ye seke for.' Thenne
 yede the king aftir the old man / and gretly was he
 24 meruaylled of the grete & inestimable riches¹ that he
 sawe, within the place. And thene entred the old
 man into a noble haH rychely hanged, And aftir hym
 entred the kyng that perceyued in the myddes of the
 28 haH a long horne of a vnycorne that was fayre &
 whyte / and therupon was spred a grete cloth of gold
 wheron stod the sperhawk and a gloue of whyt sylk
 vnder his feet. Thenne said the old man to the kyng
 32 in this wyse: 'Sire, here ye may see thaduenture of
 this Castel / and with it sethen ye are so ferfoorth
 come ye must watche this sperhawk thre days and thre
 nyghtes without slep. And yf Fortune suffre you so
 36 to doo, wete it wel pat the noble lady of this ryaH

People could
 only enter the
 castle on the
 vigil of St.
 John's, and the
 day after St.
 John's day all
 had to leave.
 The King with
 his company
 arrived on the
 right day, and
 set up a pavilion
 before the castle,
 where he supped
 and rested the
 night.
 In the morning
 he heard mass,
 drank, amused
 himself,

and went to the
 castle.

An old man
 clothed in white
 asked at the
 entry why he
 had come.

The King said,
 'To have the
 custom of the
 castle.'
 The old man wel-
 comes him, and
 asks him to
 follow him into
 the castle.
 The King marvels
 at the riches he
 sees.

¹ fol. 214 b.

They come to a
 noble hall, and
 there the King
 sees the sparrow-
 hawk perched
 on a unicorn's
 horn.

The old man
 tells the King
 that if he watches
 the sparrow-
 hawk three days
 and three nights
 without sleep

the lady of the castle will appear on the fourth day, and grant what he desires most to have, except herself; if he asks to have her evil will befall him.

Castel shaH appiere tofore you on the foureth day, to whom ye shal aske that thing of the world whiche ye desyre moost to haue / except her body / and no doubt of but ye shal haue it / but wete it certaynly 4 yf ye desire and aske to haue herself, euyl auenture shal faH to you therof.'

Cap. LX. How the king of Armanye watched the sperhawk.

8

¹ fol. 215.

The old man left the King alone in the hall.

There was a table covered with all manner of dainties,

bnt the King eat sparingly, so that he might be able to keep awake.

² fol. 215 b.

He spent his time looking at the pictures,

and among others, sees figured the history of King Elinas and Queen Pressine, and their three daughters, and how they were punished for shutting their father in Mount Brombelyo.

The King watches until the third day,

The forsaid old man afir that he had declared and shewed to the kyng the manere of watching of the sperhawk, he departed fro the halle / and the kyng abode alone and had grete meruayH, what of the 12 grete ryches pat he sawe there, as of a ryche table that was in the haH couered nobly with al maner deyntes of meetes. And that part he drew hym self & ete a lytel and drank of that lyked best & kept good dyete and 16 made none excès, For wel he knewe that to mochi meet & drynk causeth the body to be pesaunt & slepy. And to dryue fourth the tyme walked vp & down the haH, taking grete playsyr of the grete noblesse that 20 he sawe, ²For there were ryche pictures where as were figured many a noble hystory, and the wrytyng vnderne the that shewed the vnderstandyng of it. And emong other hystories was there figured the 24 noble hystory of kyng Elynas & queen Pressyne his wyf, and of their thre doughtirs, and how they closed their fader in the mountayne of Brombelyo in Northomberland / and how Pressyne their moder 28 punysshed them therfor / and al the circonstaunces of peir faytes were there shewed in letres of gold fro pe bygynnyng vnto the ende.

Grete playsir toke the king to rede & see the said 32 hystories. And thus he watched loking here and there vnto the thirde day. And thene he per-

ceyued a right noble chambre, and sawe the doore al
 wyd open / and that part he went and entred in the
 chambre, and beheld *per* many knyghtes armed figured
 4 and rychely paynted on the walles, and vnder their
 feet were their names writon in letres of gold and of
 what lynce & countre they were / and aboue their
 heedes was writon in this manere: 'Vpon suche a
 8 tyme watched this knight in this Castel the noble
 sperhawk, but he slept / and therefore he most hold
 company *with* the lady of this place as long as he may
 lyue, and nothing worldly shal he wante of that his
 12 herte can desire saf only the departyng fro the place.'
 And there nygh were paynted thre sheldes in a rowe,
 and on them were figured the armes of thre knyghtes
 and their names / their lynce & their Contre that they
 16 were of were writon vnderneath / and aboue the sheldes
 was shewed by wrytyng this that foloweth: 'In suche
 a yere watched our sperhawk this noble knight wel
 and duely and departed *with* joye and had his yeft of
 20 vs *with* hym.' And so long beheld the king that he
 almost slept / but he anon came out of the Chambre
 and sawe the sonne almost down and passed fourth
 that nyght without slepe.

24 **T**henne was he glad whan he perceyued *pe* day.

And foorthwith at the rysyng of the sonne cam
 the lady of the Castel in so noble and so ryche aray
 that the kyng had gréte méruayH therof / and what of
 28 her ryches as of her excellent beaute, he was gretly
 abasshed. And thenne the lady dide her obeyssaunce,
 sayeng in this manere: 'Noble kyng of Armanye, ye
 be ryght welcome. For certaynly ye haue wel &
 32 valyauntly endeuoired you. now aske of me what
 yefte that so euer playse you worldly and raysounable,
 and ye shal haue it *without* ony taryeng.' Thenne
 ansuerd the king that right sore was esprysed of the
 36 loue of her, 'By my feyth, gracyous & noble lady, I

when he sees
 an open door.
 He enters the
 chamber,
 and sees the wall
 figured with
 many knights,
 and reads their
 names and the
 writing:

'This knight
 watched the
 sparrowhawk,
 but slept,
 and so must
 remain in the
 castle all his
 life.'

He also sees
 three shields
 painted with the
 arms of three
 knights,

and a writing:
 'This knight
 watched our

1 fol. 216.

sparrowhawk,
 and departed
 joyfully with
 his gift.
 The King nearly
 fell asleep look-
 ing at the figures,
 but left the
 chamber, and
 kept awake all
 the night.

At sunrise the
 lady of the castle
 comes to the
 King,

and welcomes
 him, and asks
 him to name
 what gift he
 would have.

The King
 answers,

'Neither silver
nor gold, nor
town nor castle,
but you, my
beloved lady, to
be my wife.'

The lady is
wroth at his
request,

and replies that
he cannot have
her.

The King presses
his suit,

but she tells him
to ask a reason-
able gift.

¹ fol. 216 b.

The King de-
clares he will
have nothing
but herself.

The Queen tells
him that unless
he changes his
purpose evil hap
will fall on him
and his posterity;

but the King de-
clares that his
heart is ravished
with her beauty,
and that he will
have nothing
but her.

aske neyther gold nor syluer, Cyte, toun, nor Castel,
For thanked be god I haue of al worldly ryches ynough /
but yf it playse you, my ryht dere & right entierly
beloued lady, I wyl haue you to my wyf.' And whan 4
the lady vnderstod this she was wroth, and by grete
yre she said to hym in this wyse: 'Ha, thou grete foole,
For nought hast thou asked my body, For thou mayst
not by no wyse haue it.' Thenne said the king to 8
the lady, 'Wel I haue, to myn aduys, endeuoired me.
Wherfor, noble lady, be you fauourable to me and haue
regard to the custome of this castel.' 'By my feyth,'
ansuerd the lady, 'as touching thaduenture & custome 12
of this Castel, I wyl that it be obserued & kept / but
aske of me yeft raysounable / and no doubte ¹of but
thou shalt haue it.' 'By my feyth, noble lady, I desyre
none other thing erthly nor none other I shal not aske 16
nor take of you, but only your gracyous body.' 'Ha,
fole, folle,' said thenne the lady, 'euyll myscheaunce
shal faH on the, yf thou soone chaungest not thy
purpos, and so it shal to al thin heyres & successours 20
aftir þe / though they be not culpable therof.' And
the kyng her ansuerd, 'It is for nought, For my
herte is rauysshed of your beaute, and only fedde with
your syght. And therefore your body wyl I haue and 24
none other thing erthly.' /

Cap. LXI. How the kyng wold haue
rauysshed by force the lady, but she
vanysshed away. 28

Whan thenne the lady sawe that the kyng
chaunged not his purpos, she was ryght wroth,
and to hym said in this manyere: 'Thou folyssh kyng,
now shalt thou lese the syght of me, & shalt fayH of 32
thy yefte, & hast putte thyself in auenture to abyde
within for euer in grete payne & tourment, bycause that

The lady becomes
right wroth,

and tells him
that he will lose
his gift,

thou art yssued of the lynce of kyng guyon that was
sone to Melusyne my sustir, and I am his ante / and
thou art so nygh of my blood and kynred that though
4 I wold be consentyng to thy wyf holy Chirch wold
neuer suffre it.' And aftir she reherced & shewed to
hym al that is tofore said in the ¹Chapter of Elynas
and Pressyne, and also fro hed to heet all the heyres
8 of Lusynen and their fayttes. And after she said to
hym / 'grete myschief shal happe to the & vpon thyn
heyres successours ²after the, and that shal endure vnto
the ix lynce, For they shal faH in decaye, & exilled fro
12 their contrees & fro their honour, wherfor departe
lightly hens, For here mayst thou no lenger abyde.'
The kyng theinne vnderstod wel the lady. but neyþer
for her wordes, nor for fere that ought shuld hym
16 mysfaH, he neuer chaunged his folysch wyf & vnhappy
purpos, but wold haue take the lady by manere of
vyolens and by force. but soone Melyor vanysshed
away that he wist neuer where she was become.

because she is
the aunt of King
Guion his an-
cestor, and that
they are too near
of kin to marry,
and even if she
consented, Holy
Church would
forbid their
union.

Then she tells
the history of
Elynas and Pres-
sine, and of the
heirs of Lu-
signan,
and foretells of
the decay of his
² fol. 217.

line, and of their
exile from their
lands.
She advises him
to leave the
castle.

The King per-
sists and tries
to take her by
force, but Melior
vanishes he
knows not where.

20 Cap. LXII. How the king was bete &
ouerthrowen and knew not of whom.

And immediatly after the departyng of Melyor
there fel vpon the kyng gret & pesaunt strokes,
24 as thykk as rayn falleth fro the skye. Wherof he was
al to brusid in euery part of his body, and was drawn
by the feet fro the halle vnto the barrers without the
Castel. And wete it that he neuer saw none of them
28 that so cruelly seruyd hym. And as soone as he
myght he stode vpon his feet, cursyng a thousand
tymes hym that first brought hym tydynge of this
auenture, and the heure also that euer he cam thither.
32 And theinne he went toward his meyne that saw his
harneys al to broken and perysshed, and demanded of

The King is
thrashed so hard
that he is bruised
in every part of
his body, and is
pulled by the
feet out of the
castle.

He cannot see
who it is that
serves him so.

He rises and
curses the man
that brought him
the news of the
adventure,

and returns to
his men,

¹ Cap. I. page 6, *et seq.*

who ask if he has been fighting? He tells them he is hurt, but that he has had no fight because he could not see who struck him.

² fol. 217 b.

The King returns home,

but he had no joy after this adventure, though he reigned a long time. His heirs were unlucky.

This volume was ended on Thursday, Aug. 7th, 1394.

I have told the story of Lusignan Castle, and of its builders, and of their issue, from the true chronicles.

It has lately been conquered by the Duke of Berry,

hym in this manere: 'My lord, vs semeth that ye be sore hurt, haue ye had batayH there as ye haue be?' And he ansuerd, 'I am somewhat hurt / but no batayH I haue not had / but so ferre I knowe that shrewedly 4 I haue be festyed¹ 2 how wel I perceyued no body / but I assure you I felt wel the strokes, and wete it wel I reuenged² me not / and thus haue I had no batayH / For he that gyneth the first strokes dooth not the batayH. 8. but he that reuengeth hym bryngeth it to effect.' /

A noone aftir the king & his people departed and entred in the see and sailled toward his countre, euer thinking vpon this that Melyor had said to hym, 12 and doubted moche to haue lost his good fortune as he had. For wete it wel that neuer aftir this faytte he had no hertly joye and regned long tyme, but fro day to day feH in decaye by dyuerse maners. And wete it 16 wel that his heyres after his decesse were not fortunat, but vnhappy in al their actes. Here shal I leue to speke of the king of Armanye. For ynough it is knowen that they came of the noble lynce of the 20 king Elynas of Albanye & of Lusynen. vnto this thursday vii day of August vpon the whiche was ended this present volume. The yere of our lord a thousand [ccc] ³lxxx & foureteen. / 24

Now have I shewed to you after the very Cronykles and true history how the noble Fortresse of Lusynen in Poytou was edyfyed & made / and of the noble yssue & lynce of the foundatours therof, on whos 28 sowles god haue mercy / the whiche fortresse of Lusynen is a now come but of late, by manere of Conqueste, into the handes of the ryght noble & myghty

¹ Fr. *batu*.

³ Note to C. Brunet's Fr. Ed., page 420. *Le texte porte: mil iiij ringz et xiiij. C'est évidemment une erreur puisque Jean d'Arras dit, dès les premières pages, qu'il a commencé cette histoire en 1387. In the Harl. MS. of Melusine the date is given as 'le VIIe jour d'aooust l'an de grace Mil iiiC iiijXX et XIII.'*

prynce my right redoubted lord Johan sone to the kyng
 of Fraunce, Duc of Berry, Anuergne, &c., by whos com-
 mandement I haue endeuoired me after my rude and
 4 symple entendement to collige & gadre emong^t many
 gestes & true Cronykles the trouthe of thystory ¹byfore
 speeified. And wete it for trouthe that oftentymes I
 haue her^t my said lord say that a knyght called
 8 SersueH that held the said Fortres as lieufテナunt &
 Captayne there for the kyng of England^t / at that tyme
 that my said lord had besieged / said to hym after the
 redueyon of the Fortres / that thre dayes tofore, tofore
 12 that he gaf it vp / he lyeng in hys bed^t with a woman
 hys concubine named Alexaundryne / pereeyued a
 grete & horryble serpent in the myddes of the Chambre,
 wherof he was gretly abasshed & sore agast / and wold^t
 16 haue take the swerd^t to haue discharged it vpon the
 serpent / but Alexaundryne said theⁿne to hym in
 this manere: 'Ha, valyaunt Sersuel, how ofte haue
 I sene your mortal enemyes tofore your presence that
 20 neuer ye were aferd^t, and now for a serpent of femenyne
 nature ye shake for fere. Wete it for trouthe that this
 serpent is the lady of this place & she that edyfyed it /
 she shal by no manere wyse hurt nor damage you /
 24 but so ferre I vnderstand^t by her apparysshing that
 nedes ye shal hastily delyuere & gyue vp this Fortres
 to the Duc of Berry' / And morouer said the said
 SersueH to my said lord that hys Concubyne fered
 28 nothing^t the serpent / but that he was neuer in his
 dayes so aferd^t. And that he sawe thenne the said^t
 serpent tourned in to a fourme of a woman clothed in
 a gowne of Cours cloth & gyrded with a grete corde
 32 vndernethe the pappes of her / and soone after tourned
 herself in the figure of a serpent and so vanysshed
 away.

36 **A**lso there was a man named godart dwellyng at
 that tyme within the said Fortresse, whiche
 MELUSINE.

son of the
 King of France,
 at whose com-
 mand I have
 gathered this
 history.

¹ fol. 218.

I have often
 heard my lord
 tell a story of a
 knight named
 Sersuell, who
 was lieutenant
 of the castle for
 the King of Eng-
 land.

Three days be-
 fore he gave it
 up he was in bed
 with his concu-
 bine, and saw a
 great serpent in
 his chamber,
 which frightened
 him.
 He took his
 sword to slay it;

but his lady said
 that the serpent
 was the lady of
 the place, and
 her appearance
 proved that he
 would soon have
 to give up the
 castle.

The serpent then
 turned into a
 woman, clothed
 in a coarse gown,
 with a great cord
 round her. Then
 she became a
 serpent again
 and vanished.

Godart swore to my lord on the gospels that he had often seen

¹ fol. 218 b.

the serpent on the walls of the fortress, and that he had passed her without harm.

Ivon of Wales swore that three days before the surrender of the castle by Sersuell, he saw a great serpent on the donjon of the castle, and that many others saw her.

I have done my utmost to know the truth of the matter,

and if I have written what appears to some incredible, I beg for pardon.

Some authors hold this to be a true chronicle of fairies.

To those who object, I say the judgments and

affirmed for a trouth / and sware to my forsaid lord vpon the holy euaungilles that many tyme he had sene vpon the walles of the fortres¹ the said serpent, and that he had passed oftymes nygh her without receyuyng⁴ of ony harme. Then another also called Yuon of Walles sware his feyth vnto my said lord that thre dayes tofore the reducyon of the said Fortresse made by the said Sersueft into the handes of my said lord, ⁸ pat he sawe an horryble grete serpent vpon the batelments of the donjon of the said Castel of Lusynen. And many other also had the vision and syght of her.²

And where it is soo that at thinstaunce requeste ¹² and prayer of my said lord haue be examyned many prynces³ and dyuerse oþer for the makying & compilacion of this present hystorye vpon the said matere. And also I haue putte my self to myn ¹⁶ vtermost power to rede & loke ouer the Cronykles & many bokes of auneynt hystories, to thende that I might knowe the trouth of the forsaid matere. Therefore yf I haue wryton or shewed^t ony thing that to som ²⁰ semeth neyther possible to be nor credible, I beseeche them to pardonne me. For as I fele & vnderstand^d by the Auctours of gramaire & phylosophye they repute and hold this present hystorye for a true Cronykle & ²⁴ thinges of the fayry. And who that saith the contrary / I say the secret jugements of god and his punyssh-

² Fr. adds: *Et encore plus avant y a ung chevalier poitevin, nommé messire Percheval de Couloune, qui fut chambellain du bon roy de Chippre, avec le roy, la serpente s'estoit apparue à icelluy roy, comme celluy roy luy avoit dit en ceste manière parlant à luy: Percheval, je me doute trop! Pour quoy, monseigneur? dist le chevalier. Par ma foy, dist le roy, pour ce que j'ay veu la serpente de Lusignen qui c'est apparue à moy; si me doute qui ne me adriengne aucune perte dedens brief temps, ou à Perrin mon filz; car ainsi apparut-elle quant aulcuns des hoirs de Lusignen doibrent morir. Et jura messire Percheval que dedens le tiers jour aprez, la dure aventure que chascun seet bien advint.*

³ Harl. MS. reads *prouues* = proofs.

- ments are inuysible & impossible to be vnderstand or knowe by the humanyte of man./ For the vnderstanding of humayne Creature is to rude to vnderstande the
 4 spyce espyrtuel, & may not wel comprehend what it is / but as ferre as the wylle ¹of god wyl suffre hym.
 For there is found in many hystories Fayries that haue be maryed & had many children / but how this
 8 may be the humayn creature may not conceyue. For these poynts and suche other god hath reteyned þem in his secrets. And the more that the personne is of rude entendement the ferther is he fro knowlege of it.
 12 And he that is replet of seyence naturel, the rather shaft haue affection to byleue it. Notwithstanding no creature humayn may not obteyne the secrets of god./ how be it saint paule saith in hys epystles to the
 16 Rommayns, 'that al thinges ben knowen by humayn Creature' / but the glose reserueth & excepteth the secrets of god. For the kynde of man is to vnderstand the ferther that he trauaylleth in reaumes and Countrees/
 20 the greter knowleche hath he of euery thinge / than he that resteth in his owne Countre and neuer remeuyth. And semblable wyse this historye is more credible for as moche as it is not auctorised by one man only / but
 24 also by many noble Clerkes. Now of this proces I wyl make no ferther mencion / but humbly I beseche you and alle them þat shaft here or rede this hystorye / that yf there be ony thing that be nuyouse or display-
 28 saunt to you / wyl pardonne me & hold me escusid. For yf a man dooth as wel as he can / he ought to be accepted. For in som cas the good wylle of a man is accepted for the dede./ And here I, Johan of Aras,
 32 ende the hystorye of Lusynen / ²beseching god of his hygh mercy to gyue to þem that be passed fro this mortall world hys eterna glorie / and to them that be lyuyng, prosperous and blessidfull endyng./
 36 [Here fynyssheth the noble hystorye of Melusyne.]

punishments of God are not to be understood by man.

¹ fol. 219.

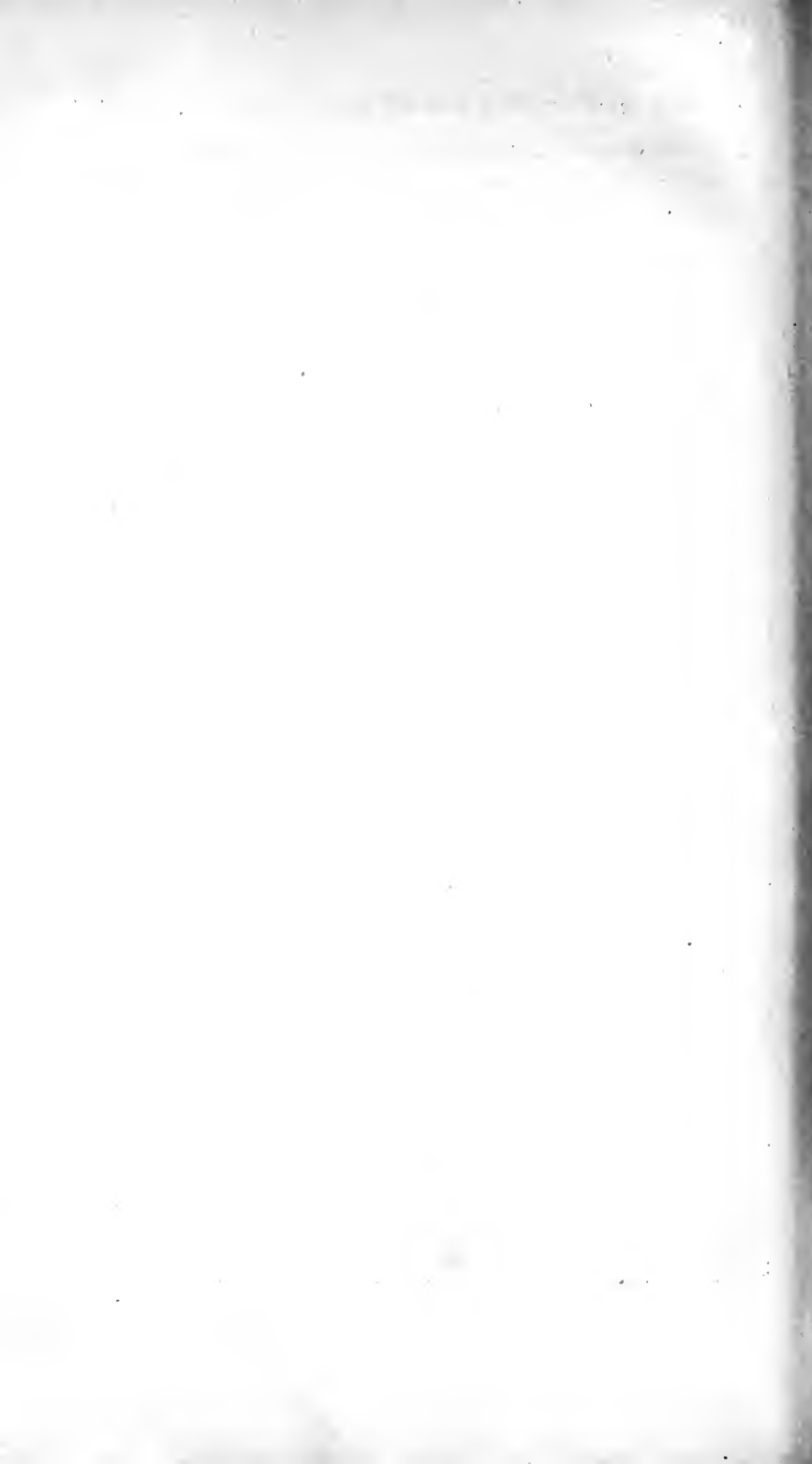
There are many histories of Fairies that have married, and had children. No man can understand how this can be. God has kept these things secret. Ignorant people cannot believe such things. Those who are learned can more readily do so, but no man can fathom the secrets of God.

The more men travel the more they learn.

This story is made more credible by the number of clerks who vouch for it.

I ask forgiveness of my readers for anything tiresome or displeasing I may have written. If a man does as well as he can he ought to be accepted.

I, John of Arras, end the history of Lusignan,
² fol. 219 b.
 asking God to give those who have left this world His eternal glory, and to the living a blessed ending.



NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

PAGE 1, line 19. In the Catalogue of the Duke of Berry's Library, published in Le Labourer's *Histoire de Charles VI.*, there is a volume relating to the subject of this romance, 'Vn liure de l'Histoire de Lezignem, escrit en Latin, de lettre de fourme, bien historié & au commencement du second feuillet apres la premiere Histoire, a escrit, *sola sed tantum*, couuert de drap de damas rouge, formant à deux fermoirs de laiton, & tixus de soye.' Jean d'Arras declares in several places that the romance is founded on old Chronicles; see end of Cap. I.

p. 2, l. 11. Text should read: 'the Wednesday before St. Clement's Day.' The 'before' has been accidentally omitted by the translator or the transcriber. The French version reads: 'le mercredi devant la Saint Clement en yver.'

p. 2, l. 18. This heading seems out of place.

p. 3, l. 9. Is the reference to Romans, Cap. I, verse 20?:—'For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world, are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made: his eternal power also and divinity: so that they are inexcusable.'

p. 3, l. 33. He appears to refer to local traditions, of which he makes some use; see, for example, the description of Melusine's appearances in his own time, on pages 369 and 370.

p. 4, l. 17. Probably Gervaise of Tilbury (fl. 13th century), a nephew of King Henry II. of England; he was appointed Marshal of Arles by the Emperor Otto IV. He was a voluminous writer. Warton says, in the *History of English Poetry*, § XXIV, that his *Otia Imperialia* was translated into French by Jean de Guerre between 1412 and 1427. His treatise is full of the most extraordinary marvels. In the British Museum MS., leaf 85, he tells of men being born without heads, having their eyes and mouths in their breasts. He is very full on lamia and dragons, and all kinds of monstrosities. He says that there have been cases in Italy of men being turned into beasts by eating cheese given them in taverns by enchantresses. Gervaise dedicated his *Description of the World* to Otto IV.

p. 4, l. 32. French text reads: 'les ungz qu'ilz ne verroient jamais l'ung l'autre; que le samedi ilz ne les enquerroient que elles seroient devenues en aulcunes manieres; les autres que se elles avoient enfans, que leurs maris ne les verroient jamais en leurs gessines.'

p. 5, l. 21. He may be referring to the tales of Marco Polo, a copy of whose travels Jean d'Arras had access to in the Duke of Berry's collection.

p. 5, l. 24. The following appears to be the passage in *Gervaise of Tilbury* referred to: 'Scio equidem jampridem relatum veridica narratione, quod in Aquensi provincia paucis ab Aquis milliaribus est castrum'

Russetum, quod vallem Trezensem sub se missam respicit. Hujus castri Dominus, Raimundus nomine, cum uno aliquo die solus in equo vectaretur juxta decursum interfluentis Laris fluvii, ex improvise occurrit domina nulli decore secunda, in palafredo phalerato, vestibus et apparatu pretiosis, eumque salutata a milite ipsum ex nomine resalutasset, ille ab ignota se nominatum audiens, miratur et nihilominus illam, ut moris est, coepit verbis lascivis interpellare, ut ei consentiat. Cui illa opponit, hoc praeter conjugalem copulam nulli licere verum si in ejus nuptias consentiat, ipsius possit optatis frui complexibus. Quid ultra? acquiescet conditionibus miles in nuptiis: at illa replicat, illum summa temporalium felicitate ex ejus commansione fruiturum, dum ipsam nudam non viderit; verum ut ipsam nudam conspexerit, omni felicitate spoliandum asserit et vix ei vitam miseram servandam esse praeponit. Pendet dubiusne timeret optaretne mori? tandem in nuptias consentit et conditionem admittit. Inflammatus et aestuans omnem conditionem facilem arbitratur, qua cupitum thorum possit obtinere. Consentiant in matrimonium et contrahunt, et crescente militis felicitate, in breve favore et hominum gratia, temporalium copia et corporis strenuitate in tantum excrevit, quod pares excessit et paucis proceribus et illustribus secundus invenitur. Hominibus amabilis, apud omnes gratus, liberalitatem discretam largitate atque urbanitate condiebat, filiis et filiabus summae pulchritudinis procreatis. Cum post longa tempora uno die domina, ut assolent, in thalamo balnearet, Raimundus miles, a venatu rediens et aucupatu, perdicibus aliisque carnibus ferinis dominam exeniat, et dum parantur cibaria, necio quo motu vel spiritu militi venit in mentem, quod nudam videat dominam balneantem, constituens in animo siquidem, quod ex inhibita nuditatis conspectione potuit ex fatis esse periculum, temporis diuturnitate tamque diuturnae commansione longinquitate evanuisse. Affectum maritus exposuit uxori, quae diuturnam felicitatem ex conditione servata objicit et infelicitatem minatur secuturam, si contemnatur. Tandem paeceps in praecipitium miles, non temperatur interminatione poenae neque precibus flectitur, ut a stulto proposito desistens suae consulat utilitate:

“tangunt animum motusque metusque
et timet eventus indignaturque timere.”

Quid moror? erepto linteo, quo balneum operitur, miles ut uxorem nudam videat, accedit, statimque domina in serpentem conversa, misso sub aqua balnei capite, disparuit, nunquam visa imposterum nec audita, nisi quandoque de nocte, cum ad infantulos suos visitandos veniebat, nutricibus audientibus, sed ab ejus aspectu semper arctatis. Sane miles pro maxina parte felicitate ac gratia minoratus, filiam illius dominae cuidam nostro affini ex nobilibus Provinciae oriundo postea dedit in uxorem, quae inter coaetaneas et confines suas plurimum extitit grata et cujus jam successio ad nos usque pervenit. Prima Decisio XV Otia Imperialia.

The theories of Paracelsus people rivers, &c., with Melusinae. They have no spiritual principle, but can obtain one by entering into a union with man: ‘Melusinae & meliorae filiae regiae quondam propter peccata desperabundae, fuerunt a Sathana raptae, & in spectra transmutatae, spiritus malignos, lemures horribiles, & in immania monstra. Vivere putantur absque anima rationali & in brutali solum corpore phantastico, nutrirī elementis, atque una cum istis in extremo die judicii transiturae, nisi cum aliquo homine forte fortuna matrimonium contrahant, tum demum, ut ipse, naturali morte interire posse, ut matrimonio naturaliter vivere virtute hujus unionis. Ejusdem status atque generis plura spectra haberi creditur

in desertis, in sylvis, ruinis, monumentis, arcibus vacuis, & in extremis littoribus maris. Vulgo maledicti vacantur homines, sed proprio nomine spectra vocantur, atque diabolorum sancti, cum quibus versantur caco-dæmones, suas illusiones & portenta perficiunt.'—W. Johnson's *Lexicon Chymicum* [to the writings of Paracelsus], London 1652.

p. 5, l. 24. The name of Regnald does not occur in the list of the kings of Bohemia.

p. 5, l. 25. The Lusignans do not appear to have had any connection with Luxembourg.

p. 5, l. 28. The name Theodoric does not occur on the roll of the lords of Partenay-l'archevêque. The house was founded, according to French genealogists, by William, the son of Gilles Lusignan (fl. 1100—1130). Valence, daughter of Geoffray with the Great Tooth, married Hugh III. of Partenay-l'archevêque.

p. 7, l. 15. conered, Fr. *couvertement*.

p. 11, l. 3. Fr. 'je ne pense en nul cas deshoneste.'

p. 12, l. 26. There is a romance entitled 'L'Histoire du noble & vaillant Roy, Florimont fils du noble Mataquas duc d'Albanie.' Florimont is the son of Mataquas, sire of Duras and Duke of Albany. His mother was Edozie or Flory, daughter of Fragus, King of Persia. It is bound up with a Rouen edition of Melusine. Warton notices a romance of 'Florimont et Passeroze,' *History of English Poetry*, § XII, note.

p. 12, l. 32. In Coudrette's version of Melusine, Aualon is called fairy land.

p. 13, l. 7. In some editions of the French version Ybernien is substituted for Albany, others have Albany as here.

p. 14, l. 8. Fr. ver. adds 'filles' after 'lawfull.'

p. 15, l. 11. They should be allowed to leave Aualon.

p. 15, l. 32. One of Melior's adventures is described at page 362.

p. 16, l. 4. The eve of St. John's Day comes on June 23. Many curious customs used to be observed on the vigil of St. John. In London the Watch was paraded through the city. In Paris a number of cats and a fox were burnt in the Place de Grève. In Ireland the people used to light fires on the hill tops, and according to Rev. Donald McQueen, they danced round them, and then made their children and cattle walk through the fires. McQueen thinks the custom a relic of sun-worship.—Brand's *Antiquities*.

p. 16, l. 13. There is a mountain named Guygo in Lesser Armenia. No account of Palatine is given in this romance. In Coudrette's versification of the romance there is briefly narrated her story, l. 5704, *et seq.* Palatine's place of abode is there given as Arragon.

p. 17, l. 3. Geoffray with the Great Tooth discovers the tomb, see page 327.

p. 17, l. 24. The Castle of Lusignan was founded in the tenth century by Hugues II., known as the *Bien Aimé*. It had many masters, and was a formidable stronghold. It was razed in 1569, after its capture from the Huguenôts. Little trace of it now remains.

p. 17, l. 27. 'fell at debate'; translates *cut riot*.

p. 17, l. 32. Fountains are usually made the scenes of the fairy love-making. Elinas meets Pressine at 'a moche fayre fontayne'; Henry of

Leon, father of Raymondin, meets the 'fayr lady to whom he told all his Fortune,' 'nighe by a fontain,' &c.

p. 18, l. 7. Jean d'Arras was fond of etymology; this appears a reasonable guess.

p. 19, l. 14. The 1478 edition makes the third chapter begin here. The edition published at Rouen by Pierre Mulot begins Cap. III at the same place as our text.

p. 21, l. 7. 'h. . . . s.'], in Fr. *sur le col*.

p. 31, l. 35. Melusine protests throughout that 'she is of god.' See pages 316 and 320.

p. 32, l. 32. Compare the promise exacted by Pressine, Melusine's mother, page 11.

p. 33, l. 12. 'hys doughtir,' i. e. Earl Emery's daughter.

p. 33, l. 25. Melusine has a store of magic rings:

1. Makes the holder proof against death from wounds.

2. Gives victory in war, in law, &c., to the holder.

3. Gives victory, and protects against enchantments and poison, p. 110, l. 20.

4. Gives victory so long as the wearer fights in a good cause, p. 191, l. 11; p. 319, l. 10.

Magic rings appear to have come from the East. They figure in many Arabian tales. In classical literature we have several Magic ring stories, which probably have been taken from Semitic sources. Plato's story of the ring of Gyges, that made the bearer invisible, is well known. Solomon had a ring that gave him command over the genii. It was made of copper and iron, and had the sacred name of the deity engraved on it. Solomon sealed his orders to the refractory genii with the iron part, those to the good genii were sealed with the copper portion. Once when Solomon was bathing, and had taken the ring from his finger, it was stolen by a wicked genie. Solomon was so concerned about the loss that he was unable to attend to affairs of state. It was afterwards recovered from the stomach of a fish that was caught for the king's table.

Petrarch relates that Charlemagne became infatuated with a woman of low degree to such an extent that he neglected the affairs of state, and even the care of his person. She fell ill and died, but her death did not break the charm: Charlemagne would not allow her corpse to be buried. One day Archbishop Turpin examined the body, and found a ring in her mouth, which he took possession of; Charlemagne then came under the influence of the Archbishop. The prelate, tired of the king's special attentions, and afraid that the ring might fall into the hands of some unworthy person, so he threw it into a lake near the town. From that time Charlemagne refused to quit Aix-la-Chapelle. He built a palace and a monastery there, and in his will directed his successors to be crowned at Aix.—*Epistolæ familiares*, Lib. I, Cap. 3.

p. 35, l. 33. Jean d'Arras was evidently of the opinion of Rabelais, that
'Mieulx est de ris que de larmes escrire,
Pour ce que rire est le propre de l'homme.'

p. 42, l. 4. Note that the Earl is unable to give land without the consent of his barons.

p. 42, l. 19. Brunet reads 'Montiers'; the Rouen edition has 'l'abbaye demonstiers.'

p. 45, l. 13. There is an 'onde limpide' near the Forest of Coulom-

byers, known as the 'Fontaine-des-Fees.'—*Annales de la Société Royal Académique de Nantes*, 1831, p. 405.

p. 48, l. 26. The power of love is a favourite theme of John of Arras. See 122, 135, 164, &c. The book was written for the amusement of the Duchess of Bar. This may account for the elaborate treatment of love affairs, dress, &c., in the book.

p. 54, l. 14. Coudrette makes the wine-list an extensive affair. See *The Romans of Partenay*, E. E. T. S. ed., p. 39:

'With wine of Angoy, and als of Rochel tho,
Which would eschawfe the braines appetite,
Wine of Tourain, And of Bewme also,
Which iawne [yellow] colour applied noght vnto;
Clarre Romain, with doucet Ypocras
Thornght al the hal rynnynge hye and bas.
Wine of Tourisnz, and also of Digon,
Wine of Aucerre, of saint Jougon also;
Wyne of Saint Johan of Angely good won,
Of it ful many ther spake and tolde tho;
Wine of Estables, of Uiart also;
After thaim cam the wyne,
Wine of Saint Pursain, and of Ris hys brood.
Ouer all thes wines ther had the prise,
The nouel osey of Dingenon.'

p. 55, l. 3. The magic ring that Melusine gave Raymondin has made him invincible. See p. 33.

p. 59, l. 9. The custom of the newly-wedded couple making presents to the wedding guests, instead of receiving them, resembles what takes place in India in our time, where the parents of the bride make gifts to those who attend the marriage ceremony.

p. 63, l. 3. Fr. reads: 'Et avec tout ce il y a forte braies entaillées do mesmes la roche.'

p. 64, l. 13. There are a number of suggested etymologies of the name Melusine, none of them satisfactory.

Jean Bouchet says it is a combination of Melle and Lusignan. She was lady of Melle, and her husband was lord of Lusignan. Bouchet says that this was the accepted etymology in his time (16th century). Baron Dupin adopts this etymology. It appears, however, that women did not add to their name the name of their husband's seignory, nor was it usual for women to bear the name of their own manors.

Bouchet thought the tail signified that Melusine was an adultress. N. Chorier imagined that it symbolized her prudence!

Salverte says that the name is a combination of Mere and Lusignan. He makes its signification to be 'Mother of the Lusignans.' The name is spelt Merlusine by Brantôme, and the popular pronunciation is Merlusine.

Grimm derives it from Meri menni, a syren, or scylla.

Litré derives it from Melus, a Celtic word meaning agreeable.

Bullet says it is made up of Me = half, llysowen (pronounced lusen) = serpent: the name thus signifies half serpent.

A writer in the *Nouvelle Biographie Générale*, thinks that Melusine is an Anagram of Leusignem. I have not observed any case in which the family name is spelt in this manner, and I am not aware that the fashion of Anagram-making was much practised in the 14th century.

M. de Freminville, in *Antiq. de la Bretagne, Côtes du-Nord*, p. 23, derives Melusine from morlusein = vapour or sea fog.

In Quaritch's catalogue, 1887 (vol. I, p. 90) it is stated that the name comes from a Breton word signifying 'the woman with a tail,' mer' hlostek, which the writer believes was at one time pronounced something like Merlusec.

Mascurat surmises that Melusine was a lady who used a seal engraved with a syren, and from that was at last imagined to be a mermaid herself.

p. 65, l. 3. The following list of Melusine's children shows the blemishes that each of them bore :

1. Urian : 'A broad face, ears like the handles of a vannus, and one eye red and the other blue.
2. Odon : One ear greater, without comparison, than the other.
3. Guion : One eye higher than the other.
4. Anthony : Had on the cheek a lion's foot (grif de lyon).
5. Regnald : Had only one eye.
6. Geoffray : Had a great tooth, which protruded more than an inch out of his mouth.
7. Froimond : Had a mole (tache velue) or tuft of hair on his nose.
8. Horrible : Had three eyes—one in his forehead.
9. Raymond : Blemish not recorded.
10. Theodoryk : Blemish not recorded.

p. 65, l. 3. 'handlyng of a fan' translates 'manilles d'ung van.'

p. 65, l. 11. Fr. reads : 'Guerende et Penicense.'

p. 66, l. 17. Fr. : 'mal enformé.'

p. 65, l. 12. Hugues IV. of Lusignan had a dispute with Joscelin, lord of Parthenay, about some lands that the latter had usurped. The dispute descended to the heirs of Joscelin. Hugues appealed to his suzerain William, Count of Poitiers. The count sided with the lord of Parthenay, and Hugues' stronghold, the Castle of Lusignan, was burnt down. *B. Le-dain* in *La Gatine*.

The Lusignans possessed the domain of Porhoët, in Brittany, from the 13th century. Phillipe le Bel took it from Guy, Count of Marche and Angoulême, in the 14th century.

Perhaps these historical events may have suggested the story in the romance.

p. 79, l. 24. 'the cranes flighing' translates 'les grues en vollant.' The cranes are said to be the earliest birds to migrate.

'E come i gru van cantando lor lai,
Facendo in aere di se lunga riga.'

Dante, *Inferno*, Canto V.

p. 84, l. 15. The Rouen Fr. ed. : 'Raimondin le frappa de la lance au coste.'

p. 91, l. 30. There is an omission here in the translation. The French text reads : 'Il avoit entendu par aulcuns des varlés d'icelluy chastelain que ilz actendoient gens à qui ilz ne vouloient point de bien.'—Brunet's ed., p. 104.

p. 92, l. 15. Fr. reads : 'que ilz ne nous trouvent à descouvert.'

p. 94, l. 24. 'high' seems to be a mistake for 'his.' 'traist l'espee' is the French reading.

p. 97, l. 28. There is a legend current that the convent of the Trini-

taïres of Sarzeau was founded by Melusine. John III., Duke of Brittany, founded it in 1341, forty-six years before John of Arras wrote this account of its origin. Jehan de la Haye, in *Memoires et recherches* (1581), says that Melusine and Raymondin were buried in this convent.

p. 104, l. 10. Such excrescences apparently do appear, as can be seen from the following statement, made by a man of recognized accuracy of observation:—

‘On the 29th [of Feb. 1839], being requested by some friends of the town, I visited a wonderful man there. It appears that nature, deviating from the usual course, gave this man a small trunk, like an elephant, on the right side of his face, beginning from the forehead to his chin. With his left eye only could he see, the other being covered with this superfluous part of the body. He was a young man of about twenty, sound in mind, as he gave rational answers to the several questions I put to him in the Sindhi language.’—*Autobiography of Lutfullah*, p. 311, edited by E. B. Eastwick, 1858.

p. 112, l. 35. This advice to kings reads as if it had been specially written for the Duke of Berry’s edification.

p. 116, l. 23. The Knights Hospitallers of St. John captured Rhodes after a siege of three years, in 1309, and made the island their headquarters.

p. 117, l. 32. In the Apocryphal Book, known as the Gospel of Nicodemus, the names of the two thieves are given as Dimas and Gestas. In the ‘Narration of Joseph of Arimathæa’ it is related that Demas was born in Galilee. He was an innkeeper, and was kind to the poor. He followed the example of Tobias in secretly burying those who died in poverty. He robbed Jews, even in Jerusalem. He plundered the daughter of Caiaphas. It was for this crime that he suffered death.

p. 120, l. 2. Fr. reads: ‘Urian n’avoit mie encores, à compter les gens du maistre de Rodes, plus de quatre mille combatans.’

p. 128, l. 25. Alexander is said to have had 30,000 foot soldiers and 4,500 horsemen when he crossed the Hellespont. (Plutarch.)

p. 136, l. 26. ‘he cast at hym the dart [with great] yre.’ The Fr. ‘par grant’ is omitted by mistake.

p. 141, l. 21. Fr. text reads: ‘Adonques le maistro de Rhodes et les capitaines de Lymasson se mirent tous ensamble.’

p. 142, l. 9. The ‘pauveys,’ according to Viollet-le-Duc, were large oval or square shields, chiefly carried by the crossbowmen. They did not come into use until the fourteenth century.

p. 155, l. 20. For the true version of the story of how Cyprus passed into the hands of Guy of Lusignan (not Urian, as the Romance says), see the Introduction. The *Itinerary of Richard Cœur de Lion*, by Vinsauf, is the authority relied on.

p. 159, l. 24. The ‘for to wete & know, for to here & know,’ is a double translation of the French phrase, ‘pour aller sçavoir.’

p. 159, l. 22. ‘fortres’ is plural here and on p. 160, l. 6.

p. 169, l. 13. ‘they ancres’ translates ‘ilz desancrèrent.’

p. 169, l. 32. ‘them,’ i. e. their ships.

p. 171, l. 1. See page 129, *et seq.*

p. 176, foot of page. In John Stow’s *Survey of London* (W. J. Thom’s ed., 1842, p. 119), the cost of writing out the works of D. Nicholas de

Lira in two volumes is given at 100 marks = £66 13s. 4d. W. Stevenson, in his *Life of William Caxton* (p. 12), says that this sum most likely included the cost of the illuminations. The volumes may have been sumptuously bound, in which case comparatively little would be left for the copyist's work.

It is quite probable that the 17/8, written on the margin of the Melusine MS., may be a memorandum having no relation to the copyist's pay.

p. 178, l. 10. Modern economists would not approve of this summary way of treating forestallers. Adam Smith believed that the dread of witches and of forestallers were on a par.

p. 179, l. 28. The Fr. ver. has the following sentences after 'armanye':—'Et se il vous samble qu'elle n'en soit digne, si luy aidez à assener à quelque noble homme qui bien sache le pays gouverner et deffendre des ennemis de Jhesucrist. Or y vueillez pourvoir de remède convenable car à tout dire, se il vous plait, en la fin je vous fais mon heritier du royaume d'Armanie; mais pour l'amour de Dieu prenez en garde et ayez pitié de mon povre enfant, qui est orpheline desolée de tout conseil et de tout confort, se vous lui faillez.' The nine succeeding lines of the English version, 28 to 36, are not represented in the French version published by Brunet.

p. 180, l. 8. After Guyon's address the Armenian lords reply in the French version: 'nostre seigneur le vous vueille meriter, qui vous doinet bonne vie et longue.'

p. 180, l. 31. The following paragraph is omitted in the English version:

'En ceste partie nous dist l'histoire que ceux de Caliz furent moult joyeux quant ilz virent approucher la navire, car ja sçavoient les nouvelles que leur seigneur venoit, pour ce que les barons qui estoient allez en Chippre pour porter les lettres dont je vous ay fait mention par avant, leur avoient mandé toute la verité, affin de ordonner et pourveoir de le recevoir honnourablement; et y estoient tous les haultz barons du pays et les dames et damoiselles venues pour le festoier et honnourer. A celle heure la pucelle Florie estoit à la maistresse tour, qui regretoit moult la mort de son père, et si avoit moult grant paour que le roy Urian ne le vouldist pas accorder à son frère, et estoit une cause qui moult luy angissoit sa douleur. Mais adonques une damoiselle luy vint dire en ceste manière: Mademoiselle, on dist que ceulx qui estoient allez en Chippre arriveront bien brief au port. De ces nouvelles fut Florie moult joyeuse, et vint à la fenestre, et regarda en la mer, et vit navires, gallées, et aultres grans vaisseaulx qui arrivoient au port, et oyt trompettes sonner, et pluseurs aultres instruments de divers sons. Adonc fut la pucelle moult lie, et vindrent les barons du pays au port, et recevoient moult honnourablement Guion et sa compaignie, et le menèrent à mont vers la pucelle, laquelle luy vint à l'encontre de luy. Et Guion la salua moult honnourablement en ceste manière: Ma damoiselle, comment a-il esté à vostre personne depuis que me partis d'icy? Et elle luy respondist moult amoureusement et dist: Sire, il ne peut estre gaires bien, car monseigneur mon père est nouvellement trespasé de ce mortel monde, dont je prie à nostre Seigneur Jhesucrist, par sa sainte grace et misericorde, qui luy face vray pardon à l'ame, et à tous aultres; mais, sire, comme povre orpheline je vous remercie et gracie tant humblement comme je puy des vaisseaulx que vous m'envoïastes, et aussi de la grant richesse et avoir qui estoit dedans.'

p. 183, l. 25. Afterwards (p. 217) called Metydee.

p. 190, l. 11. This passage should be compared with that beginning on page 110, where Melusine gives parting advice to her two elder children, Urian and Guion.

p. 190, l. 34. Passages like this (see also p. 112) show that John of Arras pleaded for a more humane treatment of conquered provinces. He shows that even from selfish considerations a ruler should treat his people well (p. 112). It is true he does not directly condemn the marauding expeditions, which were the curse of the Middle Ages; but it should be noted that the sons of his heroine were always called to assist the oppressed. They never started out as mere plunderers. John of Arras was a forerunner of Rabelais in his condemnation of the barbarities of feudal warfare. He resembled Rabelais in character. It required considerable boldness for an officer of the Duke of Berry—one of the most rapacious plunderers of France—to make a stand against injustice.

p. 192, l. 20. Did the author of *Melusine* intend Anthony and Reginald's system of warfare to be an example to be followed by the Duke of Berry?

p. 202, l. 33. Fr. reads: 'le jeta si roidement encontre la terre que peu faillist que il ne lui crevast son cœur ou son ventre.'

p. 211, l. 2. It is interesting to note that all the kings in the Romance are constitutional kings. They are obliged to consult their barons before they enter into treaties or alienate land. (See pages 42, 211, 263.)

p. 214, l. 18. 'pruy meyne,'—a private or select company or following.

p. 222, l. 29. Fr. reads: 'paiez pour huyt moys.'

p. 228, l. 13. 'Catell & goodes' translates 'biens.'

p. 229, l. 14, there is an omission after 'city.' The Fr. text reads: 'mais le roy Zelodus avoit fait armer ses gens et faisoit fort assaillir la cité, car grand desir avoit de la prendre, et ceulx de dedens se deffendoient lachement, et bien le appercevoient les Sarrazins; et pour ce ilz assailloient tant plus vigoureusement. Et fut la besoigne mal allée quant l'ancien chevalier vint qui bien apperceut la besoigne et la faible defense de ceulx de dedens' (Brunet's ed., p. 254). The Fr. text then continues: 'A doncques acheoa l'assault,' &c., as in the English version.

p. 233, l. 31. 'the moost vytupere' translates 'pour plus vituperer.'

p. 246, l. 6. Fr. 'Thierry.'

p. 246, l. 12. Fr. 'ung chevalier faye au maulvais esperit.'

p. 246, l. 13. The belief in Incubi and Succubi (demons who consort with men and women and engender children) was current in the time of John of Arras, and for long after. The fathers of the Church taught the doctrine, as can be seen from Augustine: 'It is so general a report, & so many auerre it either from their owne tryall or from others, that are of indubitable honesty & credit, that the Syluans and Fawnes, commonly called Incubi, haue often iniured women, desiring & acting carnally with them: and that certaine diuells whom the Frenchmen [Gauls] call Dusies, do continually practise this vncleannesse, & tempt others to it; which is affirmed by such persons & with such confidence that it were impudence to deny it.'—*City of God*, Bk. XV, Cap. XXIII, ed. 1620, translated by J. H.

Lodovico Vives, in commenting upon this passage, says: 'There are a people at this day that glory that their descent is from the devils, who

visited women in the guise of men, and men in the guise of women. This in my conceit is viler than to draw a man's pedigree from pirates, thieves, or famous bullies, as many do. The Egyptians say that the devils can only accompany carnally with women and not with men.'

The following quotation from Michael Psellus, a Byzantine savant of the eleventh century, explains the mediæval ideas on this subject. The text is from a translation by Pierre Moreau Touranio, published in 1576: 'Or me suis-je trouué quelque-fois avec vn moine, en la Cherronese de Mesopotamie, lequel apres auoir esté spectateur & cōiurateur des phâtosmes diaboliques, autant ou plus expert en cela, que nul autre, depuis il les a mesprisez & abiurez, comme vains & friuoles, & en ayant fait amende honorable, s'est retiré au gyron de l'Eglise, & a fait professiō de nostre foy seule vraye, & Catholique: laquelle il a soigneusemēt appris de moy. Ce moine donc me dit alors & declara plusieurs choses absurdes & diaboliques. Et de fait, m'estant quelque-fois enquis de luy, s'il y a quelques diables patibles: ouy vrayement, dit-il, comme on dit aussi, qu'aucuns d'iceux iettent semence, & engendrent d'icelle des verms. Si est-ce chose incroyable, luy dis-je lors, que les diables ayent aucuns excremēs, ny membres spermatiques, ny vitalx. Vray est, respondit-il, qu'ils n'ont tels, membres, si est-ce toutefois qu'ils iettent hors ie ne scay quel excrement & superfluité, croyez hardiment ce que ie vous en dis. Dea, luy dis-je lors, il y auroit danger qu'ils fussent alimentez & nourriz de mesme nous. Ils sont nourriz, respondit frere Marc, les vns d'inspiration, comme l'esprit qui est aux arteres & nerfs, les autres d'humidité: mais non par la bouche, comme nous, ains comme espōges & huistres attirent à soy l'humidité adiacente exterieurement. Puis iettent hors ceste latente & secreta semence. A quoy ils ne sont tous subiects, ains seulement les diables qui sont enclins à quelque matiere, sçauoir est, ou celuy qui hait la lumiere, le tenebreux, l'aquatique, & tous soubsterrains.'—Psellus, *De l'energie ou operation des diables* (leaf 19 b, et seq.), ed. 1576.

In Ambroise Paré's collection (died 1590), livre xix, ch. 30, we read: 'Or quant à moy ie croy que ceste pretendue cohabitation est imaginaire procedante d'une impression illusoire de Satan . . . car à l'exécution de cet acte, la chair et le sang sont requis, ce que les esprits n'ont pas.'

Fuller accounts of the ancient opinions on Incubi and Succubi will be found in Iohn Wierus, *De Prestigiis dæmonum*, 1569 and 1579, and in Jean Bodin's *Refutation of Wierus*, 1593.

Modern thought ascribes the belief in Incubi & Succubi to Dreams, see E. B. Tylor: 'From dreams are avowedly formed the notions of incubi and succubi, those nocturnal demons who consort with women and men in their sleep. From the apparent distinctness of their evidence these beings are of course well known in savage demonology, and in connection with them there already arises among uncultured races the idea that children may be engendered between spirits and human mothers. (See Martin, *Mariner's Tonga Islands*.) For an ancient example of the general belief in this class of demons, no better could be chosen than that of the early Assyrians, whose name for a succubus, "lilit," evidently gave rise to the Rabbinical tale of Adam's demon wife Lilith. (See Lenormant, *La magie chez les Chaldéens*.) The literature of mediæval sorcery abounds in mentions of this belief, of which the absurd pseudo-philosophical side comes well into view in the chapter of Delrio (Lib. II, quæsto 15): "An sint unquam dæmones incubi et succubæ, et an ex tali congressu proles nasci queat?" But its serious side is shown by the accusation of consorting with such demons being one of the main charges in the infamous bull

of Innocent VIII., which brought judicial torture and death upon so many thousands of wretched so-called witches. (See Roskoff, *Geschichte des Teufels*.) It further throws light on demonology, that the frightful spectres seen in such affections as delirium tremens have of course been interpreted as real demons.'

p. 253, l. 19. 'hym,' i. e. Claude of Syon.

p. 264, l. 16. 'concernyng' here means 'compared with.' Fr. phrase is 'euvers la puissance.'

p. 273, l. 31. Jaffa changed hands several times in the 4th Crusade, 1196.

p. 279, l. 34. 'ye shal not haue them for so good chep,' i. e. 'You will not overcome them as easily as you think.' Fr. reads: 'Vous n'aurez pas si bon marché.'

p. 281, l. 33. Fr. 'tout le couert.'

p. 282, l. 18. Fr. 'tout couertement.'

p. 287, l. 11: 'Si cum li cerfs s'en vait devant les chiens,
Devant Rollant si s'en fuient Paiën.'

La Chanson de Roland, ll. 1874-5.

p. 290, l. 7. 'cours' translates 'se reculèrent.' 'There reforced the batayll [*et souffrirent cristiens moult grant affaire*], and with that cours [retires] the cristen,' &c.

p. 291, l. 3. 'sarasyns' in Fr. text is 'Turcs.'

p. 295, l. 9, page 32.

p. 296, l. 6. 'esperit fae.'

p. 297, l. 5. 'quaque à harene' = a herring barrel.

p. 303, l. 3. 'ung flayal de plomp à trois chainnes.' The flail was rarely used in France. The MSS. of the 12th and 14th centuries show it very seldom (*Violet-le-Duc*).

p. 309, l. 19. The date of the ravaging of the Abbey of Mailleres by Geoffray with the Great Tooth was 1232.

p. 312, l. 8. Coudrette makes the Castle of Vouvant the scene of the catastrophe. *The Romans of Partenay*, E. E. T. S. ed., line 3453.

p. 314, l. 26. 'Si quelqu'un aussi se fondoit sur la non vérisimilitude de tant d'aventures, enchantements, de la flûte d'un roi Oberon, tant de somptueux palais soudainement se perdant et évanouissant, et du cheval de Pacolet, qui est encore plus en ça, d'une Mélusine, de Merlin; je lui répondrai que le christianisme étant pour lors bien peu avancé aux contrées de par deçà, le diable avoit beau jeu à faire ses besognes, essayant, en tant qu'est en lui, nous empêcher et divertir du vrai service de Dieu, par ses moqueries et illusions; et, gagnant toujours pays, allant de pied en pied, a si bien fait cet esprit calomniateur, que d'éteindre, en ce qu'il a pu, le nom de notre Seigneur Jésus-Christ, et icelui obscurcir et cacher aux hommes.'—*Contes d'Eutrapel*, by Noël du Fail, 1548.

p. 315, l. 2. The theory that anger is the work of demons is hinted at by the Byzantine Psellus. This writer declares that there are six varieties of demons: Leliurium, or fiery, haunting the upper atmosphere, Aërial the lower atmosphere, Earthy, Aqueous, Subterranean, and Lucifugus, the lowest class of all. The aërial and earthy enter into the soul of man, and urge him to all kinds of lawless thoughts and deeds. If a Lucifugus obtain an entrance into man it makes him ungovernable. The

Lucifugus is devoid of intellect, is ruled by whim, and is regardless of reproof. The possessed person can only be saved by divine assistance.

There is an old saying: 'via furor brevis est.'

p. 318, l. 12. 'Vernon'; Fr. 'Warnont.'

p. 318, l. 23. French text adds: 'car certainement il destruiroit tout ce que j'ay ediffie, ne jamais guerres ne fauldroient au pays de Poetou ne Guienne.'

p. 319, l. 27: 'nessun maggior dolore,
Che ricordarsi del tempo felice
Nella miseria.'—Dante, *Inferno*, Canto V.

p. 321, l. 19. There is a legend that Melusine flew to the caves of Sassenage in Dauphiny, natural hollows in the mountain which lie at the back of Grenoble, and made her abode there. N. Chorier, in his *Histoire Générale de Dauphiné*, describes these caverns: 'Les grotte de Sassenage ne font pas moins digne d'estre contemplée. L'une est d'une grandeur incroyable, & elle gette de l'horreur dans les âmes les plus ferme. En l'autre ces cuves si célèbres, & dans la troisième est une table de pierre, que l'on appelle communement la table de Melusine. C'est l'opinion d'un grand personnage que les nymphes y estoient reverées autrefois d'un culte particulier.' 'Estienne Barlet fait passer pour une vérité ce qu'il raconte d'une autre. Il dit qu'après que l'on y est entré par un long & difficile chemin, on y voit distinctement des choses estranges. Un roy y paroisist assis dans un trône, la couronne à la teste & des thresors infinis à ses pieds. Il adjoûte que l'on croit que les fées, ou ces nymphes que les Grecs nomment les Oreades, y ont habité, & qu'ayant eu longtemps de la peine à le croire, il en a esté à fin persuadé. Cette caverne n'est pas fort éloignée de Montcluz, mais ce que l'on en dit l'est beaucoup de la vérité.'—Lib. I, Cap X.

p. 336, l. 8. Montserrat (mons serratus) rises abruptly from the plain of Catalonia. The ridge of peaks makes it look from a distance like an enormous saw. There are a number of natural caverns in the rock. A monastery was founded at Montserrat in the tenth century. The legend tells that one evening the shepherds of Olea heard celestial music as they tended their sheep. While they listened they saw a bright light among the rocks. The Bishop of Manresa hearing of their vision, resolved to ascend the mountain. He found there an image of the Virgin, made of black wood. It was recognized as the statue that had been sculptured by St. Luke, and brought to Spain by St. Peter. He erected a chapel near where he found the image. A few years afterwards the Count of Barcelona built a convent on the spot, and appointed his daughter Abbess. Later the building passed into the hands of the Benedictines. The Virgin's image worked miracles, and an immense number of pilgrims were drawn to the shrine. The ascent to the chapel was very difficult, and it was regarded as a very meritorious task. The kings of Aragon, Castile, and Navarre enriched the foundation. New buildings were added from time to time. At the wars at the end of last century the Spaniards turned the monastery into a fortress. The French captured it, and when they blew up the fortifications much damage was done to ancient portions of the buildings.

The hermitages are now in ruins, and the ascent to them is very difficult. They were all built on the same plan. Each had an ante-chamber, a cell with a recess, a study, a kitchen, and a plot of garden with a chapel. The hermits took a vow to die on the mountain. They followed an austere rule, and lived on vegetables and a little salt fish.

Their only amusement was carving little wooden crosses for the pilgrims who visited their cells.

It was at Montserrat, in the Church of the Virgin, that Ignatius Loyola vowed constant obedience to God and the Church, on the Vigil of the Annunciation, 1522.—*Visite au Montserrat*, by G. de Lavigne.

p. 337, l. 9. Fr. 'Culbaton.' The village of Collbató is the starting-point now-a-days for Montserrat.

p. 340, l. 8. Geoffray visited Pope Gregory IX. in 1233. Before he left France he made restitution to some of those he had wronged, as the letter dated 1232, still extant, proves: 'To all who shall see these letters. Geoffroi de Lezinien, Vicomte of Châtellerault, lord of Voluent and Mayrenent, salut éternel.

'You know that I am about to journey to the court of Rome, to put an end to my differences with the church of Maillezais. I wished to satisfy to the best of my ability, before my departure, all who have claims against me, especially such as are in holy orders.

'Geoffroi, Abbot of Absie, having heard of my will, has demanded restitution for damages done, and losses and injuries that I and my father have caused to the Abbey of Absie.

'I have learnt, from the testimony of men worthy of belief, that these claims are just; and for the salvation of my soul, and of my father's soul, I have satisfied the said abbot, 1232.'—From Thibaudéau's *Histoire de Poitou*.

p. 368, l. 18. Coudrette's versification of the Romance carries the fortunes of the Armenian kings to Leo VI., the last of the line, who died at Paris in 1393. This king was driven from his throne by the successful arms of the Egyptians. He was taken prisoner, and obtained his release through the good offices of John of Castile. Leo VI. visited Spain, where he was received as a champion of the Christian faith, and the King of Castile allowed him a pension of 150,000 maravedis. He afterwards travelled to France, where he was kindly received by Charles VI. A pension of 6,000 francs was granted to him there. Leo came over to England, where his reception was as warm as in Spain and Portugal. He obtained an English pension in addition to those from Spain and France. Leo VI. was a far-sighted man. He wanted to bring about a permanent peace between France and England, and he told the rulers of both countries that the only way that the Mahomedan arms could be checked in the East was by the aid of a united West. Unfortunately, his wise policy was rejected, and the rivalries of the kings of Christendom lost some of the fairest lands of Europe to the followers of Mahomet. Leo VI. told the King of France that Amurath aimed at being crowned at Rome, and that he had sent an expedition out with that purpose, which was annihilated by a stratagem of the King of Hungary.

'Thay lost ther lande and all ther honour,

Inclinyng and comyng vnto mischance.

On of thes kynges cam to Fraunce pat houre,

So fro hermeny chaced into Fraunce.

Full long the kyng ther gaf hym sustinance.

At Parys died as happned the cas,

At the Celestines entered he was.'—l. 5685.

After the death (29th Nov. 1393) of Leo VI. the title of King of Armenia was assumed by James I. of Cyprus. Neither James I. nor any of his successors ever reconquered the country.

p. 370, l. 5. Yuon, Yvain, Owen, or Evan of Wales claimed to be the rightful heir of the kingdom of Wales, and the French king treated him as such. Yuon was a favourite of John the Good, King of France, and took a part along with the French in the battle of Poitiers. When peace was made between England and France, Yuon went to Lombardy, where he remained until the war was renewed. In the reign of Charles V. he held a number of commands. He led an expedition of Welsh knights against Guernsey. His hope was that he would be able to reconquer Wales. Charles V. assisted him with money and supplies, but he was unable to land in Wales. He took part in the expedition of Bertand du Guesclin in Spain. On his return to France he won some victories over the English. Froissart says that he was greatly hated in England on account of his claims to the Welsh crown, and for his treatment of his English prisoners, some of whom he would not allow to be ransomed. Yuon fell a victim to treason. He took into his service a James Lambe, a knight who represented himself to be a Welsh exile. He appointed this man his chamberlain. When Yuon was before Mortagne (1378), directing the siege against the English garrison, he was assassinated by James Lambe, who fled to the English camp, where he received protection. Yuon was buried at the church of St. Leger with great pomp.

LIST OF PROVERBS IN THE ROMANCE OF
MELUSINE.

The loue of ladyes causeth peyne & traueyll to the amorous louers,
and deth to horses, 56.

Old synne reneweth shame, 79.

Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it, 93.

It is euyl companye of a traytour, 97.

Good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, 97 and 184.

Wel fole is he that fighteth ayenst the wynd wenyng to make hym be
styll, 107.

Long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yefte, 111.

Yf the peple is pouere, the lord shall be vnhappy, 112.

A flyes of a yere is more prouffitable than a flyes that is shorne twyes
or thryes a yere, 112.

In long treatee lyeth sometyme grete falshed, 113.

Wyse men goo abacke for to lepe the ferther, 113.

One grayne of peper alone smertith more on mans tonge, than doth a
sacke full of whete, 128.

Victorye also lyeth not in grette multitude of people, but in good rule
& ordynance, 128.

Goodnes & bounte is betre than fayrenes & beaulte, 138.

All is not yet lost that lyeth in parell, 147.

Who lerneth not his crafte in his yougthe, with grete peyne & hard it
shal be for him to be a good werkeman in his old age, 193.

That God doth, he done anone, 203.

Whan the yron is hoot it moste be wrought & forged, 211.

Of two euylles men ought to choose the lasse, whan nedes muste one
be had, 237.

Betre is to haue more of prouffyt & lasse honour, 238.

A lytel rayne leyeth doun grete wynd, 247.

That the fole thinketh oftymes cometh to foly, 255.

The fole proposeth & god dysposeth, 265.

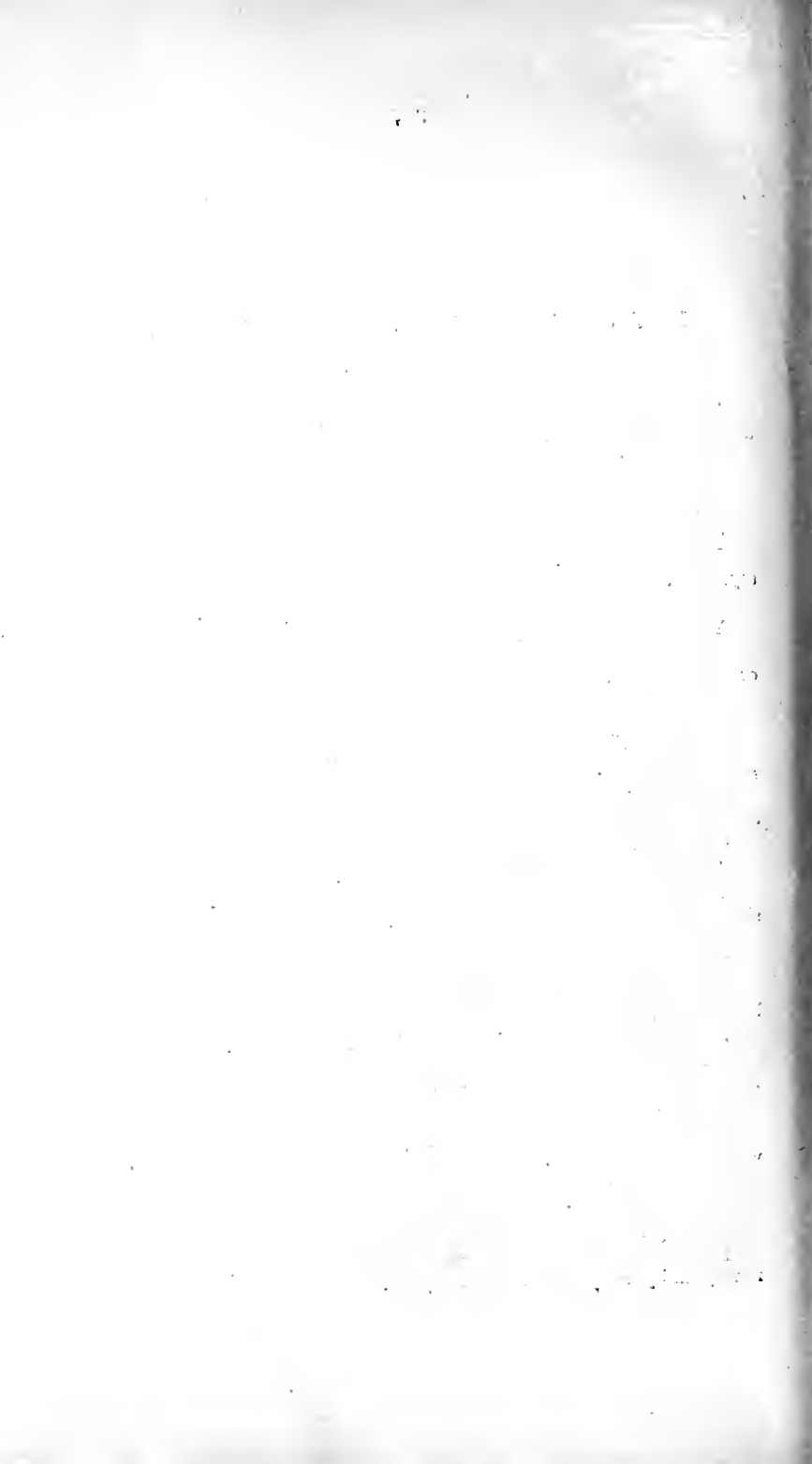
He that menaceth is sometyme in grete fer & drede hymself, & aftir-
ward ouerthrawn, 279.

Betre it is to flee, than to abyde a folyssh enterpryse, 288.

Thing neuer bygonne hath neuer ende, 304.

In euery thing most be bygynnyng tofore the ende cometh, 304.

He that gyueth the first strokes dooth not the batayll, but he that
reuengeth hym bryngeth it to effect, 368.



GLOSSARY.

Words in Italics are the corresponding words of the French version, Ch. Brunet's Edition 1854. Cot. = Cotgrave's French Dictionary.

- Abhomyned, page 311, abominated.
 aborde, 71, waited.
 absteyn, 16, abstain.
 abused, 7, beguiled.
 abyssmes, 5, abysses.
 accorded, 213, agreed.
 acompte, 356, account.
 acoyntaunce, 71, acquaintance.
 acoynte, 190, become familiar;
 acoynted, 205.
 adionste, 16, adjust.
 admounestied, 228, warned; ad-
 mounestyng, 287.
 adommage, 32, harm; adommaged,
 182.
 adrecyd, 226, directed.
 aduyronned, 123, surrounded.
 aduys, 71 (*avis*), opinion.
 affeblysshid, 241, became depressed,
 lost spirit.
 affectuelly, 148 (*humblement*), earn-
 estly.
 affettuously, 159, affectionately.
 affyaunce, 324 (*fiance*), assurance,
 trust.
 affyns, 89 (*proesmes*), near relatives.
 affrayenge, 10, fearing.
 afrayed, 28, frightened.
 agree, 259, accept.
 aigre, 298, harsh.
 albaster, 328, alabaster.
 alez, 218, allies; alyed, 92.
 algaf, 300, although (lit. *al if*).
 allegeaunce, 335, relief.
 almese, 106; almesses, 321, charity.
 alowed, 200, lowered.
 altogidre, 41, altogether.
 ambaxade, 183, embassy.
 amerous, 56, amorous.
 amongis, 27, amongst.
 anyable, 275, friendly.
 an, 90, one.
 aneres, 114, anchors.
 anenst, 21, against.
 ansuerde, 10, answered.
 ante, 367, aunt.
 antecessours, 330 (*antecesseurs*), pre-
 decessors.
 aourned, 51, 53 (*aourne*), attired.
 aparteyned, 20, belonged.
 apas, 27, apace.
 apayed, 111, 192, pleased.
 appareylled, 118, made ready.
 apparysshing, 369, appearing.
 apperceyued, 230, 324, observed.
 appert, 125, expert.
 appertly, 131, promptly (*Cot.*).
 appertyse, 83, deeds.
 appiere, 15; appyeren, 4, appear.
 arblaster, 289, men who worked
 the arblastes, machines for throw-
 ing missiles.
 archegaye, 226 (*archegaie*), dart.
 ardaunt, 142, burning.
 argued, 150 (*argue*), perplexed.
 arregarde, 132, rearguard.
 arsouns, 286, saddle-bows.
 aspre, 145, fierce.
 asprely, 132, fiercely.
 aspye, 117, spy.
 aspyracion, 315, respiration.
 assayed, 171, attested.
 assoted, 12, infatuated.
 assurest, 171, boldest.
 astonyed, 202, astonished.
 astromy, 20, astronomy.

astronomyens, 323, astronomers.
 asuryd, 156 (*fiance*), betrothed.
 auantgarde, 174, vanguard.
 auantyng, 11, boasting.
 auctoures, 3, authors.
 auncyent, 4, ancient.
 auoultire, 296, adultery.
 awondred, 50, wondered.
 awter, 344, alter.
 axe, 41, ask.
 ayez, 299, attack of fever.
 ayen, 180, again.

Bake, 9, back.
 bare, 351, bore.
 barers, 124; barreres, 63 (*braies*),
 defences.
 bassacourt, 308, embassy.
 bassecourt, 300, inner court of a
 castle.
 basyn, 8, mug.
 basynets, 123, helmetted men.
 batayll, 289, battalion.
 batayllous, 246 (*bataillereux*), given
 to fighting.
 beaulte, 7, beauty.
 beed, 148, bed.
 begonne, 12, begun.
 behauf, 17, use.
 behel, 282, beheld.
 behighte, 111, 190, promise, pro-
 mised.
 beryng, 8, bearing.
 besily, 3, busily.
 betoke, 110, committed.
 bewte, 7, beauty.
 bigge, 86, build.
 bigynne, 17, begin.
 bilded, 17; bylded, 6, builded.
 bode, 18, bid.
 bourgeys, 206; burgeys, 151,
 burghers.
 braunche, 23, branch.
 braundysshed, 145, brandished.
 brede, 41, breadth.
 brenne, 17; brenne, 4; brennyng,
 184, to burn.
 brigh, 266, bright.
 broche, 21, pierce.
 broched, 130, spurred.
 broded, 53; browded, 81, embroi-
 dered.
 bruled, 234, burnt.
 bruyt, 251, noise.

brygandyners, 128, men wearing
 brigandines, canvas coats cover-
 ed with iron plates or iron rings.
 buffet, 303, blow.
 busshe, 284, ambush.
 butyn, 146, booty.
 bycomme, 4, gone to.
 bye, 39, buy.
 bygoten, 6, begotten.
 bynethe, 22, beneath.

Caas, 128, cause.
 candelstykes, 17, candlesticks.
 carrykes, 109, cargo ships.
 caruell, 117, a light ship.
 cas, 11, case.
 castel, 15, castle.
 castellayne, 92, castellan.
 catholich, 215, catholic.
 causer, 89, originator.
 cepter, 179, scepter.
 cerched, 330, searched.
 certyfyen, 3, to certify.
 cesse, 155, cease.
 chaffed, 22, excited, vexed.
 champaynes, 100, open fields.
 chanoyne, 40, canon.
 chappen, 193, shapen.
 charyte, 12, charity.
 chasse, 20, chase.
 chaunfreyn, 84 (*gauffrain d'acier*),
 the headpiece of a barbed horse
 (Halliwell).
 chayere, 82, chair.
 cheryed, 98, treated.
 cheuauance, 155 (*chevance*), achieve-
 ment.
 cheuysaunce, 264, promise.
 cheyned, 177, chained.
 childed, 104, gave birth to.
 chirch, chirche, 36, church.
 cleme, 142, climb.
 clemme, 25, climb.
 clepen, 187, called; clepid, 245,
 named.
 cleue, 26, cleave.
 clos, 118 (*clos*), enclosure, 267.
 cluble, 303, club.
 cohortacion, 97, company.
 cohorte, 97, company.
 coler, 53, collar.
 collige, 369, collect.
 cominevyd, 123; commounyd, 154,
 excited.

communyked, 291, talked.
 commynalte, 184 (*communes*), commons.
 comparacion, 17, comparison.
 compleyned, 12, complained.
 complices, 96, accomplices.
 condampned, 68, condemned.
 condycion, 14, condition.
 congie, 301, leave.
 conne, 12, to be able.
 connyng, 2, cunning, knowledge.
 conspiracion, 75, conspiracy.
 constreyned, 7, constrained.
 contrefaytte, 135, deformed.
 contynue, 299 (*continue*), prolonged attack.
 conuenable, 40, convenient.
 convers, 100, menials.
 convyne, 133, 142, 172 (*commune*)? assembly, militia, soldiery.
 conyns, 261, rabbits.
 corset, 84, a cloth coat worn over the cuirass.
 coste, 134, disbursement.
 costes, 268, coasts, shores.
 cotidiane, 100, daily.
 cote, 129, coat.
 coude, 7, could, was able; 20, knew.
 couenaunce, 5, covenant.
 couert, 254, 257, 281, 282, covert, concealed way.
 couertly, 262, obscurely, secretly.
 couetyse, 87, covetous.
 coule, 168, cool.
 conloure, 4, colour.
 courcer, 9, courser.
 cours, 15, course; cours, 290, rush.
 courteyns, 57, curtains.
 coyffe, 250 (*coeffe*), head-dress.
 coynted, 315, comely.
 cradelles, 4, cradles.
 cramesyn, 205, crimson.
 cronykle, 6, chronicle.
 cryded, 82, cried, shouted.
 curee, 99, entrails, quarry.
 curtoysye, curtoisye, 9, courtesy.
 cyrurgyens, 288, surgeons.

Dalt, 177, divided.
 damoysean, 163; damoyseaulx (pl.), 125, youth.
 dampned, 339, damned.
 daw fole (*damp musart*). French text means Sir Fool or Sir

Thoughtless, "damp" being equivalent to the O.E. *Dan*, as: "Dan" Chaucer. *daw fole* may mean "melancholy" fool; see Bradley's *Stratmann's M. E. Dictionary*, under "dau."
 debonnaire, 190, gentle.
 deceneryd, 169, ? unfurled their sails.
 decez, 356, decease.
 dede, 321, caused; dede, 323, deed; dede, 12, did.
 deele, 190, divide.
 deeling, 111, bearing.
 def, 29, deaf.
 deflawte, 345, default.
 delyt, 333, misdemeanour.
 demanded, 20, related.
 demened, 80, 125, 136, depressed; demeneth, 147, conducted.
 demesurably, 132, greatly, immeasurably.
 demysed, 87 (*s'en est deffuit*), got rid of.
 denounced, 188, declared.
 departed, 116, divided.
 departement, 98, departure.
 despyt, 234, contempt.
 desray, 123, disorder.
 destraytte, 336 (*le vellon et le pertuis*), ? district, or territory.
 destrier, 81; destrer, 82, horse.
 detrenched, 146, hacked.
 deucl, 234 (*doeul*); dueyht, 237, mourning.
 deuoyre, 82, duty.
 deuysed, 67, told.
 deuyses, 348, talks.
 dey, 15, die.
 diches, 88, ditches.
 distourned, 55, turned aside.
 do, 321; doo, 239; doon, 13, 26, cause to.
 dogge, 21, dog.
 dolaunt, 312, doleful.
 douleur, 305, dolor.
 dombe, 29, dumb.
 dome, 13, doom.
 dommage, 145 (*dommaige*), harm.
 don, 118 (*donne*), given.
 dongeon, 300, main tower of a castle, donjon.
 doubtid, 1, feared.
 doubtful, 193, fearful.

doughtir, 11, daughter.
 down, 13, down.
 dowbed, 18, dubbed.
 dresse, 30; dressed, 21, direct,
 turned.
 dressyng, 155 (*adressant*), address-
 ing.
 duc, 6, duke.
 duchery, 214, duchy.
 dueil, 138; dueyl, 216, mourning.
 dysempare, 215, dethrone.
 dyspens, 148, outlay.
 dysployed, 119, 230, unfurled, dis-
 played.
 dysporte, 77, 98, sport; dysported,
 304, enjoyed.
 dyspoylle, 136, pillage.
 dyspreyse, 113, containn.
 dyspytous, 29 (*despiteux*), angry,
 spiteful.
 dyssymyle, 113, dissimulate.
 dystourne, 26 (*destourneray*), turn
 away; distoured, 83.

Eche, 17, each.
 effoundred, 286, cut into.
 egaly, 146, equally.
 emonge, 118, among.
 empeche, 39, prevent.
 empechement, 279, hindrance.
 empoussesse, 99; empocesse, 333, put
 in possession.
 emprysed, 81, undertaken.
 ench, 83, inch.
 encheson, 65, motive.
 encres, 337; encresse, 32, increase.
 encysed, 62, cut.
 endeuoire, 152; endeavour; en-
 deuoyred, 157.
 endoctryne, 55, instruct.
 enfourmed, 308, informed.
 enharnashed, 9, accoutred.
 enjurous, 66, injurious.
 enlyberte, 99, liberate.
 ensiew, 184, follow.
 ensured, 68 (*asseuroid*), assured.
 entamed, 211, 299, broached.
 entaylled, 50, carved.
 entende, 1, to give heed.
 entendement, 369, understanding.
 entent, 91, intent, purpose.
 ententyfly, 70, attentively.
 enterprenaunt, 122, enterprising.
 enterprysed, 12, undertaken.

entremete, 63 (*se meslera*), inter-
 meddle.
 entreteyne, 239, keep np.
 enuahisshing, 138 (*enwaye*); enua-
 hyshed, 147; enuahye, 201, as-
 sault.
 envertued, 200 (*se envertuoit*),
 strengthened.
 eny, 16, any.
 erable, 99, arable.
 erle, 6, earl.
 eschiewed, 145, avoided; 170,
 rescued.
 escryed, 77, 115, p.p. of *escrien*, to
 call to.
 excuse, 258, excuse; 10, excused.
 eslongyd, 133 (*se eslongerent*), separ-
 ated.
 espyrtuel, 371, spiritual.
 esprised, 11, 34 (*surpris*), overtaken.
 esproued, 224 (*esprouvoient*), tried.
 esprysed, 77 (*espris*), smitten.
 espyes, 193, spies.
 esquyer, 248, squire.
 essaye, 192, try.
 estimed, 117, estimated.
 estraungers, 178, strangers.
 estymacion, 266, estimate.
 enuerche, 320; eueryche, 154, every.
 euerychon, 38, every one.
 ewrous, 244 (*euereux*), lucky, happy.
 excusacion, 107, excuse.
 exercyted, 224, exercised.
 exployted, 123 (*exploita*), worked;
 81, fought; 289, acted.
 eyled, 299, ailed.

Facion, 225, build, make.
 fader, 7, father.
 faicte, 13; faitt, 71; faytte, 119;
 fayt, 312, deed.
 falshed, 13; falsed, 315, falsehood;
 fals, 12.
 fan, 65 (Latin *vannus*), a corn win-
 nowing fan or sieve.
 fantosme, 311, phantom.
 fasted, 44, fastened.
 fauntesye, 4, 31, fantasy.
 fawte, 57 (verb), fail; 196, wrong;
 58 (noun), failure.
 feith, 24, faith.
 fel, 134, 200, fierce, cruel.
 felawship, 8, fellowship.
 fer, 60, far; ferre, 327.

ferder, 332, further.
 ferfourth, 106, widely.
 fest, 19, feast; festyed, 98, feasted;
 feste, 8, rejoicing.
 festyed, 368 (*batu*), thrashed.
 fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.
 feynted, 66, faint.
 feynyngly, 28, pretending.
 flayel, 303 (*flayel*), a baton carrying
 a lump of iron attached by a
 chain.
 flawgh, 321, flew; floughe, 321.
 flemed, 112, fled.
 florysshed, 13 (*florie*), flowered.
 flote, 268, fleet.
 flyes, 112, fleece.
 fole, 24, fool.
 fore, 184, early.
 foreby, 251, past.
 forfaytte, 315 (*fourfait*), crime.
 forgate, 7, forgot.
 forwayed, 101, wandered, lost.
 foundatours, 368, founders.
 foundement, 62 (*fondament*), found-
 ation.
 founs, 172 (*font*), bed.
 fourme, 17, form.
 foursenyd, 315 (*enforcenez*), furious,
 enraged.
 fourueyeth, 76, wanders.
 fowel, 206, foul.
 fownd, 103, founded.
 foynyng, 67, thrusting.
 foyson, 21 (*foison*), abundance.
 fro, 3, from.
 fuldoo, 1, accomplish.
 fullyssh, 149, 208, fully.
 fumyer, 278, smoke.
 fust, 85, fist.
 fuste, 116, a rowing and sailing ship.
 fyaunce, 257, trust.
 fyers, 17, fierce.
 fyerste, 118, boldness.
 fyl, 321, fell.
 fyn, 331, end.
 fynaunce, 17 (*finance*), ready money.
 fyreyron, 23, flint and steel.

 Gadre, 266, gather.
 gaf, 19, gave.
 galyote, 167; little galley; galyotte,
 118.
 gan, 22, began.
 garnyson, 135, garrisons.

garnysshed, 184, 230, furnished,
 adorned.
 gate, 203, got, obtained.
 gaynstode, 137, withstood.
 geaunt, 17, giant.
 gendred, 246, begotten.
 gent, 8, gentle.
 gerdell, 53, girdle.
 gerland, 59, garland, wreath.
 gestes, 369, histories.
 glanced, 77, glanced.
 gobelyns, 4, goblins.
 gonnes, 115, guns.
 good chep, 279, 282 (*bon marche*),
 easy mastery.
 gorgeret, 175, a piece of armour to
 protect the throat.
 gramaire, 370, grammar.
 gramercy, 9, great thanks.
 grauntfader, 19, grandfather.
 gree, 109, 121, favour, will, pleasure.
 gree, take in, 2, agree to.
 greef, 13, grief.
 gret, grett, 7, great.
 greve, 130, injure.
 guerdon, 204, reward.
 gyfte, 15, gift.

 Haake, 20, hawk.
 haboundonne, 99, give up.
 habundauntly, 228, abundantly.
 halid, 161, hauled.
 halowed, 158, blessed.
 handlyng, 65 (*manilles*), handles.
 hap, 15; happ, 5, 12 (noun), luck,
 chance.
 happe, 4; happed, 5; haped, 118
 (verb), to happen.
 hardyly, 10; hardytly, 231, boldly.
 harneys, 115, armour.
 hauen, 118 (*clos*), haven.
 haunce, 112; enhance, 325, raised.
 haunted, 113, practised.
 hauoyr, 67, goods.
 haused, 166 (*getter*), lowered over-
 board.
 hawtepyece, 145; haulte piece, 325,
 helmet.
 heest, 21,
 hehge, 21, hang.
 helmets, 199, 251 (*bassines*), fighting
 men.
 henne, 211, hen.
 hens fourthon, 17, henceforth.

herberowed, 70, harboured.
 herde, 7, heard.
 here, 2, hear.
 herke, 317, harken.
 herte, 9, hart; hert, 39.
 heued vp, 24, raised.
 heure, 146, hour.
 heuyer, 35, heavier.
 heyer, 66, heir.
 hit, 7, it.
 hold, 190, keep.
 hott, 302, whole.
 holped, 46, helped.
 honestly, 73, worthily.
 hontous, 238, ashamed.
 hool, 361, whole.
 hoop, 36, hope.
 hoies, 177, oars.
 hors, 10, horse.
 hourys son, 300, whore's son.
 hurted, 25, p.p. of hurten, to rush
 against.
 hurtelyd, 95 (*hurta*), pushed.
 hydouse, 315, hideous.
 hye, 76 (*hault*), aloud; 94, high.
 hyerid, 134, hired.
 hyndre, 24, hynder.

Impetred, 14, procured (Cot.).
 importable, 153, unbearable.
 incontynent, 276, immediately.
 indigned, 262, made indignant.
 infortunate, 16, unfortunate.
 iugge, 15, judge.
 iuggement, 3; jugement, 15, judg-
 ment.
 Iung, 16, June.

Jacke, 205 (*Jaques*), coat.
 jape, 79, jest.
 journey, iourney, 291, a fixed date.
 juggle, 317, judge.
 justiser, 97, justiciary.

Kennyng, 104 (*Veues*), far sight,
 extent of vision. Cotgrave trans-
 lates "kenne": *voir de loin*.
 Motteux (*Rabelais*, Bk. IV, cap.
 22) translates "ne sommes pas
 loing de port" by "within a ken-
 ning."

kepe, 112, guard.
 keile, 28, churl.
 kerued, 17, carved.

keruyng, 43, carving, cutting;
 kerned, 50.
 knowleche, 2, knowledge; know-
 leched, 96.
 konne, 108, show.
 kychons, 50, kitchens.
 kymbyng, 297, combing.
 kyng, 6, king.
 kynne, 90, kin.
 kynrede, 24, kindred.
 kyst, 78 (*jetta*), cast.

Langing, 136, longing.
 large, 111, liberal.
 largenes, 111, liberality.
 launche, 123, hurl; launchid, 94,
 rushed.
 lawghe, 272; lawhe, 101, laugh.
 lawmentyng, 147, lamenting.
 lectuary, 247 (*electuaire*), electuary.
 leder, 39; leeder, 357, leather.
 lefte, 286, lifted.
 legge, 99; leghe, 129; legthis (pl.),
 194, league.
 leghe, 294 (*lieue*), place.
 leghes, 353, legs.
 lepe, 10, leap.
 les, 22, lest.
 leser, 144 (*loisir*), leisure.
 lette, 10, delay; late (imp.) let, 20;
 letted, 196.
 leued, 23, left; leve, 33, leave.
 leuyed, 135, levied.
 leyed, 34, laid.
 leyser, 277, leisure.
 locucion, 20, circumlocution.
 lodgis, 119, lodgings.
 lost, 147, faith.
 lustis, 320, pleasures.
 lyf, 7, life.
 lyfod, 108; lyuelod, 31 (*terrien*),
 landholding.
 lygeauns, 338, allegiance.
 lyghtly, 300, quickly.
 lykwyse, 15, likewise.
 lynee, 6, line.
 lyuere, 275, give.

Machecolyd, 63, 103, parapetted,
 holes are left in the parapets to
 pour out molten lead, &c.
 machined, 96; machyned, 68, ma-
 chinated.
 maculate, 299, blemished.

mageste, 1, majesty.
 magre, 142, maugre.
 maister, 1, master.
 manded, 73 (*manda*), sent for.
 mandement, 153, 183, mandate,
 cominament.
 manoyr, 100, mansion.
 marches, 183, districts.
 maronner, 268, mariner.
 maryage, 16, marriage.
 mate, 147, dull (*mat*), dejected;
 mated, 216.
 mayllet, 329, mallet.
 maynten, 126, bearing.
 medled, 132, mingled.
 medowe, 5, meadow.
 meney, 9, retinue.
 mercy, 71, thank; mercyed, 90.
 meruaylle, 11, marvel.
 meryte, 15, merit.
 meschaunt, 302, wicked.
 mesprysed, 79, calumniated.
 messagery, 69, corps of messengers,
 embassy.
 messe, 54, dish.
 metes, 38, meats.
 meued, 122; mevyd, 8; menyd, 21
 (*meue*), stirred up.
 meure, 160, mature.
 meyne, 23, men; meney, 9, 280,
 company.
 moche, 6, much.
 moder, 14, mother.
 mone shyn, 22, moonshine.
 moneth, 208, month.
 morow, 361, morning.
 most, 29, must.
 moustre, 165, muster.
 mowe, 23, be able.
 musarde, 29 (*musart* from *muser*; to
 loiter), dawdler.
 myddes, 54, midst.
 mynnsshed, 350, lessened; my-
 nusshe, 820.
 myscheaunce, 366, ill luck, mis-
 chance.
 mysdon, 261, done amiss.
 mysdymed, 265, mistook.
 mysericordous, 313, forgiving.
 myserye, 13, misery.
 mysknewe, 102, mistook.
 myster, 219, need; mystier, 222.

Nat, 2, not.

naturell, 15, natural.
 nauye, 109, navy.
 nauyll, 15, navel.
 nayle, 81, hoof.
 ne, 1, nor.
 nedermost, 336, nethermost.
 ner, 212, nor.
 nevow, 17, nephew.
 none, 358, noon.
 ones, 63, nonce.
 nothre, 39, neither.
 nourrytured, 354, nurtured.
 nouryces, 103, nurses.
 nuyouse, 371, tiresome.
 nyghte, 179, niece; nyghtis (pl.),
 162.
 nys, 8, is not.

Obscurte, 22, obscurity.
 obsequye, 235, funeral ceremony.
 obtempering, 9, submitting.
 occysyon, 132, slaughter.
 on, 131, 233, in.
 ones, 360, once.
 oo, 79; oon, 4, one.
 oost, 193, host.
 ootys, 91, oats.
 ordonne, 14, order; ordonned, 79.
 orgueyth, 293, haughtiness.
 orgueyllous, 249, haughty.
 orphanite, 147, state of orphanage.
 orphelym, 241; orphenyme, 213;
 orphenyns (pl.), 187, orphan.
 ough, 126; owche, 59, jewel.
 ouergrowen, 65, full grown.
 ouerredde, 1, read over.
 ouertredde, 112, overstep.
 ought, 134, owes.
 oultrage, 196, outrage.
 oultrageous, 89, outrageous.
 outhre, 95, either.

Paas, 21, pace.
 pais, 257, peace.
 palfrener, 52 (*varlet*), page.
 palfroy, 9, palfrey.
 palleyes, 147, palace.
 palyard, 294 (*ribault*), rascal.
 pannes, 4, pans.
 panser, 84, a steel plate covering
 that part of the body between the
 breast and the wrist. *Viollet-le-*
Duc, the front part of the cuirass.
 pappes, 311, breasts.

parels, 31, perils.
 parement, 37, ornament.
 parfounde, 167, deepest.
 parfytt, 3, perfect.
 partrych, 175, partridge.
 pas, 136, pass, passage.
 patron, 115, master.
 patyse, 304, 324, tribute; patiz, 301;
 patise (verb), 304, tax, exact tri-
 bute.
 paueys, 142, 359, shield.
 paueysed, 167, shielded.
 paynemys, 106, pagans.
 peas, 12, peace; peased, 100, paci-
 fied.
 pensefull, 28 (*pensif*), thoughtful.
 perfightly, 22; perfyttly, 5, per-
 fectly.
 peris, 39; peers.
 perpetred, 76, perpetrated.
 perske, 126 (*pers.*), blue, sky colour-
 ed (Cot.).
 pert, 105, expert.
 pesaunnt, 142, weight.
 pesaunt, 145, heavy.
 peupled, 118, peopled.
 peyne, 12, 322, pain, painstaking.
 plaisir, 10, pleasure.
 playntes, 12, plaints.
 playsaunce, 14, pleasure.
 playsaunt, 7, pleasant.
 plee, 53 (*plait*), story.
 plee, 319 (*plet*), play.
 pletyng, 33, pr. part. of plete, to
 plead.
 portable, 209, bearable.
 portecollis, 253, portcullis.
 potence, 117, cross, gibbet.
 pouere, 6, poor.
 pouldre, 115, powder.
 poursiewe, 155, seek.
 poynted, 149, appointed.
 prately, 9 (*doulcement*), prettily.
 prechement, 196, preaching.
 prees, 137 (*presse*), throng.
 prest, 265, 275, ready, now.
 preste, 358, priest.
 preu, 21 (*preus*), valiant.
 preyse, 23, praise.
 preysed, 302, appraised.
 prodytour, 310 (*proditeur*), traitor.
 proesse, 15, prowess.
 promysson, 16, promise.
 promytte, 15, promise.

promyttyng, 292, promising.
 propice, 168; propyce, 108, pro-
 pitious.
 propos, 261, proposal.
 propre, 196, own.
 propiete, 133, property.
 proufytte, 3, profit.
 proy, 132, prey.
 prymat, 40, primate.
 pryne, 148, six A.M.
 pryuy, 214, select, intimate.
 publyed, 64, published.
 pucelle, 179, maid.
 punysshe, 13, punish.
 purchasse, 257, procure.
 purfeld, 53; purfyllled, 240, trimmed.
 puruey, 19, purvey.
 purveyaunce, 109, provender.
 purueyed, 109, purveyed, provided.
 pytaunce, 336, allowance.
 pyte, 14, pity.

Quarell, 287, a kind of arrow.

Radeur, 329 (*radeur*), swiftness; 386,
 violence.
 reasonably, 18, reasonably; raisson,
 260, justice.
 rampyn, 117 (*rampin*), a light ship.
 rannyn, 8, running.
 raser, 283, razor.
 rauysshed, 7, ravished.
 realyed, 145, rallied.
 reaune, 238; reame, 240, realm.
 rebuckyd, 252, struck, attacked.
 rechaced, 126, chased back.
 reche, 325, reach.
 recomforte, 107, comfort again.
 recorded, 263, related.
 recounted, 168, encountered.
 recule, 124, 231, fall back, retreat.
 rede, 2, read.
 redeuaunce, 4 (*redevance*), rent, ser-
 vice.
 redressid, 193, rearranged.
 reforced, 176 (*se renforcha*), 290
 (*reforcha*), increased, reinforced.
 regarde, 209, desert.
 regenerated, 140, regenerated.
 regne, 6, reign.
 regracy, 23; regracye, 124, thank.
 rejoye, 157, gladden.
 relacion, 42, reference.
 relessed, 322, relaxed, diminished.

releuyd, 95 (*se remit*), 103, 131, rose.
 relygyon, 181, order.
 remenant, 44, remnant.
 remevyth, 371, removeth.
 remyse, 207, 210, restore; remysed,
 137.
 renomnee, 108; renounee, 74 (*renommée*), renown.
 resoynngne, 140 (*ressongner*), to fear
 (Cot.).
 respecton, 319, outlook.
 restablysshe, 196, establish again.
 retche, 14 (*challoir*), reck, regard.
 reuertid, 319, turned.
 reueste, 97, endow.
 reuested, 40, clothed.
 reueyht, 241, revelry.
 rewled, 68, ruled.
 rightwyse, 69, righteous.
 roche, 248, rock.
 roos, 22, rose.
 roste, 4, roast.
 rote, 60, root.
 rotyn, 286, rotten.
 rought, 67, recked.
 route, 136, squadron (Cot.).
 royalme, 118; royame, 245, realm.
 rudesse, 28, rudeness.
 ryall, 363, royal.
 ryalte, 214, royalty.
 ryuage, 2, 114 (*ripre*), shore, landing.

Saaf, 3, except.
 sac, 39, sack.
 salades, 130, helmets.
 saluacyon, 356, safety.
 salue, 126, salute; salued, 8; sa-
 lewed, 10.
 Satirday, 15, Saturday.
 saudant, 291, sultan.
 sauegarde, 17, safeguard.
 sauf, 177, except.
 sawdees, 148, soldiers' pay.
 sawdoyers, 208; sawdyours, 149,
 soldiers.
 sawdan, 105, sultan.
 sawte, 229; sawtyng, 291, assault,
 assaulting.
 saynct, 3, saint.
 scafoldes, 241 (*eschafauds*), grand-
 stands.
 scaped, 34, escaped.
 searmusshing, 131, skirmishing.
 schall, 2, shall.

scourers, 224 (*coureurs*), runners.
 seaced, 311, ceased.
 sealo, 39, seal.
 seased, 75, seasyd, 358 (*saisir*, con-
 nected with *seisin*), seized from.
 sechyng, 10, seeking.
 see, 7, sea.
 semblable, 210, similar.
 semblaunt, 33, 150, show.
 semynge, 7, seeming.
 sene, 153 (cf. *syn*) since.
 senester, 84; senyster, 137, left.
 separed, 302, separated.
 sepulture, 354, tomb.
 serche, 1, search.
 seruytude, 249, feudal dues.
 sethen, 163, since.
 sette, 17, set, placed; 272 (noun),
 sect.
 seuene nyght, 91, week.
 shadd, 22, shed.
 shede, 359, sheath.
 shelynges, 43, shillings.
 shett, 14, shut.
 shul, 16, shall.
 siege, 133, seat, camp.
 siew, 123, follow; siewed, 219;
 siewyng, 73.
 sith, 10, since.
 sitte, 23, set.
 slee, 24, slay.
 slough, 306, slew.
 sodan, 128, sultan.
 soden, 279, boiled.
 solas, 306, amusement.
 solemply, 323, solemnly.
 sommage, 143, baggage.
 sommed, 65, summoned.
 songe, 7, sang.
 sonne, 174, sun.
 sorow, 13, sorrow.
 sonne, 360, sun.
 sort, 110, spell, sorcery.
 souped, 363, supped.
 sourdred, 46 (*est sours*), 50 (*sour-
 dit*), sprung forth.
 sowle, 41, soul.
 sowne, 101, sound.
 sparpylled, 165 (*esgarez*), scattered.
 spek, 6, 19, speak.
 sperhaak, 16; sperohak, sparrow
 hawk.
 speryd, 294, asked.
 spoused, 11, espoused.

spyce, 371 (*espèce*), element.
 stablysshed, 17, stablished.
 stalage, 54, stands.
 stert vp, 302 (*saillist*), jumped up.
 straunged of, 48, estranged from.
 stake, 234, a pile of wood.
 stakered, 82; staker, 353, staggered.
 staung, 98, pool.
 stere, 185, stir, move.
 sterop, 27; sterope, 83, stirrup.
 stode, 7, stood.
 stoure, 132, 146, tumult, battle.
 straunge, 183, foreign.
 straunger, 10, stranger.
 strengest, 33, strongest.
 streyte, 118, street.
 styed, 94, mounted.
 styl, 7, still.
 subget, 24, subject.
 subgection, 17, subjection.
 suposen, 3, suppose.
 supposet, 30, intendest.
 surprysed, 10, overcome by.
 surquydous, 96, arrogant.
 suscited, 151 (*resuciter*), raised from.
 sustir, 118, sister.
 swette, 7, sweet.
 syke, 147, sick.
 sylenceth, 48, becomes silent.
 symplenes, 194, ignorance.
 syn, 17, 71, 116, since, then.
 synester, 258, evil.
 synewes, 138 (*vaines*), veins.
 synnar, 313, sinner.
 synne, 339, sin.
 syth, 26, since.
 sythe, 301, scyth.

Tache, 22 (*tache*), spot; tache, 232,
 buckle, clasp.
 tambours, 110, drums, a kind of
 tambourine.
 targe, 175, shield.
 termyned, 149, terminated.
 terryen, 60, landholder.
 thaketh, 294 (*pris*), taketh.
 the, 284, they.
 thenne, 7, then.
 thevely, 359, thieflike.
 thikk, 18, thick.
 thoo, 16, those.
 thrested, 77, thrustud.
 through, 359, threw.
 thirst, 7, thirst.

thye, 232, thigh.
 tierce, 157, In summer eight of the
 clock, in winter ten (Cot.).
 toard, 96, towards.
 to fore, 20; to forne, 178, before.
 togidre, 11, together.
 toke, 4, took.
 top, 105, tuft.
 tourment, 15, torment.
 tourned, 9, turned.
 tranchis, 43 (*trenchée*); trenchis, 50,
 carvings, hewings.
 trasse, 278, trace.
 trauerse, 126, across.
 trayth, 320 (*traillis*); traylles (pl.),
 329, cage.
 trayttee, 182, treaty.
 trenchaunt, 145, sharp.
 trew, 1, true.
 trews, 276, truce.
 tronchoned, 286, truncheoned.
 troussage, 132 (*troussages*), goods,
 bundles.
 troussed, 141, prepared to leave.
 trouth, 17, truth.
 trucheman, 274, interpreter.
 trusse, 335, pack.
 trychery, 110, treachery.
 trystefull, 305, sad.
 tyres, 53, attire.

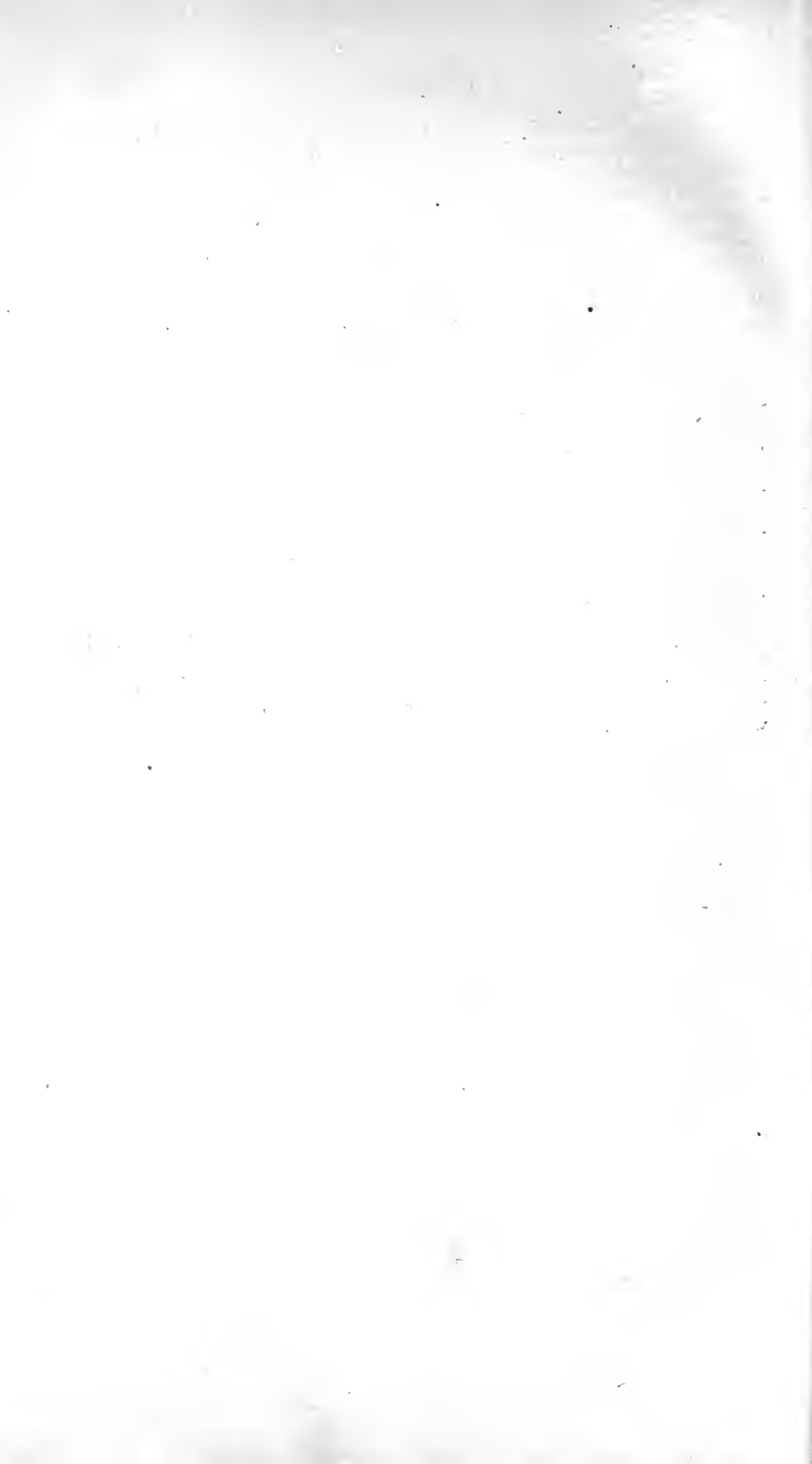
Valew, valewe, 41, value.
 valiauntis, 122, valiantness.
 vasselage, 145 (*vaisselage*), fealty;
 200 (*vaisselages*), feats of arms
 (Cot.).
 vergoyne, 285 (*vergoingne*), shame.
 vergoynouse, 21, ashamed.
 vertu, 291; vertue, 200, strength.
 very, 1, 25, veracious.
 vitupere, 89 (*blasme*), reproach.
 vmbrel, 83 (*maisselle*), the shade for
 the eyes placed immediately over
 the sight of a helmet, and some-
 times attached to the vizor (Halli-
 well).
 vnfortune, 209, misfortune.
 vnnethe, 202, 249, scarcely, nearly.
 vnpurveyed, 121 (*despourveu*), un-
 provided.
 vnved, 131, united.
 volente, 207, will.
 voyded, 209 (*ostées*), removed.
 vpso-dounne, 25, upside down.

vyageours, 362, travellers.
 vylayne, 28, bondman.
 vylonnys, 251, disgrace.
 vynaigre, 114, vinegar.
 vyreton, 269, arrow or bolt.
 vysyted, 288, examined.
 vytupere, 233 (*vituperer*), shame.

Wakked, 7, was awake.
 waloped, 130; waloping, 21, galloped.
 warauntysse, 200; waraunt, 136, protect.
 warde, 62, wall of defence.
 wardes, 170, guards.
 wareyne, 99, preserve, enclosure.
 wast, 18, waste.
 waymentyng, 13, lamenting.
 wedryng, 206, weather.
 wele, 11, weal.
 wend, 72; weneth, 2; wenyng, 29, weened, thought.
 wende, 137, turned.
 wepen, 25, weapon.
 wered, 21, fought, warred, worried.
 were, 129, wear.
 werre, 65, war.
 wers, 216, worse.
 wery, 145, weary.

wete, 115; wot, 12; wote, 120, know.
 whom, 52, home.
 wodd, 272, mad.
 wode, 285, wood.
 woo, 85, woful.
 wood wroth, 247, madly angry.
 worship, 111, respect.
 worshipfully, 10, honorably.
 wonderly, 5, wonderfully.
 wraunt, 158, guarantee.
 writon, 17, written.
 wrorthy, 68, worthy.
 wysshyng, 177, wish.
 wyttd, 310, blamed.

Yaf, 181, gave.
 yede, 7, 21, went.
 yeft, 16, gift.
 yl wyller, 211, ill-wisher.
 ymage, 17, image.
 ynough, 13, enough.
 yonde, 70, yonder.
 yonge, 4, young.
 ypocras, 54, a spiced and sweetened wine.
 yrous, 246 (*fier*), angry, fierce.
 ytaken, 9, taken.



INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

PART I.—PERSONS.

- Adam, page 3.
- Alayn of Quyngant, 68, Raymondin's uncle.
- Alexaundryne, 369, concubine of Sersuell.
- Anthenor, King of Antioch, 264; helps to form a league to fight Urian of Cyprus; is defeated, makes a treaty with Urian, and agrees to pay tribute, 292.
- Anthony, 6, fourth son of Raymondin and Melusine; birth, 104; leaves home to succour Christine of Luxembourg, 190; conquers the King of Anssay, 308; marries Christine, 214; goes to the siege of Pourrencreu, 347; captures the Duke of Freiburg, 353.
- Appolyn, 283.
- Aragon, King of, visits Raymondin at Montserrat, 338; is present at Raymondin's burial, 355.
- Argeimount, Lord of, 218, a baron of Poitou, appointed by the Duke Anthony as captain of Luxembourg in his absence at the siege of Prague.
- Aristote, 3; Aristotles, 20, quoted.
- Asselyn, 183, Earl of Luxembourg, father of Christine.
- Austeryche, Duke of, fights against the King of Anssay, is defeated, 245.
- Bandas, Caliph of, goes against Cyprus with the King of Brandimount, 164; attacks Lymasson, 167; he retreats on hearing of
MELUSINE.
- the damage to the fleet by the storm, 168; his fleet captured, 170; fights Urian, 175; makes his escape, 176; defeated at sea by the Master of Rhodes, 177; escapes in a small boat, 177; forms a league against the kings of Cyprus and Armenia, 264; defeated by the Christian forces, and is compelled to make a treaty, 292.
- Bar, Duchesse of, Marie, 1, daughter of John le Bon, King of France; born Sept. 12, 1344; married 1364 to Robert, Duke of Bar; died 1404.
- Barbary, Sultan of, nephew of King Brandimount, one of the league against Urian, King of Cyprus, 264; believes the league will be successful against the Lusignans on land, 272; loses his arm in a fight with Urian, 290; makes a treaty, 292.
- Benedictus, Pope, 334; Benedicte; visited by Raymondin.
- Bernadon, 354, son of Odon, Earl of Marche, marries the heiress of the lord of Cabyeres.
- Berry, Duke of, John, 1, son of John le Bon, King of France; born Nov. 30, 1340; died June 15, 1416; commands John of Arras to compile the history of Melusine, 2; captures Lusignan Castle, 369.
- Bertrand, 18, 102, son of Emery, Earl of Poitiers; succeeds to the

- earldom, 40: grants Raymondin a piece of land, 41; goes to Raymondin's wedding, 49.
- Bertrand, 214, son of Anthony and Cristine of Luxembourg.
- Blanche, 18, daughter of Emery, Earl of Poitiers, goes to Raymondin's marriage, 52.
- Brandimount in Tharse, King of, uncle of the Sultan of Damascus, 164; goes against Cyprus to avenge his nephew's death, 164; his fleet damaged by a storm, 165; swears to obtain victory or death, 170; fights Urian, 175; slain, 175.
- Claude of Syon, 247, refuses to pay Raymondin his tribute, 246; is attacked by Geffray with the great Tooth, 247; captured, 254; is hung before Valbruyant Castle by Geffray's orders, 256.
- Clerevauld, 252, third brother of Guyon of Syon Castle; rebels against Raymondin, 246; is captured by Geffray's squire, 253, and is hung before Valbruyant Castle, 256.
- Cordes, Admiral of, 268; Querdes, 264; joins the Caliph of Bandas to fight the King of Cyprus, 264; defeated at sea by Geffray, 270; slain by Geffray, 290.
- Crystyne, 183, daughter and heiress of the Duke of Luxembourg; the King of Anssay sues for her hand, 183; she refuses because he is a widower, 183; her land attacked, 185; Anthony rescues her, 203; marries Anthony, 214.
- Damascus, Sultan of, wants to marry the daughter of the King of Cyprus, 121; is refused because he will not be baptised, 121; goes to fight the king, 115; besieges Famagosse, 121; hears of the arrival of the Lusignans, 124; defeated by Urian, 133; throws a poisoned dart at the King of Cyprus, 136; slain by Urian, 145.
- Damascus, Sultan of, jeers at the Christians' power, 277; gets frightened at Geffray, 280; attacks Geffray, 283; has to fly, 285; makes a treaty, 292.
- David, King of Israel, 2, quoted.
- Dupont, Josselyn, makes the heir of the King of Bretayne jealous of Henry of Leon, 66; is denounced by Raymondin, 72; summoned to appear before the King of Bretayne, 73; his treachery exposed, 75; confesses, 85; ordered to make restitution, 88; hung, 86.
- Dysmas, 117, the good thief who was crucified with Jesus.
- Earle of Vandosme at war with the Erle of Marche, 345; he has to make peace, and do homage for some of his land, 346.
- Eglantyne, daughter and heiress of Frederick, King of Bohemia, 215; left an orphan, 227; marries Regnauld, fourth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 240; becomes the mother of Olyphart, 242.
- Elynas, King of Albany, a widower; when hunting he meets Pressine, a beautiful lady, 7; becomes enamoured of her, 9; proposes to marry her, 10; is accepted on condition that he promises to abstain from seeing her while in childbed, 11; has three daughters by her, Melusine, Melior, and Palatine, 11; breaks his promise, 11; his wife and daughters disappear, 12; his daughters shut him up in Brombelyoys, a Northumbrian mountain, 14; his death, burial, and tomb, 17.
- Emery, Earl of Poitiers, 18, slain by accident at a boar hunt by his nephew Raymondin, 25.
- Florye, daughter and heiress of the King of Little Armenia, falls in love with Guyon, second son of Raymondin and Melusine, 162; left an orphan, 178; her father's dying wish is that she should marry Guyon, 179; Guyon marries her, 181.
- Florymond, son of Nathas, King of Albany, 7; he has much trouble, 12.

- Forests, Erle of, jokes his brother Raymondin about his marriage to Melusine, 56; makes him jealous of Melusine, 295; is slain by Geffray, 332.
- Frederyk, King of Behayne, brother of the King of Anssay, 215; besieged by the Saracens at Prague, 215; slain by the King of Craco, 226.
- Froymond, 245; Froymonde, 6; Froymont, 308, seventh son of Raymondin and Melusine, 104; the only perfectly formed child Melusine bears, 314; shorn, a monk at Mailleses, 305; burnt in the Abbey of Mailleses by Geffray with the great Tooth, 309.
- Gallafryn, King of Danette (Dami-etta) has his head cut open by Geffray, 283.
- Geffray with the great Tooth, sixth son of Raymondin and Melusine; birth, 104; goes against Claud of Syon and his brethren, 247; hangs them before Valbruyant Castle, 256; pardons Guerin and Gerrard, 263; resolves to fight the Saracens, 264; arrives at Lymasson, 267; defeats the Saracens at sea, 270; plunders Jaffa, 277; captures Beyrout, 278; kills Gallafryn of Damietta before Damascus, 283; fights the Sultan of Damascus, 287; kills the Admiral of Cordes, 290; the Saracens agree to pay tribute, 292; fights the giant Guedon, 302; slays him, 304; enraged at his brother Froymond becoming a monk, 307; burns the Abbey of Mailleses, his brother Froymond and all the monks, 304; repents, 310; goes to Brombelyo, 323; fights the giant Grimold, 324; follows him into a cave, 327; sees there the tomb of Elynashis grandfather, 326; slays Grimold, 329; learns his mother's fate, 331; slays the Earl of Forest, 332; becomes lord of Lusignan, 338; repents his many misdeeds, 329; goes to Rome and confesses to the Pope, 340; visits his father, 343; visits Regnald and Anthony, 345; rebuilds the Abbey of Mailleses, 346; captures Freiburg, 351; fights the Duke of Austria, 353; attends his father's burial, 353; fights with a mysterious knight, 359; promises to build an hospital, 361.
- Geruayse, 4 (? Gervaise of Tilbury) quoted.
- Godart, 369, declares he has often seen a serpent on the walls of Lusignan Castle.
- Great Carmen, 263.
- Great Prior of Rhodes invites Urian and Guion to Rhodes, 116; goes to search for the Saracens, 117; cuts off the Saracen retreat, 174; defeats the Calaph of Bandus at sea, 177; sails to the Saracen fleet at Jaffa, 266.
- Grymault, 306; Grymauld, 323, a Northumbrian giant; Geffray with the great Tooth fights him, 324; and on the second day slays him, 329.
- Guedon, 293, a giant in Garendes; fights Geffray, 301; is slain, 304.
- Guerard of Mountfrayn, nephew of Guern of Valbruyant Castle, 256; makes peace with Geffray, 263.
- Guern of Valbruyant Castle, 255; submits to Geffray, 261, and is forgiven, 263.
- Guion, third son of Raymondin and Melusine, 103; goes with his brother Urian to help the King of Cyprus against the Saracens, 109; receives a ring from Ermin, 126; visits the King of Cyprus, 150; goes once more against the Saracens, 160; driven on the coast of Armenia, 161; falls in love with Flory, the heiress of the King of Armenia, 163; defeats the Saracens, 166; is offered the crown of Armenia, 179; marries Flory, 180; has to defend himself against a Saracen league, 265.
- Guyon, brother of Claud of Syon Castle, fights Geffray with the great Tooth, 249; is overcome

- and bound to a tree, 251; hung before Valbruyant Castle, 256.
- Henry of Leon, father of Raymondin, seneschal of the King of Bretayn, 65; slain by Josselin Dupont, 67.
- Henry, son of Alayn of Quyngean, and cousin of Raymondin, 70; obtains from Raymondin the Barony of Henry of Leon, 87.
- Henry, 178, 257, son of Urian and Hermin of Cyprus.
- Horrible, eighth son of Raymondin and Melusine, birth, 105; has three eyes, and is of a brutal disposition, 105; suffocated, 322.
- Locher, 245, son of Anthony and Christine of Luxembourg.
- Lymas, Captain of, visits the wounded King of Cyprus, 146; takes a message from him to Urian, 148.
- Machomid, 277; Mahon, 275, Mahomet.
- Melidee, 183; Metydee, 217, daughter of the King of Ansay; betrothed to Bertrand, Anthony's son, 245.
- Melior, second daughter of Elinas and Pressine, 11; helps Melusine to shut her father up in the Mountain of Brombelyoys, 14; as punishment is sent by her mother to keep a Sperohak in a castle in Armenia until the day of judgment, 15; she gives gifts to knights who can watch the Sperohak three days and nights without sleep, 362; has an adventure with a King of Armenia, 365; tells her history, 366.
- Melusine, 6; Melusigne, 11; Melusine of Albany, 52; eldest daughter of Elinas, King of Albany, and Pressine, 11; taken to Aualon, 12; told of her father's broken promise, 13; shuts up her father in Brombelyoys Mountain, 14; condemned to turn into a serpent every Saturday till she finds a man who will marry her and who promises to keep away from her on those days, 15; meets Raymondin at the Fountain of Soif, 27; wakens him, 29; tells his history, 31; asks him to marry her, 31; obtains a promise that he will not try to see her on Saturdays, 32; gives Raymondin advice, 33; her wedding, 53; thanks Raymondin for his friends' presence and urges him to keep his promise, 57; she presents rich jewels to her guests, 59; builds Lusignan Castle, 62; gives birth to Urian, 65; advises Raymondin to go to Bretayn to obtain justice from Josselin Dupont, 65; prepares a welcome for her lord, 101; gives birth to Odon and Guyon, 103; builds Partenay and many towns and castles in Poitou and Guyenne, 103; gives birth to Anthony, Geffray, Froymond, 104, 245, and Horrible, 105; gives permission to Urian and Guion to seek their fortunes abroad, 107; organizes their forces, 109; gives them parting advice, 110; raises an army for Anthony and Regnald, 188; gives them advice, 190; gives birth to Theodoric, 245; Raymondin is made jealous of her by his brother, 295; breaks his promise and visits her on a Saturday, 296; sees her bathing in the form of a serpent woman, 297; she forgives him and consoles him, 299; she hears of the burning of the Abbey of Mailleses by her son Geffray, 312; her sorrow, 312; she goes to Raymondin and chides him for his over great grief, 313; he upbraids her, and calls her a false serpent, 314; she faints, and on reviving laments her fate, 316; she makes her testament, 318; bids Raymondin farewell, 319; is transformed into a serpent and disappears, 321; her obsequies, 321; visits her infant children, 322; her voice is heard lamenting Raymondin's death, 354; is seen by Sersuell, Godart, 369, and Yuon of Wales, 370.

Nathas, 11, Mathas, 17, son of Elynas, King of Albany, by his first wife; he persuades Elynas to break his promise to Pressine, 11; succeeds his father, 12; marries Yerys, 12.

Ode, Duke of Bavaria, 223; goes with Regnald and Anthony to the siege of Prague, 225.

Odon, Edon, second son of Raymondin and Melusine, birth, 102; marries the daughter of the Earl of Marche, 182; visits Regnald and Anthony, 345; the Earl of Vandosme does homage to him, 346.

Olyphart, 242, son of Regnald and Eglantine of Bohemia.

Olyuyer, son of Josselin Dupont, 72; fights Raymondin, 79; yields, 84; condemned to be hanged, 86.

Palatyne, youngest daughter of Elynas and Pressine, sent to the Mountain of Guygo to watch the treasure of Elinas until she was released by a knight of her own lineage, 6.

Philibert de Mommoret assists Gefray in his fight against the rebel Guion, 248, 252.

Pressine, meets Elynas, King of Albany, 7; he is struck with her beauty and declares his love, 10; she consents to marry him on condition that he promises not to look at her when she is in childbed, 11; her marriage, 11; hated by her step-son Nathas, 11; has triplets, Melusine, Melior, and Palatine, 11; King Elynas breaks his promise, 11; she leaves him, taking her daughters with her to Aualon, 12; she shows them the land of their birth from Mount Elyneos, 13; she tells them of their father's broken promise, 13; she punishes her daughters for ill-treating their father, 15; she buries Elynas, and builds him a noble tomb, 17.

Raymondin, son of Henry of Leon, 67, and nephew of the Earl of

Poyters, 19; goes on a boar-hunt with his uncle, 21, whom he accidentally kills, 25; he laments his fortune and resolves to fly, 27; at the Fountain of Soif he meets three fairies, 27, and becomes enamoured of the eldest, Melusine, 29; he is surprised that she knows his history, 30; she asks him to marry her, and promises to make him a great lord, 31, on condition that he will never ask to see her on a Saturday, 32; she counsels him to return to Poitiers, and advises him what to do there, 34; he follows her advice, and all goes well, 36; she sends him back to Poitiers to demand of the new Earl a gift of as much land as he can encircle with a hart's hide, 39; he obtains his land grant, 41; he invites his friends to his wedding, 48; they are surprised at the riches of his wife, 59; Lusignan Castle built, 62; named, 64; Melusine bears him a son named Urian, 65; he goes to Brut Britain to avenge an injury to his father, Henry of Leon, 69; he fights Oliver, son of Josselin Dupont, 83; conquers, 84; obtains a decision in his favour from the King of Brut Britain, 88; on his return home he is attacked by the friends of Josselin Dupont, 94; he repels the attack, and sends his enemies to the King of Brut Britain, who hangs them, 97; he finds a grand castle on his return home, 100; is met by Melusine, 101; she bears him more sons, Odon, Guion, 104, Anthony, Regnald, Gefray, 104, Froimond, Horrible, 104, Theodoric, 246; a rebellion in Garande, 246; he is made jealous by his brother the Earl of Forest, and breaks his promise to Melusine by looking at her in her bath on a Saturday, 296; he sees her to be half woman and half serpent, 297, and laments that he has betrayed her, 297; he drives his brother away for tempting

him, 297, and keeps secret what he has seen, 298; he is forgiven by Melusine, as he has been dis-cree't, 299; he hears that Geffray has burnt the Abbey of Mailleses and all the monks, 310; he visits the Abbey, where he is overcome with anger and denounces Melusine as a spirit, 311; he upbraids her and calls her "a false serpent," 314; he repents and is forgiven, 315; Melusine changes into a serpent and disappears from him, 321; he has his son Horrible burnt, 321; he is full of sorrow at the loss of his wife, 321; he gives his lands to Geffray, 333, and goes on a pilgrimage to Rome, 334, where he confesses to the Pope and visits the Holy Places, 334; he then journeys to Montserrat in Aragon, 336, where he becomes a hermit, 337; his death, 354, and burial, 355.

Raymond, Earl of Forest, ninth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; suckled by Melusine after her disappearance from Raymondin, 322; is made Earl of Forest by Geffray, 332.

Regnald, fifth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 104; goes with Anthony to the siege of Luxembourg, 111; goes to the siege of Prague, 219; slays King Zelodyus; marries Eglantine of Bohemia, 240; Oliphart, his son, 242; goes to the siege of Pourrencreu, 347.

St. Iohan Baptiste, 16.

St. Paul, 3, 371, quoted.

Saint William, Erle of Poitiers, grandson of Erle Emery of Poitiers, 20; becomes a monk of the Order of the White Mauntelles, 20.

Sersuell, Lieutenant, in charge of Lusignan Castle on behalf of the King of England, 369.

Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel in Asy, marries a fairy, to whom he gives a promise that he will never look at her when she is naked, 5; he breaks his promise, 5; his wife

plunges her head into water, and changes into a serpent and disappears, 5.

Theodoryk, youngest son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 246; nursed by his mother after she had left Raymondin, 322; becomes lord of Partenay, 333; left in charge of Geffray's lands, 339; marches against Freiburg, 347, 353; visits his father at Montserrat, 353.

Urian, eldest son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 65; wishes to assist the King of Cyprus against the Sultan of Damascus, 109; Melusine provides an army transport and victuals, 109; sails from Rochelle, 115; fights the Sultan of Damascus at sea, 115; lands his army at Cyprus, 119; receives a jewel from Ermine, the heiress of the King of Cyprus, 126; defeats the Saracens, 132, 138; kills the Sultan of Damascus at Famagosse, 146; knighted by the King of Cyprus, 153; is offered the heiress of Cyprus to wife, 155; accepts her, 156; his marriage, 157; becomes king, 158; kills King Brandemount, 175; defeats the Saracen invaders, 176; his son Henry born, 178; defends himself against a new Saracen League.

Ycris, 12, wife of Nathas, King of Albany, and mother of Florymond.

Yuon of Wales, 370, sees Melusine in the form of a serpent.

Zelodyus, Zodyus, King of Craco, 227; besieges Frederick of Bohemia at Prague, 216; kills Frederick, 226, and ill-treats and burns his body, 227; Regnald slays him, 233; the King of Anssay burns his body, 234.

PART II.—PLACES.

- Acon, page 219, Aix-la-Chapelle.
 Aisne, River, 193.
 Albany, 6, 12.
 Allemayne, 183; Almayn, 351.
 Anssay, 183, may be read Aussay;
 Alsace.
 Aragon, 336.
 Ardane, 245, Ardennes.
 Armanye, Grete, 362, Armenia.
 Arnanye, 161; Armenye, 6, Little
 Armenia.
 Aruall, 89.
 Asy, 5, ? Aisy in dept. of Aisne.
 Aualon, 12.
 Austeryche, 345.
 Auuergne, 1.

 Bandas, 163, may be read Baudas,
 Baghdad.
 Bar, Duchy of, 1.
 Barselone, 336.
 Baruth, 160, ? Beyrout.
 Behayne, 6, 214, Bohemia.
 Berry, 1.
 Boneuall, 346, ? Bonneval, dept.
 Eure et Loire.
 Bretons; 17, 97, Brittany.
 Brombelyoys, 14; Brombelyo,
 Monnt, 32.
 Brut Brytayne, 17, Brittany.

 Cabyeres, 355.
 Cardillak, 356.
 Coles, 122.
 Coloyne, 219.
 Coulombyers, Forest of, 19, 37, 59,
 in dept. of Vienne.
 Craco, 216.
 Cruly, 161, Little Armenia.
 Culbaston, 337, Colbató.
 Cypre, 105, Cyprus.

 Damaske, 164.
 Danette, 276, Damietta.
 Denmark, 242.
 Duras, Castel, 346, on the Meuse.

 Eglon, Castle, 103.
 Elyneos, Mount, 13.
 England, 356.

 Famagoce, 105, 146; Famagousta,
 Cyprus.
 Fontayne of Soyf, 2, or Fontayne of
 Fayerye, 27.
 Forest, 6; Forestz, 18, earldom.
 Fraunce, 1.
 Frebourgh, 350, Freiburg.

 Garande, 246; garende, 287; guer-
 rende, 89, country of the River
 Garonde.
 Gascoynne, 104.
 Guyenne, 104.
 Guygo, Mount, 16, a mountain in
 Armenia.

 Holland, The low march of, 242.
 Hongery, 225.
 Hospytal of Rodes, 122.

 Jalensy, 331.
 Japhe, 265, Jaffa.
 Jherusalem, 292.

 Langgedok, 338, Languedoc.
 Leffé, 217.
 Leon, Castel, 67.
 Lorayne, 183.
 Luceinbourgh, 6, 183.
 Lusygnen, 6; Lusignen, 17.
 Lymas, 146; Limasson, 117, Limas-
 sol, Cyprus.
 Lynges, 103.

 Mailleses, Abbey of, 6; Maillezes,
 246.
 Malegres, 162.
 Marcellly, Castel, 331.
 Masyeres, Bridge of, 245, ? Mézières.
 Maxence, 103, Abbey of ? Maxent.
 Melle, 103.
 Mermont, 292; Mernant, 103.
 Mermount, 300, Tower of the giant
 Guedon.
 Meuse, River, 194; Meuze, 245, 346.
 Montferrat, 335, Montserrat in Ara-
 gon.
 Montiers, Abbey of, 42.
 Mouchyne, 243 (*Muchin*), ? Munich.
 Mountfrayn, 257.

- Mountyoued, 331; Mountyouet, 306.
 Murmych, 225.
 Myrabel, 192.

 Nantes, 73.
 Nerbonne, 335.
 Neufmoustier, Abbey of, 322.
 Northumberland, 14, 306.
 Northweglie, 242; Norway.
 Nuenmarghe, 223 (? Nurenburg).
 Nyort, 299.

 Parpynen, 336, Perpignan.
 Partenay, 6, 103.
 Penbrough, 355, Pembroke.
 Penycence, 65.
 Poitiers, 118; Poyters, 19; Poytiers.
 Pons, 103.
 Poterne Tower, 321.
 Pourrencru, 346, (?) Porentroy, near
 Freiburg.
 Poytow, 4; Poitow, 17; Poytwo,
 41; Pouthieu, 293 (*Ponthiène*).
 Prague, 215, Prague.

 Quercyn, 356.
 Quyngant, 68, ? Guingamp.

 Regnault, Castel, 355.
 Rochelle, 103.
 Roussel, Chastel, in Asy, 5.
 Ryne, River, 219, Rhine.

 Saint Hylary of Poyters, church, 40.
 Salesbury, 1.
 Saynt Andrew, Port of, 168.
 Saynt Mychel, Capell of, 343.
 St. John of Rhodes, 269.
 Sassymon, 98.
 Soyf, Fontayne of, 37.
 Sperhaak Castle, 16; Sperohak, 15.
 Storyon, 73.
 Surye, 160, ? Syria.
 Syon Castle, 247.

 Tallemondois, 104.
 Tallemounte, 104.
 Tharse, 164, in Asia Minor.
 Thoulouse, 335.
 Tryple, 278, ? Tripoli in Syria.
 Tupple, 160 (*Tupple*), ? Tripoli,
 Syria.
 Turcke, 145; Turckye, 265.

 Valbruyant Castle, 255.
 Vannes, 98.
 Vernon, 318.
 Vertone, 195.
 Vouant, 103.
 Vtreight, 242, Utrecht.

 Xaintes, 103.

 Ycrys, 12.

 Zeland, 242, Zealand.







PRATT

SEP 11 1984

PRATT

JAN 7 1985

SEP - 8 1986

PRATT

JAN 13

VICTORIA UNIVERSITY

